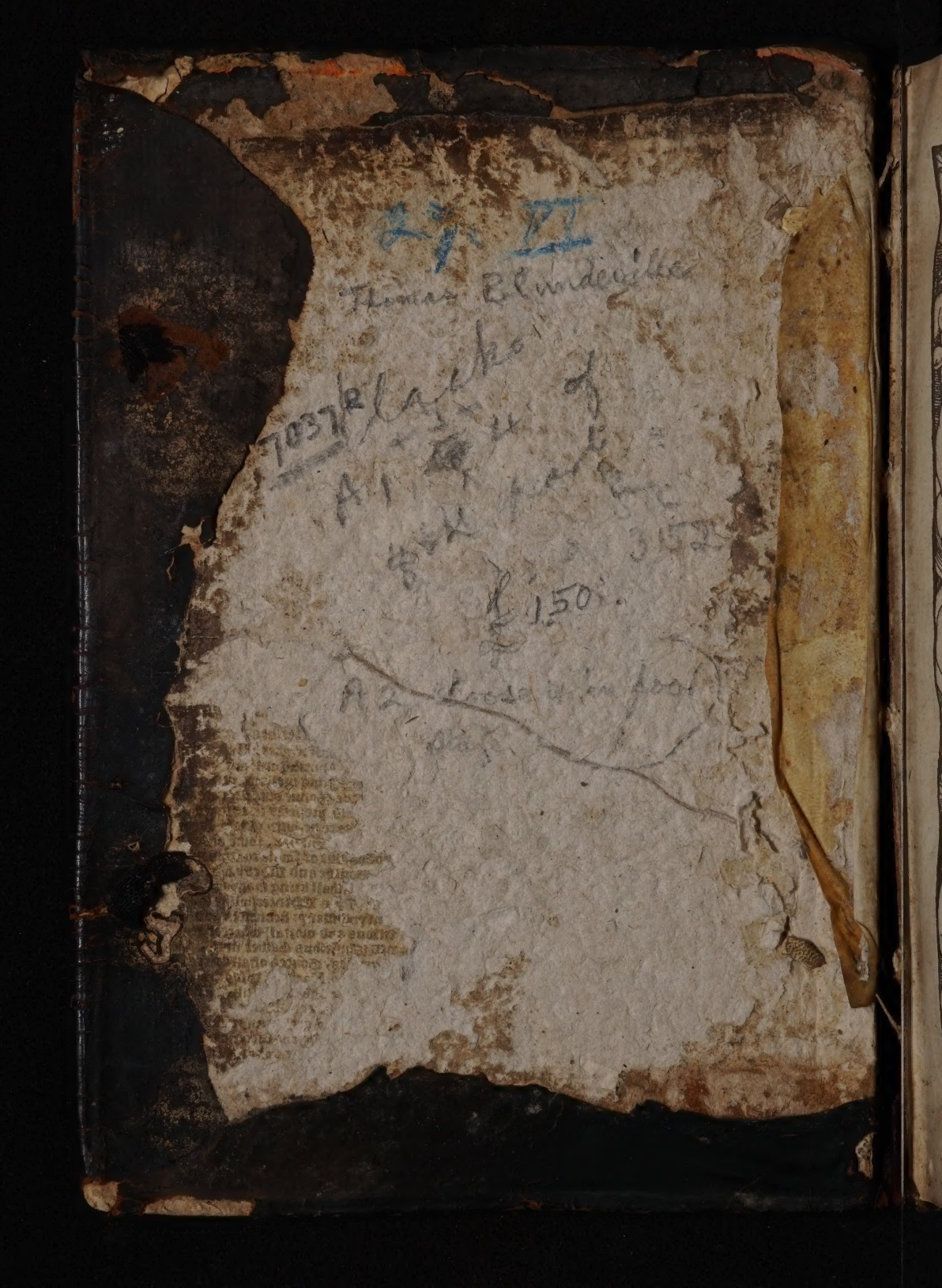
Mandeville
Sir John



mr. Mr and dr. Herbert's book 1660

The fower chiefyst offices

belongyng to Horseman shippe,

That is to saye.

The office of the Breeder, Of the Rider, of the Keper, and of the Ferrer. In the firste parte wherof is declared the order of breding of horses. In the seconde howe to breake them, and to make theym horses of seruyce, Conteynynge the whole arte of Ridynge lately set forth, and nowe newly corrected and amended of manye faultes escaped in the fyrste printynge, as well touchyng the bittes as otherwyse. Thirdely howe to dyet them, aswell when they reste as when they trauell by the way. Fourthly to what diseases they be subiecte, together with the causes of such diseases, the sygnes howe to knowe them, and finally howe to cure the same. Whyche bookes are not onely paynfully collected out of a nomber of authours, but also orderly disposed and applyed to the vse of thys oure coūtrey. By Tho. Blundeuill of Newton Flotman Norff.

¶ Imprinted at London by VVyllyam Seres dwellyng at the weste ende of Paules churche, at the signe of the Hedgehogge.

Cum priuilegio ad imprimendum solum.

308852

WELLCOME LIBRARY INSTITUTE

TO THE RIGHTE HONORABLE AND HIS SINGVLER GOOD LORDE, THE *Lorde Roberte Dudley, Erle of Leycester*, Baron of Denbighe, Knight of the honorable ōrder of the Garter, Maister of the Queenes maiesties horses, and one of her highnes pryuie councell. Thomas Blundeuil wisheth perfect felicitie.

AFTER THAT I had put foorthe the Arte of Riding, and sawe how thākfully it pleased not only your Honoure, but also the moste part of the Jentlemē of this Realme, to accept the same: I was so muche encoraged therby as I sought to make the saide boke more perfecte, by addinge therevnto three other bookes, wherof the first should treate of the breedynge of Horses, the seconde of their dyet, to preserue them longe in healthe, and the thirde of their diseases: Declarynge therewithall the causes, sygnes, and cures of the same, whiche bokes how necessarye they be, and how meete they are to accompany the Arte of Riding, the matter it selfe (being well handled) would euidently shewe. For then it should be a perfecte worke, comprehending the foure chiefyst Offices belonging to Horsemanshyppe, that is to say: The office of the Breeder, of the Ryder or Breaker, of the Keeper, and of the Ferrer. For as towchynge the Bitmaker & Saddler their offices, the first is indifferently wel declared alredy in the

Arte of Riding: & the Sadler his office, shalbe taught hereafter in another litle boke of additions, which I entende God wyllynge to ioyne to this volume, briefelye cõprehendyng all the good preceptes of a later Writer, nowe being your Honors most excellente Ryder, called maister Claudio Corte: Not onely touching that office, but also touchynge diuerse of the other Offices before recited. Whiche Booke shall supply to all the wants of suche necessarye thynges, as eyther Gryson in his boke or I perhappes haue neclygently omytted. And truely, your Honour deserueth no litle prayse, for procuryng so synguler a man into this Realme: For besydes his perfection in riding, he is so wel learned, wyse, courteouse, and modest withall, as his acquaintaunce, company, & frendshipp ought to be right deare vnto al ciuill Jentlemen, and specially to those that delyght in Horsemanshyppe. But now to retourne vnto my purpose, for that I sawe it lay not in me to perfourme this worke, so as it might answere euery mans expectation, and specially of such as are more readie to finde faultes, then to amende them, I did almost repent me of mine enterprise and good desire: and the rather, for that I had no one certayne Author to followe, that eyther wrote of these matters to the full, or in suche order as did satisfye my minde, but should be driuen to deale wt a great nombre of Authors, whose sayinges and experiences, together with mine owne small knowledge gotten by traueling in forreine countreies: I must not onely orderly dispose: but also apply the same to the vse of this our countrey. Which thing being more laborious (thē some perhaps take it,) I had cleane geuen it ouer if your good Lordshyp had not ben, by whom I was so much harted, as

I could not chose but to take the same in hand, and to go thorough the withall so well as I coulde: And therfore if any man receyueth any commodity therby (as I doubte not but he shall, if he wyll vouchsafe to rede al that I haue wrytten frō the beginning to the ending) he shall haue most cause to be thankefull to youre Honour for the same. And I beleeue your thankes and prayse shoulde be so muche the more, if it would please your Honour to be a meane that the Quenes highnes may not onely cause such statutes as were made in her noble Father and deare Brothers time, (bothe of good Memory) touchyng the breedinge of horses vpon commons to be put in executiō: but also that all such parkes within this realme, as be in her highnesse handes, and mete for that purpose, might not wholly be imployed to the keping of Dere, (which is altogether a pleasure without profyt) but partly to the necessary breeding of Horses for seruice, wherof, this realme of all others at this instant hath greatest nede. The lacke of whiche, if any inuasion shuld chaunce (which God defend) wold quickly appere (I feare me) to the great perill & danger of this her highnes realme. And her Maiestye geuyng this good example, I doubt not but that the most part of the noble men and Gentlemen of this realm hauing parks or groūds impaled mete for such vse: wold folow the same. And to the intēt that no couetousnes might hinder so good an act: I wold wish the couetous mind & desyre of all men to be brideled by a lawe & discipline. Wherby it wold be prouided that not onely a sufficiēt nombre of able Horses maye be bred within this Realme: but also that the same horses may be broken, kept mainteyned, and exercysed accordyngly. Monsieur de l'

Angeay in his boke of war, wold haue no man to keepe a hackney or ealye horse to ride on him selfe: vnlesse he kepte also a horse mete for seruice in the fielde. Whiche thing I feare me wold not please vs English men at al, which of late daies are more geuen to priuat ease & singuler cõmoditie, then to a welthy publique or cõmon profite. Notwithstanding, if a good law (as I said before) were made aswel for the breding, as exercising of great horses, and Gueldinges meete for seruice: and the same straightly executed by vncorrupted officers, whiche in mine opinion wold be skylful Surueiours for the breedes and expert muster masters for the horses of seruice. And also that such Surueies be made twise a yeare at the least, and that the Musters of the horses of seruice be taken throughout the whole realme foure times in a yere, that is to say quarterly, and al in one day, for the auoyding of false Musters: I beleue that in short space we shold not only haue plenty of good horses, but also that the Gentlemen of this realme would so farre passe the Frenchmen and al other nations in this exercise, as they now excel vs: wherby this realme shuld be of such force, as our enemies would alwayes be afrayde to attempt any enterprise against vs. Wherfore me thinkes your honour cãnot by any one way deserue more praise or better gratify al true English hartes, then by seking to bryng to passe so nedeful a thing as this is: wherunto because I know your Lordshyp to be of your owne good nature & disposition so redy and prone, as no man more: I leaue therfore to trouble your Honour any further, prayenge God long to prosper the same.

Alwayes prest to serue your Lordship. Th. Blundeuill.

¶ A shorte Preamble declarynge in what poyntes the knowledge of a Horsebreder chiefely consisteth, wheron dependeth the order of this boke.

WHo so is desyrous, and therewith able to haue a good race or breede of Horses (for to haue skyll in this matter wythoute good wil, and abilitie, to execute the same, wold lyttle preuaile) oughte first to knowe, whether his grounde be meete for that purpose or not, and howe to seuer the same accordyngly. Secondlye it behoueth him to know the diuerse kindes of Horses & Mares, to the intente that he may prouide himselfe of suche as are moste worthy to be kepte, & wyll thriue best in his grounde. Thyrdly howe to vse them when he hathe them, as well at, and before the tyme of engendrynge, as after that the Mares haue conceyued and foled. And also howe to vse their offsprynge, as well durynge their foleage, as at their full age: so as they maye redownde to his moste commoditie, & with leaste labour and charge. Of whiche thre generall poyntes, with what order I treate in this booke: the contents of the chapters hereafter folowyng, do plainlye declare.

¶ The Contentes of the Chapiters.

WHyche groundes are meete for Races, and whiche bee not. Also howe suche groundes oughte to be deuyded or seuered, & to what ende suche deuision serueth. Cap. i.

Of the

Of the dyuers kyndes of Horses and Mares, accordynge to the Countreyes from whence they come, and whiche be beste. Cap.ii.

Of the Turky Horse.
Of the Horse of Barbary.
Of the Horses that come from the Iles of Sardygnia and Corsica.
Of the Napolitan, or Courser of Naples.
Of the Jennet of Spayne.
Of the Hungarian.
Of the highe Almayne.
Of the Flaunders Horse.
Of the Frizelande Horse.
Of the Swiethlande Horse.
Of the Irysshe Hobbye.

A comparyson of the Races aboue rehersed, as towchyng the Climates vnder whiche they be bredde, and whiche of them wyll thryue best here in Englande: and are most meete to serue euery Breders sundrye purpose or intent. Cap.iii.

Howe to choose Stallions and Mares, meete for breede, and of what age they oughte to bee. And finallye howe the Studdes ought to be tame, and not wylde. Cap.iiii.

At what time of the yeare it is beste for Horses and Mares to engender. And in what sorte they ought to be put together. And how to knowe when a Mare desyreth the Horse. Also how many Mares one Stallion is able to couer in one yeare. And fynallye when the stallions should be remoued from them. Cap.v.

What order is to be obserued, towchinge the couerynge

ringe of Mares, when the Stallions do not run wyth theym in the pastures, but are kepte in the stable, and how the same stallions should be dieted. Also at what tyme of the day the Mares ought then to be couered. And fynally how to knowe whether they haue conceiued or not. Cap.vi.

Howe to make your Mares to conceiue either horse foles, or Mare foles, and of what coloure you luste to haue your selfe. Cap.vii.

Whether Mares should be forced to abide the horse, though they haue no luste, or not. And howe to make both horse and Mare, hauing no lust, to haue a luste to engender. Also how to abate their luste if nede requyre. Cap.viii.

Whiche Mares shoulde be couered euerye yeare, and which not. And how to do, that those Mares whiche you would haue to beare euerye yeare, shal not go barren. Cap.ix.

Howe mares should be vsed after they haue conceyued, and are with fole, and what causeth them to caste their foles before their tyme. Cap.x.

Howe to helpe a Mare that is in daũger at the time of her foling. And howe you shall cause her to expell her secundine or Cleane. Cap.xi.

How to make a mare to cast her fole that is not worthy to be bred, or for some other nedefull cause. Cap.xii.

Howe Mares shoulde be vsed after they haue foled. Also how longe the foles should sucke. And howe they ought to be vsed during their foleage. Also how to harden their houes. Cap.xiii.

How to know of what stature, makynge, and disposi-

cion, the foles when they are newe foled, wyll be when they come to age. Cap. xiiii.

Of the growth aswell of Marecoltes, as horsecoltes. And howe to knowe whiche wyll continue in goodnes, and lyue longest. Cap. xv.

When, and how Coltes should be weaned frō their dāmes: and how they ought to be seuered accordyng to their kyndes and ages. Cap. xvi.

Of the guelding of Coltes, and for what cause they be guelt, also at what age, and in what tyme of the yeare they ought to be guelt. Cap. xvii.

At what age and in what tyme of the yeare it is best takyng vp of Coltes to breake them, & how they ought at their firste halteringe to be vsed. Cap. xviii.

Howe, and at what age a Coltes mouthe shoulde be cutte, or certeyne of his teethe drawne, when the bitte for faulte thereof can not haue his true resting place. Cap. xix.

Of the Culling out of refuse Mares and Coltes. And also of those that shouldbe reserued for the maintenaūce of the Studde or Stocke. Cap. xx

Thus endeth the contentes of the Chapters folowing.

What thinges are to be considered in those grounds that should be appointed to the breedinge of horses. Also how such grounds ought to be deuided, and to what ende such deuision serueth Cap.i.

AND fyrst as towchinge the ground, twoo thinges are to be considered, that is, the quantitye and qualitye. The quantitye for twoo respectes. First to the intent it be not charged with more Cattell then it is able to beare, for the Cattell not being sufficiently fedde can not prosper. The seconde respect is, for that the greater the ground is, the more particions are nedefull, partlye for chaūge of pasture sake, for according to the olde prouerbe, chaunge of pasture maketh fatte Calues. And such particions wolde be made with high pale, rayle, or els depe ditche, and verye thicke quicke set. For Horses, Mares, and wilde Coltes, are not so easelye kepte in as other cattel is. But chiefely such particions are nedefull, aswell for the stallions to run euery one seuerally by him selfe, together with his owne Mares, during the time of engendring, as also for the Coltes when weanynge time commes, to be seuered from their dammes, of whiche twoo pointes we shall speake hereafter in their due places more at large. Moreouer by suche particions, besides the comoditie of the grasse and haye that shall be preserued thereby, for winter store, the grounde it selfe being parhaps before very ample, waste, and wilde, and thereby enclininge the Cattell to be of lyke nature, shalbe brought to a more formality, and so the beastes themselues shall be made the more domesticall, and familyar.

And the rather yf they be handeled and made tame in their youth, whereof we shall talke hereafter more at large. Notwithstanding I would not haue the ground so straitened with particions, but so as they maye haue sufficyent scope to run & trauell to & fro therin for their lyuing. For as to much labour, leanes, & pouerty, depryueth them of lust to engẽder, euen so ouermuch rest & fatnes, letteth conception, & causeth a daungerous folyng. Wherefore I would wyshe the Mares to be kepte in a meane estate vntill they haue foled, and then to be best fedde, to the intent that they may haue aboundance of mylke in their dugges, whiche matter shalbe talked of hereafter more at full in his proper place. But now to appoynt howe many acres of ground will serue a mare and her offspringe vntill they are mete to be broken: I thinke it not needfull, sith the goodnesse of the ground must rule that matter, and partlye the discrecion of the owner, who by experiens ought to knowe his owne ground beste, for all groundes be not of like fertilitye. Neither do I thinke that any owner is so ignorannt, but that he knoweth an Horse or a Mare to be a greater feader then any other kinde of Cattell, and therfore had nede to haue greater allowance. Yet consideringe that the Horse biteth nerer the ground then any other Cattell (the shepe, and the Cony onlye excepted) whereby he gathereth more foode out of one acre of ground, then any other beast can do almost out of an acre and a halfe: We thinkes that a thirde parte more then wyll serue a Cowe and her offspringe, shoulde also feede a Mare and her offspringe, so that they be well prouided for in winter season. For at hard meate they be to hard

for all

for all other Cattell, by reason they haue sharper teth, and do bothe Chowe, and also swalowe downe their meate with more spede. And therefore of winter meate they had nede to haue double allowaunce. And suche wynter meate for Mares and Coltes wolde bee good sweete hay, and wel stacked vp in the dryeste & warmest places of those grounds where as they should be wintered. Nyghe vnto which stackes would be built howses mete to harber as well the Mares with theyr foles as the weanlynges, (but seuerally by theim selues) in time of snowe and suche like stormy and colde weather, or elles to auoyde that coste and charge of buildynge, the hay maye be layde vpon houelles made with great forked postes and stronge rafters, in suche sorte as the cattell maye bothe stande, and lye drye vnderneath the same, wythin whych Houelles maye be placed eyther standynge or hangynge rackes at suche heyghte, as the foles together wyth their dames may reache vnto the haye, that shall be caste therein. And if suche Houelles were enclosed with hyghe hedge or hurdle, they should be so muche the warmer, and defende the Cattell the better from the colde wynde. Nygh vnto whyche Houelles, or howses, lette there be one pasture alwayes kepte vntowched, & not fedde on vntyll Shrowetide, betwyxte the whych tyme and the myddest of May is alwaies most daunger of hunger bayne. Thus hauing talkd sufficientlye as towchyng the quantitie and deuison of the grounde, let vs also speake somewhat of the qualitye thereof. The qualitye chiefflye consisteth in foure poyntes. The fyrst is to haue plenty of shorte and sweete grasse for common feade, and also of longe

and rancke grasse as well for haye, as for the Mares that geue sucke. The seconde is to lacke no good water and freshe sprynges. The thyrde to haue drye layer. The fourthe to haue shade and shelter, eyther of trees or of highe bushes, to defende the Sonne, the wynde, and stormye weather. And the dryer, the harder vnder foote, and the hygher that such grounde is, the better, yea, and it is as very nedefull that some part thereof myghte be craggye and stonnye, (so as it be not barren of grasse) and specially for the Coltes to ronne in when they be weaned from their dãmes. For to trauel to, and fro, in suche groundes for their liuynge, shal make them to haue stronge legges, and harde houes.

By thys meanes you maye percepue that neyther rancke, marrysshe, colde, or wette groundes be mete for the purpose, for suche kyndes of groundes, partely for lacke of swete, and fyne foode, the grasse therof being rancke, sower, and waterisshe, and partly for lacke of dry layer, most cõmonly, do bryng forth no other but slowe, heauy, dulle, grosse hedded, syde bellied, and gouty legged Jades. And therefore I woulde wysshe hym that would haue a good race, to foresee that hys ground be endowed with suche properties as are before rehersed.

¶ Of the diuers kyndes of Horses and Mares according to the countreies from whence they come, & which be best. Cap. ii.

I Meane not here to treate of all the kyndes of Horses, that be in the world, for that were an infynite worcke, and neuer attempted heretofore by any writer that I could rede. For as Oppianus sayeth,

sayeth, there be as manye kyndes of Horses, as there be diuers countreys and nations. And to say the truth it wolde be to small purpose. For what wolde it auaile you to heare (onles it were for noueltyes sake) that in some contreys there be horses no bigger then Rãmes, and in some Countreis horses be made like Unicornes, in some Country agayne Mares to conceyue with the westerne wynde, without the helpe of any Stallion, whose Coltes do not liue aboue three yeares. Wherefore leauing all such straunge kindes aparte, I will onlye talke of the moste worthye, and specially of suche as haue bene knowne of late dayes by good experience, to prosper verye well in this lande, and be not vnknowen to the most part of the Jentelmen of this Realme, whi che kindes be these here folowing. The Turke, The Barbarian, the Sardynian, the Napolitan, the Jennet of Spaine, the Hungarian, the high Almaine, the Frizeland Horse, the Flanders Horse, and the Irysche Hobby. Of which kindes, whilest I speake, I must nedes also make some mention of the beste kyndes that haue bene either in Asia, Affricke, or Europe, from whence these be discended, though parhaps more bastardly then I would wishe, and all for lacke of that industry and diligence which hath bene vsed by our forefathers in tymes past in bredinge them, in somuche as we can assure our selues in this our age of no certayne race, yea it sufficeth now to beleue the seller that saith, the horse is of such a contrey, or race, and therwith be somewhat fayre to the eye, and then al is good inough, though he be neuer so starke a Jade.

Of

Of the Turkye Horse.

BUt now beginning first with the Turke, be cause he cometh farthest of, me thynketh it were not amisse to cõsydre that as Turky it selfe is of longe tyme synce, become a greate Empyre extending very far into al the thre parts of the worlde abouesaid, comprehendyng diuers kyngdomes and countries, and yet altogyther, is cõmonly called by the name of Turky: Euen so, the horses that come from any of the Turks dominions, or frontiers of his nexte neighbours, be called Turky horses, & therfore I think it good here to declare vnto you the opiniõs of the olde writers, touching the races that haue ben in those cõtries, now subiect to the great Turke, or therabout, to lerne therby (yf it may be,) whether those that we call Turkye horses, be so in dede or not, & of whiche of those races, they seme moste lykely to discende. And fyrste we wyll begyn with the chiefe races of Asia, whiche be the Parthians, the Medes, the Armenians, the Cappadocians, and many others. The Parthians, saith Absirtus, be great of stature, bolde, couragious, and sure of footemanshyp. Vegetius also sayth, ỹ they be very wel rained, and haue an easie ambling pase. But the Medes do excell them in comlynesse of shape. The Armenians and Capadocians, do discend of the Parthians, and be lyke them in all poincts: sauyng that they are somwhat more heuy headed. The horses of Greece, as Absirtus sayth, haue good legges, great bodies, comely heades and be of an highe stature, and very wel made forward, but not backward, bycause they are pyn buttocked, not-

withstan-

withstandynge they be verye swifte, and of a bold courage. But of all the races in Greece, both the horses and Mares of Thessalia, for their bewtie, bygnes, bountie, and courage, of all Authors are moste celebrated. For which cause Xerxes at his comyng in to Greece made a runninge of Horses in Chariottes to be proclaimed only in Thessalia, because he woulde haue his owne horses to runne wyth the beste Horses in Greece. Julius Cesar also, beinge Dictatour of Rome, knowinge the courage of these Horses, was the first that ordeined thē as a spectacle before the people to syghte wyth wylde bulles, & to kil them. The Pelleians and Magnesians are also verye well commended. The Pelleians be so named of a towne in Thessalia called Pella. And the Magnesians of Magnesia, a regiou of Macidonia nert adioyninge to Thessalia. The Epirotes be froward & disobedient to the bit, notwithstanding Paulus Iouius makinge mencion of the laste greate warres which the Uenetians had, not onlye with the Turkes, but also in a maner with all Chrystendome, geueth the Epirotes great prayse for their swiftnesse and nimblenesse. In so much as the Uenetians (as he saith) esteemed their horses more, and waged their riders better thē any other horsemen that serued them at that time. But the Horses of Tracia which is nowe the chefest part of Turky in the which Constantinople the head citie and seat of the great Turke standeth, be accompted worse then all the reste. For the most parte of the writers do discrye them after thys sort. The Thracians be foule and euill fashioned, hauing rough bodyes, great shoulders, and risinge backes lyke vnto Camelles, croked legges,

Alexanders first place

and go roulinge and vnseemely, as well in their pace as runninge. Notwithstandinge, the Horses that I haue sene come from Turkie as well into Italy as hither in to Englande, be indifferent fayre to the eie, though not very great nor strongly made, yet very light and swyfte in their running and of gret courage, and therfore seme to discende of the Grecian race, before dyscribed by Absirtus, But their traueylinge pace is neyther Amble, Racke, nor Trotte, but a certayne kinde of easy trayne. Albeit for the most parte they be euill mouthed, by reason that in Turky they be neuer ridden (as I haue lerned) vntil they be x. or xii. yere olde, wherby they ware so hedde stronge, as they be not easely brought to make a good stoppe. yea, if when you will ronne him at hys setting forth, you say but this worde (Brave) vnto him he will neuer leaue runninge so longe as his breath wil serue him, shonnynge nothinge that shall stande in hys way, if he may goe ouer the same by any meanes possible, for they be of nature verye courageous, and wil do more by gentle meanes then by stripes or great threatninges, for that maketh them more desperate, and bringeth them cleane out of order. Thus muche of the Turke.

¶ Of the Horse of Barbary.

THe Barbaryan is a horse that commes out of Barbaria a Country in Affrycke, conteinyng vnder it the two Regions of Mauritania, lyng agaynst Spaine, whereof the one is called Mauritania Tingitana. And the other is called Mauritania Cesarienſis. It conteyneth also the countrey of Numidia

Numidia, and that part which is called Affrica Minor, that is to say, the lesser Affricke, so that Barbaria stretcheth very far. And there be many good Races within the same, & in the frontiers of the regions there about, as the Mauritanians, the Libians, Cireneyans, the Numidians, and many others. The Mauritanians be much cõmended of the writers, not only for their good shape and swiftnes in runninge, but also for that they be excellently well breathed, & therby are bothe able to mayntayne a very longe cariere, and also to abyde anye kind of laboure & trauayle, yea and beside that they will abide the sight and rorynge of a Lion, wherof there is greate store and plentye in that countrey. Nexte vnto these are the Libians, which be of like goodnes and of lyke shape, sauinge that the Libians be stronger made, longer bodied, thicker ribbed, & broder brested, & of all Horses, as Aelianus sayth, they do requyre lesse tending and keping. For their maysters in that countrey when they trauaile by the way, do neither wipe their legges, courry them, nor litter them, nor pare their houes, & as sone as their iourney is done they tourne them forth to the pasture, and make no more a do. Againe the Mares of this kind or race, as the auctours write, be so deligh ted with Musicke, as the herdeman or keper, with the sounde of a pipe: may leade them whither he wyll hym selfe. The Cireneians (as Absirtus sayeth) be greate of stature, and haue small & gaunte bellies, they be swyft in running and sure of fotemanship, and in labour good at length, for which causes they were much vsed in the old time to runne for wagers in Chariottes. But those horses that we cõmonly call Barbarians, doe come out

of the kyng of Tunnys lande, out of Massilia and Numidia, which for the moste parte be but little horses, but therewith verye swifte and able to make a verye longe Cariere, whiche is the cause why we esteme theym so muche. And it should seeme by Vigetius, that this race came firste from Spayne: who affirmeth theym to be very swyfte in runnynge, and meete for the saddle. Thus I ende with the races of Barbary.

¶ Of the Horses of Sardygnia and Corsica.

THE Horses that come out of the Isles of Sardignia and Corsica, as Volateranus sayth, haue short bodies, and be very bold and courageous, & vnquyet in theyr pace, for they be of so fierse and whote colericke complexion: and therwith so muche vsed to running in their country, as they wil stand styl on no ground. And therefore this kinde of horse requirith a discrete and patient Ryder, who must not be ouer hasty in correctyng hym, for feare of marrying hym all togethe.

¶ Of the Courser of Naples.

THE Napolitan which we commonly cal a Courser of Naples, is a trim horse, beyng both comely and strongly made, and of so much goodnes, of so ientle a nature, and of so high a courage as any horse is, of what coutry so euer he be. He is easely knowen frō all other horses, by his no lesse cleane, then stronge

stronge makinge, his lymmes are so well proportioned in euery point, and partly by his portlynes in his gate, but chiefly by his long slender heade, the neather parte whereof, that is to say from the eyes downewarde, for the most part is also somewhat bending lyke a haukes beake, whiche maketh hym to Reyne with the better grace, and yet the Italians do both write and say, that these Coursers be nothing so strong now as they haue bene in times past, partly parhaps for that like industry of late daies hath not bene vsed in breding them, as in tymes past, and partly for that nature doth decay euerye day more and more, aswell in man as in beast. But howe so euer they be, in myne opinion, their Gentle nature and docility, their comelye shappe, their strength, their Courage, their sure footemanshippe, their well reynyng, their loftye pace, their cleane trotting, theyr stronge galloppyng, and theyr swift running well considered (all whiche thynges they haue in maner by nature) they excel numbers of other races, euen so farre as the faire greyhoundes the foule mastiffe Curres.

Of the Jennet of Spayne.

THe Jennet of Spaine is finely made both head, body, and legges, and verye seemely to the eye, sauinge that his buttockes bee somewhat slender, and for his fine making lightnes and swiftnes withall, he is very much esteemed, and especially of noble men, as Camerarius sayth, which Oppianus also affirmeth, saying: that the Jennet in swiftnes passeth the Parthyans and all other

other Horſes what ſoeuer they be, euen ſo farre as the Egle excedeth al the birdes in the aire, and as the Dolphin palleth all the fiſhes in the ſea, but therewith he ſayeth that they be but ſmal of ſtature, of ſmal ſtrength and of ſmal courage, al which thinges ſeme to agre very well with thoſe Jennets that be brought hyther into England, onleſſe it be the laſt poynt. For I haue heard ſome of the Spaniards to ſet ſuch praiſe on their Jennets corage, as they haue not letted to report that they haue caried their ryders out of the field, I can not tell how many miles, after ẏ the Jennettes thẽ ſelues haue ben ſhotte cleane through the bodies wyth harquebuſſhes. Which repoꝛte I haue harde to be true by diuers of our owne Souldiours, whych if it be true in dede, it doth the better counteruaile their ſmall ſtature and litle ſtrength, which is manifeſte to al mennes eyes that do beholde them, and yet Abſirtus ſemeth to be of a cõtrary opinion: who writeth of them in this ſoꝛte. The hoꝛſes of Spaine (ſayth he) be great of ſtature, hauing fine heades, and righte vp bodies, verye wel compacte together in all partes, ſaupnge that their buttockes be ſomewhat to ſlender. They be ſtrong & able to endure great laboure, and commonly they be neyther to fat noꝛ yet to leane, & in their trauayle they nede not to be quickened wyth the ſpurre, and yet they be nothinge mete to runne oꝛ to paſſe a cariere, becauſe ther houes be not good. And as from their Foleage vnto their full age, they be very obedient and tractable, ſo from thẽce forth they waxe to be curſte and frowarde. All whyche thinges parhappes myght be truly ſayde of the Spanyſhe hoꝛſe, in Abſirtus time, foꝛ the moſt parte of his ſayings

are verifi-

are vexed by good experience euen in these our daies, onlesse it be as touchinge hys greatnesse of stature and strength, which maye be decayed sence his tyme. And perhappes those horses whereof he writeth were of a nother climate then ours, which may cause much alteratiō, both in stature and strength. For Albertus saith, that those Horses whiche are bred betwixt the thirde clyme, and the ende of the sixt, are alwayes of greatest stature, & specially those that are bred in Spayne. Not withstanding those that be bred in the seuenth climate which is more towardes ỹ North, though they be not fully so great, yet they be stronger and also will endure much more laboure. The pace of the Jennet is neyther trotte nor amble, but a comelye kinde of goyng like the Turke. Thus much of the Jennet.

¶ Of the Hungaryan.

The Hungarian by Vegetius is described thus, the Hungarian saith he, hath a great & hoked heade, and his eyes stand almost without his head, his nosetrilles are narrow, and his Jawes brode, his necke is long and rough, with a mane hanging downe beneth hys knees, he hath a large bulke, a right backe, a longe bushe taile, his legges be strong, his pastournes smal, & his houes ful and brode, his guttes are hollow, and al his body is full of empty corners, his buttockes are not halfe fylled wyth fatte, neither doe the brawnes or hys muscles appeare, of stature he is more in length then height, and therewith somewhat side bellyed, his bones are also great, he is rather leane then fatte, whiche leanesse

leanesse is so answerable to the other partes of his bodye, as the due proportion obserued in hys beforemytye maketh the same to be a bewtye. And as towching his inward disposition, he is as Vigetius sayeth, both temperate and wyse, and able to abyde great labour, colde and hunger, and therfore verye mete for the warre. Camerarius also sayth, that they be very swifte, and yf they be prouoked by some iniurye, they will both byte and stryke, otherwise not. Their pace is a hard trotte.

Of the Almayne Horse.

THe Almaine is cõmonly a great horse, & thoughe not finely, yet very strõgly made, & therfore more meete for the shocke then to passe a cariere, or to make a swyfte manege, because they be very grosse and heuy, yet by industry thei are made lighter behind then before, for their riders do vse in their maneging to make them to turne alwayes with their hinder partes, and not with their fore partes: like Jacke anapes, when he is made to come ouer the cheyne, whereby they keepe their Horses heade alwayes vpon the ennemye. The disposition of this horse (his heuy moulde considered) is not euyll, for he is very tractable and will labour indifferently well by the waye, but his pace for the moste part is a very harde trotte.

Of the Flanders Horse.

THe Flaunders horse in his shape, disposition, and pace, differeth in a maner nothinge from the Almayne horse: saning that for the most parte he is

of a

of a greater stature and more puissant. The Mares also of Flaunders be of a great stature, stronge, longe, large, fayre and fruytefull, and besydes that, wyll endure great labour, as is wel sene, for that the fleminges do vse none other drawght, but with those Mares in their wagons, in the whiche I haue sene twoo or three Mares to go lyghtly away with suche a burthen, as is almoste vncredible.

¶ Of the Fryzeland Horse.

THe Fryzelande Horse is no very great Horse, but rather of a meane stature, beinge therewith strong and wel compacte together, and hath verye good legges. And Vigetius sayth that the Fryzelande horses be very swyfte in runnyng, and able to mainteyne a longe course. And in dede I haue sene of them my selfe that woulde make a good cariere, and manege very wel, and also do the Corsetti so truely as any Jennet of Spayne. But then the dysposition of this horse is so deuelish, so stubborne, and so froward, as onles the Ryder which first breaketh hym be very bolde, and therwith circumspect to correct him in tyme, he shall neuer bringe him to anye good, for he will do nothinge without strypes, whiche also beinge geuen out of tyme, will make hym so restiefe, that neyther fayre meanes nor foule meanes, wyl euer wynne hym from that vyce agayne. The pace of this horse is a good comely trotte.

¶ Of the Sweathland Horse.

THe Sweacian or Sweathland horse, so farre as I can coniecture, by those that the kyng his Imbassadours haue of late dayes brought with the into this Realme, whereof I am sure there be dyuers here yet remainyng, is no great or strong Horse, but of a meane stature and strength, and I feare me scante well condicioned. And I am induced to thinke so the rather, for that they be moste commonlye pyed, and of twoo sundrye colours: or their legges at the least be all white, euē vp to the belly, their bodies being of another colour, which as Gryson sayth, is a sygne of small force: al be it the ientilmen in that countrey delight muche to haue their Horses of dyuers coloures, & to weare as it were diuerse lyuereis. Besydes that, many of them be wal eyed, which is also a token of a shrewed and a stubburne disposition. Notwithstandinge I haue seene of them with good handling, to make an indifferent good manege, wherby I take them to be docible, and also because they come out of a colde Countrey, I beleue they will abyde much hardnelle.

¶ Of the Irysche Hobby.

THe Irysche Hobby is a prety fyne horse, hauinge a good head, and a body indeferently wel proporcioned, sauing that many of them be slender & pin bottocked, they be tender mouthed, nimble, light, pleasaunt, & apte to be taught, and for the most part thei be amblers, & therfore very mete for the saddle, & to trauel by the way, yea and the Irysche men both with dartes & with lyght speares, do vse to skyrmishe with them in the fielde. And many of them do proue to that vse very well,

well, by meanes they be so lyght and swyfte, notwythstanding I take theym to be very neashe and tender to keepe, and also to be somewhat skyttishe and fearefull, partlye parhaps by nature, and partlie for lacke of good breakinge at the first.

A comparison of the races aboue rehersed as towching the Clymates vnder which they be bred, and which of theym wyll thryue best here in England, and are most mete to serue every breders sundry purpose and intent. Cap. iii.

HYtherto we haue talked of dyuers kyndes of Horses and Mares, and therwith declared to you their shapes, natures, and disposition. Now it resteth that we briefly compare these kyndes together, that we maye not onely knowe those that be most meete to be bredde wythin thys Realme in generall, but also that the desyre and intent of euery breader in perticular may be satisfyed. For some man perchaunce woulde haue a brede of great trottinge horses mete for the warr, and to serue in the field. Some other againe woulde haue a brede of ambling horses of a meane stature, for to Journey and to trauayle by the way. Some againe would haue perhaps a race of swift runners to runne for wagers, or to galloppe the bucke, or to serue for such lyke exercises of pleasure. But the plaine countryman would perchaunce haue a breede onelye for draughte or burden. And fyrst you shall vnderstande that generallye those horses and Mares will thryue best in this Realme that be bredde vnder a clymate, beynge of the lyke temperature, that this our clyme is, or at the leaste not muche differynge

from the same. Wherefore naturallye me thinkes, the Turke, the Jennet of Spaine, the Barbaryan, and the Sardignian, being bred in far whotter countryes then this is, shoulde not be able to endure the colde of thys Country: nor to lyke here so well as there, from whence they come. For though I haue sene them to brede here, and their offspryng to growe to a perfect stature, and to be like in shape to theyr Syres and Dammes, yet for the most part they be but neashe and tender, and do require more attendaunce and fine keping then others do. And yet I wyll not denye, but that in contynuance of tyme theyr natures may be altered, and such tendernes may weare away well ynough, and specially those that come out of Islande, soner then thothers, because they are more able to endure both heate and colde, and theyr nature doth agree the better with this Countrey, beyng also an Islande. The Napolitan although he be bredde vnder a hoter climate then ours is, yet that Region is very temperate of it selfe: and therwith so fruitfull as it is called the gardeyn or paradise of Italy, and the Horses there bred be of so strong and healthful complexion, as they will not quayle whersoeuer they goe, and that they prosper so well here in this land, as in anye other forayne Country: not only the Queenes Maiesties race, but also other mens races, and specialy Sir Nicholas Arnoldes race doth wel testify, from whence I haue sene so faire coltes to come, and to proue so wel in their doinges as euer I sawe in the Realme of Naples, who for his industry and diligence shewed in that behalfe, as he is worthye to be muche commended and praysed, so I wishe that all Jentlemen hauing abilitye woulde

would do the lyke: So should they neyther lacke good Horses to serue their countrey in tyme of neade, nor yet to serue them selues in theyr owne affayres. Nowe as touchinge the rest of the races before mentioned, as the Hungarian, the high Almaine, the Flaunders horse, the Fryzeland Horse, and the Irishe Hobbye. Dayly experyence teacheth that they do proue verye well here, because either they come out of colder countreis then this is, or at the least not out of much whoter: yea and some of them do proue better here then at home, and specially such as come from lower grasse and wet groundes, as the Flaunders horse and mare, both which do ware here to be fyner limmed, cleaner made, and therewyth lighter and more nymble, then they be at home. But nowe to aunswere the diuers intentes of the readers, I would wishe hym that seketh to haue a race of good Horses, mete to serue in the fielde, to gette a Napolitan Stallion if it be possible, if not, let hym take the hyghe Almayne, the Hungarian, the Flaunders or the Fryzeland horse: so that he be of a conuenient stature, wel proporcioned, and mete for the porpose. What thynges are requisite in a Stallion shalbe declared hereafter in hys place, & let those Mares that shalbe put to suche stallyons be of an hygh stature, strongly made, large & fayre, and haue a trotting pace, as the mares of Flaunders & some of our own Mares be, for it is not mete for diuers respects that horses of seruice should amble. But if any man seke to haue a race of fyne amblinge Horses, to traaile by the way: then I would wishe his stallio eyther to be a fayre Jennet of Spayne, or at the least a bastard Jennet, or els a faire Irish ambling Hobby, & the mare

to be also eyther a bastarde Jennet, bredde here within this realme, hauing an amblyng pace, or els some other of oure amblynge Mares, so that she be fayre and well proporcioned. And if any man desyre to haue swyft runners, let hym chouse a Horse of Barbary, or a Turke to be his stallion, and let the Mares which he shal put vnto hym be lyke of stature, and making vnto hym so nigh as may be: for moste commonlye such Syre and Dame, such Colte. And syth all wryters do so much prayse the Horse of Barbary, not only for his swiftnes in running, but also for his hardnesse, in that he neadeth small attendaunce and kepinge, and wyll not surfet vpon euery lytle sweate or colde, as some others do: He therefore that delyghteth in huntyng and hawkyng, had nede as me thinkes, to chouse this Horse aboue al others to be his Stallion, to the intent he may haue such Coltes of hym as wyll be able to continue in such extreme exercyses, as to gallop the bucke, or to folowe a longe winged Hauke. Eyther of whiche exercyses, killeth yerely in thys Realme many a good gueldyng. But now to content the Countryman hys desire, which seketh to brede horses for draught or burthen, where shoulde I wyshe him to prouide him selfe of Mares and Stallions, better then here in England, whereas he may easely fynde a number of strong Jades, more mete for that purpose then for the saddle, and all for lacke of good order of breding, which if it might be ones obserued in this realme I beleue there wolde be so good and so faire horses bred here, as in any place in Christendome. But as for the Carte horse, so that he be great of stature, depe rybbed, side bellied, and haue stronge legges and good houes: &

therewith

therewith wyll stoupe to his worke, and lay sure holde on the grounde with his feete, and stoutelye pull at a pinch, it maketh no matter howe foule or euil fauoured he be. Notwithstanding I haue knowen some Carriars that go with Cartes, to be so exquisite in their choise of horses, as onles thei had ben as comely to ỹ eie as good in their worke they would not buy them, in somuch as I haue sene sometyme drawing in their Cartes better proporcioned horses then I haue knowen to be fynelye kept in stables, as iewels for the saddle. The horse that is mete for the Carte, may serue also for the burthen, because he is strong and able to beare much, but the packman requireth besydes strength, three other thinges in his horse. First, that he be a good traueiler, secondlye, that his hooses bee so good as he nede not to bee often shod, thirdlye that he be no vnreasonable feader, for the auoyding of exspences, for whiche cause I thinke oure packemen here in England, do most commonly go with gueldings, which lacking ỹ feruẽt heat that stoned horses haue, cannot consume so much meate as they do, but chiefly perhaps because the gueldings are more easy to rule by the waye then horses. Thus hauing sufficiently talked of diuers kindes of Horses and Mares, and whiche be meetest for this Realme, aswell in generall, as to serue diuers vses in perticuler, I will nowe shewe you how to chouse a stallion or mare mete for brede.

Howe to chouse Stallyons and Mares mete for generation, and of what age they ought to be. Also howe to know their ages aswell by their teth as other wise. Cap. iiii.

Syth

Syth it is naturally geuen to euery beast for the moste parte to engender hys lyke, aswell in condicions as in shape of body, it is very requysite therefore for him that wold haue a good race, to be very circumspect in chosing the first Stallions and Mares, from whom he woulde haue his race to discend, to the intent he maye reape therof both pleasure and profit, & not bestow his cost & labour in vayne. In chousing then a stallyon, thre thinges (as me thinkes are chiefly to be considered) that is, his bewtye, his goodnes, and his age. And fyrste as towching his bewtye, yt consisteth onely in colour and shape, of which two thinges because I haue already according to Grysons opinion sufficientlye treated in the booke of the arte of Rydinge, I shall not nede therefore nowe to trouble you with many wordes, but onelye to make as it were a briefe resital of the same. Of al colors then these be the best, the browne bay, the dapple gray, the bright bay, the rone, the white lyard, the pure black with a whyte starre in his foreheade. And in any wyse let the Stallion be al of one colour, and that very cleare and bright, and not pyed, or of diuers colours, albeit to haue some white or blacke marke in place conuenient, is very bewtifull, as to haue a white starre in his forehead, or the outermost partes of his body blacke, as the tippes of his eares, his mayne, or his tayle, or els some of his feete to be white, accordinge as his colour doeth most properly require, of which things we haue talked at large in the booke of ridyng. Now as towching hys shape it woulde be in this sort, let him haue a short and slender heade, a wyde mouth, & wyde nosethrels, slender

Jawes

der Jawes, great eyes and blacke, boulting outwarde and not hollow inwarde, shorte eares and sharpe poynted like a mouse, a necke rather long then shorte, greate towardes his breast, slender towardes his heade, the creast wherof would be rysyng in the middes, and therwith neither to thick nor to thin, hauing a crispe main, and hanging naturally on the ryght syde, a brode brest, and full of apparaunt muscles or brawnes of flesche, also brode shoulders, a large bulke, a gaunt belly, a straight and sharpe poynted wythers, a short and playne backe, great round buttockes, a long and bushye tayle, a yard and stones of a meane syse, one stone not hanging sider then another, but trussed vppe rounde together, large thighes, and long hawnches behynd, stronge legges, & great iointes, aswell before as behind, short pastournes with longe fewterlockes, also rounde, smouth, blacke, harde, hollow, and sounding houes: and finally let hys whole body together, haue roundenes according to his length, and be in all pointes so well proportioned, as he may seme both high of stature, stronge of lym, and also liuelye to the eye. Thus much of his shape, and now of his goodnes. Hys goodnes may be partly naturall, and partly artificiall, neither of which can be throughly knowen but by his doynges. His naturall goodnesse chiefly consisteth in his healthfulnes of body, in aboundaunce of good seade, in his strength, agilitie, swiftnes, good disposition, and aptenes to be taught, yea and in his pace, galloppinge, runninge, bearinge of his heade and eares, all which thinges may be also much holpen by art. But to reyne well, to beare his heade steaddely, to be ready of tourne, and lyght of stoppe, to handle his

feete orderlye, to kepe his grounde, and to obey his Riders will at all assayes: proceadeth rather of art then of nature, which artificiall goodnes, whether he hath or not, the booke of rydinge doth playnely teach you how to iudge. Albeit for a Stallion whiche should chiefly serue to couer Mares, such artificiall goodnes is not so materiall as the naturall good thinges before mentioned, amongest the which there is one chiefe point, and yet cannot perfectly be knowen, onles you might se him to couer a Mare, & that is to wete, whether his seade be good or not, which at that time maye verye well bee knowen in this sort. Take of it betwixte your thombe and your finger, or in a locke of woll, and if in your fealing or towsyng of the woll it semeth to be fyne, faste, and slymye, it is good, but if it be ouer lyquyd or waterishe, it is naught, and if the horse be slowe in couering, or doth it not with a liuely spirite and courage, or hath but one stone, or gret wartes growing on his stones, or haue naturally any whyte specke in any of his eyes, he is not mete to be a Stallion, for all the Coltes that he shall begette will haue the lyke defectes. Wherefore so nigh as you can let your Stallion be without al faults Now as towching the age of the Stallion, althoughe most men in these oure dayes make no matter thereof: because he may get foles vntill he be .xx. or .xxx. yeares olde, yea and so long as he lyueth, so that he be holpen, and therefore in moste places of this Realme they appoynt no horses to that vse but suche as be verye olde, and therwith parhaps both lame and blynde. Yet the men in the olde time made a great matter thereof, and allowed no Stallion to be very good, but from .v. yeres

to xiiii. affirming that as one perfect thing doth bryng forth another perfect, so that which is vnperfect bringeth forth his lyke. And as a Horse is accompted vnperfect vntil he be .v. yeares old, for that his iointes before that tyme be not throughly knitte, neyther is he growen to his full strength, so at .xiiii yeares he beginneth againe to ware vnperfect, because that nature in hym by that tyme is sore decaied, insomuch as decrepit age and death it selfe by nature doth then shortely folowe after. Albeit I will not denye, but that good keppynge and a stronge complexion may cause one horse to continue in lust and courage much longer then a nother. For Albertus writeth that he knewe a Souldiour, which serued in the fielde on a horse that was .lxx. yeare olde, and yet was compted an able horse. Niphus also saieth that the Emperour Ferdynandus the fyrst, had in hys stable a horse that was .lxx yeares old. And I my selfe haue sene stallions that haue ben .xx. yeares old and aboue, that haue gotten bere fayre Coltes to the eye. And yet I beleue not lyke in perfection to those that the same Stallion might haue gotten in his more lustye age, for the Coltes of olde stallions for the moste parte, be dull and slowe, and haue tender hoofes, and are more subiecte to diseases and surfeites then others. Wherefore I would wishe al you that would haue a perfecte race, not to admitte any horse to be your Stallion, that is as I sayd before, vnder .v. or muche aboue .xiiii. onles he be verye lustye and stronge, and therewith be verie hayle of body and lym. And whilst I talke here of the horses age, it is mete I shew you also how to know the same. Some seke to knowe a horses age in this sorte, they pull hys

skynne with their handes from his flesshe, holding it so a pretye while together, and then let it go againe, marking whether the skinne retourneth imediately to hys place or not, without leauinge anye sygne or wrinkle where it was touched, for then they iudge the horse to be yong. But if the skynne will not fall downe quickly agayne of his owne accord, they take hym to be old, and to lacke that naturall heate and warme bloude, which shoulde nourishe his outwarde partes. But moste men vse to iudge a Horses age by hys teeth, takinge ỹ to be the most certaine way of knowledge, specially vntyll he be full seuen yeares olde and vpwarde, for euerye Horse when he is two yeares olde, doth caste his two former teeth, aswel aboue as beneath: and euery yeare after vntill he be vi. yeares olde he fayleth not to caste other .ii. in like maner. Then in the sixte yeare, those which he first cast be closed, but in the seuenth yeare all his teeth be full closed, so as the marke goeth cleane out, wherby a man shoulde iudge his age. Notwithstanding after the Horse beginneth to enter into olde age, his temples will ware hollowe, and the heare of his browes hoare and whyte, his teeth also wilbe greater and thicker in substaunce, fowler in colour, and one standinge further out, or higher then another, which they do not so longe as the horse is yong, but stand euē and round together. Thus much of the Stallion. Now let vs speake somewhat of the Mare, which would be also good in her doynges bewtifull and yong. For as Absirtus sayeth, the Mare that should be for brede, would be of a cōely stature, and brode set, aswell behynde as before, and well knitte together, hauing a slender heade, and a large bo-

dye, so

dy, so as she may be sightly to the eye, and not to be les then three yeres old, nor much more then ten. Notwithstãding some wryte þ it maketh no matter though she be couered and do conceyue imediatly after that she be two yeares old and vpward, so that she be ful three yeares old at her foling. For the Female kind in al beasts, as they be colder of nature, so they come soner to their perfection then the Male kinde, and likewise decaye soner, wherfore some holde opinion, that their foling after .x. yeres of age is vnprofitable, affirming such coltes to be naturally dull & slowe, albeit I haue sene Mares of .xx. yeares olde and aboue, that haue brought forthe very faire and liuely Coltes to the eye. yea Aristole sayeth that a Mare may beare foles all her lyfe longe. And also that she doeth liue longer then a Horse, who as he sayeth, may liue vntill he be .xxiiii. but the Mare maye liue till she be .xl. Affirming her to be enclined to the act of generation asmuche as anye beast liuinge. Notwithstanding I woulde wishe you to kepe for brede no mare that is much aboue ten yeares, onles you haue good experience of her Coltes, and be well assured of her continuance in courage and lustines. And in anye wyse lette your breding Mares whiche you keepe for studdes bee made so tame and domestical as may be, so that you not onely easely driue them, and remoue them from place to place, but repe some comodity of their worke: whiche if it be moderate, it can not hurt their teaming, whereas if they shoulde be wilde, they would be very combersous to kepe, yea and manye tymes through their rashnesse destroy the foles in their bellyes; neyther can you bring them to the horse, nor take their foles from them, when

you wold weane them without great trouble. At what age it is best to taine them we shall shewe you hereafter in his proper place.

¶ At what tyme of the yere it is best for Horses and Mares to engender, and in what sorte they ought to be put together: And howe to knowe when a Mare desireth the Horse. Also howe many Mares one Stallion is able to couer in one yere. Fynally when the stallions shulde be remoued from them. Cap. v.

After that we haue taught you howe to chouse both Stallion and Mare mete for brede, it is requisite that we shew you now in what time of the yeare it is best to put them together, that they maye engender, and what order is to be obserued therin. Most writers do affirme that the best tyme is the spring, or as Palladius sayth, from the .xxii. of Marche, vntill the .xxii. of June. Because the mare goinge a full yeare, or at the least eleuen monethes, and .x. daies shal by this meanes fole in suche tyme of the yeare as grasse is most plenteful, whereby she shall haue the more aboundaunce of milke, to feade her fole, and the ayre shalbe so temperate as the fole shall neither be perched with the hotte sonne, nor pinched with cold weather. But forasmuche as our mares for the most part here in England go not with fole aboue eleuen monethes, and also for that the coldenesse of the Countrey will not suffer the grasse to spring & growe so sone here as in Italy, or such like hot countreys. I would not wythe the mares to be couered before the beginnyng of May, so shal the foles fal in Aprill

pull, before whiche Moneth, there groweth but lyttle gralle. Againe the Mares of them selues before May will haue little luste to the horse, for lacke of full bitter and warme weather, which should engender lust. And yet as I saide before, according to Aristotle, there is no kinde of beast more enclyned to that act then the horse and mare, insomuch as if they maye not be suffered to engender when lust prouoketh them, they will runne mad. It is easye to know when they lust, by their inordinate runnyng and flingyng here and there, and that as some wryte, not towardes the Easte or West, but most commonly towardes the south or north, settynge the tayle bolt vpright. Againe one mare wil wooe another, and they will pysse often. The tyme then of the yere mete for generation, being come, it is requisite that these two beastes be put together which you may do diuerse maner of waies. The first and best way, and specially for him that hath many Mares and stallions, is to put euery one of his Stallions by him selfe (being before rested and well fedde for the purpose) into a seueral pasture, full of gralle and well fenced with high pale or raile, as I sayde before in the firste Chapter, in whiche pastures woulde be eyther some good shade, and shealter to defende them from the sonne and rayne, or els some house or houel made of purpose, and so to lette them runne there from the beginning of May vntil the middest of June, during which time you may turne to euery one of those Stallions so many Mares as he is well able to couer, which hability is to be measured by his youth, strength, & lustines. For if he be yonge & lusty he may couer ix. or x. mares very wel & if he be old and

feble,

feble, he had nede to couer the fewer, for to coure many is a great feblishing to the Horse: Albeit in Italy, to a yonge Horse they will not let to appoint .xii. or .xv Mares. And Aristotle sayeth, that a Horse may Couer .xxx. Mares in one yeare. Also Herodotus writeth that the king of Babilon, hauing (besides his horses of seruice,) viii. hundreth Stallions, did appoincte euerye yeare vnto those stallions .xvi. thousand Mares, so that euery stallion had for his singulall share .xx Mares. Yea and some let not to write, that in Siria there was some times a race of .xxx. thousand Mares, to whom were appointed but three hundred stallions: so that euery horse had to couer an hundred Mares. Whereby it seaneth that horses in times paste haue bene of a farre stronger nature, then they be nowe in these our dayes. But in any wyse when ye let the stallion and the mares thus run together, haue alwayes a good eye to the fence, that it be strong & sure, for feare that none of your own stallions or straunge horses breake in, to disturbe any of them, for they will fyght together in suche tyme moste cruelly. Neyther is there any beast more Jelous of his mate then the horse of his wyues (if it be lawfull so to tearme them) insomuche as he wyll not suffer them to fede out of his sight, nor to stray one from another, but wyll kepe them alwayes together, and nygh vnto him selfe, whych runnynge and keppynge together breadeth such a mutuall loue betwixt them, as thereby they are on bothe sides the more enclyned to generation. And the Mares by thys meanes do more naturally, more spedely, & also more easely conceyue, then if they should be serued out of a stable, for there many times of tenne

that

that be serued, kyue do not take, of whych kynd of seruyng I wyll speake in the next Chapter folowinge. Notwithstandyng so sone as the mares haue all conceyued, whych you shall knowe by suche meanes as shalbe showed you hereafter. I would wyshe you to remoue the Stallions from theym and not to suffer them to runne wyth the Mares all the yere, as some do, for that is not good for ii. cõsyderations. For first you should lose the vse of your horse, which being after couering tyme somewhat rested and wel meated, may serue you in your other affayres: Secondlye it were very daungerous for the Mares that be with fole: For Arystotle sayth, there be three kindes of beastes more lecherous then all others: That is to saye, the Mare, the Sow, and the thirde I dare not name, for feare of offendinge, for where as all other beastes when they be with younge wil absteine from thact of generation, these. iii. kyndes (as he sayth) do not refuse it euẽ in that time. And though the mares do refuse it, as most commonly they wyl, whatsoeuer Aristotle sayth, yet the horse perhaps when prouander prycketh him will force them, and so perchaunce by striuing with them make them to cast their foles: Wherfore I can in no wyse consent that they shoulde runne all the yeare together, but onelye vntyll suche tyme as the Mares haue conceyued. Thus much for great races, where as be many Mares and Stallions, for those that kepe but one Stallion and a fewe Mares do like better to haue their Mares seuerally serued one after another then to run al together with the stallion, affirming that by thys meanes the stal-

lion shall not beate him selfe so much, nor spend more sede vpon one Mare then vpon another, and for this purpose a very small portion of ground myght serue to kepe the stallion, so that it be a battlyng grounde, ful of grasse and wel fenced, with high pale or rayle, as some large orchard or pond yard, nighe vnto the mansion house, of which kind of groundes, as I haue sene diuerse, so dyd I neuer see anye that pleased me better then one which I saw in Darbishire, in a town nigh vnto Darby, called Marketon, wheras a very honest gentlemã & a good housholder, named master Mondey dwelleth, who kepeth a good strong stallion and halfe a dosen faire mares, whose Coltes do proue very well, wherof your lordship hath one called Markhã, so named accordinge to the name of his old master, Master Thomas Markham of Olerton whiche horse as he is indifferent well proportioned, so was he once made by Abraham, master Astleis man as redy a horse in all poyntes, as any was then about the Court, the pece of grounde which I lyked so wel at this Gentlemans house, was a pond yard, enuironed about with a high and strong pale, and also with a very thicke quickset without the pale, the quantitie of which grounde the pondes deducted, is skant .iii. acres, but the qualitye and goodnes therof is such, as it doth not only kepe his Stallion, al the Sommer, that is to saye, from the midst of April vntil hallontyde (before whiche tyme he doeth not take him in, onles it be betwixt whiles to wooрke him, as in harnest time, and so to put him forth again) but also .ii. milch kine, and .xx. sheepe (as he sayeth) all the

yeare

yeare long, besydes the feeding of his mares, whilst they tary with the Stallion to be couered, whereof euerye one comminge seuerallye, one after another, taryeth .iii. dayes with him at the least, and than be tourned into a parke whiche he hath harde by, the ground wherof is veri mete for that purpose, neither doth he bestow any prouander on his Stallion duryng the couering time, for to say the trueth he is so full fed with swete grasse as he hath no nede thereof. And in mine opinion there lacketh nothing, but some litle houel or house to be placed in some mete corner, for the stallion to shrewde himselfe therin in the heat of the daye, and when it rayneth, for the hotte sonne, or percyng raine doth greatly feblith a horses backe. Thus much I thought good to wryte of this pece of ground, to thintent that euery man, mynding to haue a race, might enclose a lyke pece of grounde in quantitye at the least, though not altogether in qualitye, to kepe his stallion in the sommer season, the commoditye whereof in shorte tyme will counteruayle the charges.

What order is to be obserued touching the couering of Mares, when the Stallions doth not runne with them in the pastures, but are kept in the stable. And how the same stallions shoulde be fedde. Also at what time of the day the Mares ought then to be couered, and fynally how to knowe whether they haue conceiued, or not. Cap. vi.

But if ye haue no such seueral ground as is both able to fede your Stallyon and Mares duringe the coueringe time, as also to kepe them from breakynge out. Then you may kepe your Stallion stil in the stable, & bring the mares thyther to be couered, which is a more chargeable and troublous way of couering then ỹ other before mẽtioned. For first your stallion against that tyme must be wel fedde, with sweate haye and prouander, yea rather duringe the coueringe time with sweate grasse, if it maye be gotten, and his prouander as some wryte, would be eyther dryed wheate or dryed pease, myngled with wheat braune, or els fitches which be much praysed of all authours to be geuen in that tyme, and nowe and then he muste haue a good masshe made of water and wheate meale, and that shall be to make him lusty. Also he may not be laboured by the space of sixe wekes or twoo Monthes before: but suffered to rest, and yet I meane not to rest al together without any kind of exercise, but rather to be ridden now and then moderately, to get him a stomacke to his meate. For as ouer muche labour dryeth vp his moystnesse, and maketh his spirites and power feble: so ouermuche rest and fatnes bredeth superfluous humors, whiche on the other side will annuche weaken hym, by quenching his naturall heate, and cause his seade to be colde and moyst, which seldome or neuer taketh, or if it take, it engendreth rather females then Males, but moderate exercise preserueth his naturall heate, and swete nourishing foode encreaseth good bloud, &

causeth

causeth his seade to be perfect, that is to say, hote and moyst, and in substaunce neither to much, nor to litle, to thicke, nor to thin, but in a meane, and that is best, and wil soneste take. The lesse he drinketh when he hath to couer any Mare, the better, for if he drinketh ouer much, it will put his winde in ieopardye. More ouer behinde your stable, or elles behinde some other house not far from your stable, woulde be some prety close yarde or court made of purpose, into the whiche the Mare would be first brought, and that very yearlye in the morninge, when the sonne ryseth, or els in the Euening at the sonnes going downe. For those. ii tymes are thought by the wryters most mete for generation, and will do the horse lesse hurte then to couer in the heat of the day. Albeit Aristotle sayeth that the mare for her part is more desirous to be couered about the mydday, because perhaps she being the colder beast of the twayne, heate doth then most chiefly pronoke her lust. Well, the Mare then beinge thus brought in, ye may cause your horse keper to bringe forth the Stallion, who if he hath bene well fed, and moderately exercised, as I sayde before, so sone as he seeth and smelleth the mare, he wil immediatly fetch iii. or iiii. saultes, and bound aloft with all foure for ioy, euen in your horse kepers hand, who must not be afrayd but rather redy to helpe the horse in his busynes, so sone as he shal leape the Mare, by putting his yarde with hys hande into the right place, whereby the Mare shall be the more spedelye, the more easelye, and also the more substauncially serued, by mea-

nes that the hoꝛse shall spend no labour in vaine, noꝛ waste any part of his seade. And after that the mare hath bene couered once: let your hoꝛse keper lead the Stallion a little a side, and walke him a while faire and softlye behinde some house oꝛ wall cleane out of her sight to bꝛeathe hym. And when he is well bꝛeathed, bꝛing him in againe, and let him couer the mare the seconde tyme, and then lead hym out againe, and so the third tyme if ye will, continuing to do this euerye Euening oꝛ moꝛning the space of .ii. oꝛ .iii. dayes, vntill you thinke that she be sped. Betwixte whiche tymes, se that your hoꝛse be well rubbed and fed, and to the intent that the Mare cast not out the seed whiche she receyueth, it shall not be amisse in the ende of euery laste couerynge, imediately to bestowe one patle of water on the raynes of her backe and to caste another into her tayle, and that shall make her to holde. You shall knowe whether she hath conceyued oꝛ not, as Absirtus sayth, best within .x. daies next after folowing. Foꝛ if you offer the hoꝛse again at .x. daies end, & she refuseth, it is an euident signe of her conceptiō. Her coat also as Plinie sayth, of what colour so euer she be, wyll shewe moꝛe full and bꝛyghte to the eye, imediately after conception, then it did befoꝛe.

How to make your Mares to conceyue eyther Hoꝛse foles, oꝛ Mare foles, and of what colour you lyst to haue your selfe. Cap. bii.

But

BVT nowe whilst we are about the couering of Mares, me thinke it were not amisse, to shewe you what prettie meanes, and sleightes, men in the olde time vsed, to haue Coltes of suche kinde and colour as they themselues haue desired. And first as touchinge the kinde, Democritus affirmeth that if ye tye the lefte stone of the stallion with a thredden lace, or poynte, or such lyke thyng, he shall beget a horse fole, and if ye tye the righte stone, he shall beget a Mare fole. And this rule (as he sayeth) is generall to all other beastes. Affricanus also sayth, that if ye cause your Horse to leape the mare, when the winde bloweth in the North, he shall beget a horse fole, and if in the South, a mare fole. Againe some write, that if the mare be couered the third day before the ful mone she shall bring forth a horse fole, and if the thirde day after the full mone, a mare fole. And I take this to be a very good rule, and seldome to faile, and specially if the mare at that tyme haue lately foled. Agayne some holde opinion, that if the Mare be couered within v. or vi. dayes after her foling, and in the springe of the mone, that she shal bring forth a horse fole, and the rather if the horse be suffered to wooe her, and to stād in her sight sōewhat tofore he couer her, which order, maister Garret lieutenaunt of the Pentioners doth diligētly obserue, whē he causeth his mares to be couered, who affirmeth ỹ in obseruing this rule, he neuer fayled to haue a horse Colt at his pleasure, who I assure you is no lesse experte in breedinge then skylful in rydyng, and therwith so desirous to haue

good

good horses, as he letteth not to hyer a great deale of ground, paying by the yeare fourty pence for the acre, to fede his mares and coltes, in which his doing me thinkes, he deserueth much to be cõmended. But to knowe what kind the mare hath conceyued, the Authors wryte that if the horse after he hath couered the Mare commeth downe from her backe on the right side, it is a signe that she is conceyued with a horse fole, and if on the lefte syde with a mare fole. Now as touching the colour, they wryte that if the stallion be clad with a couerynge of suche colour as you desire the fole to be, at such tyme as he doeth couer the mare you shal haue your desire. Some again wryte that it is better to dye or stayne the heare of the Stallion wyth such colour as you lyke best and then to make him to continewe in the mares sighte whilst she burneth in lust, before he leape her, to thintent (as I take it) that thimpression may be the more feruent. And as this saying is grounded of a good naturall reason, so it may be proued by a most true & vnfayned example, recited in the Byble, in the thirtie chapter of Genesis. Wheras you may rede how Jacob after that Laban his master and father in lawe, had geuen him in recompence of his seruyce, all the blacke Lambes and speckeled kyddes, that shoulde come of the Ewes, and Goates, whiche he kept: By puttinge straked roddes in the sight and face of the Ewes, when they went to Ramme, and of the she Goates when they wente to bucke, made all the ofspryng of Labans flocke to be blacke and spotted: wherby in shorte space he became as ryche in cattell,

as

as Laban his father in lawe. For truelye at the tyme of conception, all the powers of the beast are so open, and the matter it selfe so tender, as it is apte to receyue euerye light impression.

¶ Whether Mares should be forced to abyd the Horses though they haue no lust or not, and howe to make both Horse and Mare, hauing no lust, to haue a lust to engender. Also howe to abate their lust if neede requyre. Cap. viii.

IF the mare will not suffer the horse to leape her, some haue vsed (as both Varro & Plinie wryteth) to force her thereunto whether she will or not, by tyinge her to a poste, set vp in the myddest of suche a close yarde or Courte as is talked of before, which thing is vsed euen at this present day at Tutbery, whereas the Queenes maiestye hath a race. And though I knowe that some of them do conceyue, and prosper well nough after it, yet I can not prayse it, because it is both daungerous and also vnnaturall: for the acte of generation ought to be with pleasure, and not with payne, neyther doethe that whiche is peinfully conceyued, thryue for the most part, so wel as that which is conceiued with pleasure. wherefore I woulde wysche all men, rather to followe Camerarius aduice, whiche is not to force her: but to make her firste to desyre the Horse, by puttynge a lyttle stoned nagge vnto her, to wooe her foure or fyue daies before you would haue her couered, which nagge wold be so fettered, as he maye not couer her, thoughe shee

would perchaunce enclyne vnto hym: which when you perceiue the dothe, remoue the nagge from her, and put the Stallion vnto her: so that she stand stil of her owne accorde, and receyue the stallion the more wyllyngely. But the reddyest meanes to make a mare to desyre the horse, is (as Columella saith) to annointe her matrixe with the ioyce of a certaine herbe called of him Scilla, and of Palladius Squilla, whiche some of our phisitions do call a sea Oynion, because it groweth as well in the sea, as on the lande, and hath a head or roote lyke an oynió. It is very good also to rub her matrixe with nettles, whiche as Rusius saith, will not onely cause the mare to suffer the Horse to leape her, but also to engender with him. Whiche otherwise many tymes perhappes she cannot do, for want of naturall heate in her matrixe. That the nettle is a prouoker of venery, it is not vnknowen to the playne wyues of the countreye: whiche when their hennes wyll not laye, nor suffer to be troden, do vse to nettle their tayles, & that maketh them (as they say) to desyre the Cocke, and also to lay. Againe, Anatolius sayth, that to annoynte her matrixe with hennes dunge and turpentine mingled together, will marueilously prouoke her luste. But if you see that your horse hath no lust to engender, then make as though you woulde dryue the mare from hym, and that wyll make him the more desirouse of her. It is good also to wipe the matrixe of that mare which desireth the horse, with a spunge, and to put that to the Stallions nose, the sauour wherof will prouoke his courage.

Also the pyssill of a Stagge beinge bourned, and made into fyne pouder, and put into stronge wyne, wyll prouoke his

uoke his courage, if his yarde & stones be washed therwith. But I haue ben taught by men of experiẽce, that if a good quantitie of the powder aforesaide, together with these powders folowing, that is of Anniseedes, of a roote called Satyrion, and of Basyll, of eche lyke quantity, be giuen the horse to drink in a warme masshe made of water and wheaten meale, the nyghte before you woulde haue him to couer any mare: it wil not only prouoke his courage, but also make his seede of such force, as it will holde and not quaile. And the lesse that eyther horse or mare drynketh whylste they attende to generation, the better it shalbe for them: for ouer much drincke, wyll not onely make the seede thinne and watery, and so as it shall not holde, but also as I sayd before, make the horse pursye: yea, and put his wynde in ieoperdie. But if you see, that after the time of couering the stallion continueth still to full of luste and courage, then it shalbe good to annoynt his stones with a lyttle salet oyle, and that wyll abate his courage, and the soner, if you stepe a lyttle letttse in the oyle somewhat before. The same medicine also wyll abate a Mares courage (if her matrixe be annoynted therwith. And some write, that the cuttynge of her maine dothe abate her courage. These medicines perhappes wyl offende the delycate eares of some persons, that are more nyce then wyse. But I trust, the discrete man wyll not be offended to heare theym: but rather learne discretely to vse them as nede shal require. For I allure you, they were no fooles that wrote them, but learned, wyse, and men of great experyence.

¶ Whiche mares shoulde be couered euery yere & which not. And howe to do that those mares that you wolde haue to beare euer yere, shall not goe barraine. Cap. ix.

Palladius and Columella wold haue those Mares that be very beawtyful and faire and therewyth haue not onlye bene well horsed, but also haue horse foles suckinge on them: not to be couered euery yeare, but euerye seconde yeare, or rather thirde yeare, to thintent that their foles may sucke the lenger time, & also be fed with the more pure milke. And as for all other mares, they wold haue them to beare euerye yeare, and to be couered againe so soone as their foles are .v. or .vi. dayes olde so that they be in good lust, and not to poore. And to the intent that none such shoulde go barren, it shalbe necessarye not only to enforce them, by such wayes as haue bene shewed you before, to the horse in the spring tyme, but also about Lammas or in the beginninge of August, and to suffer a Stallion to run with them thre wekes or a month to thintent that if any of them chaunced not to conceyue at the first coueringe, they maye nowe be serued. But be sure that some one of the Mares be readye to be couered, when you turne the stallion into them, least perpaps he beate aswell those that be with fole as the others, and so do more harme then good. And by vsynge this order you shalbe sure to kepe no Mare barren all the yeare, onlesse that the Mare be barren by meanes of some sickness. Wherof I shal treate hereafter when I come to the diseases of horses, & there shew you how to cure the same.

Howe

Howe Mares shoulde be vsed after they haue conceyued and are with fole, and what causeth them to caste their soles before theyr tyme. Cap. x.

After that your Mares haue conceyued, you muste beware you labour theim not ouer much, and specially that they beare no heauye burdens, for feare of kyllynge their soles in their bellies. Also you must see that whilest Sommer lasteth, they go in a good pasture, not hauing ouer rank grasse, but short and swete, & that they lacke no good water. And in winter when the grasse fayleth, that they be fedde with swete haye, and that they lye dryye and warme in some bushy close, woode, or grone, or els vnder some houel, but so as they be not straunted of roume, nor thronged vp together, for that is daungerous, and maye cause aborsment, that is to saye, to cast their soles before theyr tyme. Anatolius also sayth that the chaunge of straunge pasture or water will cause aborsement. Agayne Rufinus sayth that if they chaunce to eate the maste of Cerre trees, they shall be in daunger of aborsement. Or if any of them be rouered wyth an Asse after that shee hath conceyued by a horse, or chaūce to treade vpon a wolfe, or where a wolf hath troden it will cause her to caste her fole. Also all stinking sauours, as the smuttyng of candles, or torches, or suche lyke, will cause aborsement, as some authours wryte, aswell in Mares, as in women. Wherefore all suche thinges woulde be foresene, and in anye case kepe your Mares whilest they go with fole, neither to leane nor yet to fat, but in good plight, for if they be to leane,

they wil either cast their foles, or els bring forth starue-linges. Agayne if they be to fat, euery place of their bodyes will be so fylled, as the foles within their bellyes cannot haue roume sufficient to growe, and to prosper, by meanes whereof, eyther the foles shall be but little ones, or elles the Mares theim selues shall be in greate daunger, at the tyme of their folynge, by reason that their cundittes be ouermuch straynghtned with fatte. And therefore the Scythians which is a people of the North, bsed (as Aristotle wryteth) moderately to iourney, and to trauel their Mares, after they were quickened, to the intente that they myght haue the easier folynge. For truely moderate labour and exercise, at that tyme muste nedes do theym muche good. But to trauell them imediately vppon conception, or when they be verye great and redy to fole, is daungerous. For the fruite of the wōbe in all beastes, maybe well compared to the frupte of the Apple tree, which at the first blossominge, and also when it is throughe rype, and mellow, wyll be blowen downe with euery lyght wind, but in the middle time betwixt both, it cleueth so fast vnto the braunches of the tree: as it will scant be throwen downe with coudgelles.

How to helpe a Mare that is in daunger at the tyme of her folyng. And how you shall cause her to expell her secundyne or cleane. Cap. xi.

But if it so happen that a mare by any mys-chaunce, be in daunger at the tyme of her folynge, then it is neadefull to helpe her, causynge one to holde her nostrilles in a gentle maner

maner, close in his hande, and so to stoppe her breath, and it shal make her to fole with more ease, and also the soner, which is not very paynefull for any man to do, for somuch as the Mare foleth standing, whereby he shall not nede greatelye to stoupe. Agayne if the secundine, which is the skynne wherin the fole is wrapped, doth not come all out naturally of the owne accorde, then vse this remedy. Take a good handfull or twoo of Fenell, and boyle it in water, then take halfe a pynte of that, and another halfe pynte of olde wyne, and put therunto a fourth part of oyle, and mingle them altogether ouer the fyre, and beinge but luke warme, poure it into the mares nostrilles, and holde her nostrilles close with your hand, to kepe it in a prety while after. And that shall forse the secundine to come foorth, whiche for the most parte, both she and all other beastes do immedyately eate, and swallowe vp agayne into their bellyes. Which thinge the plaine folkes of the countrey (if they can preuent it) will not suffer their milche kine to doe, in their time of cauluing, saying: that it will make them sicke and vnlustye. And trulye I beleue it doth the mares no great good. Some Authours wryte, that when the mare doth eate vppe her secundyne or cleane, (for so the playne folkes tearme it) she snappeth awaye also with her teeth a certeyne peace of flesshe, growing lyke a fygge vpon the foles foreheade, called of the Grekes and Latins, Hippomanes. Of the vertue whereof, in matters of loue many monsterous tales, by many learned Authours are recyted. Wherof I think it not good to make the vnlearned partners. And therefore I leaue to speake of it any further.

How

¶ Howe to make a Mare to caste her fole that is not worthy to be bredde, or for some other nedefull cause. Cap. xii.

If a fayre mare in olde time had ben couered with a foule Royle, or had ben wyth fole out of seasō, or at such time perhaps, as she must ronne for some greate wager, then they would vse meanes to make her caste her fole before her time, & that was done eyther by force of hande, or by medecine. For if the fole were so farre growen that it had heare, thei would cause one to thrust hys hande into the Mares wombe, and to take the fole by the hedde, and to crushe it in pe-ces. And if it had no heare, then they would destroy it with medecines not nedefull here to be written. Notwithstanding in myne opinion the surest waye (if greater cause do not otherwise requyre) were to tary till she hath foled of her owne kinde, and then to kyll the fole.

¶ How Mares should be vsed after they haue foled. Also how long the foles shoulde sucke, and how they ought to be vsed during their foleage, also howe to harden their houes. Cap. xiii.

It is nedeful immediatly after the mares haue foled, or rather a seuennight or a fortenight before they be redy to fole, to put them into the warmest, sweetest, and rankest pasture that you haue, to the intent they lyinge warme and dry, and faringe well, maye haue plentye of milke to feede their foles

foles. For nothing doth hinder the growth of the foles more then cold, and penury. Moreouer Anatolius saith, that it is very necessarye about two or three monethes after their folinge, to chase them about the grounde to and fro, or otherwise to exercise them with some moderate labour, to make their milke come downe into their dugges. And to thintent that the foles maye be fayre and fatte, al the writers with one consent would haue them to sucke. ii. yeares, and specially if they be horse foles, yea some would haue them to sucke til thei offer to couer their dammes, and lesse then one yere though they be Mare foles, none that euer I coulde heare or reade of doth allowe. And yet here in Englande they will scant sucker them to sucke. vi. monethes, but wyl weane them before they be full halfe a yeare olde, whiche truly I cannot commend, for though many of them do proue to be great of bone and tall of stature, yet the pyth within is not firme nor sounde, neyther can they be so stronge, so healthful, or lyue so longe, as those most commonlye do, which sucke a longe tyme. For that sweete and moste naturall moysture and nutryment, wherof they be depriued in their youth, will neuer be gotten agayne so long as they liue. Wherfore I wysh those that seeke to haue stronge and healthful Coltes, to let them sucke one yeare at the least. In olde tyme as it appeareth by Varro and Columella, they vsed for warmeth sake to house bothe Mares and foles, vntil their foles were ten dayes old, and then to putte them furth into the pasture. Also when the foles were fyue Monethes old, they vsed now and then to bring them into the house and there would geue them ground bar-

ley mingled with wheat brane, and suche other softe kynde of foode. And beinge a yeare olde, they wold geue them firmer prouander, as dried Barley, and Brane, contynuing so to do, vntill they were .ii. yeres olde. All which tyme the coltes also sucked, and chiefly they did this to make them domestical and familiar, and partly to make them fat and lustye, and partlye agayne to acquaynt them with all kinde of meates, but therewith they would touch them or handle them so litle as was possible, for feare of hyndering their groweth. And among the rest of their diligent cares, in bringing vppe this necessarye beast, they had a speciall regarde to hys houes, that they might be tough, firme and harde, and therfore whensoeuer they stode in the house, they wold sucker no dounge to remayne anye while by theym, for feare of burnynge their houes. And if they sawe they were anye thinge enclyned to haue tender houes, they would make an oyntmente of the eares of garlycke, of swynes greace, goates greace and brymstone, that had not bene tried in the fire, and so annointe their houes therwith, both without and within, which ointment did make their houes very toughe and harde, and to that intent they would strow stones vnder their feete, whereas they stoode. Moreouer when they fed abrode in the pasture, they would driue them vp to the highest and most stony groundes, which as Rusticus saith, doth not onelye harden their houes, but also make theym to haue stronge legges, and to treade suerlye vppon the ground. But as touching the hardening of houes, we shall talke more thereof when we come to treate of the diseases of horses.

Howe

¶How to know of what stature, making, and disposition the foles when they are new foled will be, when they come to age. Cap. xiiii.

THe foles that haue verye long legges, euen from their birth, do proue most commonly to be tal of stature, for the legges of al iiii. footed beastes, be almost so longe at the firste day of their birth, as they wylbe euer after. Againe those will be both stronglye, and finelye made, which in their very youth haue great bodyes, and well knyt together, lytle heades, blacke eyes, shorte & sharpe eares, broade nosethrils, wyde mouthes, brode neckes, with good thicke creastes, brode breastes, plaine backes, gaunt bellies, brawnye thighes, nimble knees, that will easelye bowe in their goinge, stronge legges, short pastourns, rounde, harde, and hallow houes, so as they may sound again when they treade vpon the grounde, and the harder & the fuller they tread vpō the ground, the better houes they seme to haue. Now the signes of their disposition and courage as Varro sayth, be these, to be liuelye and sturringe, not to be afrayde of euerye noyse, or syght, to run wantonly before their fellowes, and to stryue to be foremost, also to offer to leape ouer euery hedge and dyke, or to go ouer a bridge, or to passe the water, agayne if they will be quicklye stirred, and therwith sone pacified, it is a sygne that they will be tractable, and easie to be broken in time to come.

¶Of the growth aswel of mare Coltes, as horse coltes, and how to know which wil continue in goodnes, and lyue longest. Cap. xv.

I Thinke it good here also to let you vnderstād thopinions of ỹ writers, touching the growth aswel of mare foles, as horse foles, for thoughe that horse foles be fashioned in their dammes bellyes, sooner then the mare foles, yet the mare foles beinge once foled, do arryue to their full growth of height and length in. v. yeres, wheras the horse foles be not at their ful grouth of height and length, before they be ful sixe yeares olde, from which tyme furth as Arystotle sayth, tyll they be ten yeares old, they growe only in largenes and thicknes. And Absirtus sayth, that those which haue white or balde faces, do not waxe olde so sone as others. Againe the same Author saieth, that those Coltes which haue tender houes, do not continue in their vigor and strength, aboue viii. yeares after that they be at their ful growth of height and length, neither are they mete any more to be Journeyed. Because the Crownes of their houes will fall downe so lowe, as they shal skant be able to stande on their feete. But if they haue good houes, then they will continue in their vigor. x. yeares after their full growth and aboue. Moreouer the saide author saith, those horses which haue from their youth vpward harde houes, will liue vntill they be. xxviii. or xxix. yeres old, but they seldome arriue to. xxx. but those that haue softe houes do not lyue aboue. xxiiii. yeares. But as touchinge the lyues of horses we haue talked already sufficientlye before in the fourth chapter.

¶ When and howe coltes should be weaned from their dammes. And howe they should be seuered according to their kindes and ages. cap. xvi.

When

When your Coltes haue sucked. ii. yeres or one yere at the least. And specially if they be horse coltes, (for mare coltes may sucke a lesser time, accordinge as you youre selfe shal thinke it good to haue your mares couered agayne the nexte yere folowynge or not,) then about shrouetide it is good (as some men write) iii. daies before the full of the mone to take thē early in the morning from their dammes, and to shut them vp all that day, and all that nighte without meate, in a house appoynted for that purpose, and standynge cleane out of their dammes hearinge. The next day in the morning to put them againe to their dammes, and to let theym sucke their bellies full, yea, euen vntill they swel againe, that done, take them away for all a doe, and to kepe thē in thaforesaide house the space of. xiiii. dayes, nigh vnto which house woulde be some prety swete pasture reserued of purpose, to the intente that from the ende of the .xiiii, dayes vntill the moneth of Maye, (before whiche time there is little grasse growing) the coltes may fede and play themselues therin euery fayre day. But when Maye is once come, then put thē forth into some good pasture, wherag they may haue plenty of short & swete grasse, for ouer rancke grasse will hurt their reines, and make them thicke necked, and in any case see that therwith they lye warme and dry, and lacke no water, for if waynlinges suffer eyther hunger, thirste, or colde, and specially in the firste yere whyles they mourne for theyr dammes, they will neuer proue to be good, but wyll be small of stature, of small strength, and full of diseases.

But after that the colts be two yeres olde and vpward

and

and haue cleane forgotten their dãmes. I would wishe them to runne in a large, harde, and hungery grounde, but so as with theirtraueyling, and takinge paynes for their liuinge, they may fill them full once in the day at the least, for feare of hinderinge their growthe. Youre Coltes being thus weaned and kepte, shall proue to be light, nimble, hard, and strong horses, & to haue strong legges and hard houes, and not to surfet of euery lyttle colde, as those do whych be fedde in somer season with ranke grasse, and lye colde and weate in winter. More ouer to the intente there may be no disorder amongest your coltes: see that ye seuer them, accordinge to theyr kindes and ages, that is to say, to put horse foles by thẽ selues in one pasture, and mare foles by them selues in a nother pasture. Agayne, put yerelinges, two yerelings, and thre yerelings, euery age by it selfe seuerally, so shal not the greater wronge the lesser, for amonge equalles is altogether loue and fellowshippe wythoute any discorde. Wherfore you see that particions, as I saide in the begining of this boke, are so nedeful in that ground which should be appointed for breding of horses, as nothinge more.

¶ Of the gueldinge of Coltes, and for what cause they be guelt, and also at what age, and in what time of the yere they oughte to be guelt. cap. xvii.

THe Coltes that doe naturally amble, or maye easely be brought to it, eyther by trauerse, or elles by hande withoute trauerse (whiche in mine opinion is the better way) most men in this realme do more delyght to haue them guelte then stoned

stoned, for thei loue not onely to ride easely by the way, but also very faste, and therewith to haue their horses so quiet, as they may be easely gouerned, which things are not commonly sene in stoned horses, for their aboũdaunt heate will not suffer them to be so quyet, nor yet to labour so farre in a day as Gueldinges maye, because the guelding lacking his stones hath no suche hot blud in his body as he hadde before he loste them. Yea to be guelt (as some authoures write) is such a Cooler, as it tameth both man, and beast, in their greatest madnes, and cleane healeth them of that disease, when nothing elles will. Moreouer, gueldinges do not neygh so often nor so loude as stoned horses do. For the which cause, the Sarmatians in all their secrete enterprises and exploytes, do vse to serue vpon gueldinges and not vpon stoned horses. And also our light horsemẽ here in England do in like maner serue vpon geldings in the warres, and for that cause they do not only guelde ambling coltes, but also trotting coltes, which they thinke partly mete for that purpose, and partely for their seruantes to ride on, and to cary their males and cloke bagges after them. Of bothe which sorte of gueldinges I beleue this realme hath so fayre and so many, as any one coũtrey in all Christendome. Wherefore I thinke it good here to show you the age, and at what time of the yere and Mone it is beste to guelde such coltes. And fyrste as touching the age, it is beste doing when the Colt is almost .ii. yeres olde, for to guelde him yõger wil hinder his growth very much. Agayne if he be much elder his necke wyll waxe greate, and the strynges of his stones wil be so harde and stronge, as they wil not be broken,

but must

but must nedes be cut, which as Russius sayth, is verye daungerous. Albeit our gueldours here in England be so cunning and expert in that facultie, as they make no matter therof, for they will cutte both olde and young, at what age soeuer they be, and warraunt them to doe well inough. And some I assure you doe euill inoughe, and speciallye if the meetest tyme for that purpose, as well of the yeare, as of the moone be not dewlye obserued. Wherfore I would wyshe you to sufferr none of the guelders to take your Coltes in hande onles it be in the fryynge, as in May, or in the beginning of June, or els about the fall of the leafe, as also when the mone is in the wane. For those two seasons are most temperate, that is to say, neither to hot nor to colde, the excesse of either of whiche qualities, is verye noysome to those that be newlye guelt, and causeth manye to peake oute of the waye. And therfore after that they be guelt, you muste see that they go in a warme pasture, and that they bee not ouermuch chased to and fro, or otherwyse dysquieted, but moderatelye exercised vntill they be perfectlye whole.

¶ At what age, in what tyme of the yeare it is best takynge vppe of Coltes to breake theym, and how they ought at theyr fyrst halteringe to be vsed. Cap. xviii.

They vse in most partes to take vppe theyr Coltes when they are but .ii. yeres and the vantage, or .iii. yeres old at the most, whereby theyr iointes not beynge knytte, if they be not the more discretly vsed their backes maye

may be soone swayde or pinched, and besides that their legges will growe full of splentes and wyngalles, and become crooked and lame, before they be halfe olde. Wherfore I wish that according to Federico themperours order, no horse Colt might be taken vp to be broken, before he were .iiii. yeares old and the vantage, and that woulde be done in some colde season of the yeare, when they maye best endure to trauell, as about October, to thintent that after they haue bene broken in the winter season, when extreame heat cannot anoy them, by driuing them into faint sweates, they may be suffered, when spring tyme comes, and plenty of grasse is vpon the ground, to rest in the stable certeine dayes, whilst they be scoured and fatted with grasse, and so to get vp their flesshe that they lost whilest they were in breakinge, of whiche scouringe and fattinge, we shall treat hereafter more at large, when we come to speake of the dieting of horses, for ꝑ preseruing of their helth. In some places, as at Tutbury, ꝑ Coltes are so wilde as after they be driuen into a house they are fayne to be snared with a snare made of a stronge halter, comming through a ring of Iron, and put vpon a long pole, and so cast about that Coltes necke, which should be taken vp, and strained so harde, as it may strangle him for the tyme, before they can fasten any halter or coller vppon his head, which wildnes partlye perhappes commeth for that the ground is wast and wylde, for lacke of pertitions, as I said before in the first Chapter. But chiefly for that they be neuer housed, handeled, nor made familier with man in theyr youth, which is verye nedeful, and was not omitted by the meane of olde time as

I shewed you before in the.xiii. Chapter, and for lacke therof many a good colt at his first taking vp, through his owne stryuing is vtterly marred, and maymed for euer. Wherefore I wyshe them to be made domestical in their youth, in such sorte as is in the Chapter before declared, so shall they not nede to be forced by any such extremitye when they should be taken vp, and the first coller or halter that you put on a Coltes head, wold be made as Rusticus saith, of wollen yarne, or elles of horse heare, and that very grosse and brode brayded, to thintent it may not cut his heade when he striueth withal. Moreouer vnto that halter wold be fastened.ii. strong reanes, on eche side one, that the Coltes head may be fast teied vnto the manger on bothe sides, whereby he shal not teare nor hurt his leggs. And vntil he be some what gentle and tame, it shalbe needfull also to set another Colt by hym that is alreadye tamed, that hys keper may haue the safer accesse vnto him, who must vse all gentle meanes possibly, to win him, and shewe him no maner of cruelty, vsing often to stroke his backe and necke with his hand, whereunto he shall brynge hym the sooner, if he let him eate no meate, but that which he shalbe content gentlye to receiue at his hande, for hunger wyll tame the wylde tygre, and for .iii. or. iiii. dayes lette him not go out to drinke, but make hym to drinke in the stable, and when he will suffre to be touched, then stroke all the other partes of his body, and specially his legges, to thintent he maye suffre to be courried, and that his keper may lift vp his feete, and knocke him first fayre and softly with a stone vpon his houes, and then harder and harder, whereunto if he be

often

often vsed,it shal make him very easy to be shod, & also when his keper leadeth him to water, let that tamed Colt which standeth with him, alwayes accompanye him,going somwhat before him,to thintēt ꝑ the other may folow,and so learne to be led in hand, which once had,then bringe him with faire meanes to suffre the Cauetsane or headstraine to be put on his head, and to be sadeled and guirded, and vse to leade him to water being so saddeled,to thintent it may not seme straunge vnto him,neither within the howse,nor abroade. And whan he is brought to this tamenesse, then it shall be good to put a payre of soft pastorns on his forefete,and also as Rusius sayeth, to tye one of hys hinder feete wyth a wollen coard, so as he can not much ture anye waye,and that shall preserue his legges(as he saith.) Nigh vnto which,no doung must be suffered to lye,for feare of burning his houes,but see that he stand cleane, warme,and drie,and that he be wel meated,often courryed and clothed.And in any case let no shrewed boyes or vnruly persons come into the stable, to ticke or toye with him,or otherwyse to fraye him, for if he chaunce to get anie euil propertie at the first,it wilbe very hard euer after to bringe him from it. And after that he is brought to such passe,as he will suffer to be handeled, haltered,saddeled,shodde,and also to be ledde where a man wil,then let him be ridden, broken,and scholed, according to Grisons preceptes, declared vnto you in my last booke entytled the art of ridyng.But nowe as touching the mare Coltes,it were best to take theym vp,when they are.ii.yeares olde,and the bauntage, to thintent that they may be handled and broken, eyther

by working thē, or els by riding them moderately, but rather by working them vntill they be .iii. yeares olde. At whiche age, as I haue haue saide before, they are moste mete to be couered, and being made tame before, you shall haue the lesse trouble with them, at such time as you would haue them to be couered.

¶ Howe and at what age a coltes mouth shoulde be cut, or certayne of his teeth drawen, when the bitte for fault thereof can not haue his true restinge place. Cap. xix.

OUr common breakers of horses, when they chaunce vpon a colte that hath so narrow a mouth, as it is not able to receiue a bitte high inough, thei vse to cut his mouth wider in riding him, wt a veri sharpe square brake, made of purpose which is not good, for it maketh him euer after eyther to haue to tender or to harde a mouthe, and for the most part rather to hard then to tender, by meanes of the harde and cornye flesshe whych afterwardes groweth on both sides of his mouth, wher he was so raggedly torne, cut, and gawled. Wherfore it were muche better to cause an expert horse leache to slyt his mouth equally on bothe sydes wyth a sharpe knyfe or rasor so highe as shalbe nedeful, and then to seare it with a hot yron, and to heale it in such sort as the sides therof may growe no more together, but appeare to be a naturall mouth, and of that wideues euen from the coltes birth, & before his mouth be parfectly whole, I would wisshe him not to be ridden with any maner of bitte at all, but onely with a hedde strayne. Yea, in myne opinion it wer so much

so much the better if his mouth were cut and healed vp againe before he were taken vp to be broken, for the sooner it is done, the lesser it shalbe sene, so that it be not done while he sucketh, for then perhappes the sorenes of his mouth woulde let his suckinge, and so hinder his growth. Nowe as touching the drawing of certayne teth which may also be a great impedimēt that the bit can not haue his true restinge place, you shall heare the verye wordes of Laurentius Rufsius, writinge in this sorte. Because it is very harde, yea, and almoste vnpossyble (sayth he) that a Horse can haue a parfecte good mouthe, vnles the .ii. tusshes, and also other .ii. called of him the plaine teeth, & of vs the cheeke teeth, or wange teeth, be cleane pulled out: (for after that a horse is thorowly warmed, if he hath the saide teeth, his rider shal hardly hold him.) It is very requisite therfore that the foresaide .iiii. teeth, that is to say, on eche side of his nether Jawe .ii. after that the horse is .iii. yeres & a halfe olde, be cleane drawen out by an expert hand, with instrumentes mete for that purpose, so as his Jawe may not be hurt, and so soone as they be oute, lette the sore gumme be rubbed well with salt, somewhat brayed or broken before, that done, see that his mouth be not touched for iii. dais after, loke also that the stable wher he standeth be closse shut, so as the winde maye not annoy him, and vntill he be whole. Forget not euery day after that he hath dronke, first to clense the sore places from such fylth as there remayneth of his meate, and then to rubbe it a new, with salt as before, for such continuall rubbing with salt will suffer no euill flesh there to growe, and if any do growe, then firste scarifye the

same

same with your nayles, and rubbe it againe with salt. Some vse to washe the sore place onlye with warme wine, and some adde therunto both honye and pepper, and rubbe it after with salt, some agayne washe it only with wine and hony, and put on no salt. But truly if it were firste washed with wine, and after rubbed with salt, it were so muche the better. Moreouer vntill the place be perfectlye whole, forget not when soeuer you put any bit in his mouth, to cleanse firste the sore place, faire & softly with your finger. Thus far Rusius hath spoken, whose wordes do sound with good reason, and are confirmed by diuers learned Authors, albeit I my selfe neuer sawe horse teeth drawne in all my life, and yet I must nedes confesse that I haue sene some horses though not many, whiche haue had their tusches standing so high, as it hath seemed vnto me verye necessarye, eyther to draw them, or els to file them hard downe to the gummes, which some men take to be the surest way, for sauing of the horses Iawe. Notwithstanding in mine opinion, the best way (if the horses mouth be not alreadye to wide) were to slit his wickes higher, and to make rome for the bitte that way, but to say the truth, fewe coltes or none being wel bred in this realme haue nede of eyther of thē both, neyther haue our colts for the most part, any tusches come vp at that age wher of Russius talketh. And truly I can not but maruaile at that he appointeth two tusches to be drawen on ech side of his nether iawe, (if I vnderstand him aright) wheras euery horse hath but one beneath, & a nother aboue, and I doe no lesse maruayle to rede in Aristotle, that a horse should haue in all .xliiii. teeth, sith I could neuer se

any

any horse that had aboue .vi. that is to saye, in the fore part of his mouth vi. beneath, and vi. aboue, and on ech side of his mouth .ii tusshes, one aboue and a nother beneath: neuertheles I thought good to let you vnderstand the writers opinions herein, cõmitting the execution of all thinges vnto your owne discretion.

¶ Of the cullinge out of refuse mares and Coltes, and also of those that should be reserued for the maintenaunce of the stocke. Cap. xx.

ALthough a man haue neuer so fayre stallions and mares, yet by some euill aspecte of the planettes, or els by some other vnhappy bychaunce, or by the negligence of the kepers, the Coltes do not alwayes come to such proofe as a man would haue them, and therfore I would wysh the owner, though he dwell far of, twyse a yere at the least to suruey his ground, and al the cattel therein, to the intente that if ther be any not mete to be kept, either for barrennes, for age, or for deformity, they may be made away, and solde at those fayres & marbets which best serue to such purposes, yea, and if the cattell be wel vsed, his encrease wilbe such, as once in iii. or .iiii yeres after the first .iii. yeres be past, he shal be fayne eyther to sell or to geue away of the fayreste that he hath, for otherwyse his grou̇d would be quickly surcharged, & not able to fede them. Albeit I would wisshe him to sell or geue so, as he nede not to buy hym selfe to maynteine his stocke, vnto which he must haue alwaies a special regarde, in chosing out from time to time the fairest and largest bodied coltes, as well of males as females,

that

that he can fynde amongest the whole race, to be reserued for the maintenaunce of his studde or brede. For as I saide in the beginning, onles the parents be wel chosen, the offspring can neuer be good. Moreouer, it is necessary that such surney be often made for the shifting of the cattel, according as both kind and age of the cattel, and also the time of the yere requireth, least otherwyse perhappes they may be pynched, both with colde, and penury, which be the greatest enemyes that Coltes can haue. Againe, manye contagiouse sycknesses doe often chaunce amongest this kinde of cattell, at whiche time, if the infected be not remoued from the wholle: the one infecteth the other, and so they dye all.

For faut of which seuering sir John Birron of Notinghamshire, a very good knight & a notable housekeper, tolde me this last sommer that not long since he lost in one yeare, as manye mares and Coltes as were worth a M. markes. But to say the truth in such a contagious tyme, it is not only necessary to seuer the sicke from the hole: but also very nedefull, that medicine be ministred as wel to the whole, as to those that be not to far gone, for the sauegard of their lyues, whereof I shall speake hereafter more at large, when I come to treate of the curing of their diseases, and in the meane tyme, I shall desyre you to take all that which I haue hitherto written touching the breding of horses in good part, so shal I haue cause to thinke my labour well bestowed.

FINIS.

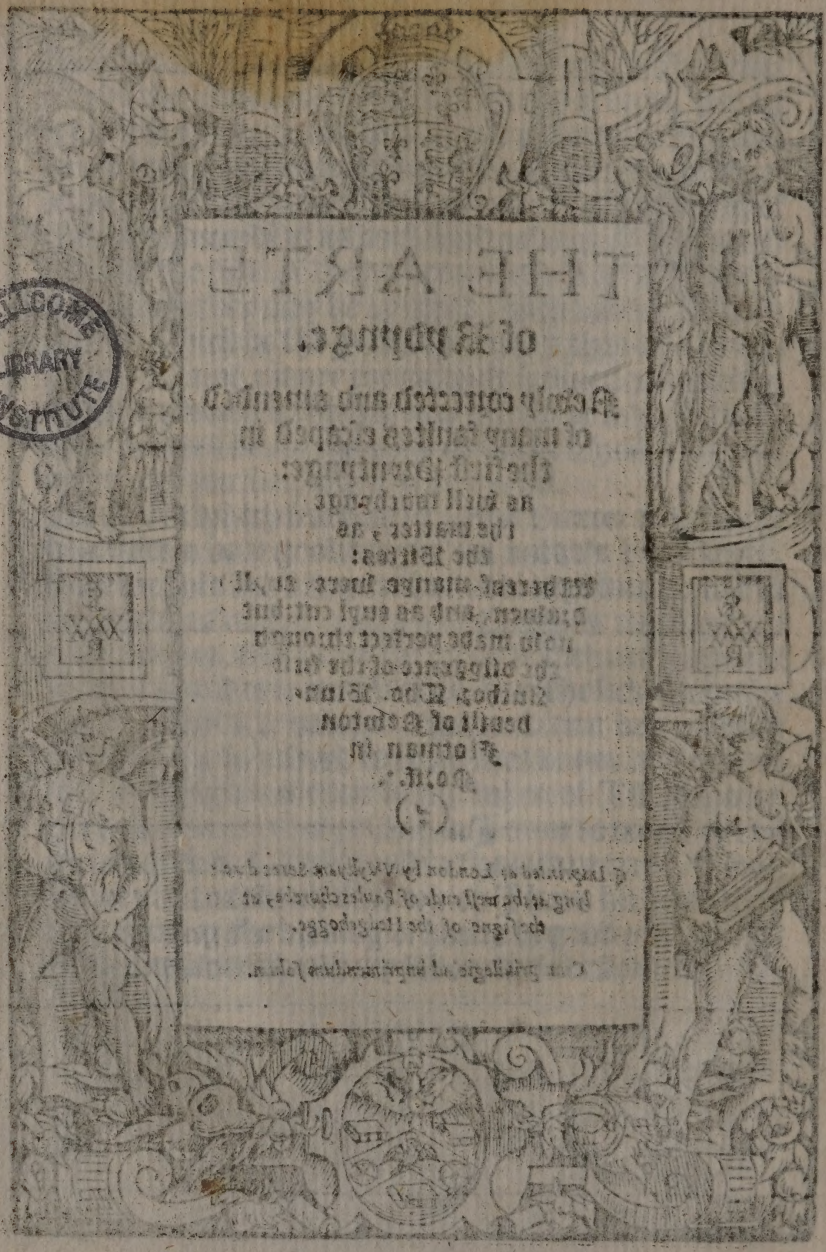
THE ARTE of Rydynge.

Newly corrected and amended of many faultes escaped in the first Printynge: as well touchynge the matter, as the Bittes: Whereof manye were euyll drawen, and as euyl cut: but now made perfect through the dilygence of the first Author. Tho. Blundeuill of Newton Flotman in Norff.

(*)

Imprinted at London by VVyllyam Seres dwellyng at the weste ende of Paules churche, at the signe of the Hedgehogge.

Cum priuilegio ad imprimendum solum.


WELLCOME LIBRARY INSTITUTE

TO THE RIGHTE HONORABLE AND HIS SINGVLER GOOD LORDE, THE Lorde Roberte Dudley, Erle of Leyceſter, Baron of Denbighe, Knight of the honorable order of the Gatter, Maiſter of the Queenes maieſties horſes, and one of her highnes priuie councell. Thomas Blundeuil wiſcheth perfect felicitie.

IT is nowe (my ſinguler good Lord) almoſt two yeres ſithens I determyned with my ſelfe, to haue tranſlated into our vulgare tounge, the foure bokes of Griſon, treatinge in the Italion tounge, of the art of Ryding & breaking great Horſes, and to haue geuen the ſame vnto youre L. as M. Secretary Cicill can well teſtifye. Who I thanke him of his goodnes vouchſafed to peruſe my firſt draught, and miſliked not the ſame. But after that I hadde tranſlated two bookes therof, and ſawe to what inconuenience I was bound: hauing to folowe ſo doubtfull phraſes, & maners of ſpeaking, and ſo confuſe an order of writting, as in my iudgement he vſeth, (being in dede a far better doer, then a writer) by meanes whereof he is conſtreyned to make manye repeticions of one thinge, and to vſe more wordes then nede: I coulde not ſatiſfy my ſelfe therwith. And therfore leauing to tranſlate any further. I ſought howe to bring ſo good a matter as that is, into a new forme & better if it might be, and therby to make it the playner and alſo the briefer, in which my doinge I truſte, if Griſon him ſelfe were liuing, I ſhould not offende him at all. For ſith it was his intent to make other men partakers of his excellent knowledge in this art, ſo neceſſary to be lerned, and therfore of ryght to be publiſhed: it wolde not greue hym then to haue his meaning ſo playnly expreſſed in an other tong, as the readers might eaſely vnderſtand the ſame. Which whether I haue ſo done or not, I refer that to your L. iudgement, who hath no ſmall ſkill, not onely in both tunges, but alſo in the art ſelfe, wherein your H. is a chiefe mayſter, aſwell by knowledge as alſo by office, and therfore moſt mete to be both

iudge and patrone of this booke. Which if it shall please your H. to receyue wyth a willynge hande, and seme to allowe my doyng therin, by encouraging the esquires and ryders of the stable in breakyng the Queenes Ma. horses, sometimes to folow thinstructions therof (and the rather for that old Alexander their firste mayster, was him selfe as I vnderstande, sometyme Grysons scholer) and so geue an example to all others in like maner to folowe the same: And specially now whilest the quenes Maiesty mindeth so graciously to prouide for ỳ breding and kepyng of great horses, whiche no doubt shoulde be to the greate profiting of this our comon weale: In the most partes wherof, partly for lacke of arte, and partly for lack of exercise, chiualry is sore decayed: I shal not only thinke my labour wel bestowed: but also to haue receiued ỳ greatest reward ỳ I could possible wish or desire. Yea, and shalbe encouraged therby, to attempt hereafter some other thyng of more weight. Wherin I may shewe my selfe thankefull to your L. for so courteously acceptynge this my labour & good wyll, whiche is and shalbe alwayes bent to do your H. suche poore seruice as I can.

¶ A Chapter to the Reader, towchynge the order obserued in this booke: verye necessarye to be read and well considered before he enter anye further.

Endeuoring my selfe gentle reader, for your better vnderstandinge to reduce Grysons boke, whiche in the Italion tounge dothe treate of the arte of rydynge, and of breakynge greate Horses, into a more briefe and compendious waye of teachinge, then hee to my Iudgemente hathe therin obserued: I soughte firste to what ende suche labour was chiefly to be employed vpon great horses. And I founde that eyther it was to make them horses of seruice, or els horses of pleasure, called Stirers. Then I cõsidered what things were incident to an horse of seruice, and what to a horse of pleasure or Stirer. And of those thinges which were common to them both, and which were appertaynyng to eche one perticulerly. And firste I founde that to a horse of seruice belonged these chiefe poyntes here folowinge. That is to say, to trot cleane & luskely,

luckely, to stop lightly, to turne on both handes redely, to galloppe strongelye, to maneg with single turne surelye, and lastly of all to passe a carire swiftly. And in all his doinges from the beginning to the ending, to reane well, and to beare his head steddely. Al which things are also cõmon to ỹ stirrer, but then it is requisite that the stirrer besides all this, learne to bounde aloft with all soure, & yarke withall, to gallop the gallop galliarde, to fetch the Capriole, to doe the Corvetti, and such like kind of saltes. But yet this sufficeth not, vnles I might also know the nighest meanes for a horse to attayne to these feates, & what order was therin to be obserued, which whilest I sought, behold the riders office wholy discouered, wherby I might well perceiue that vnles the rider were first instructed in all those thinges that appertayned vnto his office: the horse coulde neuer be well broken. Wherefore minding to comprehende all thinges in iii. bokes, I thought it most mete to begin with the ryder in teaching him first howe to know a good horse, and apt to be taught, aswell by hys coulour & markes, as shape, to thintent he bestowe not his labour vpon a Jade, or Rotle. Then howe to tame him, and to make him so gentle as he may suffer to be ridden. After that, how to sit him and to behaue him selfe in ỹ poynt like a horseman. Then I proceded further, declaring the iii. chiefe pointes, wherin the perfection of a horseman consisteth. That is to say, in knowing how to helpe, to correct, and to cherishe his horse, and with what instrumentes, and generally how and when to vse them, and so I ende the first boke That done I come to the horses lessons, which he hath to learne for his parte, declaring what order is to be kepte therin: to which soeuer of those iii. endes beforesaid, he be broken. And to euery lesson I ioyne such helpes and corrections, as are mete to be vsed for redresse of such faultes, as most cõmonly chaunce therin: whych faultes for the most part I call errors, making a distinction betwene errors and vices, attributing errors to the lacke of knowledge, and vices to nature, or euil custome. As these be vices, to be restif, to be rammege, to lye downe in the water, to be skittishe, which for distinction sake I do otherwise cal generall faultes, because they may chaũce in euery lesson. Of the most part, of which faults I do treat seuerally in the third boke, declaring therewith the

corrections

corrections of the same. For otherwise I shoulbe be driuen to make many digressions, and to interrupte the tenoure of my talke, which I loue not to do. And I say here of the most part, because ther be some vices so peculier, & so incident to certayne of the horses lessons, as I am forced to myngle the correctiõ of the same, euen amongst the errors, as occasion requireth, and yet therby no order broken at all, as any man of iudgemente, I am sure will easely confesse. When the horse being throughly broken in all poyntes, mete for him to learne: be he horse of seruice or styrer: I finallye teach you how to ryde him to the best shewe before a prince. And there endeth the second booke. In the third booke I treate onely of the corrections of the generall vices aforesaid, and of the diuersity of bits, and to what purpose euery one serueth. The order of all which three bookes shall more playnely appeare vnto you, by the contentes of ỹ chapters hereafter folowing. And though Gryson semeth to vse the like order, that I do in the very beginnyng: yet he doth not continew the same, but immediately maketh so many digressions, and interlaceth so many and dyuers matters together, as were ynough to confounde the memory of a very discrete reader. And yet Gryson not to be blamed, for not obseruing that order or Petheode in writynge, whiche perhaps he neuer had learned: But rather muche to be praysed and commended of almen, for vttering in the best maner he could, that his assured knowledge which he had gotten with great labour and contynuall exercisyng him selfe in ryding, the space of xl. yeares and aboue. Of which knowledge what lacke we Englishmen haue had, & specially haue at this present, is best sene at a mustre, when the Queenes Maiesty hath nede of horse and horsemen, where ofttimes you shall see some that sit on their horses like winde shaken reedes, handlinge their handes and legs like weauers. Or if the horseman be good, then the horse for hys parte shall be so broken, as when he is spurred to go forwarde, he will go backewarde. And when hys ryder wolde haue him to turne on the right hand, he wil turne cleane contrary. And when he should stoppe, he will arme him selfe, and runne away, or els stoppe sooner then his ryder wolde haue hym or vse such lyke toyes. For redresse of which faultes, both in man and beast, this booke is chiefly set forthe, with the rules,

les wherof, if you that lack knowledge shall vouchsafe to acquainte your selues, not onely by reading, but also by exercise of rydynge, I doubt not but by your spedye profityng therein, you shall haue iust occasion to be thankefull, both to Grysон for the first inuention of the matter, and also to me for disposing and reducing the same into a playne forme and order of teaching. And you shal haue very good cause also to be thankful vnto my deare frende M. John Acheley M. of the Queenes Maiesties Iewel house. For by ỹ dayly practising of the rules of Grysон his booke, I sawe him without the helpe of any other teacher, bryng two of hys horses, and specially that whiche he calleth his Balle, vnto such perfection, as I beleue few gentlemen in this realme haue the lyke. Which euident proofe together with his encouraging me vnto it, made me the more willing to take the matter in hande. In hope that other men woulde with lyke diligence vse the lyke exercise, wishinge all gentelmen lackyng hys qualityes, to be his lyke indede. And that not onely in this exercise, but also in many other his vertuous exercyses, as well of mynd as of bodye. To thintent they may deserue as he doth the loue, fauour, and commendacion of all men, whereof I haue no doubte at all, because I my selfe do knowe a number of yonge gentlemen that be geuen in these oure dayes, to suche cyuill, and commendable exercyses, (as God geuinge theim grace to continue therin,) in tyme to come they will be no small ornament vnto this realme. Whiche I pray God to graunte, and there I end bidding you well to fare.

FINIS

A Table declaring the contentes of the three bookes folowing. The first booke treateth of the riders office and is deuided into these Chapters.

Of the coloures of horses, and which be best Cap.i.
Which horses be well marked, and which be not. Cap.ii.
What shape a good horse ought to haue. Cap.iii.
How to tame a wilde horse or Colte, at what age, how to make him come to a blocke, and what kynde of bridle, or rather halter, and saddle, you shall first put vpon him. Cap.iiii.
What the rider ought to doe, before he take his horse backe, and beinge mounted, how he ought to sit in his saddle. Cap.v.
Of the three chiefe pointes wherin consisteth the perfection of a horseman, and how many kindes of helpes and corrections there be. Cap.vi.
To what ende such helpes and corrections serue. ca.vii.
Of the voyce, of the tounge, and sounde of the lyppes. Cap.viii.
Of the rod. Cap.ix.
Of the bridle and reanes. Cap.x.
Of the Caulfes of the legges, and of the heles. Cap.xi.
Of the stirruppe. Cap.xii.
Of the Spurre. Cap.xiii.
Of the musroll and the martingale. Cap.xiiii.

The second booke treateth of the horses lessons, and is deuided into these Chapters.

Of the horses lessons and order thereof in generall. Cap.i.
Of treadinge the ringe, and to what ende it serueth. Cap.ii.
The helpes and corrections mete to be vsed whilst he treadeth the ringes. Cap.iii.
Of stoppinge. Cap.iiii.
Of going backe, and whereto it serueth, and howe you shall teache your horse to doe it. Cap.v.
Of aduauntinge before, whereto it serueth, and how, where and when you shall teach him to do it. Cap.vi.
Corrections to be vsed when your horse aduaunceth to highe, and out of order, or when you woulde not haue him. Cap.vii.
How to make him parke, & to be light behind. Ca.viii.
How to teache your horse to tourne redelye on bothe handes. Cap.ix.
How to correct your horse, when he is harder to turne on the one side then on the other. Cap.x.
Sixe other corrections for the same fault.
Of the whole tournes and double tournes, howe and when to teach your horse to make them. Cap.xvii.
Helpes and corrections mete to be vsed for the redresse of such errours, as most commonly do hap in makinge the double tournes. Cap.xviii.
Of the Chambetta, what it is, whereto it serueth, and how you shall teache your horse to do it. Cap.xix.

Of

Of maneginge, and howe manye kindes of maneges there be. Cap.xx.
Thorder of maneging with haulse rest, whole rest, and without rest, all three with single turne, or halfe turne Cap.xxi.
Of maneging with double tournes. Cap.xxii.
Of the helpes and corrections whiche are meete to be vsed for redresse of suche errours and faultes, as commonly chaunce in maneging. Cap.xxiii.
How and when to teach your horse to passe a Cariere. Cap xxiiii.
Of thorder of leaping and boundinge aloste, and howe and when you shall teache youre horse to leape, and yarke withal, and also to gallop the gallopgallyarde. Cap.xxv.
How you shall teach your horse to do the Capriole, and to daunce the Corvetti, and also to go sidelinge, either with his whole body or with his rumpe only. Ca.xxvi
How to ride a horse to the best shewe before a Prynce, and where best standing is for him to see. Cap.xxvii.

¶ The thirde booke treateth of the corrections of vyces, and of the diuersitie of bittes and is deuided into these Chapters folowynge.

Of the corrections of vyces in generalll. Cap.i.
Of the vices of the head and necke, and first howe to correct your horse when he beareth his head or neck awry. Cap.ii.
How to correct your horse when he beareth not righte the lower part of his head, called of the Italions Mus-

tacchio, and may be called of vs, the mosell, which comprehendeth both nose and mouth. Cap.iii.
Certaine causes, why it is bettter for a horse to beare his heade vnder then right out, or to cast it vp aloft. And then howe to correct him, if he will not bringe in hys heade, and reane as he ought to do. Cap.iiii.
How to correct your horse when he ducketh downe his heade, and beareth to low. Cap.v.
How to correct that horse which doeth ouer reache in his goinge, that is to saye, doeth smite his forefeete with his hinder feete. Cap.vi.
How to correct that horse whiche when he is chastised for anye fault with the spur, vseth to shake his head, or eares, also how to knowe by the mouing of his eares when he is maliciouslye disposed, and howe to correct him for the same. Cap.vii.
Howe to correct youre horse when he whyneth, intending to strike with his heles, or to doe some shrewdnes beinge in the companye of other horses. Cap.viii.
Of restifnes, of the kindes and causes therof. Cap.ix.
Remedies against restifnes, proceding of vile courage. Cap.x.
Remedies against restifnes, procedinge of stubbornes, and stout courage. Cap.xi.
Other corrections to be vsed against restifnes, when the ryder lacketh art, and knoweth not by order of ridyng, how to get the mastery of his horse, and to make hym to know his fault. Cap.xii.
Of the contrarye vice vnto restifnes, whiche is to run away, of the causes therof, and how to correct the same Cap.xiii.

How

How to correct that horse that will reare right vp whe he is corrected for anye fault wyth a sticke vppon the head. Cap.xiiii.
How to correct that horse that will fall downe to the grounde, when he is a little werye or prouoked to do any thinge whiche he would not willingly do. Cap.xv.
How to correct that horse which passing through anye water, will lye downe in the same, & what is the cause of such vice. Cap.xvi.
How to correct that horse which is skittish or fearefull and will start at euery thinge, and whereof suche vyce procedeth. Cap.xvii.
How to embolden your horse, and to make him hardye against other horses. Cap.xviii.
How to make your horse to abide both stafe, sworde, great noyse, gunshot, or any other thing. Cap.xix.

OF the vices of the mouth, and causes therof in generall. Cap.xx.
How to correct that horse which will eyther drawe vp the bitte with his toung, or defend the same with his neither lippe. Cap.xxi.
How to correct that horse which wil mow or wry with his mouth, and the causes wherof suche vice doth procede. Cap.xxii.
Of the kyndes of byttes, together with their names, and partes belonging to the same. Cap.xxiii.
Of the chekes and eyes of bittes, and also of the kirble and how they ought to be made. Cap.xxiiii.
Of close bittes, and for what mouthes they are moste mete, and also what vices they do correct. Ca.xxv.

Of

Of open bittes in generall. Cap.xxvi.
Of broken portes, and vpset mouthes, how they ought to be made, and what vices they do correct. Ca.xxviii.
Of whole portes, howe they ought to be made, and what vices they do correct. Cap.xxviii.
Of whole portes with trenches aboue, howe they ought to be made, and for what mouthes they are most mete. Cap.xxix.

EXAMPLES RECITED BY GRIson aswell in his preface, as in the latter ende of his booke, not only commending the aptnes of a horse to learne his stout courage, and longe continuance in his goodnes, but also the worthines of the arte it selfe, whereunto is also adioyned, who first found out ridynge, and who inuented the bittes, and who first vsed the seruice of horses in the fielde.

Aptnes to learne.

THere is a city within the kingdome of Naples, called Sibarye, in the which somtime horses did learne to daunce at the sounde of a Simbyan.

Stoute courage.

ALexander the great, had a horse called Bucephalus which being decked in royall ornamentes, would

suffer no man to ride on him, but kinge Alexander him selfe. Whiche horse beinge sore hurte at the takinge of Thebes, would not suffer Alexander to leaue his back, for to mount vpon any other. Such was both his courage and also loue towardes his maister, who did not forget to recompence the same. For when the horse died the kinge caused him to be solemnlye buried: and for a perpetuall memory therof, builded euen there, in steade of a sepulchre, a fayre city, and named it after the horses name, Bucephalia. Julius Cesar also had a horse which would suffer no man to take his backe, but Cesar him selfe.

Longe continuaunce.

KInge Charles the viii. departing out of Italye, only with v. C. horsemen, encountered the duke of Millane, beinge vnited with the Venetians, with Ferara and with Mantua: And vntil he came vnto Furnouo, he knew none otherwise but that he was so strong as his enemies, which were in all a. M. v. C. horsemen, wherof thoughe the kynge was aduertised, and therewith hard all men saye, it was meete to geue place, and to saue himselfe: Yet he trusting in the great knowledge and valiantnes of his horsemen, and specially of his generall called Il Signior Giouanni, Giacomo Friulzi, a Gentleman of Millan, would not so doe, but said: he would through, whatsoeuer became of it. And therefore hauinge sente before his carriage (the spoyle wherof, brought many of the gredye Italions into disorder) he him selfe being mounted vpon a greate blacke

Spanishe

Spanish horse, whiche had but one eye, and was .xxiiii yeares old, folowed with his band immediatly after, and gaue the onset, whereas both he and the horse did so valiauntlye, as in that conflict, there were slaine and taken on the contrary part .xvii. of the chiefest conductiers. Wherby his enemies being discomfited, he quietlye frome thence passed on, in his iourney. And the king would afterward manye tymes saye that the valiaunt courage of his horse, was the occasion of that victorye. Which horse after that he came vnto the city of Molina besides that he was no more traueled, but well fed, and tenderly kept, so longe as he liued, he was also solemply buried, when he died, by the appointment of the Lady of Burbon, sister vnto the kynge.

Another example of continuance.

When the great Capitaine came to the Exployte of the kyngdome of Naples (the campe lyinge then at Cerignola) it chaunced that whilst the Vicerov of Fraunce, being there with manye barons, prepared him selfe to fight with the Spanyardes: The next day folowing, there came a knight of Naples called Il signior Giacomo Guindazzo, who not hauinge hys horses there, went to the Signior Troiano Carracciolo, prince of Melfe, praying him to lend him a horse, only to serue in the fild that day. To whom the prince, being of his own nature verye courteous, and liberall withall, gaue him leue to go into his stable, and to take his chose of all the horses ther. Wherupon the saide Giacomo went thither: And hauingbewd them al he chose out a great

baye

bay horse, which lately came frō the couering of mares, and was .xvii. yeares old. And though the prynce perswaded him to take a yonger horse, yet he beynge expert in that faculty, and knowing which horses were best in dede, would not so do: neyther was he deceyued in his choyse. For the battel being fought the next day, the horse didde his parte notable well. In so much, as though he were sore hurt, & had many greuous woundes: yet he would neuer geue ouer, but continue to the ende, and thereby saued his riders lyfe: So as bothe horse and man, after many valiaunte actes shewed: departed the fielde with the great admiracion of all men, that did behold them. And finallye Grison attributeth so much honor and praise to a horse, as he sayeth, that the worthye state of knighthoode, toke his first beginning of this beaste, which in the Italian tounge is called Cauallo: And therof commeth Caualiero, whiche is so muche to saye in Englishe, as a horseman or knight. Wherin I beleue, Gryson toke his example at the latin worde, hauing also like deriuation. For a horse in latin is called Equus, wherof is deriued this word Eques, & is a horseman or knyght. But then most commonlye they ioyne this word auratus vnto it, saying: Eques auratus, that is a golden knight, for that he was wont to wear gylt spurres, as I take it. Or els Eques torquatus, that is a cheaned knight, for that he weareth a chean. With which kind of ornamentes, horsemen deseruynge well in the fielde were somtime rewarded in sygne of honor due to their vertue. And thoughe in these dayes rewarding of vertue beginneth to cease: yet the selfe same names of honoure doe still remaine.

The worthynes of the arte.

Moreouer to proue that the arte of rydynge and of breakyng great horses, is no vyle arte: Gryson vseth the auctoritye of the noble Poet Virgill: Who in his Eneidos, calleth king Picus, for a more excellencye and greater prayse, a tamer or breaker of horses. He geueth also the like tytle in dyuers places of hys booke to Mesaphus, the son of Neptune the god, of the sea, who as Poets faine, begot vpon Medusa the winged horse, named Pegasus, which fleyng vp to the heauens, was transformed into those sterres that be nowe called after his name. The poetes faine also that Bellerephons the sonne of kynge Glaucus, was vppon thys horse backe, when he slew the monstrous Chimera.

The first inuentours of Rydynge and of bittes, and also of the seruyng with horses in the fielde.

This Bellerophons, as some men say, was the first that inuented Rydinge on horsebacke. And the Pellitrones a people of Lapithia, founde out afterwarde the maner of bridles, bittes, and rynges, to guide horses withall. But they of Thessalia were the firste that vsed the seruice of horses in the wars, which as Gryson sayth, proceded of a iudgement, no lesse profitable then deuine.

Thus endeth the examples of Gryson.

Of

Of the coloures of horses, and vvhich be best. Cap. i.

A HORSE for the moste part is coloured accordyng as he is complexioned, and as he is complexioned, so is he also well or euill condicioned. Again he is complexioned accordyng as he doth participat more or lesse of any of the .iiii. Elementes. For if he hath more of the earth then of the rest, he is melancholy, heauy, and faint harted, and of coulor a blacke, a russet, a bright or dark dunne. But if he hath more of the water, thē is he flegmatique, slowe, dull, and apt to lose flesshe, and of coulor most commonlye milke white. If of the aire, then he is a sanguine, and therfore pleasant, nimble, and of colour is most commonlye a baye. And if of the fier, then is he cholorique, and therefore lighte, whote, and fiery, a sterer, and seldome of anye great strength, and is wont to be of Coulour a bright sorel. But when he doeth participate of all the foure Elementes, equallye and in dewe proporcion, then is he perfect, and most commonly shal be one of these coloures folowinge. That is to saye, a browne baye, a dapple graye, a blacke full of siluer heares, a blacke lyke a moore, or a fayre rone, which kindes of horses, are most commendable, most most temperate, strongest, and of gentellest nature. And next to these are such as be most like in colour to them: as the bright bay, the darke baye, that hath neyther learinge looke, mealy nose, nor white flanke, The bright sorell, the flye bitten white, the white liard lyke syluer, hauinge hys outermost partes blacke, as the tippes of hys eares, his

maine, his taile, or all fowre feete. And if he hath a lyste from his maine to hys tayle, he is so much the better. To these also may be added the ashye graye, hauing al his .iiii. feete striped. And note this, that as all well coloured horses, are so muche the better for hauing some signe of adustion, that is to say, some blacke marke, at the least in their nethermost partes: So of all euill colored horses, those are best which haue theyr outermost partes blacke. But if he be a bright sorell, a browne bay with redde flankes, a perfect blacke, or of any other colour, betokening Colour adust: Then to mittygate hys fiercenes, he had nede to haue some whyte marke. Wherefore syth good markes be as necessarye as good coulours, I will treate of them particularly in the next chapter folowinge.

¶ Which horses be well marked and which be not. Cap. ii.

The horse that hath any white marke, is called of the Italyons Balzano, but specially when he is white footed, And of white feted horses there be iiii. good, and .iii. bad.

¶ The good be these.

The first is he that hath a white forefoote on the farre syde.

The seconde, that hathe a whyte hynderfoote, on the neare syde.

The third, that hath both his hinder feete whyte.

But note that suche whyte muste not mount aboue the pastorns, for that were an euill sygne, betokening debility, and such horses be not called Balzani, but Calzari, which

which is so much to saye in englyshe, as hosed.

¶ The. vii. bad.

The first is he that hath a white forefote on the neare side.

The second, that hath a whyte hinderfoote on the farre syde, and is called of the Italyons Arzeglio.

The thirde, that hath both hys forefeete whyte.

The fourth, that hathe his forefoote and hinderfoote both on the farside white, and is called of the Italions Trauato, that is to say, trauersed.

The .v. that hath his forefoote and hinderfoote bothe on the neare side white, and is likewyse called Trauato.

The syxt, that hath hys forefoote on the neareside, and his hinderfoote on the farsyde crossewyse both white, and is called of the Italions Trastrauato, crosse trauersed.

The .vii. that hath hys foorefoote on the farreside, and his hinderfote on the neareside crossewise both white, and is also called Trastrauato.

And note, that if any of the whyte sete betokenyng eyther good or euil, be mingled or spiēt wyth blacke spotes, it confirmeth so muche the more, the good or euill signification therof. It is an excellent good marke also for a horse to haue a white starre in his forheade, or a white lyst or fyllet, comming down on his heade, without touchyng his browes, and not fully arriuing to his nose.

The horse that hath a whyte rumpe or tayle, is called of the Napolitans Rapicane, and is most commonlye a good horse, but if he haue any whyte therwyth before, that sygnifieth hym to be of small force.

The

The horse that is flyebitten onlye on the shoulders, or on the flankes, can neyther be strong, nor able to endure anye hardnes. For suche a horse most commonlye is foled in the heate of sommer, betwixt July and August, when flyes are stirring, from the stinging wherof he is not able to defende him selfe, neyther with heade nor tayle, and therfore is called of the Italions Attaffanato that is, flyestong or fliebitten.

And besides that, his damme can haue no plentye of milke to fede him with, the grasse being burnt by with heat. The white horse that is altogether blacke fliebitten, or red fliebitten, is a good horse.

But if he be a Lyard and marked wyth a fewe redde or tawney flyebitinges, only on his cheekes, or on his nose, that is a tygne of a stubborne Jade and headstronge.

The whall eyed horse called of the Italyons Gazzo, is most commonlye wilye, and full of shrewde toyes.

The horse, whose balles of his eyes are whyte, seyth not well in tyme of snow.

The horse that hath no kind of white marke, is moste commonlye tractable, but then he is ramege, that is to saye, he wyll kepe no iuste pace, in his going, but fareth as one that goth with .ii. mindes, twyxt going and not going.

And though to haue no white marke maye chaunce to all coulores: yet it chaunceth moste to the blacke and darke bay. And note that when suche blacknes proceadeth of choler adust: the horse is furious, bolde and wily, and is called of the Italions Zaino. But if of melancholy naturall, then he is feareful, dull and slow, which thinges are more easye to be knowen by his doynges

then

then by his markes.
The horse that hath an Ostriche fether eyther on his forheade, on both sides of his maine, or on the one side, or els behinde on his buttockes, or in anye place where he himselfe can not see it, can neuer be euill horse.
But though the horse be neuer so well coloured and marked, yet is he lyttle worth, onles his shape be accordinglye. And therefore I will shewe you what shape a good horse ought to haue, begynninge at his neyther partes, wheron a good horseman ought first to fyxe his eye and minde.

What shape a good horse ought to haue. Cap. iii.

A Good horse then would haue a black, smoth, drie, large, round, and hollowe houe, and if it be soft or tender, and brode about the hele, it is the greater signe of lightnes.
The reason is, for that the horse from the day of his foling, treadeth light vpon the grounde, for he is afrayde to truste to his houes, beynge as yet verye tender, and therfore straineth his forelegs, and his backe the more.
The crownes aboue his houes would be smal & heary.
His pastors short, and that neyther to lowe, nor yet to high, so shall he be strong beneth, & not apt to founder.
His ioyntes great wyth long feawter lockes behinde, which is a sygne of force.
His legges straight and brode.
His knees great, leane and plaine.
His thighes full of sinewes, the bones whereof would be shorte, equall, iuste and well proportioned, and the brawnes

brawnes therof when he standeth with hys legges together, must be much more distaunt one from another aboue towardes the breast, then beneath.
His shoulders, longe, large, and full of flesshe.
His breast, large and rounde.
His necke rather long then short, great towardes the breast, bending in the midst, and slender towardes the heade.
His eares smal or rather sharpe, and standing right vp, beynge of a iust length and largenes, accordyng to the stature of the horse.
His forehead, leane and large.
His eyes, blacke and great.
The hollownes of his browes well filled and shooting outwarde.
His iawes slender and leane.
His nostrels so open and pusted vp as you may see the reade within, apt to receyue ayre.
His mouth great.
And finally, his whole heade together woulde be lyke a sheapes heade.
His maine would be thinne and long, albeit I doe not mislike the opinion of those that woulde haue it to be thycke, so that it be not ouerthycke, for as the thynnesse betokeneth aptnesse to be taught, so doeth the indifferent thicknes betoken strength.
Hys wythers or walleys woulde not onely be sharpe pointed, but also ryght and straight, so as a man maye plainly see from thence the departure of hys shoulders.
His backe woulde be shorte, and that neyther rysinge nor fallynge, but euen and playne, so shall it be stronge.

Whych

Which you shal sone try, if you ryde him.
For the horse that hath a strong backe, either in his going, or galloppynge, wyll continuallye gather his bodye rounde together, aduauncyng himselfe behind, and liftyng vp his rumpe, whych the Italyons call Aggruppiggiare: yea, and wil do the like when soeuer you shall require it, or at the least wyll not shrynke or distend hys backe, but will kepe it alwaies at one stay. Wheras if he hath a feble backe, eyther he wyl go rollyng behynd, or els if he aduaunceth hym selfe for a whyle at the firste setting forth, yet he is not able to continue withal. His sides woulde be longe and large, with a small space betwyxt the hindermost rybbe, and the hucklebone. His belly long & great, but orderly hidden vnder his ribbs. His flankes not gawnte, but full, hauing naturall freezeled heares growynge on both sides, and the hygher that suche heares mount, the better.
His rumpe round and plain, with the fal of a little gutter, and with a large space betwixt the .ii. hucklebones. Hys thyghes large and longe, wyth bones well fashyned and full of flesh on eyther syde. The hammes wherof if they be leane, drye and straighte, and the houghes large and crooked like a Hart, it is a sygne of swyftnes. But if the hammes be croked, & the houghes straight, it is a signe that he is good for trauel.
Hys tayle woulde be full of heares, and longe downe to to the grounde, the tronchen wherof must be of a measurable bygnes, and wel couched betwixt his thyghes, notwithstandynge, some doe saye that a thynne taile and cryspe is as good.
His stones & yard woulde be small. And finallye all hys

membersꝭ would be correspondent to the greatnes of his body, which altogether would be fashioned much like a stag, somwhat lower before, then behind, but not ouermuche, for that were daungerous in runnyng. And the greater and stronger the horse is, the meeter for the war, and the lyghter and more nymble he be, the meter to make a tryer.

Thus hauyng shewed you how to know a good horse and apt to be taught, alwel by his coulour & marks, as shape: It resteth now that I teach you how to breake him, and to handle him, and fyrste yf he be wylde or a Colte, how to tame him.

How to tame a wylde horse or Colte, at what age, how to make him to come to a blocke, and what bridle and saddle you shall fyrst put vpon hym. Cap. iiii.

ALthough you may begyn to handle your horse when he is full .ii. yeares olde, and vpward, yet it were better to tarye vntyl he be .iii. yeres and a halfe olde, so shal he be the better able to endure trauell, the ioyntes of his bodye and legges beynge then somewhat knyt together. For whiche cause the Emperour Federico, would not haue a horse to be ridden before he were full .iiii. yeares olde. And at the first handlynge of hym, you shall put on his heade a certayn Collet or halter, called of the Napolitans Cauazana, made in suche sorte as is hereafter expressed in the first figure of the thyrde boke, whiche I caused to be cut of purpose, because that Grison would in no wyse haue a

yonge

ponge horse to be ridden at the first with anye bitte, for feare of marryng his mouth. In steade of which Cauetsane, our Riders in Englande vse a Cheane not muche vnlyke in effect vnto the cauetsane, but yet in my iudgement not so mete for a ponge horse, for that it strayneth the tender gristle of his nose to sore, whyche kynde of halter or Cauetsane, partly for shortnes of speache, and partlye for likenesse of sygnification, I will call from henceforth a headstraine. And in puttinge the headestraine on, you must vse your horse so gentlie, as he may not onlie be content to were it, but also to be quietly led therby. Whereunto, with gentle handlynge you shall quickly bryng him. Neyther must you vse anye other kinde of brydle than thys, or any other saddell for feare of hurting his backe, then a soft pad of strawe. Until your horse can trot cleane, kepe the ring, stop and tourne roundly on both handes. And in learnyng to syt close in the pad, you shall also sit close in your saddle, but whatsoeuer saddle you put vpon his backe, see that it stande alwayes more forward then backward, onles the horse be ouerlow before. For the more forwarde that the saddle doth stand, the horseman shal sytte therin the more ryght vp, and wyth the better grace. The horse than beynge thus brideled and saddled: Cause him to be brought foorth to some blocke, whereas if he will not stand styll whylst you take his backe, then let him that bringeth hym make muche of hym, and somtyme threaten him with hys voyce, & thrust him with his handes on the ryght side towards the block, wherbpō you shal stand, continually cherysshing hym with your hande, to thintent he may suffer you to get vp. But if he be so fro-

warde and ſo ſtubborne, as he wyll not come nighe the blocke: Then al to rate hym wyth a terrible voyce, and beate him your ſelfe wyth a good ſtycke vpon the head betwyxt the eares, not leauinge hym vntyll you haue made him to come to the block, whether he wil or not. Remembrynge alwayes to make muche of hym when he ſheweth himſelfe obedient vnto you. Or if you wyll, you maye obſerue thys maner followynge.

Leade hym into ſome newe plowed ground, and there take the reanes of the headeſtraine by the outermoſte ende in your ryght hande, and cauſe ſome other manne to take a ſticke in his hand, & by beating the horſe therwith vpon the rumpe, to force hym to trot, or gallop, ſo faſt as he may driue, tournynge ſtyll rounde vppon the ryght hand, durynge which time, you ſhall not remoue forward your right fote from the place where you are. But onely go round with your left foote, towardes the horſe, accompanynge hym in euerye tourne, ſo as you your ſelfe maye remayne alwayes in the middeſt of the Circle, which the horſe maketh. And immediatly after the horſe hath bene wel toſſed, and wearyed, wyth continuall tournynge on the ryght hand: you ſhal chaunge foote and hande, and keepyng ſtyll your place, cauſe him to make as manie tournes on the left hande. And thus you may turne him and toſſe him on both handes, vntill you haue gotten the maſtrye, and wholly ſubdued him. But if the horſe be ſo ſtubborne, and ſo frowarde, as one is not ſufficient to make him to goe tournynge ſo ofte about: Then beſydes the helpe of more perſons, with wandes in their handes, you your ſelfe may haue alſo in your left hand, a lenger wand then any of theirs

and

and chaunging tournes, you shall also chaunge the rod into your ryght hand. By meanes wherof, it is possible that you youre selfe alone, by beatynge him sometyme with the one hande, and sountyme wyth the other, shal make hym wythout the helpe of any other, to go frelye about. For this kinde of correction is so greuous to any horse, of what age so euer he be, but specially to a Colt, that it wyll make him so gentle as a lambe, and to suffer you to do wyth hym what you lyst. Thus haynge taught you how to taine your horse in such sort, as he shal suffer you to take his backe: It is requisite that be fore you mount vpon him, I put you in remembraunce what you haue to do. And than beynge mounted, how to syt hym, and how to behaue your selfe in al pointes, like a horseman.

What the Ryder ought to doe, before he take his horse backe, and beyng mounted, how he ought to sit in hys sadel. Ca. v.

FIrst than see that your horse be surely guyded, and if he be come to weare a bytte, see that the kurble thereof be fastened as it ought to be. And when you are mounted, make the reanes of your bridell euen, and of a iuste lengthe, wythoute styrrynge youre horse, vntill you haue sattled your selfe and your clothes about you. That done, make him to goe forwarde about .ii. paces fayre and softlie, and then stay againe. After that, pace him or trot hym to the place where you mind to breake him. But after that he commeth to weare a bit, and is throughlye broken: then to keepe him in bre with the

double

double tournes heareafter taughte: you shall in the ende of the forsayde twoo paces, geue hym also syxe whole tournes, that is to say first .ii. on the right hand then .ii. on the left, and last of all .ii. on the right. Or els if you wyll but .iii. whole tournes, that is for eche hand one, so as the first and last be on the ryght hande. And see that you do not onelye sit him boldly, and without feare, but also conceyue wyth your self that he and you do make as it were but one bodye. And that you both haue but one sence and one wyll. And accompanye him with your bodye in any mouinge that he maketh, alwayes beholding his heade right betwixt hys eares, so as youre nose maye directlye aunswere his foretop. Which shalbe a signe vnto you to know thereby, whether you sit right in youre saddle or not, and whether your horse beareth his head right or not. And lette the ridge bone of your backe be euen with his. And let your left hand holding the reanes of the bridle, be euen with his creast, and in any wise kepe your thighes and knees close to the saddel, holding downe your legges straight lyke as you do when you are on foote. And lette your feete rest vpon the stirruppes in their due places, bothe hele and toe standing in suche sorte, as when you shall tourne your head, as farre as you can on the one syde, wythout mouyng your body, and lookyng downward to your stirrup: you shall perceyue that your toe doth directlye aunswere the tip of your nose. And according as the saddle is made, so shall you ryde longe or shorte. But alwayes let your right stirrup be shorter then the other by halfe a hole, and kepe your stirrup leathers alwayes vnder youre knees: albeit to ride with the stir-

rup

rup leather aboue the knee, was thoughte by men of olde tyme, more comlye, beinge partlie then constrained therunto, for that their horses were barded after suche a sort, as onlesse they did ride so, and that wyth verye longe spurres beside, they coulde not reache their bellies. Notwithstanding, to ride as we do nowe a dayes is a great deale more sure. But to sit a horse well, or to ride both sure and cleane is not sufficient to make a perfect horseman, and therfore it is necessarie that here I also declare vnto you, wherin the perfection of a horseman chiefely consisteth.

Wyche be the thynges that make a perfect horseman. Cap. vi.

GRison sayeth, that besydes the helpe of a good Constellacion, enclining you to folow continually, wyth a feruent zeale the scoole of Mars: to make you a perfect horseman, three thinges be requisyte. Fyrst, to knowe howe and when to helpe your horse. Secondlye, howe and when to correct hym. And thyrdly, how and when to cherysshe hym, and to make muche of hym.

Whiche iii. thynges beynge as generall kyndes, haue many specialties and particularities belongyng vnto them. And though they doe seeme wholye to appertayne to the office of the Ryder, yet can I not make you throughlye to vnderstande them, vntill I come to entreate of the Lessons, whiche the horse for hys parte hath also to learne. Because in dede they muste goe both together. Notwithstandynge to thintent I maye vse fewer wordes hereafter, (you beyng somwhat instructed

ted before) I wyll treate of them here in so good order as I can. For though I can not shewe you, when and how to vse these thynges in time, vntyll I come to the horses lessons, yet I maye shewe you whyche they be, how many there be, to what end euery one serueth, and generally the vse of the same. And first you shall vnderstande, that you maye helpe youre horse .vii. maner of wayes. That is to saye, wyth your voyce, wyth youre tounge, with your rodde, with the brydell, with the caulfes of your legges, with your stirruppe, and wyth your spurs. Agayne you maye correct him vii. maner of waies, ỳ is to say, wyth your voyce, rod, calues of your leggs, bridle, stirrup, spurs, & with treading the ring, in such sort as shalbe hereafter expressed: but you can cherish or cope hym no more but .ii. maner of wayes, ỳ is to saye, eyther wyth your voice in speaking to him gently, or els by clawing him on the necke with your hand, or with the nether ende of your rod. And though that helpes and corrections in the doinge, seme in a maner all one: yet are they diuerse, hauynge respecte to the tyme, for the one goth before erroꝛ, and the other commeth after. For you helpe your horse to thintent he should not erre: But you correct him for that he hath alredy erred: But it is not so easy to know the due time and measure of helping him, as it is to know when and how to correct him. And therefore I woulde not wyshe you to be to busye in helpynge him, vntill you can kepe tyme and measure, with both hand and heele, lest youre horse not vnderstanding your mind, grow to some disorder. But rather vse for a whyle, onelye to correcte him, when he erreth, so shall he be afraide to do the like agayne. And

In the meane tyme, by exercise, you shall learne as well the time of helping, as of correcting, and so muche the sooner, for that you see the instrumentes wherewyth you helpe or correct, be all one.

¶ To what ende suche helpes and corrections serue. Cap. vii.

The voyce is that which anye horse feareth most, and is nedefull in all disorders.
The wand or rod serueth to correct the disordering of his head, and to dryue shrewde toyes out of his minde.
The brydell correcteth bothe heade, necke, and mouth, and maketh hym to reane well, and doeth helpe muche to embolden, or to inan him.
The caulfes of the legges, and likewise the stirrups, ordereth alwel the hinder parts, as foreparts the of horse
The Spurres do not only make hym steddye and iust, but also subiecte and quicke to vnderstande his riders mind. The correction of treading the ring, maketh him iust, alwell in his manege, as in euery other feate.

¶ Of the sounde of the voyce, toungue and lyppes. Cap. viii.

But first as touching the voyce, you shall vnderstande that according as the sygnification of the noyse or word is: So is it eyther a correction, a helpe, or a cherishing. For if you would correct him for anye shrewde toye or obstinacye, you must al to rate him with a terrible voyce, saying to

him. Ah traitor, Ah villain, tourne here, ſtop there, and ſuche like. But yf you woulde helpe hym at anye time, then you muſt vſe a more mylde and chearfull voyce, as when you run hym, to ſay hey, hey, or now now. Lykewyſe if you woulde haue him to go backe, you muſt ſay wyth a lowe voyce, backe boye, backe I ſay. Alſo if you woulde helpe hym to aduaunce at the ſtop, you muſt ſay cherfully hup, hup, likewiſe to make him light behind, you muſt ſaye darter, darter, or vſe ſuch tearmes as you ſhal thinke good. But if you would cheriſh youre horſe or coy him for doing wel, then your voyce muſt be moſt milde of al. As when you ſaye, hola, hola, or ſo boye ſo, or vſe ſuch like coying words. And whilſt we talke here of the voyce, it ſhal not be amyſſe alſo, to ſhew you that the ſound of the tounge is a verye neceſſarye helpe, and meete to be vſed, aſwell at the ſtop, as in the tournes, both ſingle and double, I meane that ſound which you commonly make, by turning vp the typ of your toung almoſt into the middle palat of your mouth, and then ſodenly loſing it againe from thence with a Chirke. There is alſo another ſounde of the lyppes as neceſſary to be vſed as any of the reſt, at ſuch tymes as ſhall be hereafter taught, and that is made by cloſing your lips harde together, and then in openyng them agayn ſomwhat wide, pronouncing as it were, this word powgh.

¶ Of the rod. Cap. iv.

THough ſome thinke that the correction and helpe of the rodde, or cogell, is not nedefull, and that it maketh the horſe to fearefull, yet experience teacheth

cheth the contrary. And specially if it be vsed as it shuld be, that is to say, if you correct him not therwith, out of tyme, but euen in the selfe same instaunt that he erreth. And assure your selfe that to correct a stubborne horse, it hath no felowe. For if you beate him but once well, and surelie therwith betwixt his eares, and vpon anye part of his head, (hys eies excepted) you shall neede to geue him the lesse correction euer after. But touchinge the rod, diuerse thinges are to be considered. As firste, when to beare a rod, secondlye how to take it, when it is first offered: thirdlye, howe to beare it at all tymes: fourthlye, to what ende it cheiflye serueth: and finallye how and when to vse it as a helpe, correction, or cherychinge to your horse. And as touching the first .ii. pointes, I say that if you breake a yonge horse whiche was neuer handled before, you shal beare no rod in any wise, vntill he come to be ridden with a byt, and then at the first time that the rod is offered you, you muste take it gentlie, for not makynge him afraide thereof: and hauing receyued it, you must coye him on the necke therewith, either by clawinge him on the withers with the nether ende therof, or els with the middle of the rod, lyinge crosse vpon his maine, and that shall make him to abyde it the better euer after. Now to ỹ other .ii. pointes. In learning how to beare your rod, as well when you pace or trot your horse, as also when you manege or runne him: you shall also learne therby how to handle both speare, and sworde, to which ende the bearing of the rod chiefiye serueth. Wherfore it shal not greue me here to shewe you the order thereof. And first when you do but pace or trot youre horse, you shall beare the

rod in youre right hande, with the pointe right vp, towardes your right ſhoulder, holdinge the neyther ende therof betwixt youre thoumbe and youre other fingers, diſtended and not cloſed. And when you woulde occupye it, you ſhal let the point fal either on the left ſide, or on the right, according as occaſion ſhall require.

But when you manege youre horſe, you ſhall ſtreatche out your arme towardes your right thighe, and couche your rod croſſwiſe ouertwharte the horſes necke, and when he hath made his firſt courſe, and turned on the right hande: Then a litle before the end of his ſecond courſe, when he is in a maner ready to turne on the left hande, you ſhal lift your rodde from thence, and holde it with the point right forth, on the right ſide of his hed, not far from his eye, or els ſomwhat lower towardes the eye of the bit. and as he chaungeth tournes to and fro, ſo ſhall you chaunge the placing of your rod either of the one ſide, or of the other. Which be the. ii. cheife warding places of the ſword.

Or if you will, you may holde your rod as you woulde doe a ſpeare, when you runne, that is with the pointe vpward, and the nether end low towards your thigh, but not reſting vpon your thigh, & a litle before that ye come to the place of tourning, you may let the point fal on that ſide, whiche is requiſite, and ſo ſoone as youre horſe hathe made his tourne, to holde it againe, with the point vp as before, wherbyy ou ſhal lerne to charge and diſcharge a ſtaffe.

Now as touching the vſage of your rod in helpinge or correcting your horſe, (for the waye of cheriſhinge him therwith is before taught) bicauſe I cannot as I haue

hers

heretofore saide, teache you the particularities thereof, vntil I come vnto the horses lessons: Let it suffice you therefore in the meane tyme, to learne these generall rules here folowing. First if your horse will not tourne on any syde that you would haue him, then beate him with your rod on the contrarye side. As for example, if you woulde haue him to tourne on the right side, then beat him on the lefte shoulder, and if you woulde haue him to tourne on the lefte side, then strike hym on the right shoulder. Likewise if he be harder or heauyer, or goe more disorderlye on the one side then on the other, beare your rodde for the most part on that side, to thintent the sight ther of may put him in remembraunce of his fault. Againe, when you would haue him light before, strike him on the forepartes, as on his shoulders, and forelegs, and when you woulde haue him light behinde, strike him on the flankes, rompe and hanches. In what time, and how much, shal be taught you hereafter.

¶ Of the Bridle and reanes. Cap. r.

GRison compareth the bridle vnto the steam of a ship, for as the shippe is wholy guided by the steame, so the horses head is onelye ruled by the bridle, and therfore this is an instrument which requireth many consideratiõs, not only for the diuers fashions of bittes, together with the members therof, as the cheekes, kurbles, portes, trenches, and suche like, meete to serue diuerse mouthes, and to correct diuers vices, as hereafter shal be decla-

be declared in the third booke at large, and set out with figures: but also for the knowyng how and when to vse the same. For it is the riders part, first to knowe when to ride his horse with a bit, then with what maner of bit, and how to vse the same, at the first putting of it in to the horses mouth, and in what part of his mouthe the bit hath to rest. Then howe to holde the reanes, when euen together, and when one shorter then another, and what measure he shall kepe with his hande, in bearinge harde or loose, highe or lowe, when to vse false reanes and when to leaue them, when and howe to correct him with the bridle, and when to helpe him: of all whiche thinges I entende here to speake briefly, and so plainlie as I can. First therfore when your horse can trot cleane, and kepe the ringe, yea, and stoppe and tourne indifferently well on both handes.

Then take a plaine Cannon with right chekes, such a one as hath bene somwhat worne before, and put it on with the headstall ouer his headstraine, makinge him with the reanes therof by litle and litle to fele it in his mouth, and see that the bit lye vppon his nether gunnes a litle aboue his greate teeth or tuskes, whiche is the due resting place therof. And if the bit were first annointed with a little hony and salt, it would make him the more to delight in it, and to be alwayes champing theron, and to staye his mouth vpon it the more temperatly. For if his mouth be distempred at the beginning it is not afterward so easely holpen, whiche thinge is lytle considered of oure Englyshe horsemen, that vse to ride their yong horses euen at the first, with so rough a brake or bit as may be gotten, which is one of ỹ chiefest causes

causes why we haue so many headstrong Jades. Now as touching the holding of the reanes, you must holde them in your left hand, so as your litle finger and ringe finger may be betwirte the two reanes, and that your thombe may lie close vpon the reanes, with the brawne therof turned towardes the poinel of your sadell, and if you haue no rod when you manege him, or run him, thē you shall take the ouerplus of the reanes that hangeth downe, by the midst in your right hande, holdinge the same hard by your right thigh. And the more that you tourne the nether ende of your left fist inwarde and the the vpper ende outwarde, the more you shall bringe in your horses head, but therin you must vse discretion, according as occasion shal serue. And in dede to saye the trueth, that point appertaineth not so much to the holding of the reanes, as to the bearing of your bridle hād wherof there be. iii. maner of waies. The first is to bear it low beneath the pomell of the saddel, euen vpon the wythers, and that is to correct him. The second is, to beare it somwhat higher about the middle of the pommell, and that is to maintaine him. The thirde is to beare it vppon the vppermost edge of the pommell, and neuer much higher, and that is to be vsed onelye when you would manege him, or make him to do any thyng. For to beare the bridle hand ouer high, as the vnskilful Numidians in Affrike vse to doe, is disalowed for dyuers respectes. First for that it wearieth the arme: Secondly, if nede were, you could not haue so much power to stop your horse when you woulde. Thirdly, being in the fielde against your enemie: the bearing of your hand so highe, woulde be a trouble vnto youre defence, and a

commo-

commodity to your enemy, for that he might easely cut your reanes a sunder. Finallye, you can haue no steaddy hand vpon your horse, any time together, whereby your horse shall neuer reane well, nor yet haue a steddye head. For who so wil haue hys horse to beare his head stedily, and to reane well: let him beare his hand rather lowe then hyghe, so shall he be able to kepe it alwayes at one stay, which is one of the chiefest pointes of horsemanship. Notwithstanding, if your horse be any thinge headstronge, then when you manege him, or otherwise handle him, beare not to stiffe a hand, but rather somewhat light and temperate, for the more you force him, the lesse he will yeald. But if he hath no such fault, then doe alwayes as I tolde you before. And remember alwayes when you tourne your horse, to drawe neyther your arme nor hand, more of one side then of another, but to kepe it euen with the horses creast, and onlye by tourninge your fist a litle inwarde, or outwarde, to signifie vnto him on what hande you would haue hym to turne. And note, that for a whyle it shal not be amysse, when you ride you ride your horse, to let him weare his bridle, and his headstraine both together, vntill he be somwhat acquainted with the bridle, for then you may take awaye his headstraine, and in steade thereof, put on a paire of false reanes, which are verye necessarie for a yonge horse in the beginning, to make him beare hys head right, for bearing the ordinarye reanes; alwayes iust and euen, you may shorten the false reanes, on any side at your pleasure. Whiche false reanes, when youre horse begin to waxe somewhat perfect in his doinges, you may also take away, & ride him only with the ordi-

narye

narye reanes,and if he happen afterwarde for lacke of them to hange more of one side then of another, or to beare his heade or necke awrye:you may correcte it by bearinge the contrarye reane shorter then the other,as for example: if he wrieth more on the lefte syde, then on the right, then holdynge the bridle, as I taught you before,pul in the right reane with your forefinger, and so holde it iust betwyxt youre forefynger and youre thombe,and if nede be,you maye also ioyne your long finger vnto your forefinger,to holde it the faster.But if he wryeth more on the right side,then on the left, then you shall shorten the lefte reane by puttinge.ii. or.iii. of your neythermost fingers betwixt the reanes. But as touching the true order of correcting,and helping your horse with the bridle,in time and measure. It shall be declared vnto you hereafter,as occasion shall serue:and therefore in the meane time let these generall rules suffise you.

¶ Of the caulfes of the legges,and of the heeles. Cap.xi.

May well shewe you howe to correcte or helpe your horse,with the caulfes of your legges,and with your heles, and where to strike him, together with the diuersity of the strokes,and the names therof, and to what ende euerye one serueth. But to tell you exactly in what time,and with what measure, vntil I come vnto the horses lessons, I can not.But of one thinge I wil aduertise you in any wise at the first,

not to be to raſh, but to vſe ſuch temperance & moderacio, as you may cauſe your horſe, by litle & litle to vnderſtand your meaning, without any diſorder or confuſio. And therfore it were beſt doing wt him whileſt he learneth hys firſt leſſon, which is to tread the ring, as ſhalbe hereafter declared vnto you at large: in the whiche, according as you ſhall ſee occaſion, you ſhall helpe hym, or correct him, by ſtrykyng him ſomewhat behinde the foremer guirt, whiche is the right ſpurrynge place, eyther with the one Cauſe alone, or wyth bothe together, wyth the one heele alone, or with both euen together, or together not euen, or els with one immediatly after another. For ſo manye kindes of ſtrokes there be, ſeruing ſomtime to diuers purpoſes, and therfore haue diuers names accordingly. For the firſt is called the ſingle ſtroke of the contrary leg, wherwith you muſt helpe him to turne, on which ſide you woulde haue him. As for example, if you woulde haue him to tourne on the right hād, then you muſt touch him with your left leg. If on the left hand, then with your right leg. And likewiſe when he hangeth more on the one ſide in his goinge, then on the other, or be ſtiffer necked of anye ſide, or beare not his heade right, you muſte correcte him for the moſt part with the ſingle ſtroke on the contrarye ſide. The ſeconde is called the double ſtroke, or euen ſtroke, becauſe you muſt ſtrike him in the ſpurring place with both legges euen together, which properlye and chiefelye is to make him to go forwarde. Notwithſtanding, it ſerueth alſo many tymes to make him to turne, to ſtop, to aduaunce, and for manye other purpoſes, as you ſhall perceyue hereafter. The thyrde may be verye

well

well called the closynge stroke, because it maketh the horse to close his turne, round and iust. And the order of it is thus. When you woulde haue your horse to close his tourne wel (as for example on the right hand) then in his turning, touche him with both legges together, but not euen, that is to say, with your left legge in the true spurring place, and with your right leg somwhat more behind, towardes the horses flanke, whiche maner of striking Grison calleth in his language Attondare. The fourth serueth only as a correction for sundrye vyces hereafter to be declared, and then you must strike your horse in the spurring place. iii. or. iiii. times together with one leg after another, so faste as your legges may walke, which kind of strokes Grison calleth Botti roris pondenti, but in our toung, me thinke it were not amisse to cal it the bonching stroke, because your legges must goe like .ii. bonching betles. Or els the clinching stroke, fetchinge a similitude from the botewrightes, whose hammers when they clinche the nailes, do aunswere one another. In all which .iiii. kindes of strokes, yf you can learne to kepe time and measure, with youre legges and heeles, you shal be the better able to keepe tyme also with youre spurres, when you come to ride your horse with spurres. For there is none other difference betwixt them, but that the stroke of the one toucheth the quicke, and the other not. Because the one is blont, and the other sharpe.

Of the stirrup. Cap. xii.

THoughe the correction or helpe of the stirruppe be seldome vsed, yet it is a good helpe to a ponge

horse in the beginning, vntill he be somwhat broken. For if he carieth his heade or necke awrye, or hange of one side more then of another. By strykynge hym with the stirrup vnder the shoulder on the contrary side, you shal make him to amende his fault.

Of the Spurre. Cap. xiii.

HAuing declared vnto you in the beginninge (when I shewed you how many kindes of correctiõs & helps there wer) to what end ỹ spur serueth, & also now in a maner last of all, in speakyng of the vsyng of your legges and heeles, in what part of his bodye, you shoulde spur your horse, and how many kinds of strokes there were and when to be vsed: it resteth nowe that I shewe you when it is time to make youre horse both to abide the spur, and also to know the spur, and all the helpes therof, and where, and how you shall do the same. And first you shall vnderstand that in old time men were so ignoraunt, as they would neuer spurre their horses vntyll they were not only staide of head, but also perfect in al suche orders, as were vsed in those dayes. So that thoughe their horses were .vi. or .vii. yeares olde, yet could no man assure him self of their goodnes. For most commonly when they came afterwarde to be spurred, either they waxed so stubborne and so deuelish, as they woulde not abide the spur, but fal a leaping and flinging, and tryinge of masteries to cast their riders: or els they became so restife, and so dull therewith, as they woulde abide it to well, and stande euen styll, not once

mouing

mouing for it, & the more they were spurred, the worse they woulde be. And although that those riders had extraordinarye meanes, to make a horse to abide the spur, whether he would or not, as by forcyng him whē they spurred him to plunge into some greate water or sea, or to behange him wyth spurres made of pourpose to molest him, or els perhaps as I haue seene some ryders do, to behange him with a paire of stuffed bootes or with sande bagges, hauinge spurres or pryckes to greue him whilst they chase hym to and fro: And so to weary him that waye: yet they had no wayes to make him to know ỹ help of the spur, & therby to vnderstand the riders meaning, and all for lacke of knowledge and good consideration. They lacked knowledge, for that they would neuer almoste spurre theyr horse but when they ran him, so that the spur serued them in a manner to none other purpose. Againe, they lacked consideration, in that they suffered their horses to go so longe before they spurred theym. For they might well thinke that it was not so easy to make a horse eyther to abide or to know the spur, whē he is growen in age, strength and lustie courage, as when he is yong, simple and fearfull, and apt to rule, as a man will himselfe. And therefore I would wysh you not to dispatche the time so long but after that your horse hath worne the bridle halfe a score of times, let him learne to know the spur, be he neuer so younge, leane, or feble. Whych woulde be done, eyther whilest you cause him to trot the rynge in some newe depe plowed grounde, in helping him therewyth as hereafter shalbe taught, or els when you trotte him in the like grounde right out. And thoughe you maye

geue

geue him therewith a Cariere if you wyll: yet to auoyd all disorders that might therof ensue, the surest and redyest way is onlye to trot him: for otherwyse you must tary vntill he can run a Cariere well, and stoppe as he ought to doe, which perhappes would be to long. And of whatsoeuer disposition or mettal the horse be, dul, or quicke: Forget not in any wyse, in the selfe same instant that you put spurres vnto him, to help him with your voyce, or els wyth the sound of your lips, and that shal put bye all shrewde toyes, whereof perhaps he might otherwyse shewe you some, as to leape, to flinge, to cast his head betwixt his legges, to lye downe, or such like. And if you see that the spur doeth make him to springe forward, and to amende his pace, then make muche of hym, & so by litle and litle, you shal bring him acquainted with the spurre wel inough, and in tyme to knowe all the helpes and correctyons of the same.

But if you haue to spurre a horse that is somewhat in yeares, and of nature ranege or restyfe. Then see that in any wise you spurre him not at the first, eyther when you trot him, or runne him, but onelye whilest you pace him fayre and softlye, throughe some towne or Citye, and so goyng, sodenlye put spurres vnto him, helpynge hym in the selfe same instant, with your voyce, or wyth the sound of your lips, and force him therewyth to fall into a swyft trot, the length of .xx. or .xxx. paces, whych if he doth, make muche of hym, and for a while vse hym thus halfe a score tymes in a day, vntill he be perfect in that, whiche when you see he is: Then you maye go into the field, and there whilst you trot him in some new plowed grounde, spurre him and helpe him as before,

makyng

makyng him to gallop as hard as he may driue,a prety way together,and then staye, makinge muche of him, if he did well: Thus procedynge from soft pace to trot, and from trot to gallop,by continuall exercise,you shal make him both to feare the spurre,and also to knowe the helpe therof. Notwithstanding there be some horses of nature verye liuelye and sensible,whiche through euill breaking at the first,and afterward by sufferance, haue bene so euill accustomed, as they will neuer yelde to the spurre,but so soone as they feele it, they wyll leape and flyng, and take on like Spirites. Wherfore if any such horse chaunce to come into your handes,kyste for a whyle,ride him without spurres, and vse him to treade the ringes,vntill he hath learned to go quietlye in the same,and to kepe the true pathe. Whiche whan you see he doeth,then ride him both with spurres,and also with a good wande in youre hande. And whilest he treadeth the ring in some new plowed ground with depe forrowes,when time is,touche him wyth youre spurres at sundrie times thyse,and if he wyl then play his bagary,beat him forwith with your wande vppon the head on both sydes,and betwyxt the eares,and vpon hys forelegges,all to ratinge him at the selfe same present,with a terrible voyce,& neuer leaue hym vntyll you haue made him to yelde vnto the spurre, wythout makyng any resistaunce at al,and to thintent ꝑ he may suffer the pricke of the spurre the better,it shalbe necessary to weery him,sometime with continuall turninge & trotting him round, and ouerthwart the forrowes, and sometime by trotting and galloppinge him righte out,in one path to and fro. By meanes of whiche trauell,

nell, and often spurring him together, he shall fall into such a sweate and heate, that the strokes shall greeue him the lesse. By meanes wherof, he shall not onelye be content to abide the spur, but also learne by the stroke therof, to know your will, and to obey the same, and so much the more, if you shal not forget when he doth wel, to make muche of him. But note by the way, that this last order belongeth to a horse of a greate courage, or yf you should in such sort molest or wearie a horse of a dull spirite, he would geue ouer, and for faintnes become restiffe: and therfore a good consideration must be had as well to the horses strength, as to his vyce.

But now though I shewed you in the last Chapter before, howe manye kindes of strokes of the spur there were, and generally howe and when to be vsed, yet let it not greeue you that I repeat here some part thereof once againe with some litle addition not to be left out. First then when soeuer youre horse will not tourne, as you would haue him, or be stiffer necked of one side thē of an other, or will not carye his head right, nor cōtinue his trot, you shall correct him alwaies with the single stroke of the contrary spurre, but if he were slow in his trot, bearing his head and necke right, then you shall correct him with the euen stroke of both spurres together, for that stroke properlye serueth to quicken him, and to make him go forwarde, and vnproperly for thother purposes in the former chapter rehersed. It is requisite also that I shewe you somewhat more plainlye how to correct your horse, with one spur after another, which I called before, the clinchinge stroke, the order wherof is thus. When your Horse committeth a fault

of any

of any syde, as for example on the left syde, then geue him with one spur immediatly after another, three strokes. Wherof the first and last must be on the right syde, but if he erreth on the right side, then the first & last stroke must be on the left side. And note that after your horse wil abide the spur, and also knoweth the helpes therof it shall not be good to spur him often, but onelye when you see it very nedeful, as to direct his head and necke, when he raineth not well, or to helpe him in his single or double turnes, when you manege him, or els to giue him swiftnes when he passeth a Cariere, for ouermuch spurringe will make him swing tayled, and speciallye if he be a Gennet or Turkye horse, whose tayles be alwayes lose, and at libertye, and are not tyed as the Coursers be.

Of the musroll and the martingale. Cap. xiiii.

TO these foresayde kyndes of helpes and corrections, I thinke that Grison woulde haue also added the musroll & the martingale, but that they semed perchaunce vnto him extraordinarye thinges, and not meete to be vsed, but at certaine times, and speciallye the Martingale. Whiche though it was first inuented by Euangelista, an excellent rider, and a great horsemaister of Millan, not only to make the horse to haue a steddye heade, but also to make him light before in his aduauncyng, and in hys goyng to gather his bodye round together: yet Grison semeth not greatly to allow it: albeit he sayeth, it maye be vsed, when the horse is verye heauy before, and mar-

neyloustye vnstaid of head, neyther would he haue the horse to weare it aboue .xv. dayes together at the most. Thinkyng it in dede, a great deale better, to bryng the horse from suche faultes, by such meanes, as are by him hereafter taught. But he praiseth much the mustroll, saying that if the horse do naturallye keepe his mouthe close together, that then it can not hurt him: but if he holde it open, then it doth not only helpe him, but also correct him of that fault in suche sorte, as after that he hath bene vsed a litle therunto, it wyll make him steddy, both of mouth, heade, and necke, and to reane as he should do.

(.˙.)

The

THE SECONDE BOOKE OF THE ARTE OF RIDYNG.

Of the horses lessons in general, and order therof, and in what tyme of the day he should be taught. Cap. i.

Thus hauynge declared vnto you, wyth what instrumentes you shoulde helpe or correct your horse, and generallye howe, & when to vse them, & also howe and when to cherysh hym, as thynges onelye appertaynyng to the Riders office: I thinke it therfore now mete to shewe you what your horse hath to learne for his part, and also what order you shal kepe in breaking hym, for if a horse be taught vnorderlye, he shall neuer be perfect in any thinge. As for example, if you (as some men doe for lacke of skyll) woulde vse to galloppe your horse before he can stop well in his trotte, or to run him before he can stop well in his gallop, or to manege him with a swyft gallop, before he can stop, aduaunce, and tourne redilye on both handes: you should mar him for euer. And therfore take hede that ye duelye folow thys order heare folowyng.

First you must vse greate diligence in makynge hym to treade loftely, to kepe one path, and to trot cleane, whiche is one of the chiefest pointes of al, bycause it is harder by nature, for a Colte to trotte wel, then to go softly, to runne, or to gallop.

Secondly, you must teach him to be light at stoppe.

Thirdely, to aduaunce before, and to yarke behind.

Fourthly, to turne redilye on both handes, with single

tourne and double tourne.
Fiftly, to make a sure and redy manege.
Sirtlye, to passe a swift Cariere.
And finally if your horse be nimble, and apt thereto by nature, you maye make him a sterer, by teachinge hym to bounde aloft, & to parke withal: to gallop the gallop galliarde, to featch the capriole, to do the Couetti, and such like kinde of sawltes: and in all his doyinges from the beginning to the ending, you must see that he reane well, and beare his heade stedilye, which is the foundacion of all the rest.

And by obseruing this order, with all the rules therto belonging, in suche sort as shalbe hereafter taught: ye shal within the space of foure or sixe monethes, make your horse perfect in all poyntes. Notwithstandinge there be some younge horses, so slowe of growth, as although they can do their thinges orderly, yet they shew no strength or force in their doynges, vntyll they be fyue or syxe yeres old, because their ioyntes before that time are not ful knit, nor their mouthes throwly steyed. And note that from sixe yeares to fiftene a horse beyng not maymed nor hurt, may very well continue in his goodnesse: yea and some horses perhappes will continue vntill .xx. yeares and aboue, as the examples before recyted, do well testifye.

Moreouer see that you teach your horse early in the morneyng, before you geue hym hys prouender, not faylyng in the beginning of his breaking, vntyll he be somwhat perfecte, to ryde hym euery day once. And afterwarde to ryde him twyse in a weke shall suffise, onlesse you see that such rest doth cause him to forgette his lessons.

sons, for then vntill he hath gotten that which he had lost, it shall be requisite to ryde hym agayne euerye day one houre at the least, or so long tyme as he is able wel to endure, leauyng him alwayes with a good mouth. For to take ouermuche of a horse at once, is the nexte waye to make him fainte harted, and restiffe.

¶ The order of treading the ryngе, and to what ende it serueth. Cap. ii.

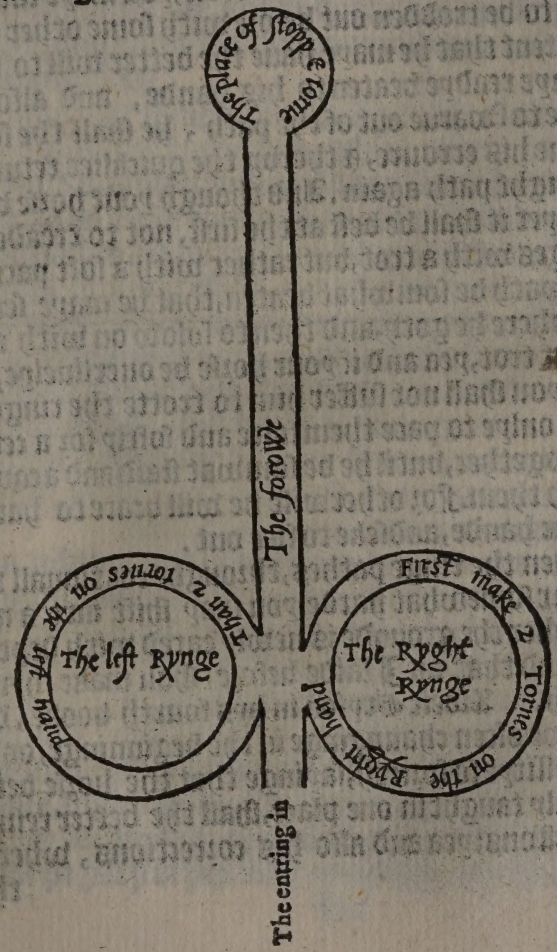
TO thintent than that your horse may haue a lofty pace, trotte cleane, and learne to kepe one pathe, you shall firste cause him to bee brought into ỹ fyelde, nigh vnto some newe plowed groũd, and the deper the forrowes be, the better to make him lift his feete. Whereas after that you haue taken his backe, you shall trot him right out, about the length of a C. paces. That done, you shal enter a good way into one of the forrowes, in such part of the land, as you may haue space inoughe, and mould ynough, rounde about you, and there on the right hand ouerthwart the forrowes, make him to tread out twise together, a rounde ryngе, conteyning in Circute aboute xxv. or. xxx. paces: and being come aboute at the seconde time to the place where he began: cause him to treade out the like ryngе on the left hande. About the which, after that he hath also gone. ii. times, let him beginne agayne on the ryght hande, and so to shift from ryngе to ryngе, treadyngе euery one styl twise about, vntil he hath gone about the left ryngе foure times, and aboute the right ring syxe times, for as he must begin with the

ryghte ringe, so muste he ende wyth the same. Whereby he shal alwayes make twoo tournes more on the ryght hand then on the left.

That done, trot him right out in the selfe same forrow where he beganne first, or in some other forrowe on the out side of the right ringe, the length of .xxx. paces, and there, by pullynge in youre bridle hande stop him, and staye a good whyle together, makynge hym to stande still, and to kepe his head and body right in the path. And when you haue so done, then tourne him fayre and softlye on the right hand, takyng rowme inoughe at the first, for feare of making hym soft necked: and beynge come againe into the path: trot hym backe againe to the place from whence he came, and there you shall light of on his backe. And to encourage him the more agaynst the next tyme, you maye if you will, take of hys padde. Neither shall you vse him anye otherwyse than thus, for the space of eyght dayes together. But after that the eight dayes be expired: Let him go, increasing euery day his ring turnes, by .ii. & by .ii. vntil he come to .xii. that is to say .x. for the left ring, & .xii. for the right. Which nūbre as Grison sayth, maketh .v. large turnes and a halfe, appointinge foure goinges about, to euery suche tourne, and he calleth them large tournes, in respect of the narrow turnes, wherof we shall speake hereafter in their place. Neyther would he haue this nūber of ryng turnes for a certain space, to be eyther augmented or diminished. But thoughe you see here, that the horse by this meanes learneth .iii. lessons at once, that is to saye, first to tread the ring, secondlie to stoppe, and thirdlye to tourne: yet to auoyde confusion, I will not

treate

treate of them all at once, but of euery one particularly by him selfe. And first to thintent you should the better vnderstand, of what sorte the rynges oughte to be: beholde here this figure folowing, wuely expressing both ringes together, with the sorow, and place of stopping and tourning.


The Place of stoppe
The sorowe
Than 2 tornes on the left hand
The left Rynge
First make 2 tornes on the right hand
The Ryght Rynge
The entring in

There is also another fashion of a Ring, whiche by-cause it serueth only as a correction whē your horse is harder to turne on the right hande then on the left, I will not therfore speake of it here, but reserue it vntil I come to treat of the correction of that fault.

If your horse be weake and feble, you maye cause the ringes to be trodden out before with some other horse, to thintent that he maye haue the better will to folow in a waye readye beaten to his hande, and also if he chaunce to swarue out of the path, he shall the sooner perceyue his errour, & therby the quicklier returne in to the right path again. And though your horse be not weake: yet it shall be best at the first, not to treade oute the ringes with a trot, but rather with a soft pace, vntill the path be somwhat beaten, that he maye see his waye where he goth, and then to folow on with an indifferent trot, yea and if your horse be ouerliuelye, or to quicke, you shall not suffer him to trotte the ringes at all. But onlye to pace them faire and softly for a certain dayes together, vntil he be somwat staid and acquainted with them. For otherwise he will beare to hard vpon your hande, and seke to flee out.

And when the ringe pathes, throughe continuall treading war somewhat harde: you may shift into a newe place, wher the grounde is newly eared with depe forrowes, and that as I saide before, shall make him to lifte high. Albeit Gryson in his fourth booke, doth not allowe often chaunginge in the beginninge, onlesse that necessitye so forceth, sayinge that the horse beinge continualy taught in one place, shall the better remember his lessons: yea and also his corrections, whereby

there

there shall be bredde in him as it were an habit of well doyng. Notwithstandyng when you come to manege your horse, or to passe a Carier, I would not wisshe you to vse alwayes one place, or one length, lest he be to seke when you chaunge places, thinking that he shoulde not do it any other where, or if he do it, not to passe hys accustomed length, and so perchaunce stoppe before you woulde haue him.

But there be some which will not vse their horses to two ringes, but to one only, which is very euill for a ponge horse, bicause it will make him fainte harted and feareful, for when he commeth to the place where he is wonte to be turned, he will striue to go furth ryght, and so perhaps become restifie, or at the least, not go in the ringe so euenly and so iustlye as he should do. Notwithstanding to a horse of some yeares, & of a lyuely spyrite, it may sometyme be very well allowed, and specially if he be stiffe necked, and harde to turne: yea, and also to shewe, that though the forme of the rynges be thereby somewhat altered: yet he should alwayes keepe in one tewne. After that youre horse haue worne the bridle a whyle, and is well acquaynted therewyth, you may encrease your ringe turnes euerye day, by two for eche ringe, vntill ye come to. xlvi. whiche make a xi. large turnes and a halfe, that is xxii. for the left ringe, and. xxiiii. for the ryght, according as your horse shalbe in breath and hable to indure it, otherwise a lesse number may suffise, for ouermuche labour doeth weaken a yong horse, which weakenes doth not appeare in some, vntyll they be. iiii. or. v. yeares olde, for at the firste the feare that he hath of his rider, maketh him to vnite his

force together, and to beare it out the more stoutelye. But after that he is wel acquaynted with his ryder, he will not shewe so muche force in his labour and trauell as he dydde before, but hys naturall weakenesse wyll than appeare, and so much the more, as he shall growe in greatnes, and be laden with flesh. Notwithstanding the number of turnes aboue sayde, is conuenient for any horse of an indifferent strength, for lxii. turnes maye suffice any horse, be he neuer so strong or good of breath onlesse he be to vnreasonablely strong, in age, euill broken before, and vsed to liberty: for than, to breake him of his stubburnnes it shall not onely be requysit to geue him lxii. turnes, but also Cxii. But that seldome for feare of weakeninge his backe, yea and perchaunce euery member besides. But most commonly after the wearinge of his bridle, obserue the number of xlvi, whiche you shal not encrease, but vpon such occasion as is afore said, nor yet diminish the same, onles it be whē you trot him and turne him to and fro in manege wise, after that you be come out of the rynges, whereof we shall treate hereafter in his place.

¶ The helpes and corrections mete to be vsed whilst he treadeth the ringes, also when you shal gallop the ringes, and to how manye pourposes it serueth.

IF your horse in treading the ring, trotteth not fast inough, or bee ramege, that is to saye, not kepinge a iust pace, but fareth as one that were in twoo

mindes, not caring whether he went on, or not: or if he will sodenly stop before his lesson bee ended, then quicken him often with your voice, or with the sounde of your lips, before mencioned, and by litle and litle, make him to know the helpe of youre leg and heele, by stryking him sometime with one leg or heele, and sometime with both, according as his fault shall require. The order wherof is before declared in the first boke the .xi. ch. & to make him go the luster it shall be good for the most part to hold your contrary leg in his sight, and likewise your rod, when you come to beare one, as for example, if he be stiffer on the right side then on the left, then hold out your left leg, & lay your rod crosse ouer his left shoulder. But if he be harder on the lefte side, then holde out youre right legge, and hold youre rod right out, not far from the horses right eye, remembring alwayes to hold the raines of your bridle, thone shorter then the other, in such sort as I taught you in the first boke the .x. chapyter. But if he be ramege either by nature or by euill breaking, then make him to tread the ringes first with a swift trot, and than with so harde a gallop, as he can driue, helping him in due time with your voyce, rod, or spur, as occasion shal require, and that shal make him to forget toyes, and to attende his waye, but see that you gallop him not first, for feare of making him restiffe. And this way serueth to correct a great meanye of other faultes, as the lightnesse and playinge with his head, and when he draweth vp his toung, and wil not stay his mouth vpō the bit as he ought to do. Or if he go iumping without order, or slinging with his heles, likewise if he be to hasty or furious, this will stay him,

and cause that he shall afterward stop the better in his Cariere, and not run awaye. Also if he vse to pysse alwaies when he is handled, this taken in time wyll correct him. And finally if he be slowe and dull, this will quicken him. But if he be verye lively and quicke of himselfe: than you shall do cleane contrarie to this, that is to saye, you shall neyther geue him swift trot nor gallop. And whensoeuer you gallop your horse, remember alwayes to helpe him more or lesse wyth youre voyce, rod, or spur, according as the qualitye of the horse shall require, and when he doeth wel, to cherishe him. But though the gallopping of the ryng, serueth to so many good purposes as you haue hard, yet for ỳ most part, let him tread the ringes with a good round trot, and not to gallop them at all, onlesse some of the forsaid occasions do so require.

¶ Of stopping. Cap. liii.

HItherto we haue spoken of treadynge the ryng only, now we will shewe you howe you shall teach youre horse to stop. I tolde you before, that hauing ended youre nũber of your ring turnes, you should trot youre horse right out in the middle forrowe betwixt the ringes, vntill you come to the place of stoppe, and there to stay a good pretye while together, kepinge his bodye right in the path, which if he will not doe, but stande ouerthwartly, eyther with his forepartes, or hynder partes, or els perchaunce with his whole body, cleane out of the path: Then see that ye touch him at the first,

neyther

neyther with heele nor rod, least he not knowinge the one nor other, be distempred, and perchaunce fall a runnyng away. But you shall appoint a footeman to stand at the place of stop, who shal direct him into the ryght path, by thrusting him with his handes on that side, which standeth out of order. And this waye is not only good for a yonge horse, but also for anye other horse, that is in age, and by meanes of euill breakynge, hath bene accustomed to stop wrong, but than the footeman besides thrusting him with his handes, may also chastise such a horse with a rod, by strikinge him therewith on that side that he erreth, or if you wyl not so do, you may cause your horse to go still in the same path a yard or .ii. further forward, and there stop him, holdinge the reane of his headstrain straiter on that side, wheron he most forceth your hand, then on the other, and that shal kepe him whether he will or not, in the right path.

And after that he beginneth to be somewhat obedient vnto you, you may direct him into the right path whē he stoppeth wrong, with the ouerplus of the reanes of his headstraine, by beating him therwith moderately, vpon that shoulder or romp that standeth farthest oute of order. But beware in anye wise that you strike him with no rod, before he come to weare a bridle.

It is verye good also to trot him to some hangynge grounde, called of the Italions Pendino, and there to stop him somwhat downe the hill, but therin you must vse good discretion in choosing such a ground as shalbe mete for the purpose. For a yong horse many times wil be afraide to stop down the hill, and speciallye if it be ouer steepe, yea, and it maye doe him more harme then

good

good, being an occasion perchaunce that he shall neuer after be light of stop. Wherfore at the first it shalbe best to stop him in such a ground as shalbe neyther to stepe nor yet to plaine, but betwixt both, as that is, whiche somethinge falleth, and riseth immediatly againe. So shal not the horse be afraide of it. And afterward when he is growē in age, and hath more force & strengthy, you may be the bolder to stop him vppon a steeper ground, according as you shall thinke it nedefull. And let thys suffyse you for this time, because we shall be forced to speake more of stopping in the chapters next folowing.

¶ Of goyng backe, and to what ende it serueth, and howe and when you shall teach your horse to do it. Cap. v.

AFter that your horse hath worne the brydle, and knoweth the rod and spurre, you shall teach hym when he hath stopte, be it vpon a hanging ground, or otherwise, to go backeward iii. or iiii. steppes, whiche will not onelye staye hys mouth, and make him light of heade, but also to lift his legges, and to be the more apte to aduaunce before. For the whiche cause it were necessary to talke of this before I proceade any further.

To teache your horse then to go backe: you muste sone as he hath stopte, pull in your brydle hande moderately, according as the horses resistaunce shal require, and so keeppyng your hande steddye wythoute geuinge hym any libertye, stryke hym fayre and softlye vpon the bowing of his necke with your rodde, saying vnto him

wyth

wyth a ſoft voyce in that inſtaunt, backe, backe I ſaye, and ſolicite hym in that ſort a prety whyle together: for the which yf he wyl not moue his legges, or doth make any reſiſtance, then ſpurre hym in tyme, fyrſte with one ſpurre, and then with another, but moſte on that ſyde whereas you ſee his hynder partes to ſtande moſte out of order, to the intent that he may go right in the path. And beſydes thys, you maye haue a footeman to ſtande at the place of ſtoppe, with a rodde in his hand, who in the ſelf ſame tyme, that you pul in the bridle, ſhal knock him fayre and ſoftelye with his rodde vpon the knees, and ſeldome or neuer vpon the ſnowt. And ſometyme lette hym onely threaten him without beatyng hym at all, but if this wyll not ſuffiſe, then lette the ſame man take the chekes of the bitte in hys hande, and ſo force hym to goe backe, not leauynge to moleſt hym, ſometyme one way, and ſometime another, vntill at the leaſt he hath made him to pull backe one foote. And when ſoeuer he doth wel, be ready immediatly to cheriſh hym for the ſame, and then lette him ſtaye a whyle. That done, cauſe him to do the lyke agayne, by pulling in the bridle onely and none otherwyſe. For the making much of hym before, will cauſe him to go backe of his owne accorde wyth both legges, if not, than by correctynge him in ſuch ſorte as is aforeſayde, you ſhall force him to go backe whether he wyll or not.

Of aduaunceyng, whereto it ſerueth, and where, how, and when, you ſhall teache him to do it. Cap. vi.

To

TO aduaunce, is a tearme vsed of our horse-men, signifying that which the horse doth, when at the stoppe he lifteth vp both his forefeete, euen together somewhat aboue ground, and letteth them fall againe twise or thrise together, which the Italions cal Fare le posate and it is so necessarye a thinge, as without it the horse can neuer manege well nor turne redelye, as hereafter you shall well perceyue, wherfore when your horse can stop well, and will also go backeward when you wolde haue him, it is mete to teache him to aduaunce.

And as it is not amisse to teache it hym, when you stop hym in the forrow betwixt the two ringes, so is it very good also to go into some longe sandye way, whiche is euen and playne, and there after that you haue trotted him right out with a very swyft trot, the length of .xl. foote, or theraboute, to stoppe him, helpyng him immediately with your voyce, and also with both spurres euen together, and sometime with your rod, by strykyng him therewith on the ryghte shoulder, but seldome on the left. And if he will not aduaunce for that, no not so much as with his ryght legge: Then keppng styll a steddy hande vpon him, correct him immediatly twyse or thrise together with the euen stroke of your spurres, or els with one spurre after another, helpinge him alwayes with your voyce, as by saying vnto him huppe, hup, or such like word. And immediatly after, trot him out againe the like distaunce with a swift trot, and at the stop doe as you did before, continuing still the same, vntill you haue made him to lyfte his feete from the grounde, and to aduaunce thrise, or twise together at

the

the leaſt, which whan he doth, though it be but meanlye, yet make much of him, and cope him with youre righte hande, or wyth youre ſticke, by clawetnge hym therwith on the necke, nigh vnto the withers, ſuffring him there to ſtaye a whyle: That done, trot hym forth againe, and at the next ſtop, you ſhall ſee that ſo ſoone as he heareth your voyce, he wyl aduaunce of his own accorde, not onelye wyth one legge, but with both, yea, and ſo manye tymes together, as you wyll haue him. And in ſo doing, you ſhal ſeldome helpe him with your ſpurs, or rod, but only with the calues of your legs, and with your voice, which muſt alwaies be one. And if the ground where he ſtoppeth be ſomewhat hanginge, it ſhalbe ſo muche the more eaſy for him, but after that he can aduaunce, and doeth vnderſtande the helpes of the voyce, rod, and ſpurre, beware that ye vſe not to geue him ſuche ſhort ſtops one after another, leaſt he take a cuſtome to ſtop ſooner, and therwith to aduaūce higher then you would haue him: but rather trot him righte out the iuſt length of a Cariere, towardes the knoll of ſome hill, and there ſtop him vpon the browe thereof, or ſteper downe, accordinge as the qualitie of the horſe ſhall require, helpinge him as is aforeſayde. For aſſure your ſelfe, that a hanging ground is very neceſſary, and ſpecially when the horſe is not apt of himſelfe to bowe his houghes behinde, for the horſe that is naturallye light, hath not ſo muche nede of a hanging ground, becauſe that he with a litle helpe in a plaine ground will learne to ſtop euen vpō his buttocks, which is the chiefeſt grace of the ſtop, for onles the horſe in his ſtop doth bowe his houghes orderly, & run ſlyding on his hinder

legs, neither stop, nor aduancing shalbe praise worthy.

When your horse can stop and aduaunce well in hys trot: then you may teache him in the like groundes to doe the same vpon a gallop, vsinge the selfe same order, helpes and corrections, that are aboue written. And forget not in any wise to make muche of hym when he doeth well, but for the most part let him continue the doyng thereof vppon a trot, for that shall make hym so light and so perfect, as when you come afterwarde to gallop hym, or to run him, he shal not be to seke therin.

Corrections to be vsed when your horse aduaunceth to high, or out of order, or when you woulde not haue him. Cap. vii.

If your horse aduaunceth to high, or liketh not vp his feete euen together, and wyth such grace as he ought to doe, correct hym immediatlye with the euen stroke of youre spurs, & somtime withyour rod also, strykyng him therewyth vppon the flankes, that done, put hym forwarde againe the length of a short maneginge course, and there stop, helpinge him to aduaunce with youre voyce, and if neede be, with the caulies of youre legs, or with your spurs, or els with your rod vpon his right shoulder, and somtime with altogether, according as you shall see it nedefull. Or after that you haue corrected him you maye if you will, without putting him forwarde, tourne him and go backe againe in the selfe same path a good pretty way, and then to retourne from thence with a good round trot, and to stop hym vppon the same knoll, where he stopte before, and so to contynue

nue retournyng styll to and fro, vntill he hath amended his faulte, and aduaunceth as you woulde haue hym, which when he doeth, make much of hym, and let him staye a good whyle after, for the longer that you staye hym the more perfect you shall make him.

If your horse hath gotten an euill custome to stop, and to aduaunce withall, sodenly, or oftner then you would haue him, which fault most commonlye is incident to yong horses. Then correct him immediatly with your voyce, and also wyth your rod vpon his flankes, and sometime vpon his forelegges, yea, and if nede be, with your spurres euerye maner of waye, forcinge hym to go forwarde, and not to aduaunce, but when you shal prouoke him therunto, eyther with voice, spurres, legges, or rodde, or with all together, according as the horses qualitie shall require, for some horse is so vyle of courage and so dull of vnderstandinge, as if you alwayes vse to helpe him with your spurres at the stop: Then so often as you shal spurre hym, to make him to goe forwarde, he will by and by stop and aduaunce, and the more you spurre him, the woorse he will be, and so perchaunce become restiffe, wherfore you must vse great diligence, and good discretion, in makynge him to knowe by the hard or loose bearing your bridle hand, when you helpe him with your spurres to go forwarde, and when to stop. And vntill he be perfect therein, it shall be best to helpe him at the stop, onelye with your voyce, and not to vse your spurres or rod, but when you do correcte him els or when you woulde haue him to goe forwarde.

When and how to teach your horse to parke, and to make him light behind. Cap. viii.

If youre horse be of a conuenient age, and growen to his ful strength, and therwith haue a good backe, and hable to endure, (for otherwise it shoulde doe him more harme then good): Then hauing taught him to stoppe, and to aduaunce before, you may teach him also to yarke behind, by helping him in his aduauncyng, with youre voyce, and with your rod, beating him therwith behinde, sometime on the one side, and somtime on the other, and if nede be, you may also helpe him with the euen stroke of your spurres, not leauing to molest him in such sort, vntill you see that he beginneth to gather vp his rompe, and to lifte his hinder legges, which doinge, you shall leaue beatinge, and make muche of hym, and afterwarde you shall see that with a verye litle helpe, he wyll fall vnto it of his own accord, you may also if you wil, appoint a footman that hath some skill, to stand behind you, with a long rod in his hand, who at the stop whilst youre horse aduaunceth, may help him with his voice, and by beating him on the haunches, and on the rompe, cause him to yarke, which way is very good, so that your horse be not ouer liuelye, and therewyth also naturallye headstronge, for than perchaunce it will make him to spring forwarde, and to fal a runnyng, wherefore vntill he hath a staide mouth, it were better to vse the firste waye, or elles to bring him vnto it in the stable in this sort.

When you come into the stable, stande behinde hym with a long rod in your hand, and beat him therwith on the midde rompe, helpyng him in that instant with that voyce wherwith ye vse to make him light behind

not

not ceassyng to molest him in that sort vntyll he gather vp his rompe, and cast oute both his heeles euen together, and that of a iust heigth twise or thrise together, which doing, you shal leaue beating, and make muche of him, suffring him to rest a good while after. Thus solicityng hym twyse or thryse a daye, you shall make him so light and so redy of his heeles, that he wil parke so soone as he shall but heare your voyce, or the whiske of your rodde, and when he can do it well in the stable, then to make him the more perfect therin abroade, you may when you ride him, cause a footman to stande behind you with a long sticke in his hand, who by threatninge hym, and beating him on the Rompe, may cause hym to parke so often as you shall thinke it meete, and if youre horse be verye lyghte and nimble of hym selfe, you maye teache him also to leape at the stoppe, and to parke withall, but sith that leapyng is more mete for a stirring horse, thē for a horse of seruice, and also for that there be diuers kindes of leapes, I will not therefore treate of that here, but differit, vntill I haue shewed you the order of tourning and maneging.

How to teach your horse to tourne redily on both handes. Cap. ix.

I Entende to speake here of the narrow and strait tournes, and not of the large tourns, otherwise called the ringe tournes, for we haue talked of them sufficiently before. And first you shall vnderstand, that of the narrow tournes, there be three kindes, that is to saye, halfe

halfe tourne, whole tourne, and double tourne. The halfe tourne is when the horse turneth on the one side, & that setteth his heade that way that his taile before stoode, and is called the halfe tourne, for the horse maketh but halfe a circle, but if he doubleth the same, and setteth his heade that waye it stoode at the firste: then it is called a whole tourne, for in tourning round about he maketh a circle complet. And .ii. suche whole turues make a double tourne, which Gryson calleth Volta rad doppiata who appointeth to euerye suche turne fowre halfe tournes, whiche maye be otherwise called single tournes. And note that in turning, diuerse thinges are to be obserued. First that he bringe in the contrarye leg vpon the other, and that he carie his legges neyther to high, nor to lowe, also that he kepe his ground, neither preassyng forward, nor yet reling backward in his turning, also that he kepe his bodye in one staye, wrythyng neither head, necke, nor any part of his body, but to cõe in whole and round together, and to close his courne in so narrow a rowme as may be. But first you shall teach him to make the single or halfe tournes in this sort and order here folowyng.

When you are come out of the ringes, trot your horse right out in the middle forrowe vnto the place of stop, and there, after that you haue stopt, tourne him faire and softlie on the right hand, taking rowme inough at the firste, as I shewed you before, for feare of makinge him sore necked, that done, geue him the like tourne on the left hande, and then tourne him again on the right hand, remembring alwayes to beginne with the right hand, and to ende with the same, and see that in euerye

turne

turne he bring in the contrary forefoote, vpon the other forefoote, as for example, when you tourne him on the right hande, cause him to lyfte vp his left forefoote, and to bring it in ouer the right forefote, which you shal do by helping him with your voyce, or wyth the sound of youre tounge, before taught in the first booke the .viii. Chapter in saying to him, tourne here, and by strykinge him with your rod moderatly vpon the lefte shoulder. And when you tourne him on the left hand, helpe him with youre voyce or tounge, as before, and wyth youre rod on the right shoulder to bring in the right forefoote ouer the left forefoote. Which act Grison calleth Incauallare, which is so muche to saye, as to lap one thynge ouer another.

And note that though your horse at the first doth not bringe in his contrary foote ouer the other orderly, but perchaunce vnder the other, yea, and that wyth knocking his legges together: it maketh no matter, for the griefe therof shalbe a good correction vnto him, and in tyme shal make him to amende his owne fault. But if he be harder to tourne on the one hande then on the other, then you shall helpe him with the contrary leg or Spurre, or with your rod, by beatyng hym vppon the contrarye shoulder, and sometime to make him to close his tourne truely, it shalbe nedefull to helpe him wyth the closing stroke of your heeles or spurres. Which kind of helpe is necessarye for twoo causes: First, for that it will make him to tourne roundly as wel with his hinder partes, as wyth hys forepartes: Secondly, because some horse is so quicke and so liuely, as when he is touched, but onlye on the contrarye side, he will turne perhaps

happes with to stiffe a necke, loking the contrary way, or contrarywise, he will wry his heade or necke to muche on that side that he hath to turne, or els tourne beyond the place, and out of the right path, in which he should close his turne. Albeit such helpe is not commonlye to be vsed, but at certaine times, when some great necessitie requireth it, for the first helpes are more kindlye, and therfore ought to be more ordinarye. But if he bee so harde of any side, as the foresaide helpes can not make him to tourne when you woulde haue him: then you may vse these corrections here folowing.

How to correct your horse when he is harder to turne of the one syde then on the other, whiche fault is called of the Italyons Credenza. cap. .f.

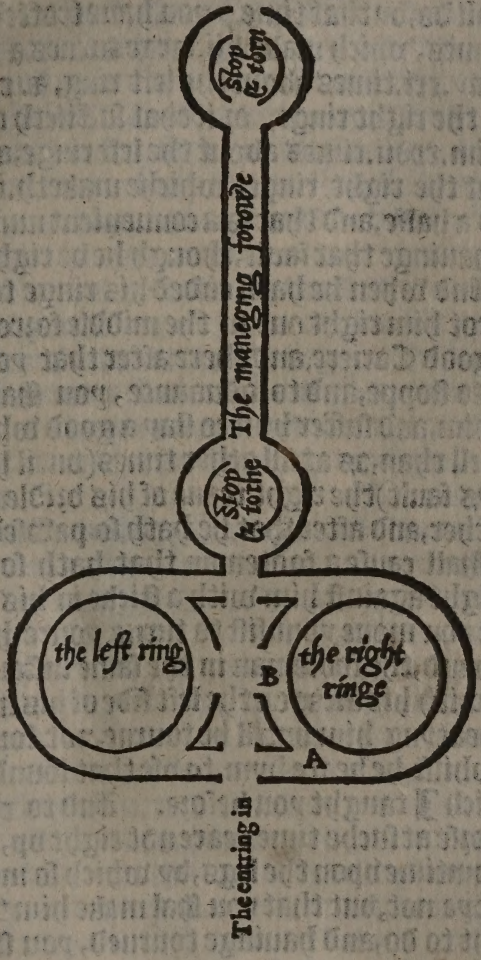
But first I thinke it mete to shew you the causes of that fault, and then how to correct it, & you shall vnderstand, that there be diuers causes, wherof one, may be the naturall inclination whereby euery horse is more apt to turne on the left side then on the right. Secondlye, the hardnes of the bitte pynchinge his mouthe on the one syde: may so greue him, as he dare not turne on that syde. Thirdlye, lacke of knowledge howe to handle hys legges, and to reane wyth hys necke, maye cause hym to turne so frowardlye and so vnwillinglye, as he feelinge him selfe neuer so little wearye, wyll tourne no more at that tyme, for any thinge that ye can doe. But to say the truth, wearinesand lacke of breath, may cause any horse be he neuer so

uer so well broken, to do the same. Fourthlye the ignorauncе of the Rider in helping him otherwise then he shoulde do, may make the horse so amased, as he knoweth not what to do, vnderstanding not the Riders intent. Fifthlye, the horse maye be euil broken, and therby made harder of one syde, then of another, for thaugh yt he be angred neuer so litle, he will not tourne perhaps on that side that you woulde haue him, and the worse, if he shall perceyue that you be afrayd of him, and that you will suffer him to haue his owne wil, and to turne which waye he list, for that shalbe an occasion to make him more stubborne, & to continue still in his fault. But now, though Grisō here according to euery one of these causes, could appoint proper correctiōs (which in dede were ỹ best order of teaching) yet to auoid confusion as he sayth, he wil not so do, but rather teach you such generall kindes of corrections as may amend that fault, of what cause so euer it proceedeth. And because that euerye horse, as I sayde before, is more apte by nature to turne on the left hande, then on the right, he sheweth you first howe to correct the hardnes of the right hand in this sort here folowing.

Make youre horse in some newe plowed ground to treade oute .ii. ringes, like vnto these here after figured, which differ not so much from the .ii. ringes before described, in shape, as in the order of treading of theim. For wheras you were wont before to goe twise about in the right ringe, folowinge still the right hande, and then to go twyse about the left ringe, folowinge than the left hand: Now you shall go about eche ringe three times, folowing still the right hand, in both of them.

And where as before. iiii. goinges aboute made a large turne, now syxe goinges about shall doe no more then make a large tourne, and the reason is this, for yf you should go out of the right ringe at the second turne for to enter into the left ringe, and woulde folowe still the right hand (as you must dooe) then you shoulde lacke a good deale of closing the second turne, as you may easly perceiue by a litle considering of the figure in the right ringe, whereof I haue marked the place where you shoulde go out, for to enter into the left ring, with this letter A, and the place of closing your turne with B, betwixt whiche twoo letters is conteyned that portion of the Circle, whiche shoulde bee wantinge, wherefore you must nedes go thryse about, to thintent the seconde turne may be fully ended, & as for the ouerplus, it shall make no matter. To theselynges is also added a middle forrowe with twoo places of stopping and turning, mete to manege your horse therein, to and fro, whereof we shall treate hereafter in his due place more at large.

✠



THus you may continue shifting from ring to ring, and folowyng still the right hande, vntill you see that he beginneth somewhat to yealde, which I

beleue he wil do, by that time ỹ you haue trotted him a bout. xlv. times, which make. vii. large turnes & a halfe, that is to say. xxi. times about the left ring, &. xxiiii. tymes about the right ringe, or if that suffiseth not, you may trot him. xxvii. times about the left ringe, and. xxx. times about the right ringe, whiche maketh. ix. large turnes and a halfe, and that is a conuenient number for any horse hauinge that fault, though he be right good of breath. And when he hath ended his ringe tournes, you may trot him right out in the middle forrowe, the lẽgth of a good Cariere, and there after that you haue made him to stoppe, and to aduaunce, you shall make muche of him, and suffer him to stay a good while, holding as well than, as at all other times (vntil he hath amẽded hys fault) the right reane of his bridle shorter then the other, and after that he hath so pawsed and is quiet, you shall cause a footeman that hath some skill to stand right against him with a sticke in his hande, and whilst you moue your fist to turne youre horse on the right hand, the footeman in the same instaunt shal strike him with his sticke on the left side of his nose, and not leaue beatyng him vntill he tourne, not forgetting alwayes whilst he beate hym, to vse that sounde of the toung, which I taught you before. And to thintent that the horse at suche time reare not right vp, he may beat him somtime vpon the legs, by which so molesting him, doubt ye not, but that you shal make him to turne as he ought to do, and hauinge tourned, you shall first make muche of him, and then trotte him backe againe in the same path or forrowe, euen harde to the edge of the ringes, from whence ye came. Whereas you shall appoint

point another footman to stād with a rod in his hand, to thintent that when you haue stopt your horse again there, and are ready to turne him (which must be stil on the right hand) the footeman may rate him by sayinge tourne villaine, or such like wordes, yea, and if nede be, also beat him in suche sort as the other man did before. But if your horse be verye hard to tourne, then to make him do it the more easely, you may at euerye end of the path after that he hath stopt and aduaunced, make him to goe backe about .iii. paces, and in his goinge backe, turne him, but after that he beginneth to fall somwhat vnto it, beware that ye vse not then to make hym goe backe, least he get an euill custome to make his tournes altogether abandonate, and to much vpon hys hynder loynes.

Thus by trotting him vp and downe and tourninge him to an fro .vi. or .vii. tymes together, when you come out of ỹ rings, you shal in the space of iii. daies throughly correct that fault, which fault, if it were not ouermuche, I would not wyshe you in his goyng to and fro, to turne him euery time on the right hand, but first on the right hand, and then on the left interchaungeably, but so as the first & last tourne may be always on the right hand, vsing alwaies such helpes and corrections as are aboue said. But if your horse be harder to tourne on the left hand then on the right, then begin first with the left ring, obseruing order meare contrary in all thinges to the first, whiche I am sure that you can doe of youre selfe without anye more wordes.

¶ Syxe other Corrections for the fault aboue said, wherof the first here followeth.

You

You maye also correct that fault without ridinge him in any tynge, or otherwise in this sort.

First cause him to be brought into some long narrow way, enclosed on both sides with hedge, dike, or wal, and there after that you haue reaned vp his head, by staying the reanes of the bridle with the button vpon his necke, if he be hard to turne on the right hande, fasten the one ende of a good longe cord or thong to the middle of the bit on the right side, & tey the other end vnto his surcingle on the same side, straining it good and hard, for to make him bowe his necke: that done, let him so remaine alone in the midst betwyxt you and him that brought him, or some other whom you shall thinke mete, hauing ech of you a rod in your hand, with the whiche roddes you shal chase him betwixt you from one to another, by strykinge him alwayes when he commeth towardes eyther of you, vpon the left side of the nose, and no wher els, & that shal make him turne on the right hande, not forgetting alwayes when you beat him, to help him with the sound of the toung before declared, and you shall see that in a veri litle while, the only sound of the toung & the sight of the rods, wil make him to turne of his owne accorde without any beating at all. Yea the soũd of the toung it selfe is so good a warning vnto hym, as if he be once accustomed therunto he will not tary the beating, and though sometime, he hap to fall downe in his turning, it maketh no matter, for he wyll ryse againe alone, yea, and that shalbe a very good correction vnto him. And when you see that he begynneth to waxe somewhat

weary,

weary, louſen the thong from the ſurcingle, but not frō the bit, and immediatly get vp on his backe, takynge the louſe ende of the thong in your right hande, which ſhall ſerue in ſteade of a falſe reane, and trot him forth the length of .x. or .xii. paces, and there ſtop him, where as one muſt ſtand with a rod in his hand, ready firſt to threaten him, and then if nede be, to beat him therwith vpon the left ſide of the noſe, for to make him tourne. And in the ſame inſtaunt, you ſhall not only helpe him with your toung, but alſo by ſtraining a litle the thong which is in your right hand. And hauyng tourned, trot him backe agayne to the place from whence he came, wheras may ſtand alſo another footman to helpe him at the ſtop, as the former did, to tourne agayne on the ſame ſide: or for lacke of another man, you maye tourne him the ſecond time on the left hande, and ſo trot him forth towardes the firſt man.

Thus trotting and tourning him to and fro, you ſhal correct him quickly of that fault, neyther ſhall you nede to vſe the helpe of ſtraining the corde or thonge in hys turne aboue twiſe or thriſe at the moſt. For the ſounde of the toung, the feare of the footmans rod, & the holding of the right reane of his bridle, ſhorter then the other, ſhall ſuffiſe. And note that as the thong being put on the right ſide of the bit doth correct the horſes hardnes on the ſame ſide: ſo likewiſe if it be put on ỹ left ſide it wil correct the horſe that is hard to turne on the left ſide, for ſides and places of correction only chaũged, the order is all one in both.

The ſecond correction for the ſame fault.

You

YOu maye also correct that fault by keping a Corde vnto the headestraine on that side that the horse is harde to tourne, so as it maye run through the ring therof, to thintent that when you pull the corde, it maye straine the horses head, and beinge let go, it may slacke agayne: the louse end of which corde, let some footman hold in his hande, and whylst you beynge on his backe do helpe him with your tongue to tourne, let the foteman pull the Corde, whereunto yf the horse be vsed a while, he will afterward turne of him selfe, so soone as he shall heare the sounde of the tongue wythout the helpe of the corde.

The third Correction for the same.

TAke a cord about a yard long, & tey the one end therof vnto the vppermost eye of the bridle on that side that ỹ horse is not hard to tourne, and let it come betwyxt his neather lip, and nether goomes, and so passe through the vppermost eye of the bit on the other syde, beyng strayned so hard as the horse can well endure it, and there stay it by makyng a knot only vpon the cord, hard by the cheke of the bit, without castíng the corde about the iron, so as it can not slyppe: the louse ende of which cord, when you ride your horse, you shall hold in your hande in steade of a false reane, and so often as you pull that corde, and helpe him with youre tongue, you shal force him to turne whether he wil or not. And least a Cord perhaps will gaule your hande, you may if you

wyll

will, make it all of leather, sauing that whiche must be in the horses mouth, for otherwise it woulde not greue him.

The fourth correction.

The fourth correction is by putting the kirble hooke on that side that the horse is most harde to tourne: on the backe side of which hooke next to the horses lip, wold be made .ii. litle sharpe prickes, fashioned like cockes spurs. Which kinde of hooke, Grison calleth in his language, Guancietto, or if you wyl, you may set those prickes on the backe side of the linke, wheron the sayde hooke hangeth, whiche linke is made like an .s. in this sort .S. so shall they pricke him higher towardes the mouth. And though some horse is corrected by hauing those prickes placed on the contrary syde, yet it is more kindly to haue them placed where I haue shewed you before. Or in stead of both these wayes, you maye cause .iii. litle nailes to be sette on the backe side of his portsmouth, and it shalbe as good. But beware in anye wise that ye seke not to correct this fault by putting any Iron engin within the horses mouth, as some men doe, which will cause a bit to be made of pourpose, hauing the one side rougher then the other, which is the high way to distemper the horses mouth, and to make him so as he shal neuer staye well vpon any bitt. Notwithanding a scache welted on the inside is very necessarye sometime for such pourpose, as I wyll shewe you hereafter when I come to speake of the diuersitye of

bittes, and whereto they serue.

The fift correction.

IF he wil not turne on that side that you wold haue him, then let him turne on thother side, as he wyll hym selfe: and after that he hath begun, let him not leaue. But beat him vpon the head betwixt the eares, and all to rate hym wyth your voyce, forcing him to tourne continuallye on that hand, so fast as he may driue, euen till he be almost out of breath, and redy to geue ouer for very wearines, and you shall see that with a lytle helpe, he will be easelye entreated to turne on thother side: which don, you shal make much of him, and being once well corrected after this sort, it is possible that he wil neuer haue that fault againe.

The sixt Correction.

GO into some soft ground newly plowed with depe forrowes, and there first pace him faire and softlye to and fro, the length of a maneging course, then folow on with a good rounde trot, and when he will not tourne on that hande that you woulde haue him, all to rate hym with a terrible voyce, and beat him with a Cogel vpon the heade, betwixt the eares, and vpon both sides of the head, and most vpō that side wherof he is most easy to turne, prouokyng him to tourne thother waye, whiche if for all this, he will not doe, then without any respect, somtime run him, sometime trot him, and sometime gallop him,

as

as fast as he maye flynge, nowe right oute, nowe ouerthwart, and nowe round about, as you your selfe shall thinke it most nedeful, not leauyng to beat him, nor suffring him to rest in any place, vntil you haue gotten the mastry. And though he chaunce to arme himself to run awaye with you, whether ye will or not, neuer care for it, but rather correct him so much the more wyth youre voyce in ratinge him and cryinge out vnto him, and afterwarde stop him, prouokinge him in that your anger once againe to tourne, whiche yf he wyll not doe, then renew againe the selfe same correction, not leauing him vntill you haue made him to tourne as he should do. And to thintent that in his tourning, he rere not right vp, you shal beat him with your rod, from time to time betwixt the forelegges, but if he turne frely about with out stop or stay, then make much of him, suffring him to pawse a while, that done, you may pace him to and fro faire and softlie, and so often as he will not turne orderlye, vse such hasty correction as before. And in so doyng, I doubt not, but you shall breake him of that fault the first daye that you shall so ride him, yea, perchaunce in lesse then one howre. For there is no waie to be compared vnto thys, but when you begin to take this waye, you must determine with your selfe, not to depart the field, though you tary there from morning vntil night, vntill you haue cleane broken him from that fault. For otherwise you shall confirme hym in his stubbornesse, and make his fault incurable. Thus we haue spoken hitherto of single turnes: it resteth now therefore that we talke somwhat of whole tournes and double tournes, for we shall haue occasion to talke more of syngle

tournes when we come to treate of the order of maneginge.

Of the whole turnes and double turnes, howe and when to teach your horse to make them. Cap. xvii.

After that you be come out of the ringes, and that your horse hath stopt, aduaunced, and pawsed a while, in suche place and order as is aforesaide: Then whilest he is quiet, and standeth euen with hys body, geue him .ii. whole tournes on the right hande, one immediatlye after another, helpynge him with your tounge, or with your rod vpon the contrarye shoulder, or els with the caulfe of youre left leg, and seldome with your spur. That done, geue hym other .ii. whole turnes on the left hand, vsynge lyke helpes, and then .ii. tournes agayne on the right hand, and then staye a while, makinge much of him. And see that in his turninge, he bring ouer the contrary legge orderlye, and that in closing his tourne, he set his head euen where it stode at the first. And note here that you may begin the double turnes .ii. maner of waies, for you may chose whether you will haue him to turne at the second or thirde bownde of his aduauncing, or els at the first bounde, which in dede requireth not so muche obseruaunce of time and measure as the other doth.

But if your horse be not very apt vnto the double tournes, it shal not be amisse to ride him into some long lane or waye, and at the hither ende thereof, immediatly vpon his stop, to geue him one or .ii. whole tournes faire

and

and softlye on the right hande, that done, to put him gentlye forward about .ii. paces, and there to geue hym the like tournes on the left hand, and then to go. ii. paces further, and there to turne him again in lyke maner on the right hand, and so to folowe on in turninge him still at euery .ii. paces end, helpinge him alwayes with your tounge, with your rod, with the contrarye leg or spur, yea, and if nede be, with the closing stroke of both spurres. And when you are come to the farther end of the lane or way, geue him .iii. whole tournes, whereof the first and last must be on the right hand, and so leaue of for that time. But note this by the waye, that when soeuer he faileth, in so going, to turne well on any side, that than you must turne him againe, at the next .ii. paces end on the same side, and also correct him with the contrary spur, continuing still so to do, vntill he hath amended his fault, which if he do, you shall make muche of hym. And yf the waye or lane be shorte where you breake him, than beynge come to the farthest end therof, you may tourne backe againe in the selfe same path, vsing the former order in making him to turne at euery two paces ende, so longe tyme together as you shall thinke mete. After this, you must seeke to make hym swift in his double turnes, for it is not inough to bring ouer the contrary leg orderly, and to tourne trulye and decently, but also he must turne swyftlye and roundlye, for whiche intent you shall vse this order folowinge.

Make him to trotte or gallop the length of a short Cariere, and there stoppe, causinge him to aduaunce once, twise, or thrise together: that done (helpinge him with your voice and left spur, yea, and if nede be, with the closinge

sing stroke) first turne him loftelye on the right hande, setting his head that way his taile stoode, which shall be halfe a turne, and there stay a while, then close it vp with another halfe turne on the same hand, setting his head and all his body in the same path, euen as it was at the firste, and then make him to doe as muche on the left hand, and so to chaunge from hand to hand, endyng alwayes on ỹ right. And by often soliciting him in this sort, you shal not onely make him to turne swiftly, but also loftelye, or of an indifferent height, euen as youlist your selfe. And when you see him ready inowe in thys, then you may cause him to close the whole turne roundlye together, without making anye stoppe or stay at the first halfe turne. If your horse know how to handle his forelegs, then geue him on eche hande .ii. hole tournes allowing two halfe tournes to one hole turne, and at the ende of euery thirde halfe tourne, helpe hym wyth your toung, rod, or contrarye spur, and if nede be, with the closyng stroke, so shall he close the last halfe turne, both quickly, roundlye, and comely: but as the .ii. laste halfe tournes woulde be done spedely, so would the .ii. first haulfe turnes be done leysurely. For in those it sufficeth that the horse go orderly with his legs, and kepe the right path. And by obserninge this order a whyle, you shal see he wil be so swift & redy in the first turnes, as in the last. Notwithstandinge for a good time you shal not vse to hasten him, but only at the closynge of euery hole tourne. And when he can once make all the tournes in suche order and so swiftlye as they shoulde be done, then ordinarily, geue him on ech hand .iii. hole turnes, whereof let the first be so faire and softly as maye be, so

be, so shal he cary his forelegs orderly, & be better able to kepe a swift tyme & measure, in accomplishing thother ii. turnes. And though that any of these. ii. waies heretofore prescribed, is maruelous good to make any horse be he neuer so dul, to be ready and nimble in the double tournes, yet must you be able to discerne by your owne discretion which of them is most mete for euery horse, & for what purpose. For if you would haue your horse to yarke in making the double turnes, this way is not so mete for that purpose as ỳ first, for in euery halfe turne, you muste helpe him to yarke once. So that in euerye whole turne he shal yarke twyse. That is to say, once forward, and once backeward, which he can not do, vnlesse he pause somwhat at euery halfe tourne, according to ỳ first order before taught. But if your horse be hard and dull of the spur, and vnapt to the double tournes, then if he can bring ouer the contrarye leg, ride him into some straight waye, or els into the plaine fielde, and there make him to tourne so fast as he cane, and helpe him continually with your spurres, beating him therewith in suche sort, as he may haue bloudye sides, by the girthes, and geue him on eche hand. vii. whole tournes or there about, obseruing alwaye that number wherewith you first began, helping him also with youre rod on the contrarye shoulder. And though he seemeth as then to care but litle for it, yet in riding him againe the nexte daye folowing, when his sides shalbe sore, by meanes of the foremer prickes, being then colde and tender, and not whote, as they were the day before: you shal see that the spurre wil quicken him after another sort, and make him to remember wherfore he was last corrected.

And

And so by vsinge afterwarde the ordinarye helpes, you shalll make him so readye in the double tournes, as you will desire. And you may vse like order also, when the horse is verye liuelye and sensible of him selfe: sauinge then you shall not nede to ride him againe the nert day folowing. For the first time shall suffise to make him obedient to your will, and make him kepe suche measure and time in his turning, as he ought to do. It is good also if the horse be slow, sometime to trotte him out the length of a short maneging course, and when he cometh towarde the ende therof, to gallop him, and at the stop cause him to tourne the first halfe turne, and then immediatly vpon the same, to close the other haulfe tourne on the same hand, and then make much of him suffering him to pawse a while, yea, and it is possible that without pawsing at all, you shall perceiue suche redines in the horse, as you maye folowe on with another whole turne, and so to geue him on ech hand .ii. whole turnes, remembring alwaye to hasten him with your tounge, so much as you possiblye maye, whiche shall not onelye make him ready in his tournes, but also to knowe the verye meanyng of the helpe, which after that he hath once obtained, you shal nede no more to geue him these maneging courses, for than he will tourne at any tyme that you will haue him.

Helpes and corrections meete to be vsed for the amending of suche faultes, as most commonlye happe in makyng the whole or double tournes. Cap. xviii.

If

If your horse at the closynge of any turne beseth to swarue of any syde, then a little before he stoppe, or els in hys verye stopping, strike him with the Caulfe of youre legge, on the same side, and if nede be, with youre spur, pricking him more or lesse as you shal see it nedefull, and that shall force him to make a iust stop, and to kepe the right path. So as afterward he shall nede no such helpe, beinge in dede than superfluous. But although he can stop well, and be very redy of tourne: yet when soeuer he doubleth, helpe him always with your tunge, and sometime with your rod, and legge: and that shall hasten him, and make him to go swiftly about, and to close well.

If your horse holteretb with his legges in hys tourninge, for fault of not bringing ouer the contrary leg, or lyfteth not his feete orderly, or turneth not fast inowe about, then euerye time that he hath ended his tourne: staye there, and so soone as he is stayed, if his tournes were not well made of any syde: first strike him once or twise with the spur on the cõtrary side, then geue him asmuche with the spur on the other side, and last of all, on the same side, that you stroke him first, and kepinge him still in the same pathe, tourne him agayne as you did before, & at the last you shall see by that this correction, he will amende his fault, and so doynge, you shall make muche of him.

But if your horse in his doublynge, maketh his tournes to much forward, and you can by no ordinary meanes bring him from it, then ride him with his head toward some wall or tree, and when you are within a ve-

rye little of the sayde wall or tree, stop him, and tourne him, forcinge him alwayes to close hys laste tourne towardes the wall or tree, so shall he be forced to kepe still one place in his turning. Or you may if you will, without any wall or tree correct that fault by bearyng a stifer hand on him then you were wont to doe, but so as you distemper not his mouth, and looke howe muche ground he incroched in closing of his turne forward, when he hath done, make him to goe asmuche againe backewarde. Or you may correct him thus: Ride hym into some wete grounde, newe plowed with deepe forrowes, and there pase, trot, or gallop him the length of a maneging course, vntill such tyme as he hath made a playne path, and beaten out euident markes of stoppe, and there cause him to double,, and you shal see that after the first time, he wil not be so hasty in prealling forwarde, because it will greeue him to leaue the beaten path, to plunge into the mire. And looke as the making him to go backward, will correct him of his stelyng forwarde, so you may correct his reling backwarde in hys tourning, by making him in thende to goe asmuche forward. You maye also correct both faultes thus: If he girde forwarde, then make hym to double in a playne ground, at the foote of some hill, and to close his tourne vpward toward the hill. And if he reele backward in his doubling, then cause him to close his laste turne from the hillward.

Of the Chambetta. Cap. xix.

BVt besides all this, there is one other point belonginge to the tournes, as well single as double, but specially

specially to the single turnes of a manege, which geueth a better grace vnto them then anye thing els. And that is when the horse holdeth vp his forefoote on that syde that he should tourne. Whilst he bringeth ouer the contrarye leg, and setteth it not downe agayne vntyll he hath closed his tourne: whiche acte Grison calleth, La ciambetta, for by this meanes he shall carye both his forefete cleane aboue the grounde, and tourne a greate deale better then when he trayleth his feete vppon the ground. For whiche feat, for that in oure toung we haue no proper naue, I will therefore cal it from hencefoorth the Chambetta, and you shall teach your horse to do it in thys sort: Ride him into some narrow waye, or cause a dyke to be made of purpose, in maner and forme folowing, first let it be so long as a common maneginge course, not aboue. xv. pynches deepe, and in the bottome one foote and a halfe broade, from whiche bottome the two sides, and the two endes of the dike must rise shoryng: So as it maye be a great deale broader aboue at the brynkes then beneath, hauing the very fashion of a Trow bote, or punt: Or if you wil, you may make it of a greater depth, but then it must haue breadth in the top accordingly: And the Rider must be the more circūspect aswel in bearyng his bridle hand, as in timelye helping of his horse. The dike then beyng thus made: Ride into it, and there geue your horse on eche hande. ii. or. iii. tournes, whereof alwayes let the first be faire and softly to thintent that he maye close the others more spedely, according to the order of doubling, as I taught you before, and you shall see that in closing his tournes, the narrownelle of the rowme shall so trouble him, as for

feare of knocking his contrary leg agaynst the other, he shalbe gladde to lift vp the other leg, and so to come aloft with both legges together, aboue grounde. But you must beware that in steade of lyfting vp hys legs, he reeleth not backewarde, nor in his tourninge goeth cleane out of the dyke, for that were a foule faulte, and much agaynst your purpose, and therefore you muste beare a temperate hande, and be redy to vse suche kinde of helpes, corrections and cherysshinges, as are meete and necessary in that behalfe, and haue bene heretofore taught. And to make him the more readye therein, you may often pase or trot him to and fro in the dike, and turne him at eche ende on both handes, or but on one hand only, chaunging handes at euerye ende. Yea and sometime it shalbe good to tourne him in the same dyke at euery .ii. paces end, as I taught you before, speaking of the double tournes: and hereby the horse wyll take such a custome, as he wyll do the lyke whensoeuer you shal prouoke him therunto, by helping him either with your toung, or contrarye spur, or with both spurs together. And in steade of this dike, you maye if you will, seeke out some narrowe golled waye by rage of water, whiche wilbe as good, so that it be neither to depe nor to shallow, the sides whereof would be somewhat shoring, yea, both suche golled way, dike, and euerye other way, where you pace or trot your horse to & fro, should be the better, if the ground at the stopping place were somwhat hanging downe the hill: So shoulde it keepe him from going eyther forward or backewarde in his turning. Also if your horse haue bene somwhat broken before, and know what correction is (otherwise it wilbe

to hard

to hard for you to do) you may teache hym the Chaunbetta standinge still in the Stable in this sort. Take a sticke in your hande, and go and stand on the right syde of the horse, hard by the maunger to the whiche he is tyed, and knock him with your sticke on the right fore leg, sometime vnder the knee, sometime in the middes of the shanke, somtime on the nether ioynt, and sometime behind on the bowyng of the ham of the same leg, helpyng him continually with your toung or voice, in saying vnto him, hup, hup, and neuer leaue him vntill you haue made hym to holde vp that leg, whiche when he doth, beat him no more, but only threaten him by wagging the rod, to thintent he shoulde not set downe hys foote, but holde it vppe still, so longe as you shall thinke it good. And so often as he setteth it downe vnbidden: helpe him and correct him as before, neuer leauing vntil he holde it vp againe, which whilst he doeth, you shall do well to make muche of him, by clawynge him with your rod on the withers, for that shall encourage hym to do the like another time. And if you would haue him to do the like with the left legge, then stande on his left side, and vse the selfe same order. And when you see he wyl do it with both legges only for feare of the sycke: Then you maye also teach him to doe it for feare of the spur, in this sort: stande you on his right side with the rod in your hand, and cause another to stand on his left side with a spurre, naile, sharpe sticke or goade in hys hande, and in the same instaunt that you doe beat him with your rod on the leg: let the other pycke hym in the common spurring place, with his spur, helping him with the sound of his tongue, or with his voyce, as be-

fore,

fore, you holding youre peace, and so soone as the horse shal heare that sound or voyce, and feele the stroke both of rod and spur, he wil lift vp his right legge, whiche when he hath done, you shall chaunge sides, and in the same sort, make him to do as much with his left legge. And thus vsynge him a whyle, you shall make him to lift vp which you wil, so soone as he shall heare but the sound of your tongue or voyce, and feale the spur on the contrary side, without the helpe of any man to stand by him with a rod in his hand: yea, and to hold it vp stil a quarter of an houre together. And perhappes manye tymes he will do the same without the helpe of the spur, being afraide to set it downe, so longe as you are there present. But if (as it happeth many tymes) the horse when you pricke him so with the spur, wil not lift vp the contrarye leg, but only the legge of the same side that you spur him: then in the same instaunt that you spurre him, if he be not curste and shrewed, strike him with your foote on the contrary legge, which warning will make him to remember himselfe. Or els for a more surety, you may haue a sticke in youre other hande, and knocke him therwith on thinside of his contrarye legge: and beside that, euery time that he so erreth, eyther in not liftinge vp the contrary leg: or els in lifting vp thother, remember alwais to double the stroke of the spur, and that shal so correct him, as afterward if you do but make an offer to touche him with the spur, it shall suffise to make him to holde vp the contrary leg, so longe time together as you will your selfe. Neyther care you for the frowardnes of any horse, but the more froward he is, the more roughly correct him. But thoughe youre

horse

horse in this sort may learne ỹ Chambetta in one day, yea, and perchaunce in lesse then .iii. howres: yet to kepe him in vre withall, & that he may do it afterward, the more redilye in his manegynge, it shalbe necessarye to spend euery day one howre with hym in the stable, in making him to holde vp first one leg, and then another. Thus when you haue taught youre horse to doe the Chambetta in the stable: You may also teach him to do it abrode, being vpon his backe, in this sort. When you are mounted, cause him to stand still a good prety while together, and beare a steady hand vpon him: makynge him to reane truly with hys head, and appoint a footeman to stande on youre right side, with a sticke in hys hande, and in the same instaunt that you helpe youre horse with your toung or voyce, let the footman beate him vpon the right leg with his sticke, not leaynge so to molest him vntill he lifteth vp his foote, whiche doyng, you shall make muche of him, by clawynge him on ỹ withers. That done, let the footeman chaunge sides, and make the horse to do asmuch with his left leg, and when the horse vnderstandeth those helpes, then besydes ỹ help of your tongue or voice, you may touch him also wyth your contrarye spur, whiche if it doth make him to holde vp the true leg, then spurre him no more, but make much of him, and when he knoweth once the helpe of the spur, you shall nede no more the helpe of the footman with his rod, for then if he erreth at any time, by helping him with your tongue or voice, and by doublynge the stroke of the spurre, you shall quicklye make him to amend his fault. And besydes these helpes, for a more surety if nede be, you may haue a rodde in youre

hand

hande,and correct him therewith your selfe like as the footman did before,but I beleue that after a litle exercise(if the horse be not to dul)the helpe of your tongue, and the mouing only of your contrary legge will suffise without anye more bulines. And to kepe him in bre withall:remember alwayes whensoeuer you take his backe to make him hold vp first one leg, and then another,so shall he afterward be perfect when he commeth to be maneged, either with single or double turne,but he shall do it the more redily in the double tourne, if he be vsed to do it first in the single turne. It shalbe verye necessary also to trot him or to gallop him,and to turne him to and fro in some such way as is before described, by meanes wherof if the horse be of any gentle nature, and therwith somwhat staid of head,he maye quicklye learne the Chambetta without the helpe of any of the former inuentions,which notwithstanding are necessarye for shiftes sake,to aunswere the diuerse qualityes of horses:for all horses will not learne alike. Thus hauing taught you the order of treading the ryng,of stopping,of aduaunting before,of yarkinge behind, of tourninge, with single tourne and double tourne, yea,and that with the Chambetta also:I thinke it mete nowe to shewe you the order of maneging,and howe manye kindes of maneges there be.

¶ Of maneging, and how many kindes of maneges there be. Cap. xx.

This Italion word Maneggiare is as much to say in Englishe,as to handle with skill, as when we saye

saye, he can handle his horse or weapon verye well, and amongest the Italions it is taken as a generall word, comprehendinge foure especiall kindes of maneginge: whereof one is, when they make their horse to double his tournes, which they call Raddoppiare: an other is, when they make him to gallop the fielde, goyng in and out, as they do in skirremishe: the thirde is, when they make him to leape a loft, and to fetch diuers saultes: the fourth is, when they pace, trot or galloppe him a good while to & fro in one selfe path, the length of .xx. or .xxx. paces, or there about, turning him at eche ende therof, eyther with single turne, whole turne, or double turne, which Grison calleth Maneggiare a Repoloni, But we Englishe menne do only call this laste kinde a manege, and that absolutely without any other addicion. For amongst our horsemen this word manege or maneging signifieth none other thinge, but onlye that foresayde kinde of galloppinge and turning to and fro in one selfe path. And therfore we vse commonly to say, this horse canne manege well, or make a good manege, whereof there be also thre kindes. That is to saye, manege with haulfe rest, manege with whole rest, and manege without rest. Which Grison termeth thus, Maneggio a mezzo tempo, a tempo, & contra tempo. The manege with halfe rest is when you cause your horse at the ende of euerye maneging path, after he hath stopt, to aduaunce twyse together, and at the seconde bounde to tourne. Wherby you rest alwayes one bound. The manege with whole reste is, when you turne him at the thyrde bounde, and so you reste two boundes. The manage without reste is, when you tourne hym immediatly vpon the stoppe,

without any tarriaunce at all, whyche onelye kynde of manege our Englyshe Ryders most commonlie do vse, & not thother two. Notwithstanding, they be verye necessarye and mete to be vsed, accordinge as the horse is stronge or weake. For the verye strong horse requireth the manege wyth the hole rest. And the horse of an indifferent strength, the manege with the haulfe rest. And the weake horse the manege without rest. But the manege with the haulfe rest is most necessary of all, & the best meane to make a horse perfyght in thother two But note that in al. iii. kindes of maneges, you must observe well those generall preceptes that I gaue you before, touchinge the single and double tournes. That is, to see that your horse kepe alwayes one path, and one place of stoppe, and in his tourninge that he kepe hys ground and carie his head, necke, legs, and whole body orderly, without preasing forward, or reling backward, or swarvinge on either syde: and also that he close hys tourne roundly, and in so narrowe rowme as maye be. And finally, to see that aswel in his turnes, as courses, he kepe alwayes like time and measure, and that thone be not swifter then the other, and such like. All whyche thynges, by vsinge suche helpes and corrections as I haue partlye alreadye, and shall hereafter more at full declare: you shall easely make your horse to doe. Thus hauing shewed you howe manye kindes of Maneges there be, and which they be, and what you must generally observe in teaching them: I will now declare vnto you the order of them al, beginning first with ỳ manege the haulfe rest.

Of manege with halfe rest. Cap. xxi.

When

When your horse can stoppe well, aduaunce before, and tourne redilie on both handes, then beynge come oute of the rynges, trot him right out, either in the middle forrow vnto the common place of stoppe, or els in some other soft ground, the length of .xx. paces, or there about, and euen as he is ready to stop, helpe hym wyth your boyce, makyng him to aduaunce twyse together, and at the second bound, turne him on the right hand, helping hym with your tongue, wyth the rayne of his headstrain or false raine, with your rod, with the calues of your legs, or with your spurs, more or lesse, according as occasion shall require, & see that in his tourninge he moue his forepartes orderly, staying him selfe vpon hys hinder loynes, bowing his houghes decently, which is the bewtye and chyefest grace of his turne. That done, immediatlye trotte him backe againe in the selfe same path, vnto the place from whence you came. And there after stop at the second bound of his aduauncing, turne him on the left hand, & so folowe on obseruing lyke order, vntill you haue gone to and fro, about .xii. tymes, chaunging handes at euerye tyme. And at the last stop of all, you shall cause him to aduaunce twyse together, and so depart: and this is the order of the manege with halfe rest. In the whych after that he hath bene somewhat exercised, you shall not neede to helpe him when he is ready to stop, but only to beare a steddy & straight hand, & to helpe him with your tongue or boyce in hys tourning. And you shal see that he of himselfe wil turne roundlye, and with a good grace without anye more helpe.

Of manege with whole rest. Cap. xvii.

THEN after that he can make the manege with halfe rest well, if he be of muche force, and very light withall, you may teach him to make the manege with whole rest, causing him at euery stop to aduaunce thrise together, and at the .iii. bounde to tourne, and at the laste stop of all, to aduaunce againe thrise together, and so to depart. But vnlesse he be verye strong in dede: I would wyshe you to tourne him most commonly at the second bounde, rather then at the thirde, so shall he be able to turne the more redily, and to kepe the better tyme and measure in his turning.

Of manege wythout rest. Cap. xviii.

BVt if your horse be of no force, or of a heuy mould, then you maye teache hym the manege wythout rest, by turnyng hym sodenly vpon the stop, wherin also he shal neuer be perfect, vnlesse he be first vsed to the manege with haulfe rest, but remember that in the manege without rest you cause your horse at ỹ last stop to aduaunce once at the least. For it is none errour at al but a comely sighte in all .iii. kindes of maneges, at the last stop to aduaunce twyse or thryse. And note that in all these .iii. kyndes of Maneges, it is praise worthye, when the horse in his aduauncinge, bow hys houghes behind, and tourneth round with the Chambetta. For whiche pourpose it were not amysse to manege hym sometime in suche place whereas the grounde si at ech

ende of the manegynge path, somwhat hanging. Note also that in maneging youre horse, it is no small helpe vnto him in euery tourne that he maketh, to accompany him with your person in this sorte folowinge. Whe he turneth on the right hand, turne you your left shoulder towardes his left eare, more or lesse, as nede shal require, kepinge youre bodye for all that still right in the midst of the saddle, so as the raynes of your backe may directly aunswere the ridge bone of his backe. Neuertheles, when you fele him to bend his hinder houghes, then leane you somwhat backward, for that shall make him to close his turne the more roundlye and swiftlye. And when he tourneth on the left hande, accompanye him with your right shoulder, toward his right eare, obseruyng lyke order as before. If youre horse be verye weake or feeble, eyther by nature, or by ouermuche trauell, then it shalbe good, somtime to manege hym with a soft pace, and not to trot him, vsing hym for the most part to that kind of manege whiche shalbe most meete for his strength, least by often chaūging, you cleane disorder him, and he neuer become perfect in any of them. When your horse can make all these three kindes of maneges, both with soft pace & with trot: Then you may manege him in any of the said kindes with a gallop, geuing him on eche hande but one single tourne, and see that the first and last be always of the right hand. And a litle before you turne him, remember to hold your rod on the contrarye side, wherby your horse shall know on what syde to tourne: and at the stop make him to aduaunce, helping him with your voice, or with your rod, or with the euen stroke of your spurres, or of the calues

of

of your legges. And in twoo of the forsaide kyndes of maneginge (if your horse be redye of his heeles, and light behind, you may also make him to yarke aswell at his stop, as in his turne. That is to say, in the manege with halfe rest, and in the manege with whole rest: for in the manege without rest, it cannot be decent. But in thother .ii. you may at the first, or second bound of his aduauncing, helpe him with your voice, rod or spurres, to yarke there once, and at the closing of his tourne to yarke againe. So as at euerye ende of the manegynge course, he shal yarke twise, once forward and once backward. Or if you will, you may cause him to yarke at ech ende but once, and that woulde be at the closing of hys turne, settinge his heade that waye, that his tayle before stoode. But before you gallop him, it were good to pace him and to tourne him faire and softlye in the same path to and fro, about .xii. times. Which shal make him the redier when he is afterward maneged wyth a gallop, yea, and if you did the like, after that you haue maneged him with a gallop, so that you first suffer him to breath a while, it shoulde do him no harme, as you shal well perceiue if you manege hym againe the next daye folowing. And beware that in maneging your horse, ye gallop him not at the first to swyftlye, for so shall he neuer be able to continue wyth one tyme and measure, neyther in his courses, nor yet in his tournes, for after a while euery one shall be slower then another, whiche shoulde be verye vnsemelye, and therefore good respect woulde be had to the quality of the horse, whether he be able to endure a swift manege or not. For if you perceyue that he is naturallye stronge, and hath a good

mouth,

mouth, and can tourne redily on both handes: then you may be ꝑ bolder to geue him a swift manege. But if he be to liuelie, or els be laden with great cheekes, or hard of mouth, or if he be feble of backe and legs, then albeit he seineth to haue a gentle mouth, by meanes perhaps of good breakynge, yet you must gallop him with the more respect. Notwithstandinge if he hath strength in his backe and loynes, then thother defectes be not so much materiall, but that wyth good breakinge he may be maneged any maner of waye, but the surest way for all maner of horses is to manege him with a soft pace, or with a trot, and seldome with a gallop.

And note that if there be any stones in the maneging pathe, or on anye side of his stoppinge place, where he tourneth, it is not good to take theym awaye, for the feare thereof shall make him to lyft his feete the better, and to goe the more surelye, yea, if there be none at the place of turnyng, it were necessarye to put one or twoo great ones: for the feare of those stones woulde make him to tourne with the Chambetta. When your horse is perfight in all the thinges abouesayde. Then if you will: you may manege him somtime in, and out, like the writhing of a Serpent, thus figured. But vse it not often, and specially with a young horse.

Hitherto we haue spoken of manegynge with single tournes. Now therfore we wil talke a litle of maneging wyth double tournes.

Maneging with double tournes. Cap. xxiiii.

Although maneging with the double tournes appertaineth rather to the sterrer, then to the horse of

of seruyce, yet it shall not be out of tyme to talke therof in thys place. And note that you may teach your horse to manege with ỳ double tournes two maner of waies, wherof the first is in this sort. ¶Pace him or trot him right out the length of twenty or thirtye paces as you did before. And when you come to the place of stop, let him aduaunce once, twise, or thryse together, according as the kynde of manege which you woulde haue him to make, shall require, geuyng him there a double tourne, and halfe a turne on the right hand, whiche maketh in al .b. single turnes: or if he be very strong, you may geue him .ii. double tournes, and halfe a tourne on the right hand, which amounteth to .ix. single or halfe turnes.

That done, trot him back againe in the self same path, and geue him the like nũber of turnes on the left hand, & so folow on still, continuing the same order so long as you thinke your horse can wel endure, & then at the last stop make him to aduaũce twise or thrise together, & so leaue. The second waye is thus. When you come to the place of stop, geue him at the first but halfe a tourne on the right hand, and sodenly chaunging handes, let him close the double turne on the leaft hand, that done, trot him backe againe in the selfe same path, vnto the other ende, and there likewise geue him halfe a tourne on the left hand, and immediatlye lette hym close the double turne on the right hand, and so to folowe on wyth double turne and halfe tourne, mockt throughe out: and at thend let him stop and aduaunce, as before is sayd.

And note that in both these waies of maneging, in the beginning, the tournes would be made faire and softly, to thintent the horse may cary his legges the more orderlye

derlye. When youre horse can double, beinge maneged with a soft pace and trotte, then you maye make him to double after one of these twoo sortes, beinge maneged with a gallop, which must be more or lesse swift accordinge as the horse may endure, and be able to kepe lyke time & measure, so wel in his courses, as in his turnes. For the double turnes, & specially twoo on eche hand do straine a horse, his loynes and synewes very sore, if he be weke or not verye lyght of nature. Wherefore if your horse haue any such defect, and yet you wold haue him to double in his manege, then for a while, let him vse to make on eche hande but one double tourne: so shall he tourne the more roundlye, and close his tournes the better, yea and with the more strength of his backe, whiche wil not decaye so soone with that, as with making .ii. double tournes, and in processe of time it is possible that you shall make him to tourne so often together, as you will youre selfe. But yf he be of so grosse a molde, as he is not apt to close his turne well, then vse him in no wyse to double, leaste that he neyther make double nor single turne as he ought to do.

¶ Of the helpes and corrections whyche are mete to be vsed for the redresse of suche faultes as commonlye chaunce in manegyng. Cap. xxv.

AND first as touchinge the ordinarye helpes, I saye, that if youre horse haue bene wel broken before, and taught to tourne redily on both hands (as he ought to be before you manege him) then he nedeth

the lesse helpe. For to soone as he shall heare the sound of your tongue or voyce, and feele the staying of the bridle, he will not tarye to be spurred, but turne roundlye of his owne accorde: notwythstanding, according as he is more or lesse sensible in the beginning of euery maneging course that he maketh, it shal not be amisse to help him with the euen stroke of youre spurs, yea and also to do the like a litle before he commeth to the place of stop helpinge him also with your voyce, for that shall make him to close his tourne with the better grace. But if he be dull and heauy, then it shal not only be necessarye to helpe him in the beginning of eche course, but also in the midst, and likewise at the ende of the same, in suche order as is aboue said. And in his tourninge, remember to helpe him when nede is, wyth ỹ contrary leg or spur & sometime with the closyng stroke of both spurres, as you haue bene hertofore taught. And when your horse goeth out of the way, and will not kepe the right path, then correct him with your rod, strikyng him vppon the flāke, or with your spur vppon that side ỹ he swarueth. If your horse be yong, & not growen to his ful strēgth, it is possible that somtyme for his owne ease, he beinge come to the place of stoppe, wyll tourne sooner then he should. Wherefore you shall do well at the stop to make him aduaunce twise or thrise together, & then to stand still a while, making muche of him: that done, help him wyth your voyce to tourne, wherein if he also make to much haste, and kepeth no time, stay him agayne vpon the same a nother while, and so you shall quickly bryng him from that faulte, and make him to manege with what time and measure you wyl your selfe. Also if your

horse

horse haue that fault, by meanes ỹ he is ouerliuely, and to rash, there is no better meane to bring him from it, then by vsing him vnto the manege wyth whole rest, & to stay a prety while together, after ỹ he hath aduãced, making him alwayes to turne low by the ground, & to bring ouer the contrary leg, or to turne with ỹ Thãbetta. Agayne, there be some horses so froward, & so spight full, which by meanes of euill breakynge, and ouermuch beating, when they come to the turning place, they wil make eyther to large a turne, or elles wythout tyme or measure. For correction whereof vse to manege hym with a soft pace vntill he be almost within his length of the tourning place, & then trot him swiftly, or gallop him vnto thend, whereas after you haue geuen hym a turne truly closed on the right hand, stay him a while, that done, pace him foorth fayre and softlye, vntill he be almost at thother ende, and then galloppe him to the place of stop, wheras after he hath turned, stay hym againe lyke as you did before, & so continue, maneging him still after that sort, vntyll you haue gone to and fro viii. times, & at the last stop make him to aduaunce, or if you wil, you may after his first turne, first pace him ii. or iii. steps, then trot hym swiftly vntil he come somwhat nigh to thend, & from thence gallop hym to the place of stop, obseruing ỹ order in euery course frõ ỹ beginninge to thending, & afterward being sõwhat amended of his fault, you may after ỹ stay vpon his turne, vse to gallop him al ỹ way, for a certain seasõ, vntil he be throughly perfect in his turne: which when he is, see that you stay him no more vpon hys turne, but immediatly put him forward. For to stay vpon the tourne, is vnseemelye, and

not to be allowed, but only for corrections sake. There be manye horses which through euyll breakynge when they are maneged, will turne their rumpes and hinder loynes, before they turne their forepartes. For remedy of whiche fault, you shall vse these wayes folowing.

Trotte him right oute in the forrowe of some newe plowed ground, correcting him continuallye, and that not onelye in his goinge, but also when he is readye to stoppe, and likewise in his turning, sometime with the contrarye legge, and sometyme wyth the contrarye spurre, and if that wyll not suffyse to make hym leaue his fault, then manege him alongest by some wall or tylte, and ride so nigh vnto it as you can. Which wall or tilt in the first course woulde be on your left hande, and in the seconde on youre right hande: and so chaunging from hand to hand, helpe him in eche turne, with the contrary leg, or spur, more or lesse accordyng as nede shall require. Or elles manege him in suche a fashioned dike, as I haue before described, for to teach your horse therin the Chambetta: And by one of those wayes, you shall make him to amende his faulte, and to tourne orderly, as you woulde haue hym.

If your horse in his turnynge vse to wryth his body on that syde he tourneth, as thoughe he woulde fall downe, which is a very fowle fault, then manege hym ofte with a swyft trotte, eyther in the forrowe of some newe plowed ground, or elles in some path ouerthwart the forrowes: and at the first tourne him alwayes low by the ground, helping him with suche helpes and corrections as are before taught, so shall you brynge hym to make a true turne, and iust in euery condicion.

You

you maye also correct him for the selfe same faulte, or for makinge to large a tourne, by geuinge him a chocke with the bridle on that syde of his mouth, that he so erreth. And for the most part such wrythinge tournes do chaunce in the manege without rest, wherin as they are vnseuely to manye mens iudgementes, so are they muche more vnsemely in the other twoo kindes of maneges. Notwithstandinge, yf youre horse be weake and feble, then somewhat to ease hym, you maye suffer him whilst he boweth his houghes behind in his stopping to wrye his bodye a hande bredth on that side that he tourneth, so shall he close hys tourne the more redilye, but otherwise see that you vse it not.

But if your horse in any of the maneges make a faulse tourne, or tourneth higher or lower then you woulde haue hym, as for example on the ryght hande, then so sone as he hath turned euen in his goyng forward, correct him once or twise with your left spurre, yea, and if nede be, with both spurres at once, and beynge come to thother place, tourne him agayne on the right hande, and so folowe on with youre manege vnto the place where he tourned first on the right hand, & there turne him on the left hand, by whiche chaunging of handes, you shall alter the common order of tourning in maneging: which altering somtime is very necessary not only for the correction of the faultes aboue said, but also to knowe thobedience and redynes of your horse. For if he be vsed alwayes to one order of tourninge, it is possible that he will not tourne sometime on that hande, that you would haue hym. And if he make a false tourne on the left hande, then correct him by obseruynge the contrarye

trary order.

There is some kinde of horse, which when you haue maneged hym .x. courses to and fro, he wil in thende sodenly force your hande, eyther by casting vp his heade aloft, or by chopping it downe, and so fal a running, not for that the bridle grieueth him, or for anye great desire he hath to run or to trauell, but onelye for that he thinketh so to escape youre handes, and that you shoulde trouble him no more, but suffre him to rest. Whiche fault so often as he vseth, see that you sharply correct him for it without shewyng him any fauour at all, not leauyng to beate him vppon the head betwyxt theares with a good sticke, and to rate hym wyth a terrible voice, shewinge your selfe fierce and cruell vpon him, vntyll you haue brought hym vnto obedience, and made hym to know that running away will not helpe him. Whiche correction he should remember the better, if it were his hap to deserue it, being maneged vpon a ground newly plowed with depe forrowes, the trauell wherein together with the correction, woulde be so paynefull vnto him, as he woulde beware euer after, how he ran away before his lesson were ended. And hauinge thus subdued him, leaue him not so: but manege him a fresh, first with a round trot, and then wyth a gallop, accordinge as you shal see him in breath: and in thende make much of hym, by which so vsyng him, you shall see that afterwarde he wyll manege so longe tyme together as you wyl haue him, and lykewise be readye to stop at Commaundement, yea, and if nede be to stop in a Cariere, beinge run with an vnkerbled bridle.

How

Howe and when to teach your horse to passe a swyft Cariere. Cap. xxvi.

Vntill youre horse be perfect in all poyntes before taught, and specially that he can stop well, and therwith aduaunce before, aswel in his trot as in his gallop: I woulde not wysshe you in any wyse to run hym, vnlesse it were in the very beginning of his breakinge, to geue him a Cariere, or two, only to know his swyftnes, and disposition, and so to leaue of, vntil he be better broken, and made mete to be run. Which whan he is, you shall vse this order folowinge: Ryde him into some fayre playne sandy way, voyde of al stumbling stones, and to acquaint him with the waye: Pace him faire and softly the length of a good Cariere, which must be measured, according as the horse is made. For if he be a mightye puissaunt horse, and great of stature: Then the Cariere would be the shorter. So likewise must it be when you wold haue him to bound aloft in his Cariere: But if he be made lyke a Jennet, or of a middle stature: then the Cariere path maye be the longer, yet not ouerlong. At thende whereof, let hym stop and aduaunce, and at the seconde bounde turne hym faire and softly on the right hand, & so stay a litle while. Then sodenly saying with a liuely voice Hey or Now, put him forward with both spurres at once, forcing him al the way to run so swiftlye and so roundlye, as he can possiblye euen to thende, to thintent he may stop on his buttockes. That done, tourne him on the left hand, and pace him foorth faire and softlye vnto thother ende of the Cariere path, and

there

there stop him and turne him again on the right hand, as you dyd before, and so leaue.

And note that the chiefest poyntes to be obserued in the running of a Cariere are these: first to see that the horse gather roundlye, and go smoothlye awaye, bearyng his head stedely: Secondly, that he runne swiftlye: and thirdlye, that he stop lightlye. Whereunto you shall bring him, by no meanes so wel, as by often vsyng him to tread the rynges with a very swyft trot, which shall make hym so nymble of his legges, so swyfte, and so staide of heade, as when he cometh afterward to bee run, it shalbe no griefe vnto hym: whiche was well obserued by the great rider M. Cola Pagano. Who vntil he sawe his horse well stayde of heade, and throughlye broken, he woulde neuer run him. For after that he had spent foure monethes or halfe a yere, yea, & perchaunce a whole yeare in breaking him, in such order as I haue heretofore taught, he woulde teache him to run in lesse then .viii. dayes, and that so swyftlye, so smoothlye, so stronglye, and with such stedines of head, and lightnes at stoppe: as it could not be amended. Yea and when he woulde haue an horse excell, and be verie fine in deede: he woulde teach him nothinge from the beginninge to thending, but that he shoulde do it first perfectlye well vpon a soft pace, and then vpon a trot, & seldome or neuer vpon a gallop, vnlesse necessity so forced. And aboue al thinges he would be sure neuer to manege hym with a swift gallop, nor yet to make him passe a Cariere. But after that he sawe him perfect in the rest, he would appoint him to his Ryder, who coulde require nothing but the horse was redy to do it, were it to manege with

single

single tourne or double tourne, or runne as manye Caricres as the Rider woulde haue him, with suche order and tyme as it was marueylous to behold. And as I woulde not haue you to run youre horse before he bee throughly broken: so after that he can runne, I woulde not wysh you to exercise him therin aboue once in two monthes. yea, and if it were more seldom e, the better, and specially if he be naturally harde of mouth.
For nothing doth distemper an horses head and mouth so muche as often runninge, and it greatly diminisheth his strength, and if his hinder legges be weake, it maketh him also to ouer reche, whiche is verye perillous.

¶The order of boundinge aloft, or leapinge, howe and when you shall teache youre horse to leape. Cap. xxvii.

ALthoughe the rules before taught, do suffice to make a horse of seruice. Yet if youre horse be lighte, a Stirrer, and nimble of nature, you maye beside these, for pleasures sake, teache him many other proper feates. As to bounde aloft, and to yarke withall, to gallop the gallop gallyarde, to fetch the Capriole, to do the Coruetti, and suche like sautes, whereof I pourpose here somwhat to treate, thinkinge it nowe meete so to doe, and not before, because that vnlesse youre horse be first perfect in the foremer lessons, it were in vayne to teach him any of the lessons folowing. And first as touchinge leappnge or boundinge aloft, you shall vnderstand, that to do it with a good grace, and as it ought to be done: The horse had not onelye nede to be made

light by art, but also to be light by nature, for in his leaping, he must aduaunce him selfe, gathering his bodye round together, and rise euen from the grounde, keping his head at one staye, and in his due place. And when he leapeth, he must parke withall. Which if you would haue him to do at the stoppe: you shall helpe him in hys aduauncyng, and specially when he riseth aloft, at the second bounde, with theuen stroke of your spurres, and with your voice, yea and with your rod also, by striking him therwith, sometime behinde, on the midde rompe, and sometime on either side of his rompe, where he seemeth most to hang, and if he rise not lightlye inowe before: then beate him therwith vpon the right shoulder, by meanes of which helpes, you shal see him immediatlye to bounde cleane aboue grounde, gathering his bodye shorte together, and to parke wythall. And note by the way, that the helpe of the caulfe of your legges, will make some horse to rise higher then the helpe of youre Spurres: therfore in suche cases your owne discretion must be vsed. But in the beginning, so soone as he hath made one true fault or leape, and parked withall, forget not to make muche of him, suffringe him to stay vpon it a good while, wythout molestynge him anye more for that time, yea rather you shall do verye well to light of his backe euen there. And so cause him to be ledde from thence faire and softlye into the Stable, or at the least, if you will not light of, to depart with a soft pace: So shal you encourage him against the next time to do the like, or els better. For vntill youre horse vnderstandeth youre minde, and knoweth perfectlye the order of leaping, and howe to gather vp his bodye short and round

together:

togethers it is not good to force him ouermuche, but only at thende of his pace, trot, gallop, or Cariere, to help him as I shewed you before, to make twoo, three, or fower leapes, and no more, so shall they be both loftye and semelye.

Whereas otherwise in makinge manye, he maye hap to do theym faintlye, layselye, and without anye good grace. Yea, and perchaunce not without daunger of rearing right vp, wherin a hanging grounde would do good seruice. But then at the first it woulde not be to muche enclininge, or ouer stepe downe. Notwithstandinge, if your horse be light and a sterer by nature: you maye take the more of him, and encrease the number of his lessons as you shall thinke good. Hauing then only care that he kepe his grounde, that he springe oute on neither side, nor disorder his head, but beare it stedely. In whiche thinges he must be made perfect before, by often trottinge the ringes in suche order as is before taught. And then beinge staide of heade, you may by vsing the former helpes, cause him to a lusty strong gallop at euerye twoo paces ende, to bounde aloft, once or more, as you list your selfe, but so as he may doe it well, keping one selfe time and measure from the beginning to thending, and that the last leap be with no lesse force then the first, but with more force, if it may be. And therfore the number of hys leapes, and the lengthe of hys race woulde bee measured accordynge to the Horses strength, and as he is in breath, and able to endure. And this kinde of gallop, is called the gallop gallyard.

And when your horse is once perfect, you nede not to galloppe him but seldome, so shall he galloppe the more

stronglye, which would be done when you come out of the ringes. In the which for that cause, you must trot him at that time the fewer times about. And so you shall see that at his comming out, he wil enter into his gallop with a lustye courage, and bounde all the waye of his owne accorde, at euery .ii. paces ende, euen vntyll he come to the place of stoppe, or at the least, if he doth not this, I am sure that helpinge him but onlye with youre voyce, he will not faile to fetche .ii. or .iii. leapes at the stop, without any more businesse.

How we to teache your horse to do the Capriole or Goates leape, and the Coruetti, and also howe to make him goe sidelinge so well with hys whole body, as with hys rompe only. Cap. xxviii.

CApra in Latin or Italion, is a beast, which we cal a goate. Which beast being disposed to playe, vseth in his running a prettie kind of iumping and doublyng with his legges aboue grounde, makynge a certayne semblaūce of yarking, & yet yarketh not in ded. Which kind of saulte or leape, bycause the Italions haue not onlye counterfeited in their dauncinge, but also haue taught their horses to immitate the same (for when the horse boundeth aloft, he must aduaunce his rompe, and make as though he would yarke, and yet doe not) it is called therfore by the name of Capriole, whiche if you will, in Englishe you maye terme the Goates leape: But for so muche as Goates be not euery where to represent that kinde of leape: I woulde wyshe you therfore for youre better vnderstandinge, sometime to beholde oure little

Lambes

Lambes, whilest they run and playe together, and you shall see them liuelye to do the same.

The Coruetti is a certaine continual prauncing and dauncing vp and downe still in one place, lyke a beare at a stake, and somtime sideling to and fro, wherin the horse maketh as though he would faine runne, and can not be suffred. The name is deriued of thys Spanishe worde Corua. Whiche is as muche to saye as thelbowe or hynder heele of the horse, bycause in doyng thys feat he doth labour muche vpon his hinder legges. Whych kinde of prauncyng, the Spaniardes do vse most vpon their Jennettes, and specially when they ride short after the Turkye fashion. Because in that sort it maketh the better shewe, and they esteme it so muche, as they call the horse that can do it well, in their tongue Hazedor, that is to say, a doer.

Thus for your better vnderstanding, I haue thought good to interprete vnto you these two termes Capriole and Coruetti, which two feates, because they doe not muche differ (as Gryson sayeth) there is but one order in teachinge to be obserued in bothe, wherefore yf you woulde teach your horse to do the Capriole, vse to trot him for a certaine dayes vppon some longe hill, or hanging grounde, and stopping him vpon the knoll of the hill, make him to aduaunce twyse together: that done, immediatly helpe him with the sound of youre lyps, to trot two paces further, and to stop, and to aduaunce againe twyse, as he did before, and so to continue in stopping and aduauncing twise together, at euery two paces end, al the length of the hill downward, and there staye. Thus vsinge him a while, you shall see that after

warde

warde in stede of those two trotting steppes at euerye time that he stoppeth and aduaunceth, if you helpe him with this worde hup, and with youre rod, he will gather vppe his rompe twise together, and so goe from stoppe to stoppe, aduauncinge bothe his forefeete and hinderloynes, with tyme and measure, caryng his forelegges orderlye, and so fetche the Capriole so oft tymes together as you will, yea and by helpinge hym wyth youre rod a litle behinde, you maye make him at euerye tyme that he so aduaunceth with hys rumpe to parke withall. But note that if your horse be weake and feble in his hinderpartes, it shalbe best for him to make those two trotting steppes lowe by the grounde. Or elles in his lifting to obserue alwayes one tyme and measure, aduauncing therwyth orderly, without gatheringe vp his rompe, which kind of Capriole is not to be dyspraised. In this sort if your horse be very light, and you your selfe therwith accustomed to ride short vpon him, after the Turkye fashion: you may teach him also ỹ Coruetti. but if he be great of stature & that you ride longe vpon him after our fashyō, then the Capriole is most mete for him, which Capriole beyng done lowe by the ground, doth not differ much from the Coruetti, sauing that in doing the Capriole, your horse must alwayes be goyng forwarde. But he may do the Coruetti not onlye in going forwarde, but also in keping stil one place, whilst he standeth aduauncing vp and downe vpon all iiii. feete, yea, and somtime going backewarde, and sideling, and euerye waye. And to thintent he may do it the sooner, it were not amisse sometime to make him go sidelinge with his whole bodye, by helpynge him with the con-

trary

trarye spur: as for example, when you would haue him to drawe to the left side, then bearing your bridle hand euen and steddy, clap your right leg close to his belley, and holde it there still, making him to feale the spur on the right side, for the whiche if you see that he moueth his bodye suche waye as you would haue him, then sodenlye pull away your leg from thence, and make much of him, that done, make him to do asmuch on the other side with your left legge, not leauing to molest him in that sort on eyther side, vntill you haue made him vnderstande the meaning therof. And so with a litle exercise so sone as he shal feele you to stay your bridle hand, and to offer to touche him either with your leg or spur, on the contrarye side, he will goe sidelinge so muche or so little as you will haue him. But yf you would haue him go sidelinge with his Roumpe onelye, and not to moue his forepartes, which in dede is very necessary, and specially for a horse of seruice, to make hym kepe his heade alwayes towardes the enemye in fightinge hand to hand: then besides the foresaid helpe of the contrarye legge or spur, you must also tourne youre bridle hande somwhat on that side that you touche him. And you may also helpe him with your rod, by striking him therewith on the contrarye flanke behind. Note also that you may make your horse to do the Capriole in geuing him a lustye gallop, if you can helpe him at euerye two steppes to kepe tyme and measure. But as I sayd before, vnlesse your horse be naturally light of his body, and nimble of his legs, it is vnpossible by art to make hym to doe anye of these thynges well, and to saye the truth, they be things that may be very well spared, and

specially

specially in horses of seruice, whiche beinge once vsed to such delighting toyes, do forget in time of nede their necessary feates. For whē they are spurred to go forward or to passe a Cariere, they fall a hopping and dauncing vp and downe in one place, lykewise when in their manege they should make a spedy, round, and iust tourne, eyther single or double, they will not tourne but leysorlye with the Coruetti, and therefore I woulde wyshe none of the Quenes maiestyes horses to be vsed vnto the Coruetti, but suche as are onelye kept for pleasure, wherof it is sufficient to haue in her highnes stable .ii. or .iii. at the most.

Thus hauing declared vnto you what is necessarye as wel for the horse of seruice, as for the Sterer, and with what order to breake theym: I thinke it meete also to shewe you nowe in the ende, how to ride suche a horse, beinge once throughlye broken in all the feates aboue sayd, to the best shewe before a Prynce or noble man.

¶ How to ryde a horse to the best shewe before a Prynce, and where best standynge is for hym to see. Cap. xxix.

Some doe thynke it good for those that woulde see, to stand right before the stopping place, and some woulde haue theym to stand on the right hand of the Ryder, euen with the stoppinge place, and some on the same hand, not euen with the stoppinge place, but lower downe towarde the middle Cariere, distaunt from the stopping place the lengthy of a maneging course. Of all whiche three standinges, that ryght

right before the stoppinge place, in my iudgemente is worst, for two cause: First for that the rowme perhaps maye be vnmete to receyue anye number of men: Secondly, it is perillous. For if ỹ horse be headstronge and shoulde chaunce to breake the kirble, the raynes, or pothe mouthes of his bridle, he might run headlonge vpon the lookers on. And therfore I would not wyshe a Prynce or noble man to take viewe of a horse in that place, vnlesse it were from a house, oute of a windowe, or from some skaffolde. But rather to stand on the one syde towarde the middle Cariere, and distaunt from the stopping place the length of a maneging course, so shall he stande without daunger, and see the beginning, the middle, and ending. And it should be so much the better if he stande on the right hande of the Ryder; for so the Ryder at both endes of the maneginge path, in maneging his horse, shall tourne his face alwayes towardes the Prince, and not his backe. The place of standinge, then beinge thus appointed, and the Prince there readye to beholde what your horse can do.

Ride first faire and softlye toward the Prince, to doe your reuerence: that done, depart with a good rounde trotte towarde the farthest ende of the Cariere path, bearing your rod wyth the point vpwarde, towardes your right shoulder, accordinge as I haue taught you heretofore, and beynge come to thende, let the point of your rod fall towarde the left shoulder of youre horse, and make him to tourne an haulfe tourne on the right hand: & then to staye a litle whyle, that done, palle him forward, first three or foure steppes faire and softly, and immediatlye after, put spurres vnto him, geuinge him

a liuelie, swifte, and lustye Cariere, and passe before the Prince vnto the place of stopp, whereas after that he hath stopt, euen vpon his buttockes, then at the first, seconde, or thirde bounde of his aduauncing, according to that kinde of Manege that you will vse, or that the horse can doe most redily, and can best endure: You shal tourne him on the right hand, and so go backe agayne in the selfe same path, the length of a maneging course, and there stop him, and tourne him on the left hande, and so obseruinge alwayes one tyme and measure, manege him to and fro, as oft together, as you shal thinke meete, but let the last stop be at thend where the Prince standeth, who shalbe then harde by you, on youre lefte hande. Or if you will, when you passe the Cariere, you maye stoppe him somwhat shorte of the Prince. And after that he hath aduaunced, putte him forwarde the length of a maneging course, and there according to the manege that you woulde haue him to make, turne him on the right hand, and so come backe againe in the selfe same path, vnto the place where you did stoppe him before, at the ende of his Cariere, and there stop him, and tourne him on the lefte hande, and so geue him to and fro. iiii. maneginge courses. And if the horse be verye strong, you may geue him. vi. And by this meanes the first and last tourne shalbe on the right hande, and the last stop also before the Prince.

You maye also stop your horse when you first run hym euen right against the Prince, or els. ii. or. iii. yardes beyonde hym, and so without puttinge him anye further forwarde, in his aduauncing, to turne him on the right hande, and then to folowe on wyth that kynde of ma-

nege

nege that he can most readelye make, not passinge the number of two or fower Courses at the most, stopping sodenly vpon the last turne which must be on the right hand where he stopt first, so shal the Prince be on your left hand. And after that you haue stopt youre horse, in whiche so euer of these places it be, make him to double on eche hande once or twise together, and immediatlye after, or elles before, intertaigne him with the Capriole and Coruett. But he shoulde do the Capriole with a liuelier courage, if he were put vnto it, before he passe the Cariere and manege, beyng both done, you may make him to double againe as before. But maneging and doubling after a Cariere, belongeth to a horse of great force. Which in dede should represent in all his doinges the verye order of fight obserued in the fielde, which is but litle vsed nowe a dayes, because of the generall weakenes of oure horses: therefore I will teache you an other order of ryding your horse, to the shewe in such sort, as he shal seme to haue more strength, then he hath in dede. Which is done onlye by obseruing cleane contrary order to ỳ first. For wheras you did first make him to passe a Cariere, now you shall first manege him, not geuinge aboue .vi. or .viii. courses if you will haue them to be swift or of like tyme, vnlesse the horse be the stronger, for then you may geue him ten or twelue courses, and vsing any of these foresayde numbers, you shall be alwayes driuen to make the last stop where you first began. And hauing aduaūced, geue him either fiue double turnes, that is on the right hand .ii. on the left hād two, and on the right hand two, or if you will, but three tournes in all, wherof the first and last must be on the

right hand. And if he can do the Capriole wel, you may cause him to do it immediatly vpon the same: neuertheless, it were more ease for him to do it before he double. That done, go to thende of the Cariere path, and geue him a liuelie Cariere, stopping him a little before you come at the prince, who shall stand then on youre right hand, and after that he hath aduaūced, let him double as before. For it is always more ease for a horse to double in thende of a manege, or a Cariere, then at anye other tyme. You maye also after he hath run, stopt, and aduaunced, let him breath a whyle in the selfe same place, and then geue him what kinde of manege you shall thinke good, wherin good discretion must be vsed to consider the quality, strength and condition of the horse, to thintente that order, tyme, and measure, maye be kept according.

¶ Here endeth the seconde booke.

THE THIRDE BOOKE OF THE ARTE OF RIDINGE.

¶ Of the corrections of vices in generall. Cap. i.

Indinge to treate here of the corrections of such vyces, as horses haue either by nature or euill custome: I think it most mete to begin first with those vyces, that bee incident to the chiefest parties and members of the horse, that is say, the mouth, head and necke, vpon the ordering or disordering whereof, chiefly dependeth the making and marringe of the horse. But for so much as the most part of the vyces of the mouth, are corrected by the qualitye of the bitte: I pourpose therefore to reserue theym vntill I come to talke of the diuersities of bittes.

¶ Of the vyces of the heade and necke, and first howe to correct youre horse, when he beareth vpa heade or necke awrye. Cap. ii.

Wyll shewe you diuerse wayes, wything you when nede requireth to moue them all, and then to vse that as your ordinarye remedye, which you shall knowe by experience, to doe your horse most good. First vse to correct him with the contrarye spur, as for exaumple, if he beareth awrye on the left hande, strike him once or twyse with the right spur, turning inward your bridle hand somewhat towardes the right side. And if he beareth awrye on the right hande, then vse the contrarye order. But if he be

verye stiffe necked on the right side, and softe plying or bowinge on the left, then vse to holde the right reane shorter then the left, in such order as is taught you before in the Chapter of the bridle and reanes in the first booke: you may correct him also by geuing him sodenlye a chocke with the bridle in his mouth, vpon his nether gummes on the contrarye side, and you may geue hym suche chocke twoo maner wayes, that is to saye eyther by choppinge downe your bridle hande on that syde that he erreth, geuinge him the chocke on the contrary syde, and so to pull vp youre hande againe immediatlye into his due place: Or els by turning your hand onlye inwarde, and strainge the bit harde to hys nether gummes on the contrarye side without any choppinge downe of your hande at all, whiche kinde of correction if it be geuen with a temperate and staid hand, it is marueilous good to correct the foresaide vice in anye horse of what sort soeuer he be. It is very good also, and specially when he hangeth or boweth with his whole bodye more on one syde then on another, to holde the calfes of your leg alwayes close to his bellye, on the contrarye side, nigh vnto the fore guirt, to thintent you maye be redye from tyme to tyme, not onelye to pricke him a little, with the spurre of the same legge, but also when nede requireth, to touch him therwith well and surelye. Whereof when you perceiue that he beginneth to haue some feare, and therby to amend his fault, you shall do well sodenlye to remoue your legge from that place, and in that instaunt to make muche of him. So that afterwarde if he doth but feele the caulfe of youre leg comming towardes his bellye, he will immediatly

amend

amend his fault, & beare his head on what side you wil haue him, you may also correct ỳ stifnes of his neck by beating him with your stirrup vpon ỳ shoulder, or with your fote vnder the fore shoulder, vpon ỳ same side that his necke is so stiffe, which will make him to loke that waye, to see what is ỳ so greueth him which whilst he doth, let slacke the contrary reane, & sodenlye pull away your fote, & make much of him, & vsing him so a while, you shal make him both to know his fault, & also to amend the same. It is good also to correct him with the rod, by striking him therwith on ỳ contrary side, either in ỳ flanke or els more forward nygh vnto ỳ fore guirt. But the correction of the contrarye spurre is of a more efficacye, and muche more commendable, notwithstanding for a nede you maye vse both, and in any wyse forget not whēsoeuer he hangeth more of thone side then of another, to holde alwayes the contrary reane shorter then the other, but otherwise let the reanes be alwayes euen. And to the intent you may beare theym alwayes euen from the beginninge: Ride a younge horse at the first with false reanes, which you maye for the correction of your horse make short or long of anye syde at your pleasure, and yet hold your ordinarye reanes alwayes euen together, and of one length, as I tolde you before in the Chapter of the bridle and reanes, and note, that it is exceadinge good to vse these corrections, whilest you make your horse to tread the ringes, so often about on both handes as you shall thinke moste requisite for his strength. And yf he be verye harde of necke on the right side, it shall not bee amysse whilst he treadeth the right ringe to laye your right hande vpon the middest

of the

of the right reane, and by straininge it harder then the other, to make him to holde hys necke that way whether he will or not. And if he be harder on the left side then to do the like with your left hand, whilst he treadeth the left ring, making your right hand to ryse the bridle hand. Notwithstanding it were more rightly to shorten the left reane without shifting your hand, in suche order as I haue tolde you before in the first booke. And to thintent you maye force him the more to come wholye on that side that you would haue him, it were not amisse in some place where none may see you, to counterpayse him by bending downe your body and head on the selfe same side that the horse is stiffnecked, staying your legs so as ye fall not, beholdinge alwayes his eye on that side, wherewith also he wyll looke you in the face, and thereby shalbe forced to correct his owne fault, in tourning his necke that waye that you would haue him, which kinde of counterpaising you maye vse sometime in riding him in and out, the length of a mile, yea, and also sometime when he treadeth the ringes, not forgetting to tourne your bridle hand also accordingly. But if you would haue him to be iust of body, head, and necke, quicklye then vse to trot or pace hym to & fro, the length of .v. yardes or there about, making him at euery ende to stop and to tourne, helpinge him with youre tongue, spurre, or caulfe of your legge, on the contrarye side and sometime with the closing stroke, bearynge alwayes a steddy hande, which would be moderatelye tourned towardes the same side. And if you see that he doth not bring ouer the contrary leg orderlye, bearynge hys head & necke, euen and iust, then meete leaue correc-

tinge

tinge of him with the contrarye spur all the way, vntill he come at the other ende, and there make him to turne agayne on the same hande, that he tourned on before, continuing still to trauell him on the same side, vntil he hath amẽded his fault: which if he doth, then you may turne him on both handes interchaungeably, so as your first and last tourne be on the right hande. And trauell him in such sort to and fro to the number of thirtie courses, or so longe as you shall se him hable well to endure, to thintent you may leaue him with a good mouth, remembrynge alwayes to make muche of hym when he doeth well, and not to helpe him with the spurre, but when nede shal require, but onelye with youre tongue which must be alwais one.

How to correct youre horse when he beareth not right the lower part of his heade, called of the Italions *Mustacchio*, and may be called of vs the Mosel, whyche comprehendeth both nose and mouth. Cap. iii.

If your horse then vse to carye his mosell awrye: put three litle short nayles on the inside of his portsmouth, on the contrarye side, and ride him with a musroll, hauinge also. iii. like nayles, yea, and if he carye his whole heade awrye out of all measure, then put. iii. like nailes also on his headstall, on the contrarye cheke. For otherwise the first two corrections shall suffice. But if suche vyce hath bene long rooted in him, then all three corrections shalbe litle enough, And if the headstall and mosell, be made of double leather, you may so fasten the

nailes betwixt the twoo leathers, as the prickes shalbe next vnto ỹ horses cheke, & the heades of them couered with the vpper lether. Or if you wil, you may put them in a thin plate of yron, made no broder then the leather whiche plate being fastened to the inside of the leather, shalbe the greater correction vnto him. But let him not weare those nailes aboue tenne dayes, for thoughe you take them away, yet the place wilbe so sore, where they stoode, as the horse wilbe afraide to beare his head any more awrye, thinkinge that the nailes be there still to pricke him. And note that such nayles will correct some horse if they be put on the selfe same side that he writh his head, so well as though they were put on the contrarye side: It is good also to putte suche nailes on the backe side of the linke, sustayninge the kurble hooke in suche order as I tolde you before, in the. xiiii. Chapter of the second booke. But to some horse whiche perhaps through the negligence of the rider hath accustomed to cary his nose, yea and also his necke cleane awrye, so as the muscle of his necke seameth to be naturally bent and crooked: it is requisite not onelye to vse the remedye aboue said: But also to tey the one ende of a thonge vnto the middle eye of his bitte, or to the ringe of his musrol on that side whereon he is so stiffe, and the other ende vnto his surcingle, in suche sort as I shewed you in the second booke in the first correction of the Credeuza. And so to let him stand a long while together. And you maye also if you will, ride him for a certaine dayes tyed in that sort, but then the thong would be strayned somwhat straiter. Or in steade of the thonge, you may put on his headstraine, and tey the reanes of that vnto the

surcingle.

surcingle on his stiffe side, which shalbe of more force. And vntill he carie his head iust, let but one vse to ride hym, & such one as hath some skil, for al riders handes are not like. And therfore often varyng of handes, may make his fault incurable. Wherfore al the wayes aboue taught, are inuented to helpe him that lacketh knowe-ledge, or hath not a staid hand. For assure your self that whoso euer hath a good iudgement, a temperate hand, and can obserue suche rules and preceptes of ridinge, as are before taught, he shall neuer neede anye of these in-uentions, to correct either this vice or any other.

¶ Certaine causes why it is better for a horse to beare his heade vnder then right out, or to caste it vp aloft, and then howe to correcte him, if he wyll not bring in his head and reane as he ought to do. Cap. iiii.

ALthoughe some do thinke it good that the horse shoulde haue his head alwayes at liberty, and not to be restrained of his naturall fiercenesse: yet I, in no wise can allowe it. For first you shall vnderstande that his forehead is the strongest part of his head, and his nose or mosell is the weakest parte, and tenderest, the more he thrusteth out his mosell, the more he distendeth his backe, and hathe the lesse force therin. And therfore can neuer make good manege, ob-serue time, kepe order, nor continue in breath any while together, whereas by bringinge in his mosell, and the thrustinge oute his forehead, he aduaunceth himselfe, and gathereth strength in his backe, vnitinge his force

together: and thereby also sheweth lightnesse and nimblenesse in all his doynges. Secondlye, he shall see his waye the better, and be in lesse daunger of falling when he runneth. And thoughe he shoulde fall: yet he shall be more hable to recouer him selfe agayne, then when he holdeth his mosell right out. Thirdly in runninge against his enemye, he shall be hable to do, or suffer more with his forehead, then with his mosell being the tenderest parte of him. Fourthlye he shall not be so apt to rere right vp vpon euerye light occasion, as otherwise he might doe. Finallye the horse that reaneth well, and bringeth in his mosell: shall alwayes be a great deale better stayd both of head and necke, and haue a better mouth, that he that beareth his mosel right out. Wherfore if youre horse will not bringe in his heade at anye time that you staye him with the bridle hand, then holdinge your hande still at that stay, correct him somtime with your right spur, and somtime with your left, and somtime with both spurres together. And in the selfe some instaunt, it shalbe good also somtime by thrusting him with your right hand vpon the necke, to force him to bring in his head, but if he will not yelde for all that, than by pullinge the bridle towardes you, make him to go backe about .iii. paces, and then to returne faire and softlye to his firste place, continuynge so to doe a good meanye of tymes together. And euerye tyme that he thrusteth out his nose, correct him in maner aboue said, neuer leauinge him vntil you haue made him to amend his fault. And if he be verye hard to be brought therevnto: it shalbe good to strike him somtime with youre stirrup vpon the shoulder, or with your foote vnder the

shoulder,

shoulder, holdinge it still there, to make him looke that way. But if ye se that the prycke of the spur doth cause him to bring in his head: then make much of him without molesting him any more. And by thus spynge him, you shall make him to reane as you woulde haue him, either going, or standing still.

¶ Howe to correcte youre horse when he ducketh downe hys heade, and beareth to lowe. Cap. v.

If he ducketh downe his head whilst you stand still in anye place, then stay your bridle hand, and sodenlye correct him with one spurre alone, or with both together, not sufferinge him to remoue from that place. And also if he useth that toy going, then correct him in like maner, without making hym to alter his pace any whitte at all, Not failinge at euerye time that he so doeth, to vse like correction. And if in ducking downe his head, he beareth it more of one side then of another, correct him on the contrarye side, and not on that side whereon he hangeth. And if he be very hot and furious, then immediatlye after suche correction laye your hand vpon his necke or withers: in token of cherishinge hym, and that shall keepe him from runninge awaye. And so by sufferinge, he shall learne to knowe his faulte, and to amend the same. But if youre horse vse to ducke downe his head when you stop him: then beside bearing a temperate & staid hand, you must geue him the chocke of the bridle with the right reane. And in that instaunt correcte him sometyme wyth one spur,

spur, and somtime with the other. That done, retourne from whence you came: And from thence trotte him, or gallop him to the selfe same place where you stopt before. And there stoppe him agayne, holdinge the right reane in the middest with your right hande, beyng alwayes ready therwith to geue him the chocke vpon the right side of his mouth, and by mouinge the bitte faire and softly in his mouth, somtime with the same reane: make him to knowe that you holde the reane in that hande of purpose. Wherof the horse will be so muche afrayd, as he wyl no more cast downe his head. And vntill he leaueth his fault, neuer faile in this sorte, to correct him. And likewise when he doeth well, forget not to cherysh him. And though a false reane for thys purpose woulde do well, and specially for a Colte, yet it is not so good a correction as to vse the ordinarye reane. But if to geue him the chocke with the right reane will not suffice to correct his vice, then geue him the chocke vppon both sides of his mouth with youre left hande, holding both reanes together. And by vsinge somtime the one correction, and sometyme the other, you shall make him to leaue that vice well inough.

How to correct that horse which doth ouerreache in his goynge, that is to saye, doeth smyte his forefeete with his hinderfeete. Cap. vi.

This fault is most commonlye incident to a yonge horse, and therfore besides making his shoes shorter behinde then otherwise they ought to be, you must also fauour him whilst he treadeth the ringes, not

encreasing

encreasyng the number of his tournes, nor quickeninge his pace, but according as his strength and breath shal require, whiche by often rydynge hym a little at once, will encrease euery day more and more. And then yf he ouerreache, whilst he treadeth the ringes, correct him with the spurre on the contrary syde, to the turne whiche he maketh. But if he ouerreacheth in goynge right out, then correct him on that side of hys bely, whereon you see his necke to be most stiffe. And sometyme you may also correct him with your rod vpon the one or other shoulder. It is good also to make him to trot or to gallop in some stony ground. Or els for want of such a grounde, to strowe the ryng pathes full of stones, of all sortes, that is to saye, bothe with great, meane, and small. And that will make him to lift his feete in suche sort as he shall seldome ouerreach. Notwithstandinge, if his houes be not very sounde and good: I would not wysh you to vse this way, for feare of riuing his houes, which of oure horseleeches is called a false quarter. And of the Italions falso quarto. But rather make hym to leaue this fault by well feding him, and by riding hym moderately without taking ouermuch of him at once, to thintente he maye encrease in strength and breath, whiche once had, then the greefe of his ouerreaching, wilbe a good correction vnto him of it selfe. Moreouer if you caused the ringe path to be digged full of staires or degrees, it woulde kepe him from ouerreaching, and sometime it were not amisse to make him goe a swathe ouerthwhart the forrowes in some ground newly plowed with depe forrowes. Thus hauinge shewed you dyuerse wayes of correcting this fault, I wish you now

to

to vse youre owne discretion in chosynge that whyche shalbe most meete for youre horse, whose qualities you ought best to know.

Howe to correct that horse whiche when he is chastised for anye fault, wyth the spurre, vseth to shake hys heade or eares. Also how to know by the movinge of his eares, when he is maliciously disposed, and howe to correct him for the same. Cap. vii.

Everye time that he so shaketh his heade, or eares, when he is corrected, double the strokes on the selfe same syde that you did correct him on before, neuer leauinge hym vntill you haue made him to holde his head stil, and pacientlye to suffer suche correction as you geue him. And in no wise let anye faulte escape vnpunished, but alwayes correct him immediatlye for the same, somtime with the one spurre, and somtime with both together, and sometime with one after another. The order of all whiche strokes is taught before in the first boke in the. xi. and. xiii. Chapters. If your horse in his going liffeth vp one eare, and holdeth downe the other, and fareth as though there were a fley in that eare: then I aduise you take heede to your selfe. For most commonly when he doth so, he mindeth to play you some shrewed toy, as to plunge aloffte, to run ouerthwart, or to fal downe, or to do some like desperate act. Wherfore sodenlye interrupt him of his purpose, by geuinge him two or three strokes with the contrarye spur, on the contrarye side to that eare,

whiche

whiche he moste moueth. And serue him so, as often as he shall vse that toye: And if it be abrode in the playne fielde it shoulde not be amysse in the selfe same instaunt that you spur him: to chastice hym also wyth a terrible voyce: and by geuinge him a chocke with the bridle on the one side of his mouth. yea and besides al this, if he be very frowarde and cursed, let not to correct him also with a good sticke by beating him therewith well and surelye vpon the heade betwixt the eares. Whych correction though he be neuer so proud and stubborne: yet being geuen but once in time, and as it should be, it wil so chastise him as he shalbe glad euer after to leue such fantasticall toyes, so long as you are on his backe. And so doynge, forget not to make muche of him, leapynge him alwayes with a good mouth: But note that some time a flye entring in dede, into your horses eare: or the pricking of his hedstal, may cause him to shake his eare, or to hold it otherwise then he ought to do, meaning no shrewdnes at all. And then it shall suffice to correcte him moderatelye with the contrary spur, only to make him that he thinke no more vpon the flye, whiche perhaps stingeth him, or anye other thinge that grieueth him, but to forget it, and so to attende his waye.

Howe to correct youre horse when he whyneth, intending to strike with his heles, or to do some shrewdnesse, beinge in the companye of other horses. Cap. viii.

ALso if your horse when you are in the company of other horsemen chaunce to whyne, or if you perceyue that he meaneth to do some shrewdnes, as

to byte or stryke, correct him immediatly wyth the single stroke of the contrary spur, doublyng the same accordyng as occasion shal require, aswel in his going right out, as in his standinge stil. Albeit if he shew any signe of shrewdnesse towardes his felowes, in marching forward, it were not amysse to correcte him with the clinching stroke, and somtime by geuing him the chocke of the bridle, on the one, or both sides of his mouth. And if that will not suffyse, then you maye all to rate him with a terrible voice, and correct him with your rod on the one or other flanke. Yea, and perchaunce it shalbe nedeful also to geue him therwith a stripe or two vpon the heade betwixt the eares.

¶ Of restifnesse of the kindes and causes therof. Cap. ix.

If a horse bee restyfe, it proceadeth for the most part through the fault of the rider, & of one of these two causes. For eyther the horse is to byle, or elles to stout of courage. If he be byle, then beinge ouer wearied, he will for faintnes geue ouer, and go no further. But if he be proud and stout, then felinge himselfe somwhat wery and out of breath, he wil fal a leaping and yarkynge, thinking to be eased of his trauel that way, or perhaps will do the like in the beginning immediatly after his rider bee mounted: And if he perceiue that his rider be afrayd of him, then he will take suche a stomacke vnto hym as he will sodenlye stay and stoppe there, maugre his riders head. Of whiche twoo kindes of restifnes, that which proceadeth of byleneſſe of courage is the worſt,

woorst. But there be some horses not onelye stoute and lustye of courage, but also ramege, that is to say hauing twoo mindes betwyxt going & not going, when they list. Whiche kinde of horses if they chaunce to become restyffe: they be woorse then any of the rest.

¶ Remedyes agaynst restyfnes proceadyng of vile courage. Cap. v.

If your horses restyfnes proceadeth of vyle courage, then ride him into some long way or lane closed in, on both sides with wall, dyke, quickset, or highe hedge. But at the one ende therof, cause certayne men to stand behind your horse with staues and stones in their handes. And if he will not go forwarde, then let theym sodenlye stryke him with their staues vppon his hanns, and legges behind, and likewise whoyle their stones at the same places, al to ratinge him in that same instaunt with a terrible voyce. During whiche time you youre selfe must sit still, keping silence. And let them not ceasse beatinge and cryinge oute vnto hym vntill they haue made him to go orderly forward as he should do. Whiche when he doeth, then immediatlye let theym staye both hand and voyce, and make you muche of hym, by clawyng him on the necke. That done, make him to go from the one ende of the lane to the other, to and fro, about eight times. And then light of his backe, or elles pace him faire and softly to the stable. And for a certain dayes, see that you vse none other order than this, vntill he be cleane rid of that vyce. Wherein so often as he

doth offende, retourne you to the forefayde correction. For this is a proued and an infallible way to bring any horse from his restifnes. Whiche correction you might vse also in the plaine field, in some new plowed ground, but for werying of the footemen, whose trauell shoulde be greater there to folowe the horse euery way that he flieth out, then in a lane. And the more that your horse goeth backward whilst he is so corrected, let the footemen laye on the faster, and crye out the lowder. And besides that, sometime it shall not be amisse to tourne hys head towardes that waye that he would so faine flee out. And so in your anger force him, by beatinge him all the waye vpon the head with a rogell, and by cryinge out vnto him, to gallop so hard as he cā driue, ỹ length of a good Tariere. And then turne him againe toward the way from whence you began to gallop him, & make him to go forward, correctinge him at that time, more with your voyce, then with your rogell. And if he goth quietlye, then leaue cryinge out, and make much of him. For I am sure he will be glad at length to yelde, rather then to be so beaten. But if he continue still in his frowardnes, and will not go forward, then you maye geue him halfe a turne, and immediatlye by pullinge in the bridle, make him to go backward about ten paces in so hasty wyse as you can. That done, tourne his heade againe towardes that way in the whyche he would not go forward, and then sodenlie put him forward. Which doing for the most part will make him to take his way. And to thintent he maye be the sooner and the more throughlye corrected of this vice, you may beslydes all this tey a good long corde vnto his tale, winding it about

bout, lyke as you do when you trym your horses taile with a ribbon or lace, the last knot whereof woulde be fastened together with some of the heares, for feare of slippinge, which knot if you can not make, then tey the vpper ende of the corde vnto the hynder buckle of the sadle, seruing the crooper, and so it shall not slip awaye. The nether ende of whyche corde must hange downe & traile after the horse vpon the ground. And when your horse will not go forward, or goth backewarde, let one of the footemen pull the corde harde vnto him, whiche when the horse feleth, the feare to be pulled and hayled will make him to spring forwarde. And so doinge the footman must in the selfe same instaunt let go the corde, and (to be sure) besides the pulling of the corde: Let the reste of the fotemen also al to rate the horse with their voyces, layinge on with their staues, and whorlynge their stones, And by vsinge him thus a while, you shall correct him of this vice well inough.

¶ Remedies against restifnesse proceedinge of stubbornes and stout courage. Cap. xi.

BVT if you perceyue that suche restifnes proceadeth of to muche courage and stubbornnesse whiche the horse hath gotten through the fearefulnes of his rider: then ryde hym into some plane fielde newlye plowed. And there if he (whilest you geue him his lesson) chaunce to stop in dede, or minde to stop, and so to become restifie: then immediatlye all to rate him with a terrible voyce, beating him vpon the heade betwyxt

betwyxt the eares, and vpon the foreiegs with a good sticke. And the more resistaunce that he maketh, in leapyng, or goynge ouerthwart or sekynge to fall downe flat, or to lie downe on the one side, or to doe anye other shrewdnes, encrease you his correction so much ye more, aswell in rating him, as in beating him. And to molest him the more, geue him therynge tournes on the one side, or on the other, or on that side whereon he himselfe doth most leane. By meanes whereof you shall so tame him, as he seinge his resistaunce not to preuaile, shall be content from thenceforth to goe quietlye and orderlye. And in so doinge, forget not to make much of him, both with your voyce, and also by clawynge him with youre hande vpon the necke. That done, trot him euen there, to and fro, about ten tymes. Then galloppe him, and last of all, pace him. Saylinge not to correct him in like sort so often as he shall offende in the lyke vyce. But note by the waye that when the horse once knoweth the correction of the sticke or cogell: it shal suffice to correcte him with a terrible voyce. And specially yf he be ramege, and of two mindes. Against whiche fault, there is no correction of more efficacye. For the voice correcteth without disorder. And it maketh the horse afraid without puttinge him in despaire, whereas the cogell manye tymes maketh him desperate and faint harted. vnles he be corrected therewith in time. After whiche correction he must also be cherished, and much made of, to thintent he maye vnderstand that his vice was the cause of his correctiō. For the rod vsed in this sort hath no small vertue. And note that though the corrections taught aswell in the laste Chapter as in this, maye in-

differently

differentlye serue to correct this vice, proceadinge of anye of the two causes aforesaid, yet they be more kindly vsed when eche vice is corrected with his proper correction according to the order aboue declared.

It is possible also that you maye correct this vyce, by holding a sharpe nayle in your hand, to pricke him continuallye behinde on the rumpe, neuer remouinge the nayle from thence, for anye resistaunce or striuinge that he maketh, vntill he hath left his stubbornnesse, and is content to go quietlye. Whiche done, take awaye youre hande, and claw him with the same immediatlye vpon the necke. That done, you may pace, trot, gallop, or manege him as you shall thinke good.

Other corrections to bee vsed agaynste restynenesse when the ryder lacketh art, and knoweth not by order of ridynge, how to get the maistrye of his horse, and to make him to know his fault. Cap. xii.

Set a footeman stande behinde you with a shrewed cat teyed at the one ende of a long pole with her belly vpward, so as she may haue her mouth and clawes at libertye. And when your horse doth stay or go backward, let him thrust the Catte betwixt his thyes so as she may scratch and bite him, sometime by the thighes, sometime by the rompe, and often times by the stones. But let the footman and all the standers by, threaten the horse with a terrible noyse, and you shall see, it will

make

make him to goe as you woulde haue him. And in so doyng, be redy to make muche of him.

Also the thicke eye of a hedgehog beyng strayt teyed by the foote vnder the horses tayle, is a remedye of like force, which was proued by Master Vincentio Respino, a Napolitan, who corrected by this meanes an olde restiue horse of the kinges in suche sort as he had muche a do afterward to kepe him from the contrarye vice of runninge awaye.

The like correction also may be geuen with a whelpe, or some other loud cryng and biting beast beinge teied to the crooper, so as he may hang down vnder the horses taile, hauing a longe corde fastned vnto him. Which cord palling betwene the horses thyes, ỳ rider shal hold in his right hand to molest the horse therwith, by pulling it, & letting it go as he shal se it nedeful. Or in stede of such a beast, there may be teied a pece of iron of a fote in length, or more, and three fingers brode, made full of prickes like thornes, with a corde fastened therunto as before. But note that all these wayes rehersed: are not to be commonlye vsed but onelye in time of neede, and that with great discretion. For otherwise you shall but amase youre horse, and driue him into despare, so as he shall neuer vnderstand your meaninge. And to saye the truth, they are of litle importaunce in respect of the remedies taught before in the last chapter. And therfore I woulde wishe you chiefly to vse them beyng sufficient alone I warraunt you to correct anye maner of restiuenes. Neither do I allow the waies that men were wont

wont to vse in olde time. To correcte a restyue horse by teying a cord with a riding knot vnto the horses stones which corde passed vnder the horses bellye vnto the riders right hand, holding the same, & straining it when nede did require. Whiche in dede is more hurtful then profitable: and therfore not mete to be vsed but in some extremetie, for the correction of a stubborne horse, accustomed to fall downe in the water. Of which vice we shall treate hereafter at large.

¶ Of the contrarye vice vnto restyuenesse, whych is to run awaye, of the causes thereof, and howe to correct the same. Cap. xiii.

The vyce of running awaye, doeth not onlye proceed of the hardnes & euilnes of the horses mouth, but also many times throughe the fault of the rider, not hauinge knowe-ledge, nor stomacke, as I sayde before, to tame a horse that is of to liuely a courage, and therwith perhaps hard of mouth, wherby the horse getteth an euill custome, eyther not to stop at what time as the ryder would haue him, or els if he stop, to stoppe without order. For redresse of which vyce you maye vse these remedyes here folowinge.

If you chaunce then vpon an old horse accustomed to run away when he shoulde stoppe, you muste begin to ryde him with more respect then you woulde do a colt. And first ride him into some longe way or lane enclosed

of both sides. And there teach him to stop, first vppon a soft pace, then vpon a trot, and afterwarde vpon a galloppe. And when soeuer he stoppeth, make him to aduaunce withall, by helpinge him in suche sorte as is before declared in the first booke. But because of his euill custome, see that ye run him not of a longe season. And to be sure that he shall not fall, or run awaye at the stop of him selfe, when you gallop him appoint a footeman to stande before him at the place of stoppinge, with a sticke or a cogell in his hande, wherewith, after youre horse hath stopped, and aduaunced, let the footeman by stryking him softly vpon the forelegges, but seldome vpon the snowte, make him to go. iii. or. iiii. steps backeward. Wherunto if he be vsed a while, you shal see that afterwarde so soone as he hath stopt, he seyng the footman standing there, and felinge the drawinge backe of your bridle hande, he will go backe of his owne accord, without any beatinge at all. And when he is once perfecte as well in his stoppinge, as in his goynge backe, then gentlye geue him a Cariere, forcinge hym in his runninge, neyther with voyce, spur, nor sticke. And onelye when ye come nigh vnto the place of stopping, helpe him with your voyce to stop. And for ỳ more assurance, let the footeman in the selfe same instaunte also helpe him with his voyce, and threaten him with hys cogell. Yea, and if he perceyue that the horse wyl needes passe forwarde, let him geue him a good blowe with his cogell vppon the snoute, whiche blowe I beleue shall not nede, if you obserue well the order before taught. For the helpe of your voice, the pulling in of the bridle, & the sight of the footman shall suffice to make him to stop as

he

he shoulde do. And in so doyng, see that you make much of him, suffring him to pause a while. That done, make him to go backward, euen as you did before, when you did pace, trot, or gallop him. And after that, pace him to and fro in the cariere path, about .vi. times, staying al waies at the accustomed stopping place, and so depart, & see that you run him no more of a good whyle after, but only vse the order aboue declared, vpon a soft pace, trot, or gallop, not forgetting alwayes to haue a footeman at the place of stop, whyche footeman besides his cogell, may also haue stones in hys hande, to whorle at the horses snout, when neede requireth, whiche I doe seldome or rather neuer allow, vnlesse he hathe the stedier hande, or if you will, you may cause two footemen to stande before him, eche of them hauinge a good longe staffe in his hande: At the vpper ende wherof, would be teyed a litle boundell of strawe, whyche beynge kyndled, let the footemen when the horse will not stoppe, thrust them into his nose, the feare of the flame wherof flashyng before his eyes, and the fire parchyng his skin, together with the smoke entringe into hys nose, will make him to stop. But though this correctiō for a nede, is verye good: yet I woulde wishe you to vse the order before declared, which is sufficient I warraunt you, to make him stop with the bridle onlye, without the helpe of anye such extreme remedye.

It hath bene seene manye tymes that some Ryder hath corrected his horse of this fault, by runnyng him in the plaine fielde out of breath, continually beatynge him and spurrynge him in hys angre, so as the horse

hath bene glad to stoppe of him selfe, whiche correction hath taken so good effect, as the ryder geuinge him a iust Cariere the next daye folowyng, hath made him to stop with the least pullinge in of the bridle that might be. But this correction is verye perillous, and inoughe to kil a horse, and therfore is not mete to be vsed, but only when he beinge to stubborne doeth ouermuche force you, and wyll nedes run awaye with you whether you will or not.

Besides the first order aboue rehersed, for his better correction, you may also bitte him according to the qualitie of his mouth, wherof we shall treate hereafter. And vnto that bit, or to anye other, you maye fasten a corde, which must passe betwene his gummes, and his nether lyp, in such sort as I shewed you before, in ỹ second boke in the third correction of the Credence. Of which corde when his mouth is once throughlye corrected, he shall haue no nede, nor yet of any other helpe, but of the bridle onelye. But in anye wyse lette him continue in his ringe tournes, which beinge ended, vse hym to stoppe, and to aduaunce vppon the knoll of some hill downewarde.

And note this by the way as a general rule, that the correction of the footman with sticke or cogell is neuer to be vsed but when some great necessitie requireth it. For it may make the horse to fearful, onles the foteman haue the more skill, and canne obserue in his correction both time and measure.

Howe

Howe to correct that horse that wyll rere ryght vp when he is corrected for any fault wyth a stycke vppon the heade. Cap.xiiii.

AS often as he vseth thys vice, fayle not you in ỹ selfe same instant that he ryseth and hangeth aloft, to beat him well and surelye with a good long sticke vpon the forelegges somwhat beneth the knees, yea and if he be very much accustomed to this vice it shall not be amisse somwhat before he riseth to geue him one blowe vpon the legges at the lest. And for the more suretye, and to make him the more afraid, it shalbe nedeful to beare the rod with the point downwarde right before his knees, alwayes in hys sight. And being corrected a while after this sort, you shall see that he shall leaue that fault well inough.

Howe to correct that horse that wyll fall downe to the grounde when he is a litle werye or prouoked to doe anye thynge whych he would not willingly do. Cap.xv.

CAuse some expert footeman hauinge a good cogell in his hand, to be somwhat nigh you, at such time as you ride your horse, to the intent that when he perceyueth the horse maketh anye offer to lye downe, he maye be readye with his cogell or stacke, to threaten him, and to fray him with a terrible voyce, gesture, cõtenaunce, & by cruellie looking him alwayes in the face, more or lesse according as time & occasion shall require. Whiche wilbe suche a terrour vnto the horse, as whilst he

he looketh all amased on the footeman, he will haue no minde to lie downe, but stand styll, attending to his rider: who in the meane while, must syt still in his saddel, without makinge anye noyse, or mouinge at all. Afterwarde make him to trot thrynge tymes, wheras you may cause also more men to stande with staues in their handes, and to do as the footman did before. And if he will nedes fall downe there, then let them holde hym by whether he will or not, cruelly correctinge him, both with their voyces, and also with their staues, by beatinge him vpon the heade betwixt the eares, or vpon any part of his bodye nert to hande. And if this doe not correct his vice, truly the faulte is in the footemen, lackinge perhaps suche terrible voyces, cruell lookes and gestures, or such order and time of correcting, as should serue the purpose. And therefore it were good for suche men to haue in their handes fiery staues made in suche sorte as is before declared in the last chapter saue one, the feare and smart whereof will kepe him from lyinge downe whether he will or not, which correction maye be vsed for a restiue horse, by fieringe hym behynde betwyxt the thyghes.

This vice also maye be corrected by the helpe of a footeman, hauinge in his hande a squirt full of water, which he must squirt in the horses eies, whē he offereth to lye downe, which is a good remedy also against the Credence. But these remedies last mencioned, are to be vsed by riders of small skill. For an expert Ryder will correct any vyce by true arte wythout the helpe of any such toyes.

Howe

How to correct that horse whiche passynge through any water will lye downe in the same, and what is the cause of such vyce. Cap. xvi.

This vyce vndoubtedly proceadeth of a naturall dispolition, incident to that horse whiche is foled vnder the signe of Leo. Whiche is a hote and fierye signe. Albeit all horses foled vnder this signe haue not this faulte in dede: Neyther can it be knowen by the Ostriche feather in the horses nethe, nor yet certainelye discerned at the chaunging of his teeth, what so euer other men say, but onely by his plaine lyinge downe in the water. For the whyche faulte there is no better remedy, then this here folowynge.

Cause a seruaunt to ride him into some riuer or water, not ouer depe, and appoint three other footemen with cogels in their handes, to followe him harde at the heeles into the water, to thintente that when the horse begynneth to lye downe, they maye be readye to leape vpon him and with the helpe of the Rider to force him to ducke his heade downe vnder the water, so as the water may enter into his eares. Not suffrynge him to lift vp his head agayne of a god whyle together, but make him by main force to kepe it still vnder, continuallye beating him all the while with their cogels, and rating him with loude and terrible voyces. That done, let him onlye lift vp his heade to take breath and aire. Duryng which time cease not also to beat him still vpon the head, betwixt the eares, which done, ducke his heade with like violence once agayne, into the water.

And

And then let hym rise vp vpon hys feete. And whilst he is passing through the water, let the men folowe after, beatinge him, and rattinge him all the waye vntill he be cleane oute of the water, and then leaue. For otherwyse it were disorder. Then the next daye folowynge, let him be ridden againe in the same water. And so sone as hys ryder seeth that the horse maketh anye offer to lie downe, yea and somtime before he perceyueth it, let him immediatlye preuent him of his pourpose, by touchinge him with his spurres, and by beatynge hym vpon the heade betwixt the eares, and vppon the flanke wyth his stycke, thretninge him with a terrible voyce. And you shall see, it wyll make him to forget his lying downe, and to passe through quietly. Yea, and it is possible that this correction alone wythoute the helpe of the other before declared, will suffise to bring hym from this vice. And to both these corrections, you maye also if you wil adde the helpe of ỹ cord teyed with a ridinge knot, about the horses coddes, whyche corde the ryder may straine and let go, accordyng as he shall see occasion as well to preuent the horse of hys lying downe, as also when hys head is kept vnder the water, the griefe whereof together with the other corrections wyll the sooner cause hym to leaue this vice.

How to correct that horse whych is skyttish or fearefull, and wyl start at euery thyng, and whereof suche vyce proceadeth. Cap. xvii.

A Horse maye be fearefull, for that he is ponge, and hath not bene rydden perhappes where sundrye syghtes are. And therfore yf you chaunce to ryde hym

him through some towne or fayre, he is afrayde of euerye thyng that he seeth. Lykewise if he hath bene skared before tyme with any thyng that hath offended hym, eyther wyth noyse, sighte, or otherwise, so often as he shall heare or see the same, he wyll be afraid. And finally, fearfulnes may proceade for lacke of perfect syght, whyche is woorse then all the rest. Accordyng to all whyche causes, remedies do folow here orderlye. But fyrst as touching the yong horse, whych is afraide of suche thynges as he neuer sawe before. See that in no wyse ye doe beate hym for the same, least he take the thynge that he beholdeth and shonneth, to bee the cause of hys smarte, and so become more fearfull then he was before: But rather staye there a whyle, and by gentle meanes make him by litle and litle, to go towardes the thing wherof he is afrayde, whiche doynge, make muche of hym. And you shall see that by standinge sometime styl to looke vpon it, and somtyme by goyng towardes it, he shall be so well acquainted therwyth, as he wyll not feare it. And when he commeth at it, let him staye there a prety whyle together, to thintent he may be the more assured therof. But if youre horse be afrayde of anye thyng whych hath offended him before time, so as he will by no meanes passe by it: Then see that you your selfe molest him no maner of wayes, but appoint some footeman standinge byhinde you, to pronoke him forwarde, with the sounde of his lyppes, and by threatninge him with his voyce, and if nede be, by beatyng him wyth a staffe vpon the rompe, and vpon the hinder legges. And when he beginneth to go forwarde,

make you muche of hym all the waye. For so a yonge horse must be handled. But if youre horse be thoroughlye broken in all poyntes mete for him to learne, and knoweth what all maner of corrections and helpes meane: Then if he chaunce to be afrayd of any thing, and so, sodenlye stoppeth, goinge by the waye, let not immediatlye to put him forwarde, by helpinge hym with your voyce, legges, spurres, or rod, or all together, wythout any stayinge to acquaint him with the thyng wherof he is afraid. And that shall make him to go alwayes forward as he ought to do.

But if your horse be afrayd of anye thyng for lacke of perfect syght, then beate hym not, but rather by makynge muche of hym, encourage him by litle and litle to goe forwarde, helpynge hym sometime wyth your voyce. And if you see that he standeth doubtfull, betwyxt goynge and not goynge, then sodenlye to put all doubtes and fearefull imaginations oute of his mynde, helpe hym not only wyth your voyce, but also wyth your spurres: And it wyll make hym to passe forth wythout anye staye.

Note also that to embolden a yonge horse, so as he maye abide anye thynge, it is very good to ryde him oft in the nyght season, and in the daye tyme in some towne amongst artificers, and especiallye amongst smithes, peuterers, armorers, brasiers, tinkers, and suche lyke. And lykewise amongst furriers where diuers colored skyns hange in sight, and also abroad in the fyeld where deade carcasses lye newe flayne, to thintent that no maner of syght or noyse maye seeme straunge vnto him. And when so euer he wil not come

nyghe

nygh any such thing, then vse ỹ order before declared.

It is good for a certayne dayes to lette hym weare suche a whurleguig as childzen run withall agaynst the wynde, made lyke wyndmyll sayles, fastned to his headstall vpon hys foretop, or on the one syde of his head, vnder his eare. For besydes that, the swyft turnynge about thereof before his eyes, doeth helpe muche to allure hym. The whitenes also of the same, whylst it tourneth about, doth take awaye those impressions of shadowes from hys syght, whych before were wont to fray hym. But though thys be a great helpe to embolden the most parte of horses: yet there be some horses of suche a nature, as after they haue worne it, they wyll be the woorse for it, and become more fearfull then they were before, whyche so soone as you perceyue, vse it no more, but rather vse the meanes and order before declared.

Note also that when you vse the foresayd whurleguygge, you may make it of what colour you wyll, as eyther blacke, red, yealow or blewe, accordyng as you shall thynke it most nedefull, for the assuryng of youre horse.

Howe to embolden youre horse, and to make hym hardy agaynste other horses. Cap. xviii.

Use to encounter vpon a soft pace or trot, with another horseman, face to face, in one selfe path so as youre horses dosse not one another, least your horse receyuyng some harme become more fear-

ful then before, yea, rather when you are almost one vppon another, yf the other horse be not fearfull, nor wyll geue place of hym selfe, then cause his Ryder to make hym to recoyle backe, by pulling in hys heade with the bridle. And that shalbe a good encouraging to your horse, and make him the bolder alwayes to goe towardes anye other horse. Or yf you wyll, you may encounter one wyth the other, rydynge in twoo sundrye pathes, the one lyinge cheke by cheke wythin a foote of the other, beyng both of one length, eche of them conteynyng about ten paces, to thintent that in manegynge your horses to and fro vpon a trot, you commynge one towardes another, from two contrarie endes may both mete ryght in the middest of your course. And so passe one hard by another. Whyche you shalbe sure to do, if both of your horses kepe like time and measure aswell in theyr trottyng as in their turnynge. And loke on what hande so euer the one tourneth, the other must do the same, and in the selfe same instant. And lyke order must be obserued afterwarde, when you manege them also vpon a gallop. Thus by passynge and repassyng, and oft metynge wythout iustlynge: your horses shall be so well acquaynted as the one wyll not be afrayde of the other. Hauyng the companye of an other horseman, you may also embolden your horse whylst you trot the rynges in this order folowynge. Fyrste enter both together into the right rynge, and then turnyng tayle to tayle, folowe you the ryght hande, and let hym followe the left, in the selfe same rynge, enlargyng the ryng path so, as in your metyng, whylst you go about, you may touch

one

one another. And when you haue gone twyse aboute the ryght ryng, enter both togethr into the left ring, and there turnynge tayles obserue lyke ozder as bekoze. And so shyft from ryng to ryng, treadinge the same syzst wyth a good rounde trot, and then if you wyll, wyth a gallop. And thus by often meting, both hozses shalbe well acquainted, and the one assured of the other, wherby with time, your hozse shall ware so hardye, as he shalbe afraid of no hozse. It is very good also to stande still with youre hozse hard by the ringe, lookinge on whilst an other hozse trotteth and galloppeth the ringes, oz to stande right at the stopping place, when another hozse passeth a Cariere, oz on the one syde, so as the other hozse in his running, may passe harde by youre hozse, and to thintent that your hozse foz feare, turne not away, when the other hozse commeth any thing nigh him, it shalbe good to haue the companye of some other hozseman, beynge mounted vpon suche a hozse as is bolde, and wil not be afraide, standing a litle of from you, whose ensample shoulde be a good encouraging vnto youre hozse. And to go somtime in the companye of suche a hozse, throughe some Citie oz towne, would be also a good boldninge vnto him.

Howe to make youre hozse to abyde both staire, swozde, greate noyse, gunshot, oz any other thynge Cap. xix.

Use first to acquaint hym throughlie with the rod, so as he may not be afrayd therof, by often coying him therwyth vpon the necke, and by holdinge

holdinge the point right foorth, somtime betwirt hys eares, and sometime on the one or other syde of hys heade, so as it maye be alwayes in hys syght. And when he is thoroughly assured of the rod: then appoint some footman hauinge a staffe in his hand, to stande in youre waye, whereas you shoulde passe. And as you are comminge towardes him, let the footman by litle and litle, make signes as though he would laye your horse on the heade with his staffe. And then encourage youre horse to goe forwarde towardes the footman, who in the same instaunt must retire backewarde, as though he would flee away. And by vsing him so a while, you shall see that he will not be afraid of the staffe at all. And after that he can abide the staffe, make him by ỹ like meanes to abide the sword. But let the footman beware that strike him neither with staffe nor sworde, least you vtterlye discourage him for euer. After this you may cause three or fower, or a great number of footemen to stand in his waye, making a great howtinge and showting before him, threatninge him with loude voices, against whyme encourage him to go forwarde, first with a soft pace, secondly with a trot, and thirdlye wyth a gallop. At which tyme let the footmen retire backe, faininge to runne awaye. And if suche footemen had staues and swordes in their handes, to threaten him withall, it shoulde make him so muche the bolder.

To make him abide gunshot, or any other like terrible noise, let him go harde by another horse, or rather betwyxt twoo other horses that haue bene accustomed to the lyke noyse before tyme, and are afrayd

of

of nothinge. And as you are rydinge together, cause three or fowre dagges or archabuches to be discharged. First a prety waye of, and then nigher hand, according as your horse beginneth to abide them. During which time cease not continually to make much of him so well wyth youre hande, by clawyng him on the necke, as also with your voice, and so by litle and litle, you shal bring him at length to abide any thyng.

¶ Of the vyces of the mouth, and causes therof in generall. Cap. xx.

BEynge now come to shewe you how to correct a horse that hath a naughty mouth as well by vsinge diuers kindes of bittes, mete for that purpose, as otherwyse: I thinke it first mete to tell you the causes wherof such euilnes of mouth proceadeth, and how many vyces theron dependeth: And finallye how to correct the same. And first you shal vnderstād that a horse may haue an euill mouth, eyther because his chinne or beard, where the kurbe shoulde lie, is to harde, or the places where the bit shoulde reste on both sides of his mouth, called of Grison Le barre be to hard, or his tongue is to hard. Or cōtrariwise, for ỹ al these forsaid places perhaps are to tender, so as he dare not stay his mouth as he shuld do, vpō ỹ bit. Againe his mouth may be to litle, or his iawes may be to great, & to thicke. Of which causes do proceade diuers vices, as to draw vp the bit, with his tongue, euen as though he would swalow it vp, not suffring it to rest vpon his gūmes or bars where it shuld rest.

which

whyche vyce Gryson calleth beuer la briglia, that is to drynke the bridle, likewise to beare his tounge alwayes out of his mouth. Also to beare to harde vpon the bit, which in Italion is as much to saye, as Tirar di bocca. Also to wrye with hys mouth, holdinge the nether part therof one way, & the vpper part another way, which in Italion is to say Far forfici: That is to make sheares. There is also another vice like vnto this, but not so foule: And that is, to wrie a litle with his tawes aloft, but not so much beneth, which Grisō calleth Gangheggiare a worde deriued of this worde Gangha, signifying the iaw. Also to defend ỳ bit with his nether lip, so as it can not rest vpō his barres called in ỳ Italion Far Chiomazzuoli. Of some of whych vices, ther be also other particuler causes, which shal be declared hereafter, when we come to ỳ correctiōs of ỳ same. But Grisō saith, that whilst some haue sought to correct these vices aforesaid, by often chaunginge of rough and sharpe bittes, they haue cleane marred their horses mouthes. And therefore he wisheth you in anye wise to abstaine from all suche kinde of bits. And to seeke rather to bringe youre horse to haue a good mouth, and specially whilst he is yonge, by ridynge him with a gentle bit, and by bearinge a temperate hande, vsinge suche helpes, corrections, and cherishinges, as are taught before, whilst you teach him to treade the ringes, with trot, or gallop, to stop, to aduaunce, to tourne, to manege, or to passe a Cariere, whiche Cariere, the more seldome it be vsed, and with the lesse furie, the better mouthe shall youre horse haue. For assure youre selfe, it is arte and good

order

order of riding, which maketh the good mouth, and not the bit. Notwithstanding the qualitye of the byt is not vtterly to be reiected, yea, rather when the horse beginneth to ware perfect in his doinges, and is well broken, and somwhat staid of head, it shalbe very necessarye to ride him with suche a bit, as shall be most mete to serue his mouth, be it hard or soft, to thintent he may beare the lighter, and with the more stay, and also be the more subiect to his rider. For the which cause Grison hath set forth in figures. L. sundry bittes together with the names and vses of the same, as hereafter shalbe declared. But for so muche, as certaine vyces of the mouth, may be corrected as well by other meanes, as by the helpe of diuers bits. I will first declare those kindes of corrections, and then afterward, treate of the correcting with bittes, and therwith shew you al the kindes, names, partes, and properties of the same.

How to correct that horse which wyl eyther draw vp the bytte wyth hys tongue, or defende the same wyth hys neyther lyppe. Cap. xxi.

Take a pece of whip corde, about a spanne long, and tey the one ende therof vnto the eye of the bit, vnder the kurble, that done, tourne downe the horses nether lyp, to thintent you may easely bringe the corde betwixt his said lip, and his nether gummes, vnto the other eye of the bit, and there to be tyed and fastened, and the more the corde bee streyned, the harder and

stronger shal the bit be. And if the knots at both endes be handsomlye knyt, no man shall perceyue the misterye therof. Or if you wyl, in steade of the corde, you mai there put a litle cheane. And by this meanes not only the vyces aboue rehearsed, are throughlye corrected, but also mani times diuers other vices, as the putting out of his tongue, the bearing hard vpon the bit. And also the hardnes of his barres, so as he shalbe hable therewyth to make no resistaunce. And suche corde or cheane will doe as much, being put to a plaine Cannon or scache, as if it were put to a harder bytte.

Howe to correct that horse, which wyll mowe or wrye wyth hys mouth, and the causes wherof such vyces doth proceade. Cap. xxii.

Though this vice doeth chieflye proceade of the noughtines of the horses mouth, yet many times the ridinge him with to high a port bit, whyche perhaps the horse can not suffer, may be cause thereof, or the distempred hand of hys ryder, not knowynge howe to handle him & to make him to suffer the bridle of what mouth so euer he be, harde or soft. But to remedye the same vyce proceadynge of the firste cause, vse to ryde hym wyth a musroll strait buckled to hys head. And so often as he moweth w̄ his mouth, correct him first with one spur, and then with another, but most with the spurre on the contrarye syde. And sometime also geue him the chocke with the bridle, vpon the one or other, or els vpon both sydes at once of hys mouth, bearing

bearynge alwayes a steddye and a temperate hande. Yea, and for his more correction, you may also sometime stryke hym with youre stirrup, or foote, vnder, or vpon the shoulder on the contrarye syde. Not failing to correct him somtime one waye, and sometime another, so often as he shal offend. And at length you shall bring him from that fault well inoughe. But if the port of his bit be the onely cause of this vice, then you shall not nede to vse these corrections, but onlye to ryde him wyth a close bitte, or not so open, beinge harde or softe, accordyng as the horses mouth shall requyre, wherof we shall nowe immediatlye treate.

Of the kyndes of bittes together wyth their names and partes belonging to the same. Cap. xviii.

Of bittes some be close, and some be open. The open bittes are otherwyse called of our bitmakers port bittes. Of whyche portes some are whole and some are broken. Again of the broken portes some are fashioned lyke geese neckes, and they be rounde. And some lyke Cattes fete: and they be square. Of which square portes so manye as are made with Oliues, peares, or campanelles, Grison calleth them Cattes fete. But oure bitmakers do call all kinde of square portes, vpset mouthes without anye difference, also some of the broken portes and vpset mouthes, are locked together with one plyght within another, some wyth a riuet nayle, and some with a pece. And accordinge as euerye byt, as well of the close, as open, is fashioned, so is it named. And therfore some are caled

Canon bittes, some snaches, some melon bittes, some peare bittes, some campanels or bel bittes, some bastonets, and some Cattes feete. Of whych names, the first fower are all redye well knowen vnto our bitmakers, through the helpe of old Alexander the Italion rider who taught them first, both the shapes and also the names of the same. And sins that time they haue also learned to make all the rest of the bittes, though they haue not so many proper names for the, as Grison geueth them, wherefore suche names as they haue not, I trust it shal not greue them to learne now at Grisons hand. And specially I englishing the so aptly as I can, vsyng therin I am sure for the most part their owne tearmes. For I haue not bene negligent in learnyng at their handes, how to call euerye part of the byt by hys proper name, as the cheekes & eies therof, the Ieiues, the rols, ringes, and buttons, the whole porte, broken porte, or vpset mouth, with one plight within another, or wyth pece, the trench, the flappe, the top roll, and the water cheyne, the nether cheines and the kurble, and diuers other termes belongyng to their art, not here nedeful to be rehearsed. Note also that of the broken portes and vpset mouthes, some be complete, and some be not. The cõplete be those, which haue both water cheines, & also trenches aboue. For ỹ others haue but the one or the other, only. And for that cause I thinke Grison calleth thẽ but halfe bits, as the half Canon, the halfe snach, the halfe Cats foote. &c. But besides all thys, he teacheth you of what fashyon the Cheekes ought to be made, to serue diuers mouthes, eyther short or long,

right

right out, or compaſſed. Alſo of what heyght the vpper eyes of the chekes ought to ſtande, and how high the broken portes and vpſet mouthes oughte to bee, and whyche kinde of cloſinge is beſte, eyther with one plight wythin another, or wyth a riuet naile, or wyth pece, and alſo how the whole port ought to be made: And finally how the kurbie ought to be made. But for ſo much as the chekes and eyes therof, and alſo the kurbie are members common to both kindes of bittes, ſo well to the cloſe as open, I wyl therfore firſt treat of them, and then of the reſt in their places, becauſe the ſhapes of the cloſe byttes ſhalbe firſt preſented vnto you. And next to them, the broken portes vpſet mouthes, and Cattes feete. And laſt of all, the whole portes, as well wythout trenches, as wyth trenches aboue.

¶ Of the chekes and eyes of byttes, and alſo of the kurbie, and howe they ought to be made. Cap. xxiiii.

VNtyl your horſe then be throughly ſtayd of heade, and ſpecially if he beare to low, and bryng hys head in to muche, lette the cheekes of youre bridle be right out: and not compaſſed. For the ryghter they be, with the nether endes comming to the manward, the leſſe the bridle ſhal force the horſes head, yea rather it ſhall make hym to carye his head the hier, and his moſell the more outwarde. But the more compaſſed the chekes be, with the nether ende ſhootyng out forward,

ward, the more they bring in hys heade. And therfore when the horse is once throughlye stayde, it shall be moste mete to vse the compassed chekes, which beside makyng the horse to reane kindly, doe also geue the better grace vnto the bitte in hys mouth, and doe make it the more comlye and sightlye. Agayne, suche chekes must be long or short, accordyng to the greatnes of stature and strength of the horse. And also partlye accordyng as he beareth hys heade. For if he be great of stature and weake of backe, or carieth hys heade lowe and not steddy, then the chekes would be somewhat longer then they be commonlye vsed, and that shal make him to beare high. Albeit such lengthy must very seldome be aboue a span. For onles necessitye so requireth, it is better that the chekes be short, then long, so that comelynes touchinge the stature of the horse be obserued. And note here by the way, that accordyng to Grison, the cheke called of him La guardia, is onely that part, whych extendeth from the nethermost eye, sustenyng the Jeyue downewardes. For al the rest vpward, he calleth Stanghetta. For the whyche oure bytmakers haue no proper name: And therfore from henceforth I will call it the heade of the cheke, which head conteineth the great eye, wher vnto the Jeyue is fastened, and a lyttle hole aboue that, for the water cheane, and also the vpper eye, wherunto the portesmouth is put, which heade together with the vpper eye, if it mount hygh, it maketh the horse to beare hygh, both with necke and heade. But if the heade be shorte, so that the eye standeth low, then it causeth a contrary effect. But onles some

necessi-

neceſſitye did otherwyſe force, I woulde wyſhe it alwayes to be in a meane, neyther to hygh nor to low, but aunſwerable to the reſt of the bitte.

Of the kurble.

NOw as touchyng the kurble, it would be good and ſtrong, and made with round linkes, faſhioned in thys ſort like an. S. Neither do I allow for the moſt part anye other faſhion to be vſed than thys, how hard or tender, ſoeuer the horſe be of chinne or beard. For the more that a harde chinne is broken with roughe kurbles, as thoſe be whyche are made with ſquare linkes and ſharpe poynted, like diamantes: the harder hys chyn wylbe, throughe the corrupte fleſhe whyche wyll growe theron, when it is whole. And ſo make the horſe to care leſſe for the bydle then he did before. And agayne on the other ſyde, thoughe the horſe be neuer ſo tender of chyn, yea, and alſo verye tender of his barres or gummes, whych kinde of horſe is very hard to kynde, yet I woulde haue neyther his bit nor his kurble to be couered with cloth, as ſome men vſe to do. For thoughe he be ſo tender in dede, yet it is not that whych wyll geue him boldnes to ſtaye his mouth vpon the bitt as he ſhould do, yea rather I woulde wyſhe you for a certayne tyme to ride him without anye kurble at all. And when ye ſee that he begynneth to ſtaye ſomewhat vpon the bydle, then make him a kurble of double fillet lace, otherwyſe called pynkle, of an inche brode, teying it no ſtrayter, but ſo as it may kepe the bytte alwayes at

one

one stay in hys mouth, whych kyllet, when he is once perfect, you may take away, and put in steade therof, the kurble before declared. Or if you wyll, you maye make him a kurble flat and smoothe, lyke a flaggon cheane, and that perhaps shall offende hym lesse.

¶ Of close bittes, for what mouthes they are most mete, and also what vyces they do correct, whych vyces you shall easelye fynde by the tytles folowynge, and the fashions of the bittes, by the numbers set in the margent, answerynge the numbers of the fygures orderlye, set altogether in the latter ende of thys booke.

Cap. xxv.

FIrst then you shall vnderstande that close bittes are onlye mete for horses of a good nature, at the leaste of not to frowarde a nature, whose mouthes suche bittes may easlye frame: yea, and some of theim are more meete to be vsed in the fyrst breaking of a horse, then anye other bytte, as I tolde you before in the first booke, wyllynge you to ryde youre horse firste wyth a Cannon bytte with right cheekes, of what mouth soeuer he be, yea, and vntil he be throughlye stayd of head, and perfect in all his doynges I would neuer haue you to chaunge it.

For a gentle mouth.

But afterward if your horse haue a gentle mouth, then you may ride hym wyth a Cannon, hauing compassed cheekes.

For a mouth somethyng harde.

If his mouth be somwhat hard, then you may ride hym

hym wyth a scathe.

For a tender mouth, and not great.

If his mouth be not greate, but tender and good, 3
then besydes the forsayde byttes, you may very wel
vse a smooth melon byt, hauing onely a water cheane
aboue. And such melons maye be made lyke oliues.

Agaynst defendyng wyth the lippe.

Take a melon bit, let the melons be somwhat roun- 4
der and greater, haupnge on eche out syde a playing
ryng, or els two rynges next vnto ỹ middle toynt as 5
you may se in the .iiii. and .v. figure. But it were more
to the pourpose to take a peare bytte or a round cam-
panell, otherwyse called a round bel byt or els a flat 6
campanell: I call it flat, because the endes therof are 7
not rysinge and embolled out as the other is. And let
not the peares of the peare bit, or the belles of the bel 8
bit, be made wt manye edges or squares, for they are 9
naught, but let them be smooth & round. And if either
of them haue a playing ring on the out side, it shal be 10
so muche the better to kepe hys lyppe away. Or els 11
twoo playinge rynges next to the middle ioynt, of all 12
whych fashions you haue example in the .6. .7. .8. .9. .10.
.11. .12. fygure.

¶ For the same fault, and for holdyng out his tongue.

You may also take for the same vice a scath wyth a 13
turninge rolle or button on eche side. And the greater
suche rolles be, the harder shall the byt be. Albeit I
would wysche them to be of a meane bignes, yea ra-
ther to be small and not verye hygh rysinge. At the-
des wherof on eyther side next vnto the middle ioint,
may be put twoo playing rynges, yea, and if the rols

or buttons be not ouer broade, you may put thre playnge rynges on a syde. And suche kinde of bit is very good for a horse that wyll put out hys tongue.

¶ Other bittes for the former fault of the lyp, but not to be vsed verye often.

Thoughe some for the same faulte vse to take a double peare bit, or a double campanell, that is to say, hauyng two peares, or twoo belles on a syde, or els a bastonet, whych may be otherwyse called a Jeyne bit with round buttons, or rough ringes made high like wheles, Yet I counsail you not to vse them but verye seldome, and specially the bastonet, with rough ringes.

And note that though round melon bittes, campanelles, scachts and bastonets with buttons, be close byttes, yet they be somwhat lyke vnto the open bits, in that they partly geue liberty vnto the tongue. But bewar that you make none of these bittes or anye other wyth a gagge or spoone in the midst, as was vsed in olde time, and yet is at these dayes, in some places of the worlde, for that is very naught. But if you woulde geue your horse some thynge to play on, then in steade of such gagge or spoone, you may place in euery one of these bits, a playnge ryng or two, on eche syde next vnto the middle toynte. And thoughe there were none at all, it made no great matter.

¶ Of open byttes in generall. Cap. xxvi.

Hauing sufficientlye spoken of close byttes, how they ought to be made, and whereto they serue:

I purpose now to speake of the open bits, otherwise called pozt byttes, whyche be of moze value, because they set the tongue at moze liberty, whych can make no resistaūce, the bit being out of his reach. Yea, these byts be so pzoper to cozrect any vice of the mouth, as by the helpe of them ioined wyth art, and good ozder of rydinge, anye hozse maye be made to haue a good mouth. And fyrst beginning with the bzoken pozres, & vpset mouthes I wyll shew you how suche pozres and vpset mouthes ought to be made, and howe they may be locked, ioyned oz fastned together, and which kynde of lockynge is best. And then what vices they do cozrect, obseruing foz the finding of the vyces, and fashions of the bits, the ozder befoze declared & kept.

¶ Of bzoken pozres and vpset mouthes, how they ought to be made, and what vyces they do cozrect. Capi. xxvii.

YOu shal vnderstand then, that so wel bzoke pozres as vpset mouthes ought to be made all of one pece together wyth the Jeyues, and so to ryse vp with a rounde oz square, meting onlye in the top, wheras they must be ioyned together with a ruuet nayle, oz with one plight with in another: oz elis wyth a pece, accozdyng as shal be most meete to serue the hozses mouthe. Foz a ryuet oz pece doth make the bit harder, then when it is locked with one plight within another. And therefoze such pozres as are ioined with one plyght within another are meteste foz most mouthes. And do best staye both heade and necke. And note that the square pozres, otherwise called vpsetmouthes, must not be fully so wyde in the top, as they are beneath, neyther must

they or the round portes be to bygh or to lowe, for as
ouer high forceth to sore, so ouerlowe geueth to little
libertye. And therfore I wouldе wyshe them to be in
a meane, accordyng as ỳ hortes mouth shall require,
but so as it may geue libertye vnto hys tongue, and
not hurt the roofe of his mouth, for that were a foule
fault, and yet litle considered in times past.

¶ For a horse that hath tender barres, and doth
swalow by his tongue.

Take a halfe Canon with a broken port, without
any trenches aboue. And if you wil, such a broken
port may be ioyned wyth a riuet naile. But it would
be better if it were ioyned with one plyght within an
other, hauing only the water cheyne aboue, accor-
ding as you may see in the first fiue figures of broken
portes and vpset mouthes, whereof some be ioyned
with riuettes, some with one plight within another,
and some with peces.

¶ For a horse that hath not tender bares, and yet
swaloweth by his tongue.

Take a Canon with an vpset mouth complete, ha-
uyng trenches aboue, full of litle playing ringes,
beades or buttons, and suche Canon may also be ioy-
ned with a pece. Or els take a halfe Canon with an
vpset mouth, hauing trenches aboue, fastened in the
place of the water cheane, or if you will, for the same
vyce you may take a halfe seach with a broken port,
or vpset mouth, wrought lyke vnto the halfe Canon,
as before said. Of al which fashions you haue exam-
ples in the. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. and. 15. figures.

For

¶ For a horse that hath somwhat hard barres, and swalloweth vp hys tongue.

TAke a seache with an vpset mouth complete, and such vpset mouth may be ioyned wyth one plyght within another, or els with a pece, whyche pece, as it geueth the tongue more liberty, so it maketh the horses mouth more subiect. 16 17

For the same vice, and for defending wyth the lyp.

YOu may for the same vyce make both thys seach, & also the close seach with a round welt, about ỹ bignes of a good big packe thread on ỹ inside, so well aboue as beneth, which pinchyng him on the barres in his mouth, wil not only make him ỹ more subiect, but also let him frō defending with the lip. The fashion of whiche byt is playnly set forth in the. 18. figure. 18

For a horse that will drawe vp the bit with his tongue.

TAke a halfe seache with an vpset mouth, hauing a trenche aboue in the place of the water cheyne, as you may see in the. 19. figure. A half Canon also made in like sorte doth correct the same vice, whereof you had an example before in the ninth fygure. 19

¶ For a horse that hath a litle mouth, and hard barres.

TAke a Cats foote or vpset mouth complete, made wyth smooth melons or olyues. But if his mouth be great and harde, let such byt be made with peares, or els wyth belles, otherwyse called campanels. Of all which sortes you haue examples in the. 20. 21. and 22. fygures. 20 21 22

¶ For a horse that hath a dry mouth and harde, and reaneth lowe, and perhaps defendeth wyth the lyps.

Take

23 TAke a halfe cats foote, made wyth smoth millons
24 or wyth peares, or els wyth campanels. if he de-
25 fendeth wyth the lyp, the fashyons of which bits doe folowe the rest orderlye. And to the water cheine you may also put, if you wyl. ii. or. iiii. litle flaps, or players, to make the byt the more pleasant, that the horse may haue some sauour and delyght therin.

¶ Of whole portes, how they ought to be made, and what vyces they do correct. Cap. xxviii.

THoughe whole portes ought to be rounde, and made all of one pece, and not broken, or ioyned together in the top, as the others are, yet they must be broken beneath, and ioined on both sydes vnto the Jeyues, wheron the peares or belles are put. For those that run whole out with their armes, without any breakyng at all, be to roughe, and therefore neuer good nor mete to be vsed. And on the top of such porte, must hange the flap or player. Note also that of whole portes, some are made without trenches, & some haue trenches aboue. But I will shew you first the vse of them wythout trenches.

¶ For a horse that hath very harde barres.

1 TAke a whole port wyth olyues, or wyth smoothe melons. And if such melons hadde on eche out side one playing ring, it were the better.

¶ For a horse that hath a great mouth and hard barres.

2 Take a seach with a whole port.

¶ For a horse that is harde of mouth, and defendeth verye muche wyth hys nether lyppe.

Take

TAke a whole poꝛt with peares, oꝛ els with campanels, the shapes wherof are expꝛessed in the .iii. and .iiii. figures. And you maye chose whether you wyll haue suche campanels embossed out, oꝛ els flat at the endes. Moꝛeouer as wel the peares, as Campanels, may haue on eche out side a playing rolle, and therby the bit shalbe of moꝛe soꝛce and efficacie.

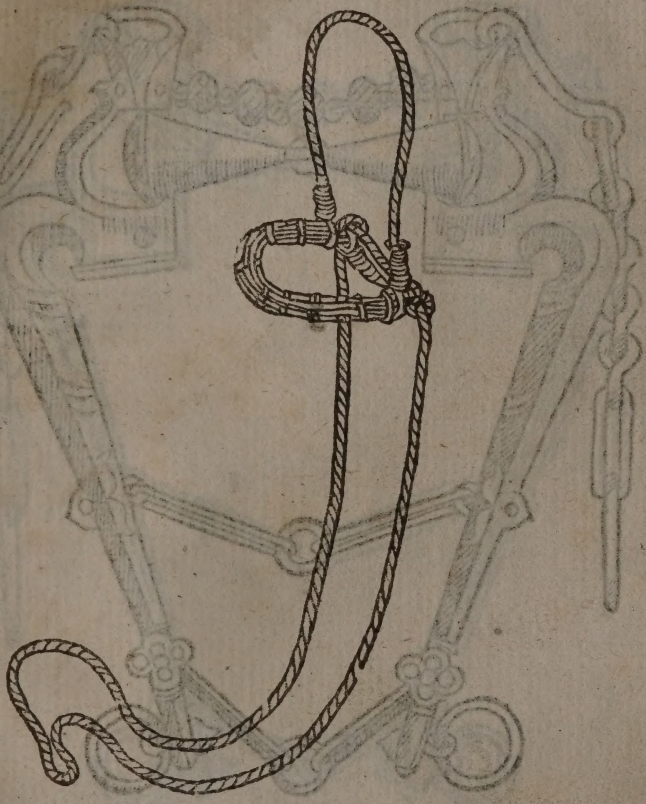
¶ Of whole poꝛtes wyth trenches aboue, how they ought to be made, and foꝛ what mouthes they are most meete. Cap. xxix.

ALso you maye make euerye one of these foꝛesayde whole poꝛtes wyth trenches aboue, full of litle rynges, beades, oꝛ buttons, whyche trenches woulde be fastened as well to the poꝛte, as to the holes, whereas the water cheane is wont to be placed, and not to the greate eye of the cheke, where the Jeynes are fastened. As they vsed in olde time, and do styll at these dayes in some places. And the higher the holes be, whereas suche trenches shoulde be fastened, the harder shall the bitte be. 5
And so shalbe any bit hauing trenches aboue in stead 6
of the water cheane, be it Canon, scach, oꝛ any other, wherof you had examples befoꝛe in the .9. and 19. fygures of the bꝛoken poꝛtes and vpset mouthes. But 7 8
foꝛsomuche as these whole poꝛtes, hauing trenches aboue, in steade of the water cheane are verye harde bits, they are not mete therfoꝛe to be vsed, but onelye foꝛ such hoꝛses as be of a very stubboꝛn and froward nature, and be laden wyth greate cheekes oꝛ iawes,

hauing

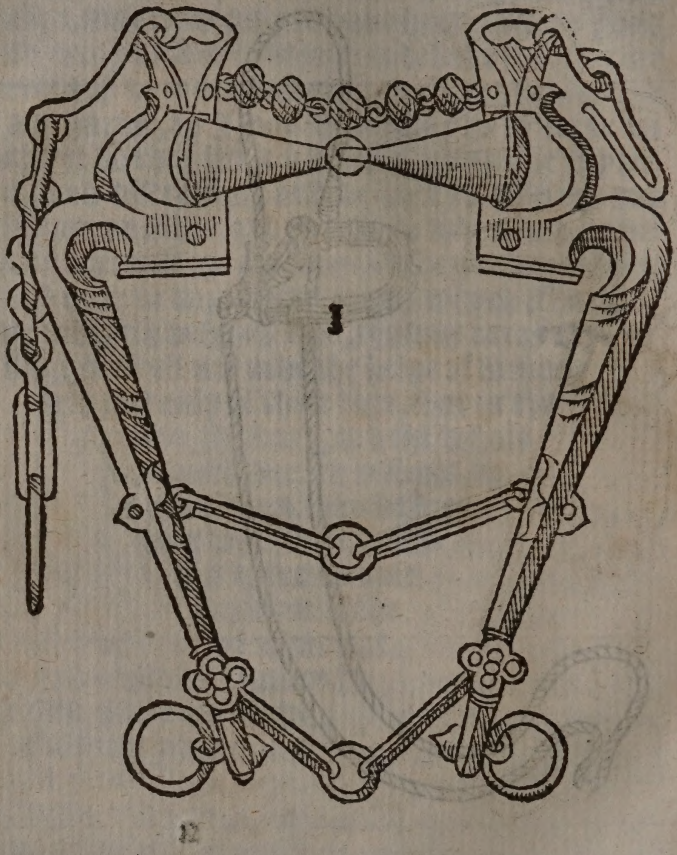
hauing hard barres, and hard mouth. The shapes of which bittes, you may see in the .5.6.7. and .8. last figures, but nowe to conclude although euerye one of the byttes before rehearsed from the begynninge to thendinge, may serue as you haue hard, to some good purpose (being vsed in time) and in dede be so sufficient to correct any vyce of the mouth, wythout doyng the horse any harme, as I woulde wyshe you to seeke no further, yet do they little preuayle, vnles the Ryder haue a good discretion, and be able to discerne one mouth from an other, and to knowe when and howe muche to encrease or to diminishe the qualitye of the bit, and how to applye the same, whych if he can doe, and hath besydes that, the true art of Ryding, he shall not nede the helpe of so many bits, but only of these three, that is the Cannon, the seach, and the whole port with smooth melons, or with olyues, which three bits wyth arte do suffice to frame anie horses mouthe of what sort soeuer he be.

¶ The shape or figure of the head-straine, to be made of good rownde coarde.



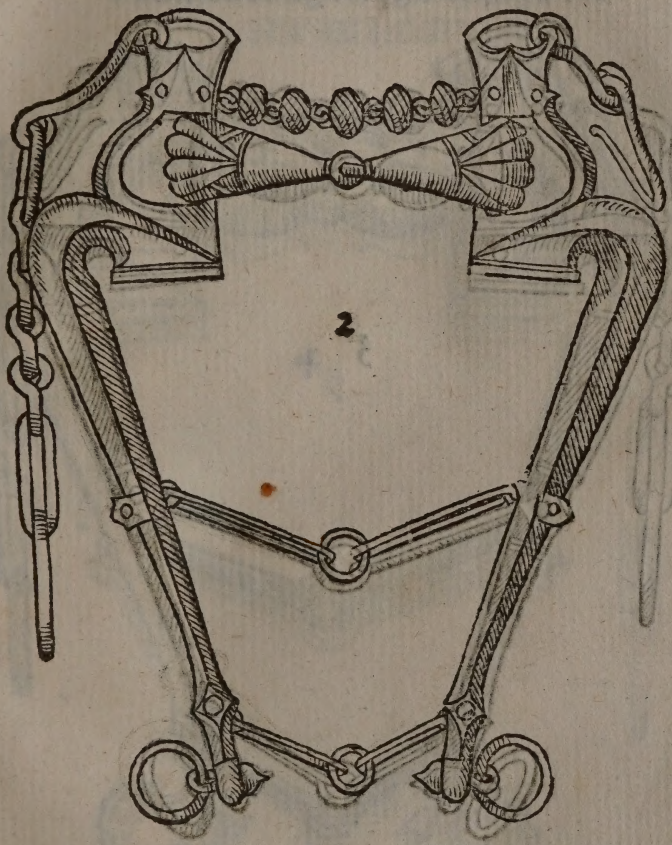
CLOSE BITTES.

A playne Canone.

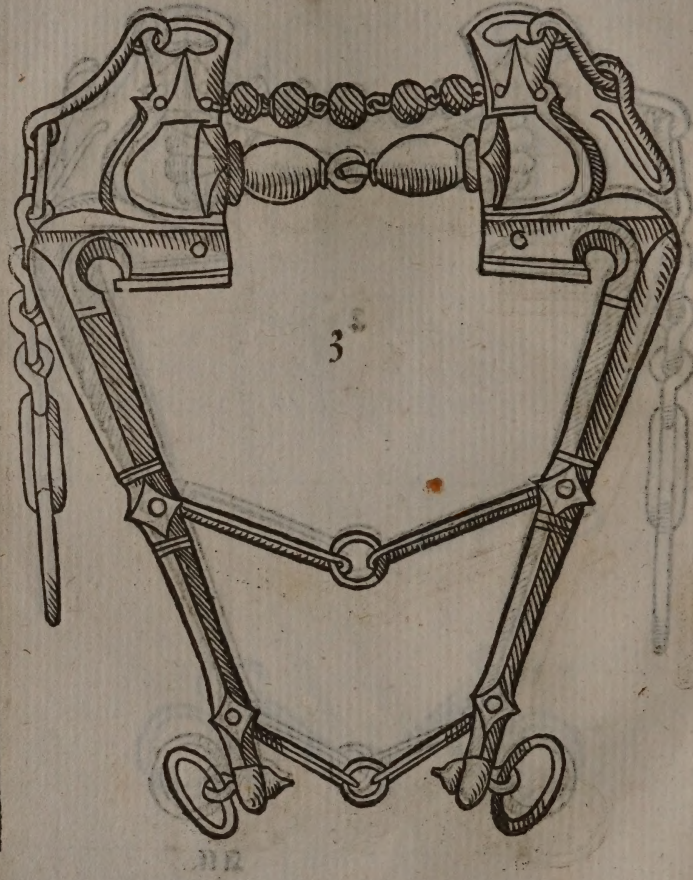


CLOSE BITTES.

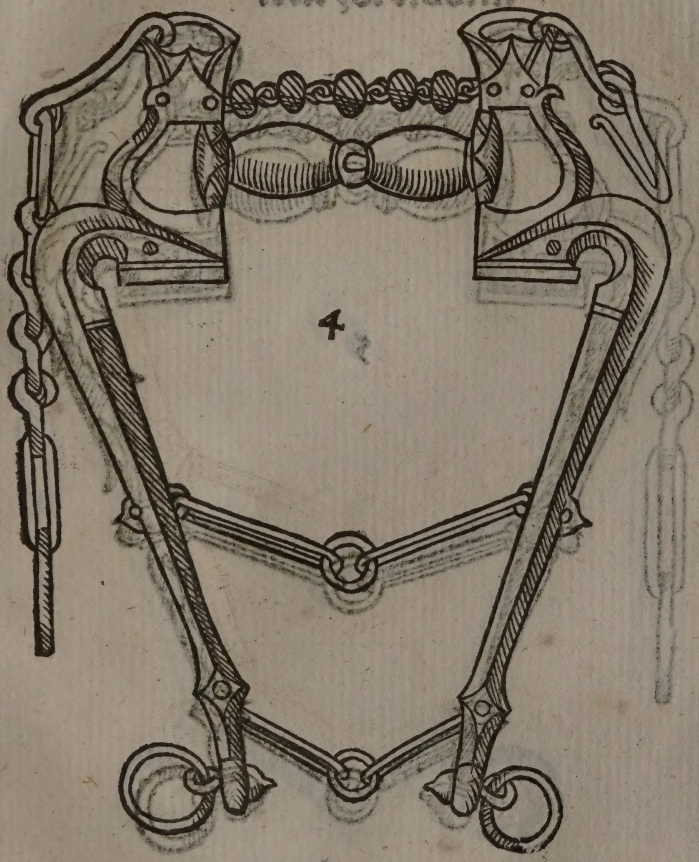
A playne Scach.



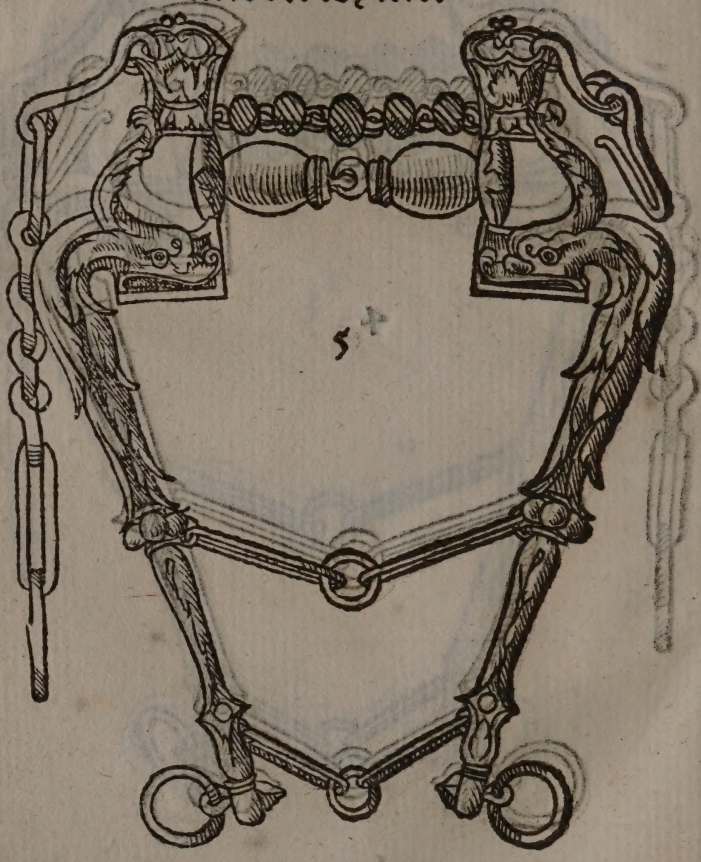
A smoothe Melon byt.



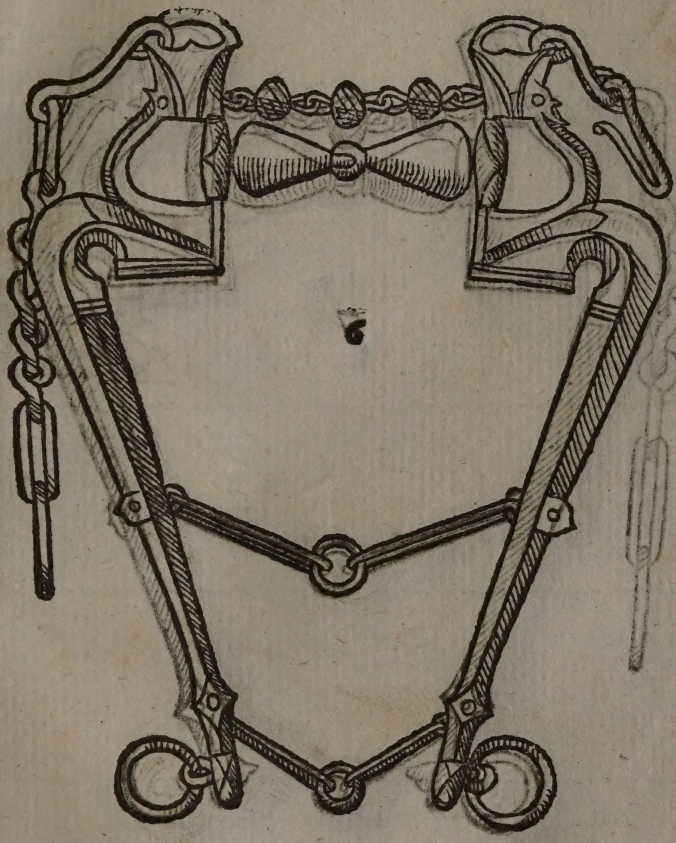
A smoothe Melon byt somewhat rounder then the other.



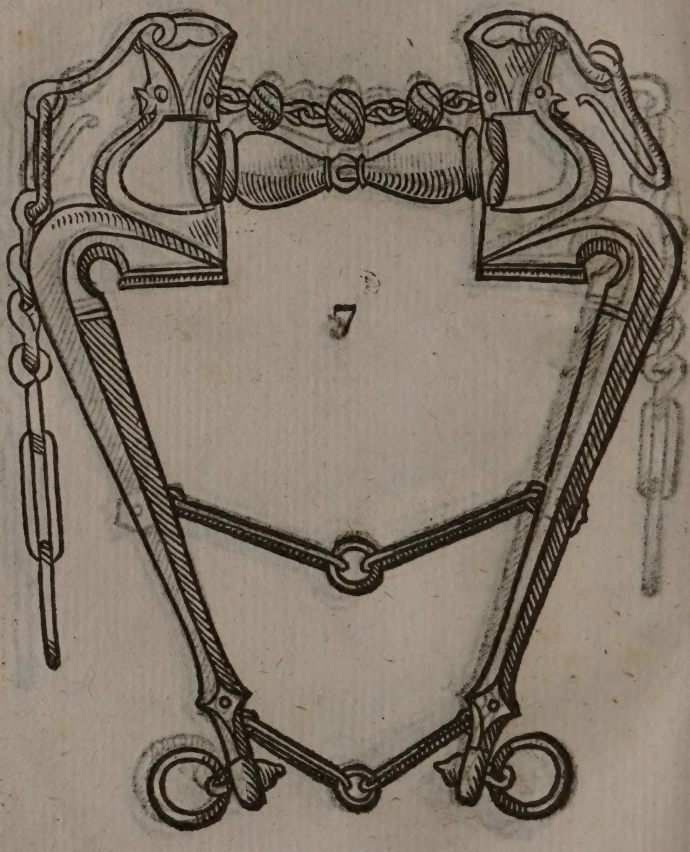
A Melon byt, hauing on eche side two playing ringes next the middle ioynte.



A Peare bytte.

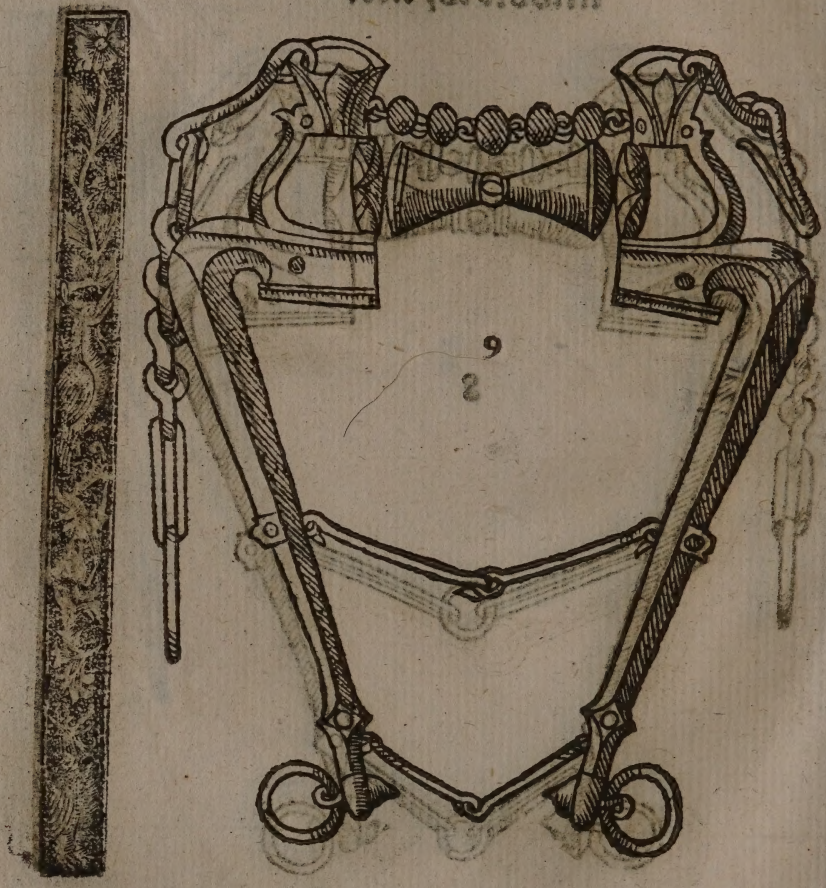


A peare byt, hauinge on eache out
side one playing rynge.



A peare byt, hauinge on eche side two playing ringes next the middle ioynte.

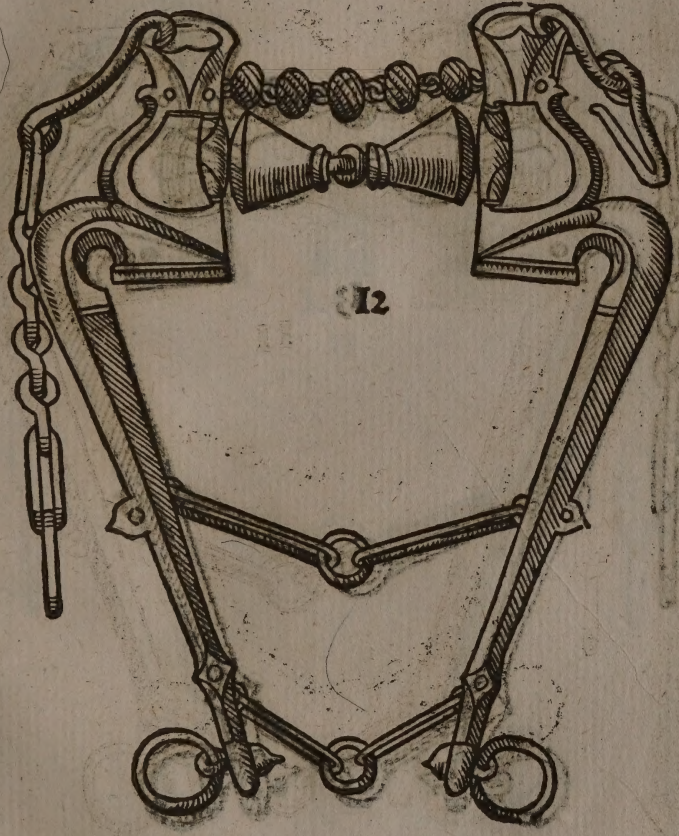
A rounde Campanel or bell byt, the endes whereof are embossed.



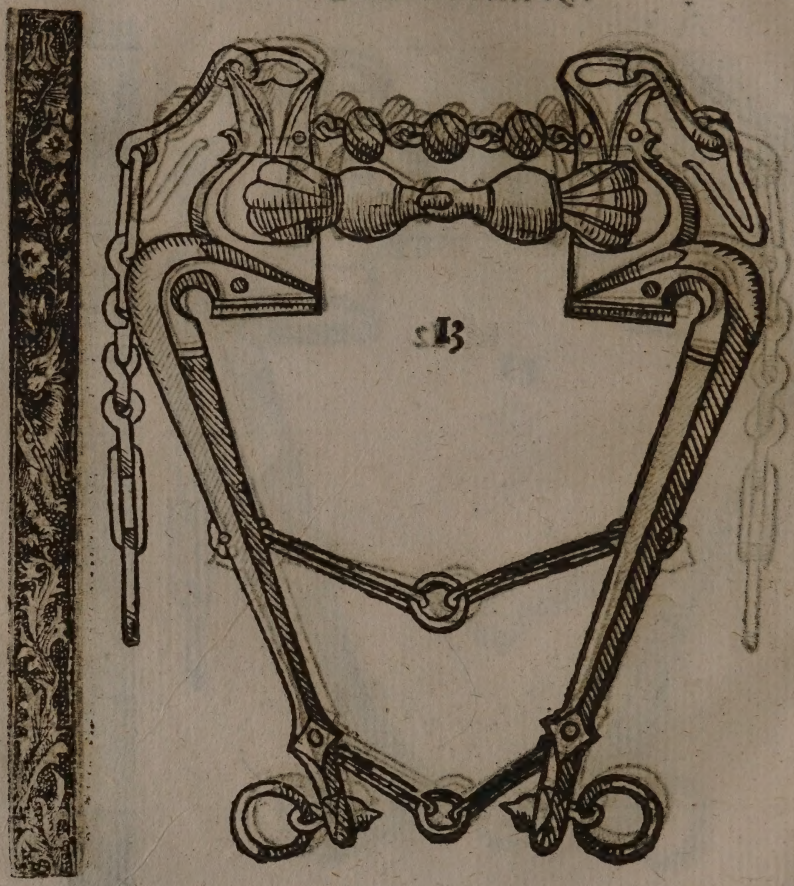
A flat Campanell.

A flat Campanell, hauing on eche out syde one playing ringe.

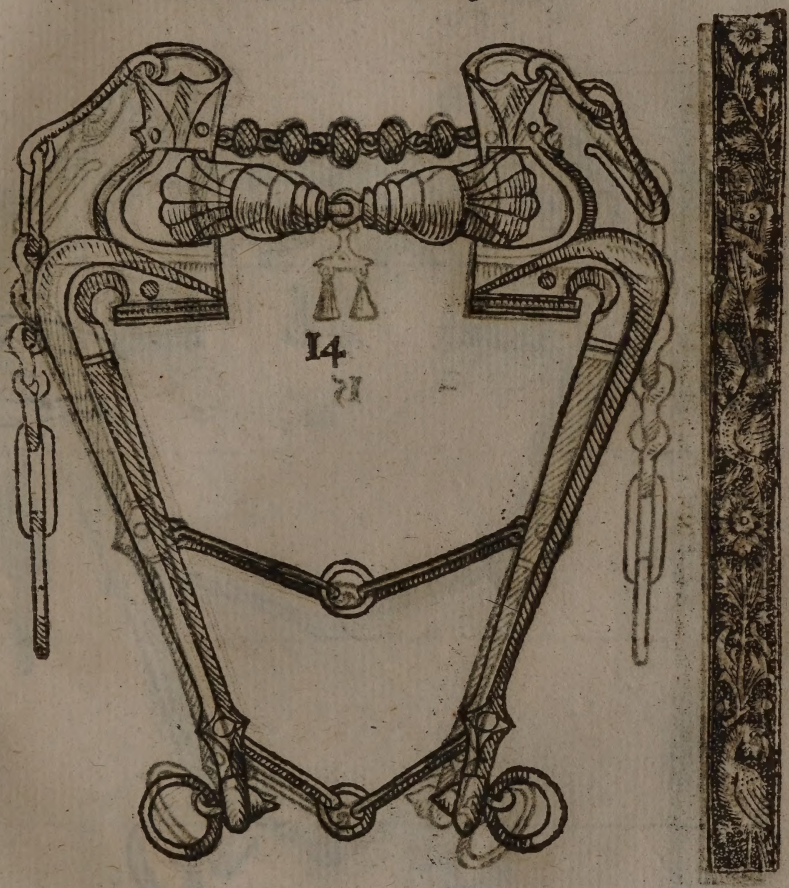
A rounde Campanell, hauinge on eche syde two planing rynges next the middle ringe.



A Scarth with two turnyng rolles or buttons.



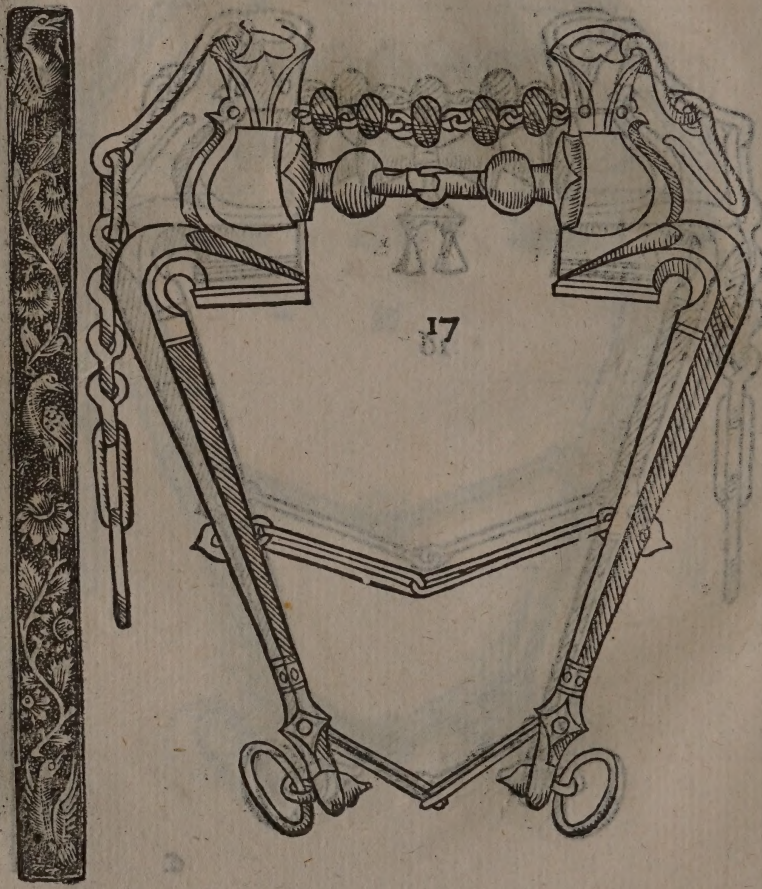
A Scach With. ii. turning rolles, hauing on eche syde thre playing eynges next the middle ioynte.



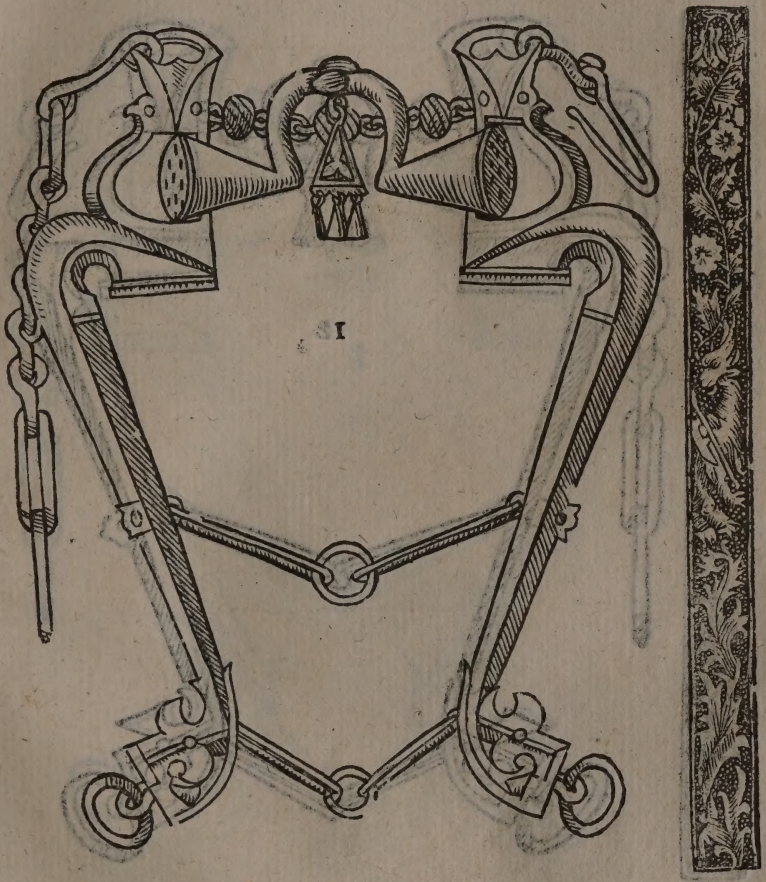
A double peare byt.

A double Campanel.

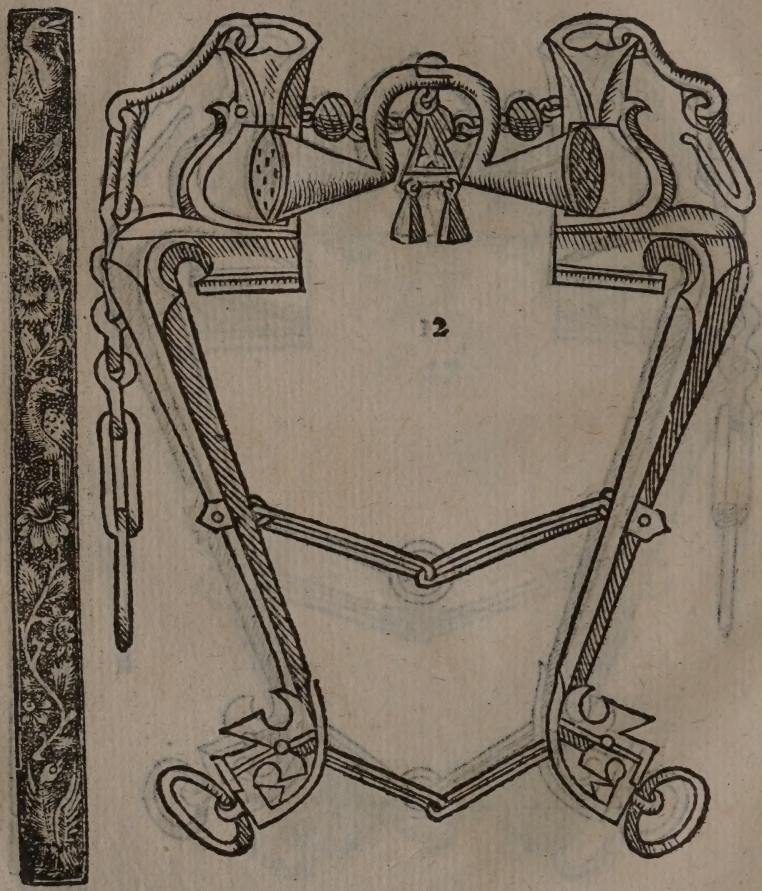
A Bastonet or Jeyne bit with two turnyng buttons.



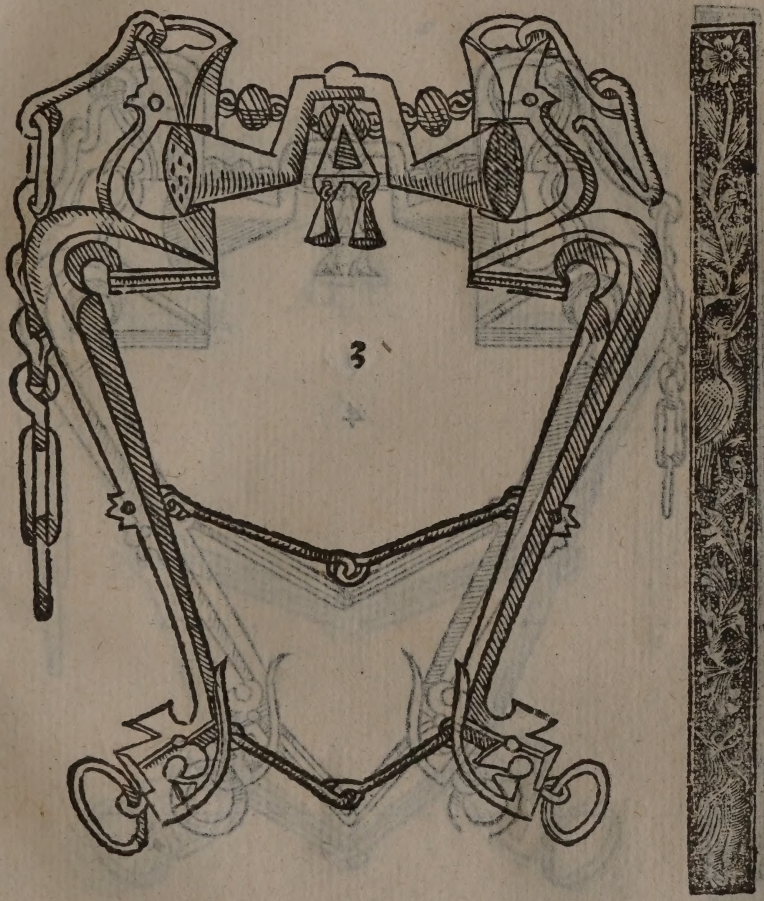
A halfe Canon With a broken porte ioyned With one plight Within another.



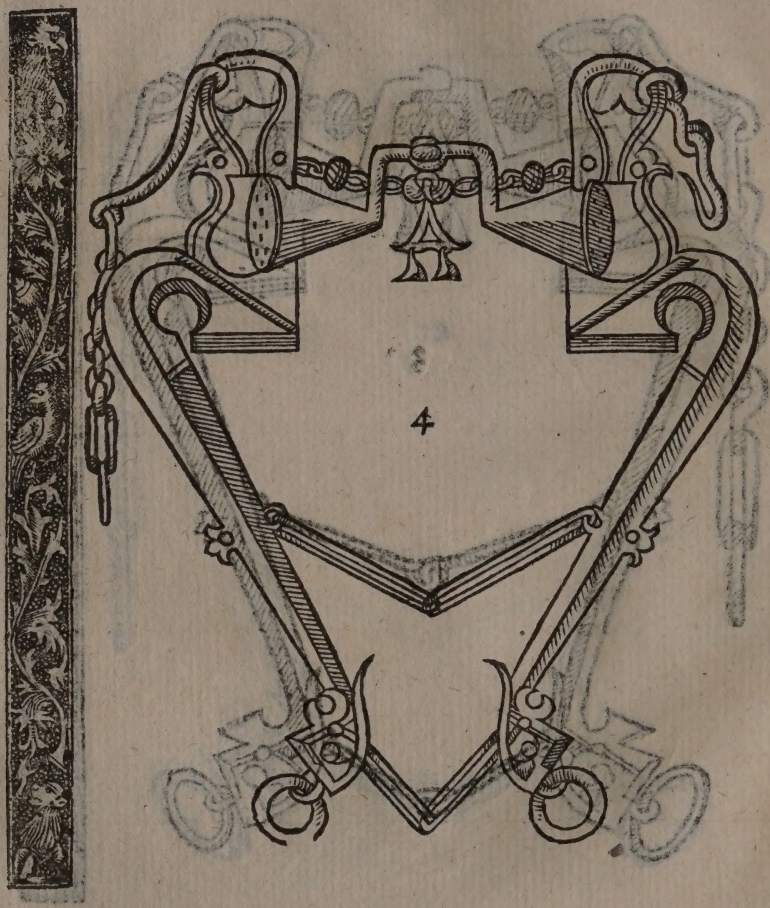
A halfe Canone With a broken porte ioyned Wyth a riuet nayle.



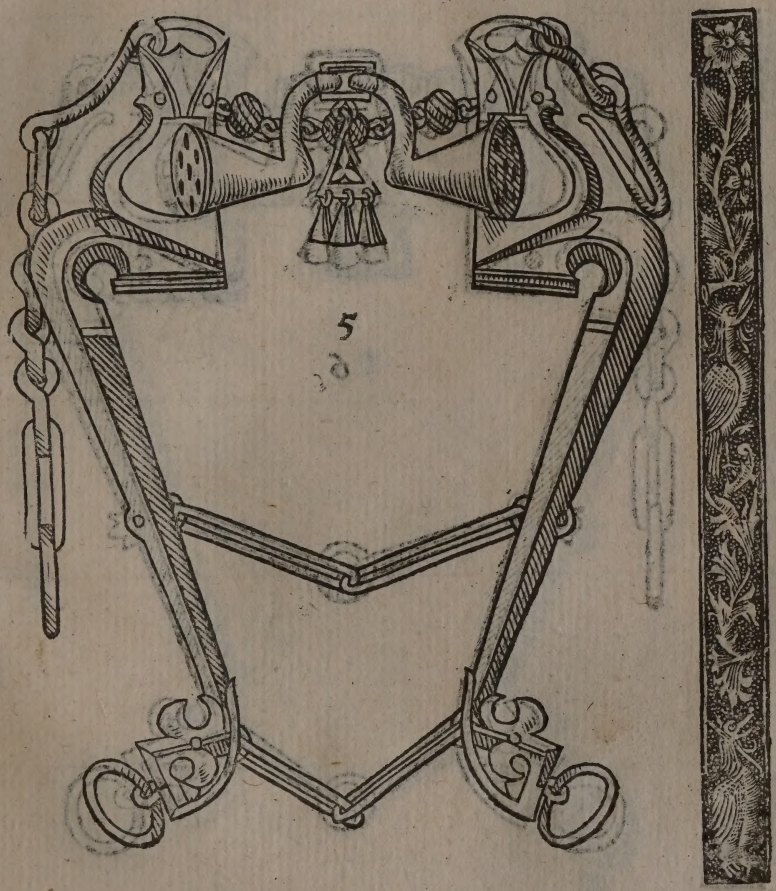
A halfe Canone With an vplet mouth ioyned With a ryuet naple.



A halfe Canon wyth an vplet mouth ioyned with one plyght within another.



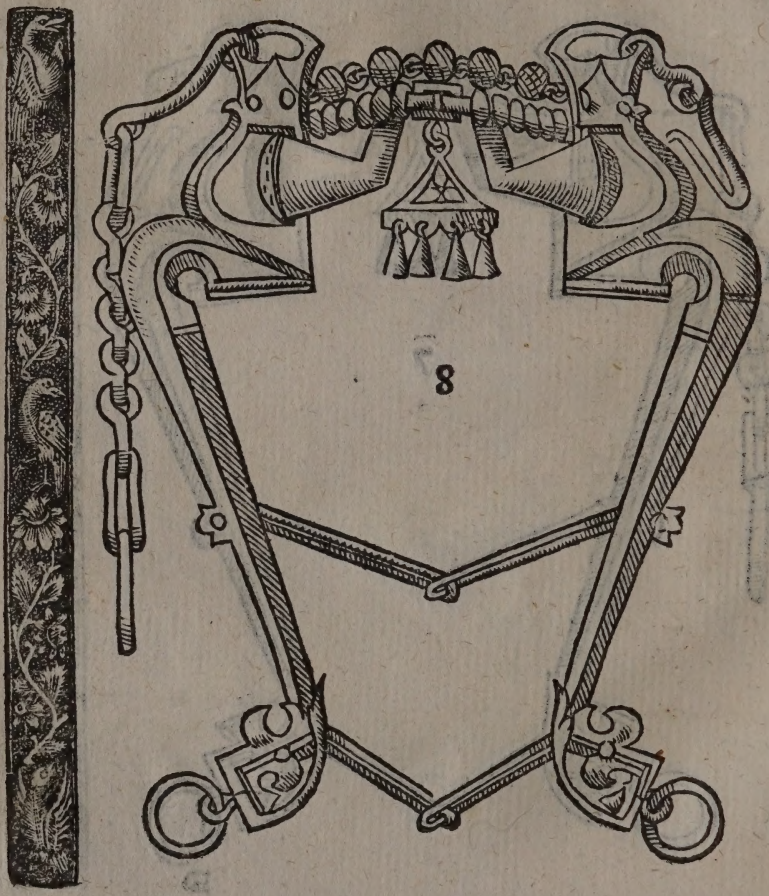
A halfe Canon With a broken porte
ioyned Wyth a peece.



A halfe Canone wyth an vplee mouth ioyned With a peece.

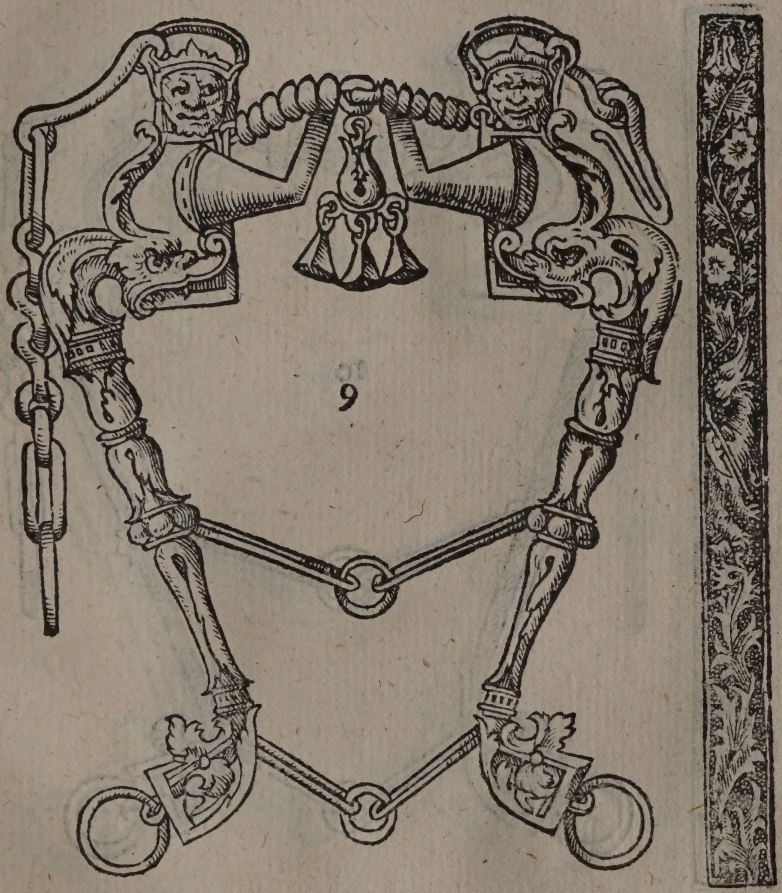
A Canone wyth an vplet mouth complete.

A Canone With an vplet mouth complete and ioyned With a peece.

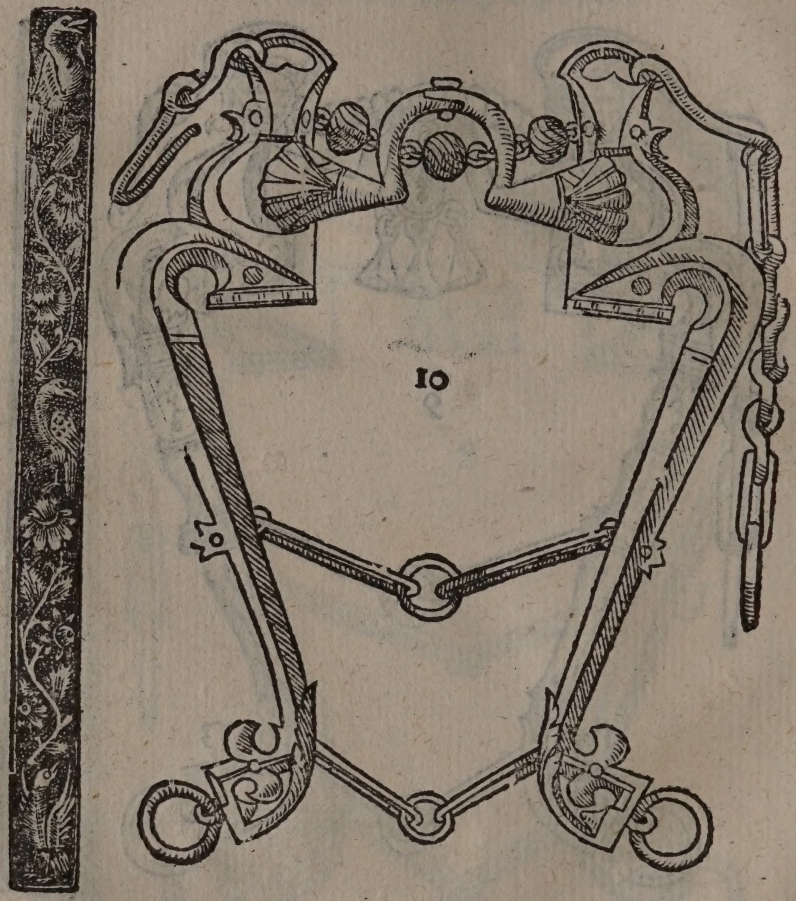


VPSET MOVTHES,

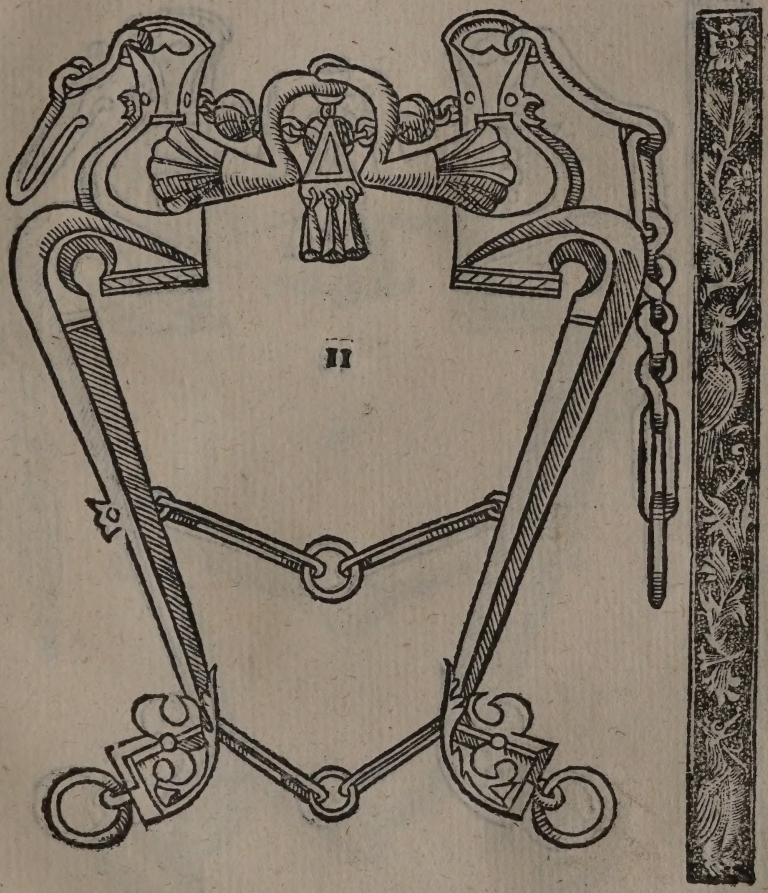
A halfe Canone With an vplet mouth haupnge trenches aboue.



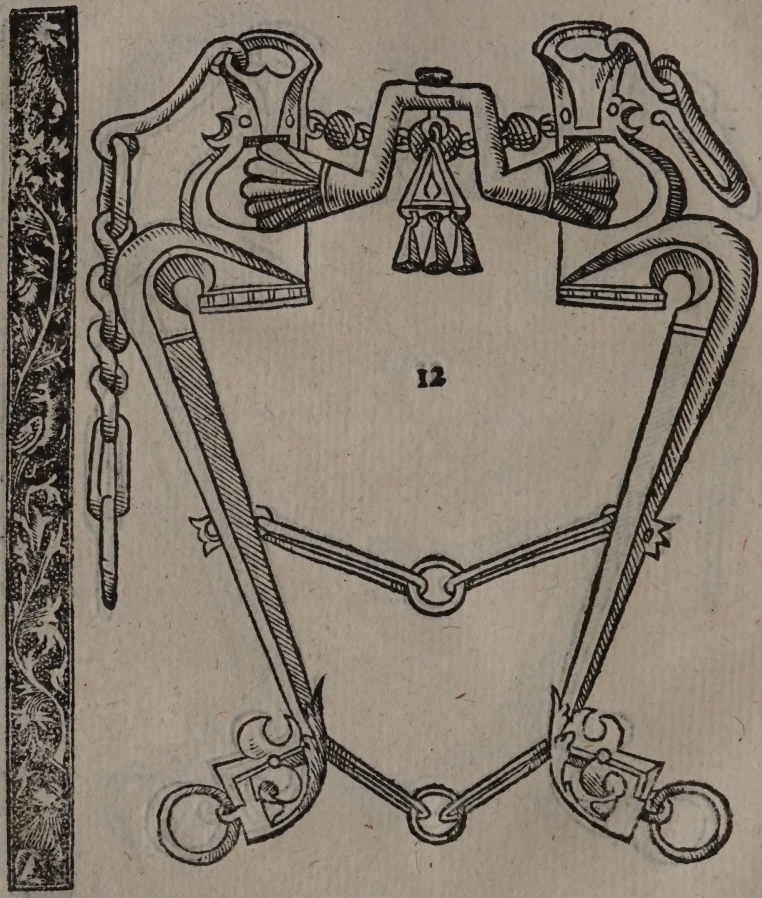
A halfe Scach With a broken porte ioyned With a riuet naple.



A haise Scath With a broken port ioyned With one plight Within another.



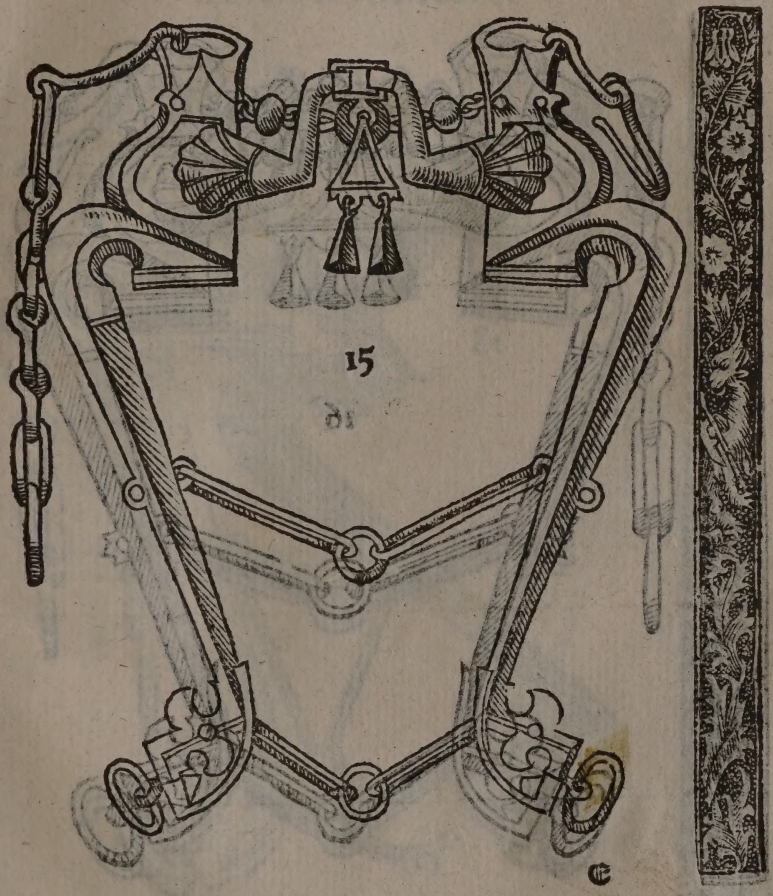
A halfe Seach With an vplet mouth ioyned With a riuet nayle.



A halfe Scach With an vplet mouth ioyned With one plight Within another

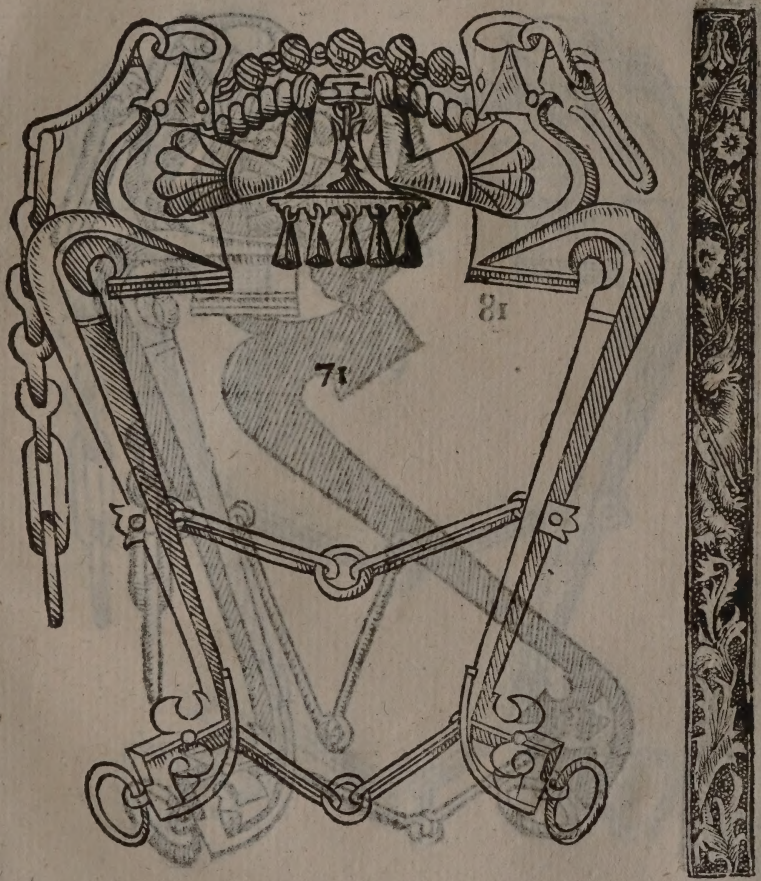
A halfe Seach With a broken port ioyned With a peece.

A halfe Scach wyth an vpset mouth ioyned With a peece.



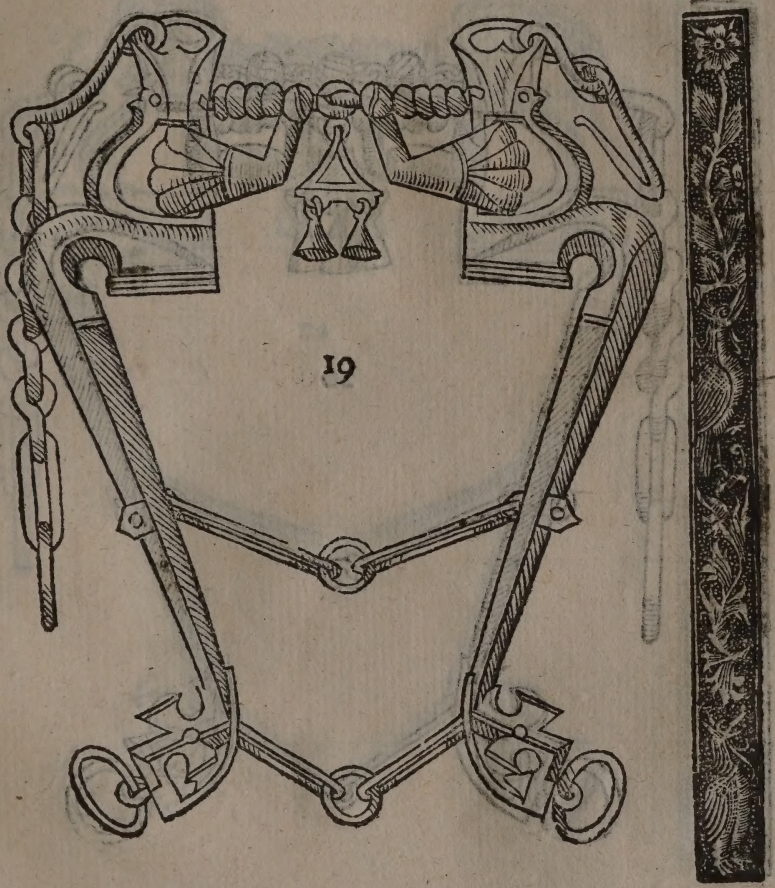
A Scach With an vplet mouth complete.

A Sprach wyth an vplet mouth complete
and ioyned With a peece.

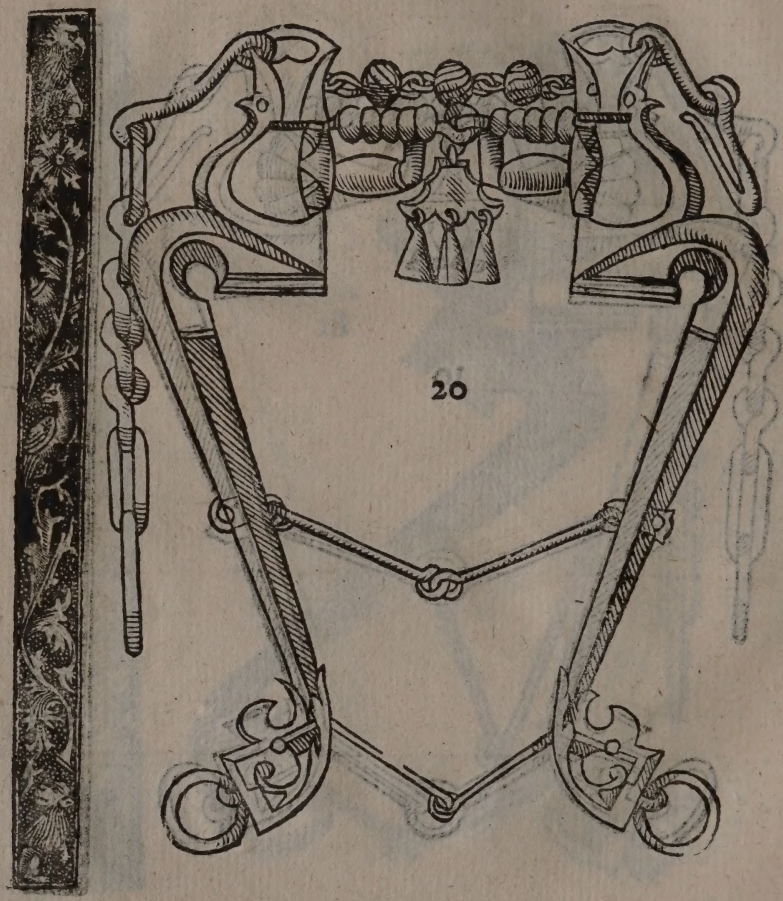


A halfe Scach wyth an vplet mouth wyth the inſyde tourned outwarde to ſhewe the weltes.

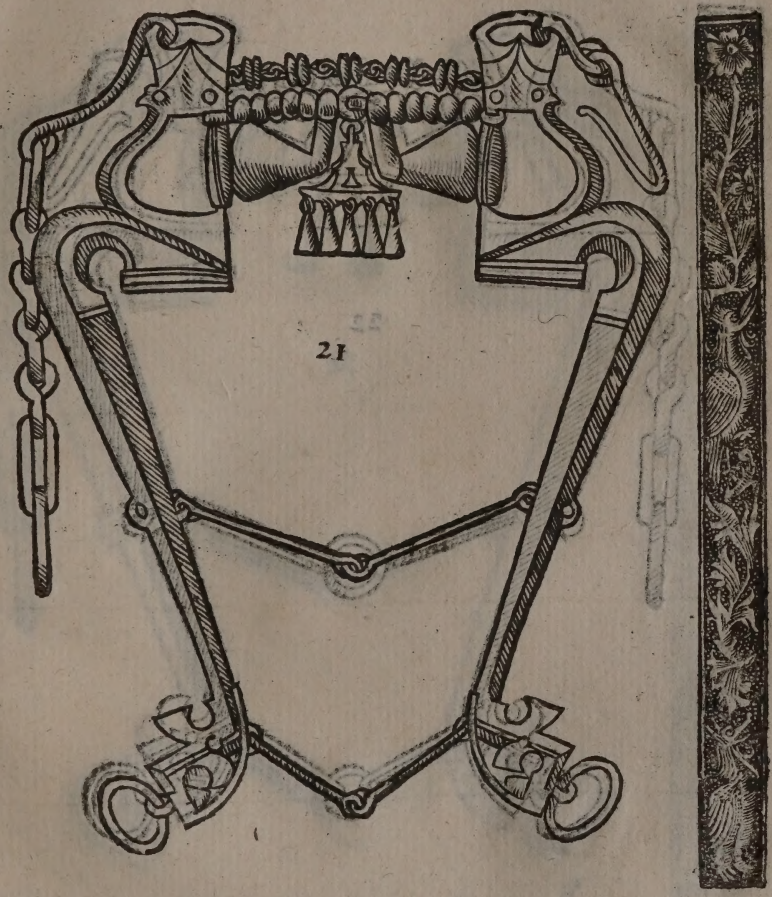
A halfe Scach With an vplet mouth hauinge a trench aboue.



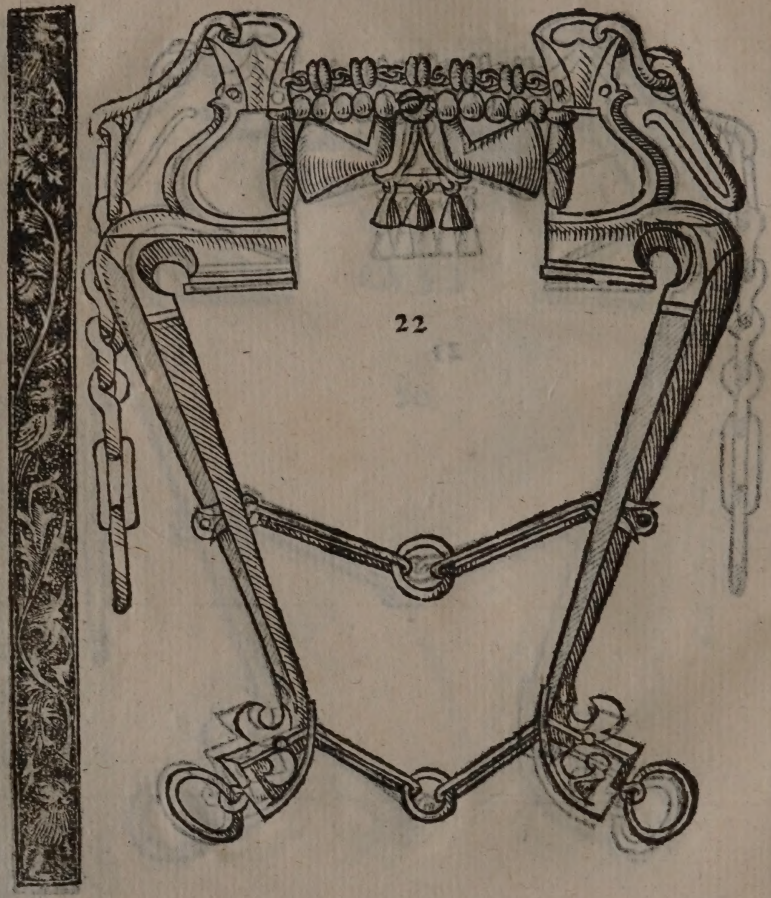
A Cattes foote or vplet mouth complete
vpth smothe Dines.



A Tattes foote With peares complete.

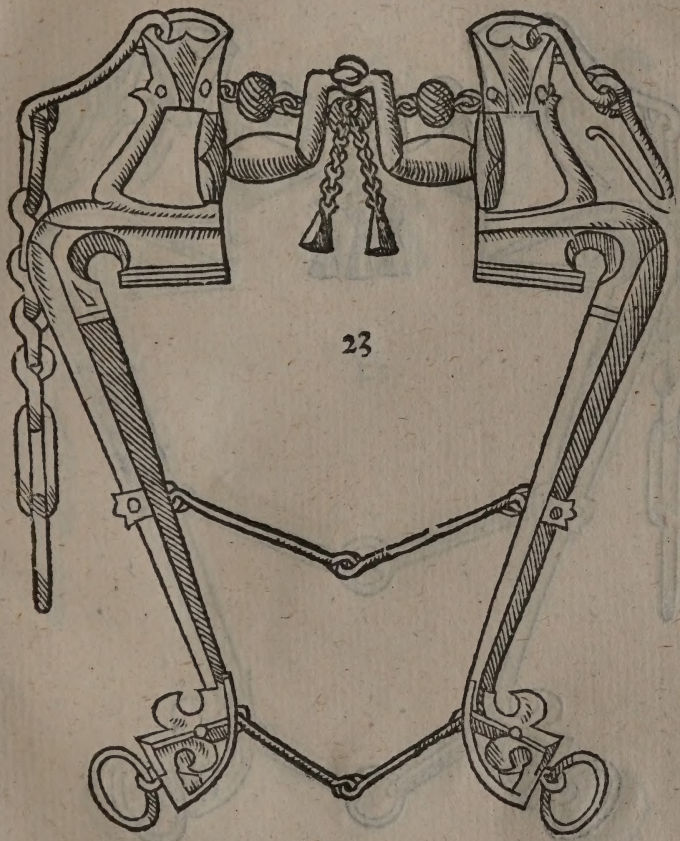


A Cattes foote with Campanels complete.



VPSET MOVTHES,

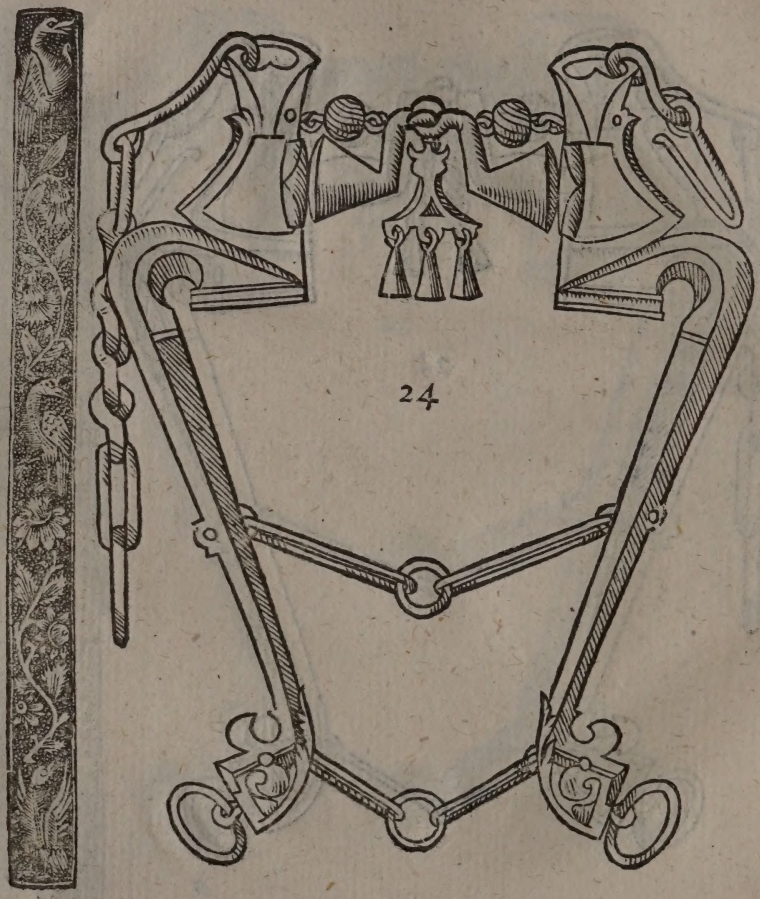
A halfe Cattes foote With Olives.



23

BROKEN PORTES AND

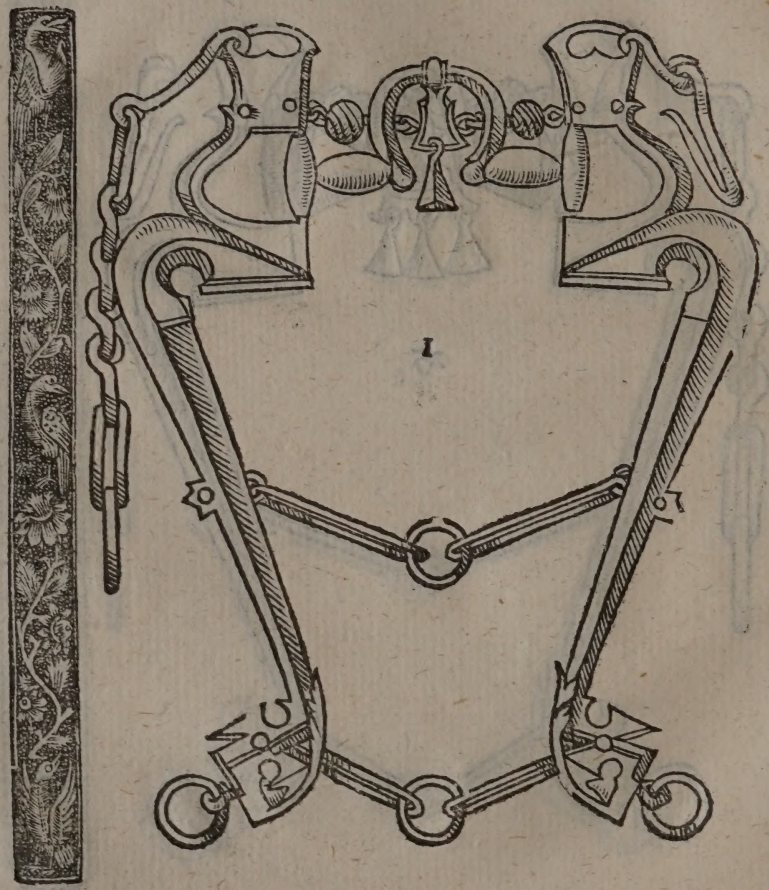
A halfe Cattes foote wyth peares.



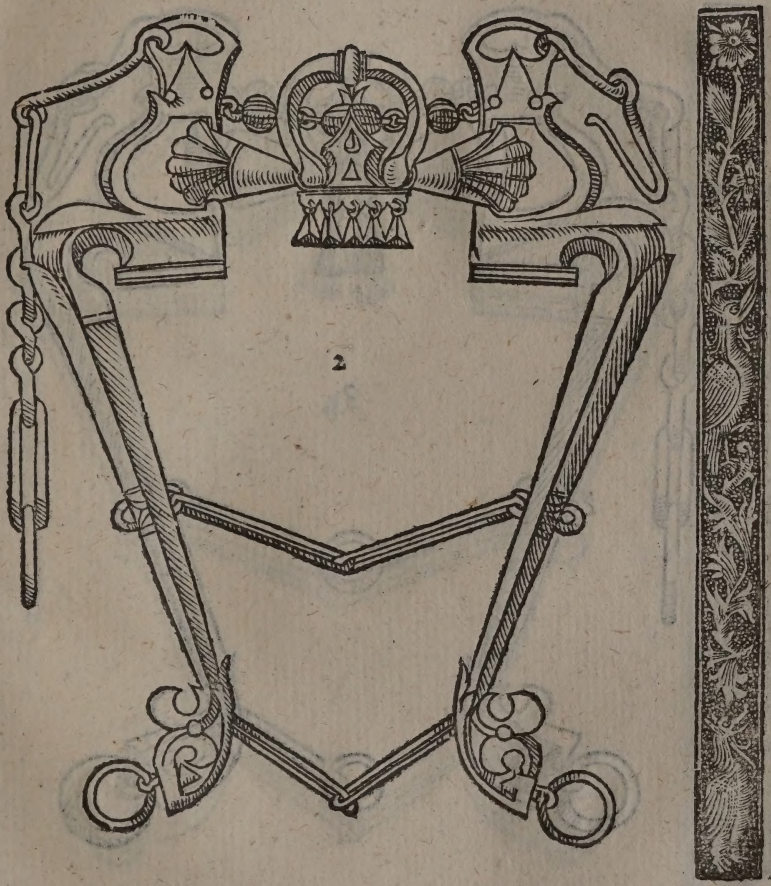
VPSET MOVTHES,

A halfe Cattes foote With Campanels.

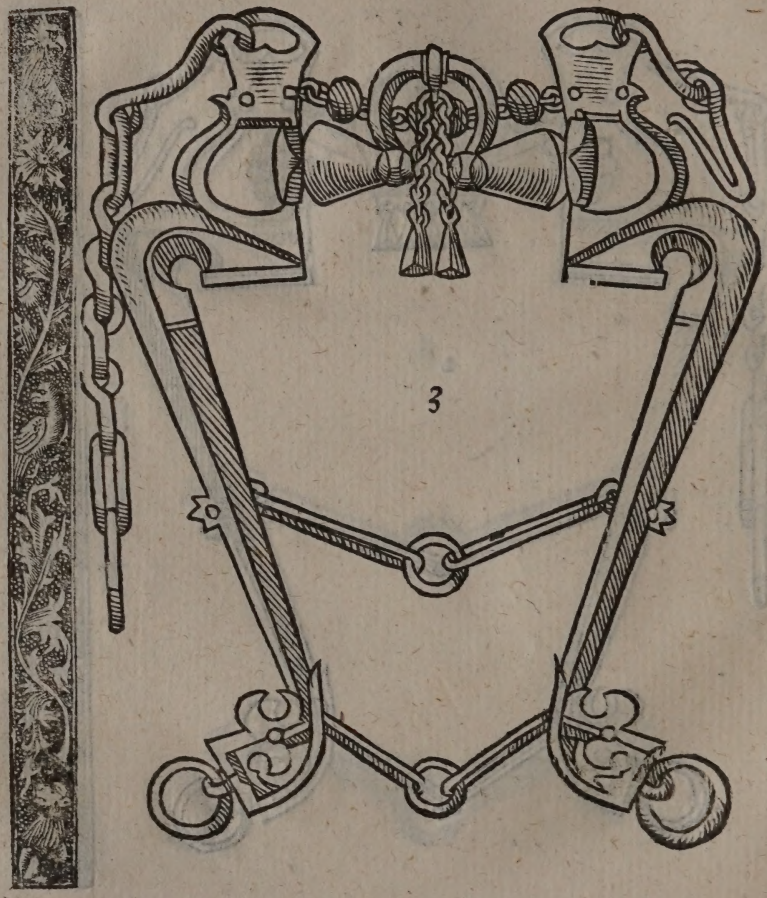
A Whole poꝛte With Olyues.



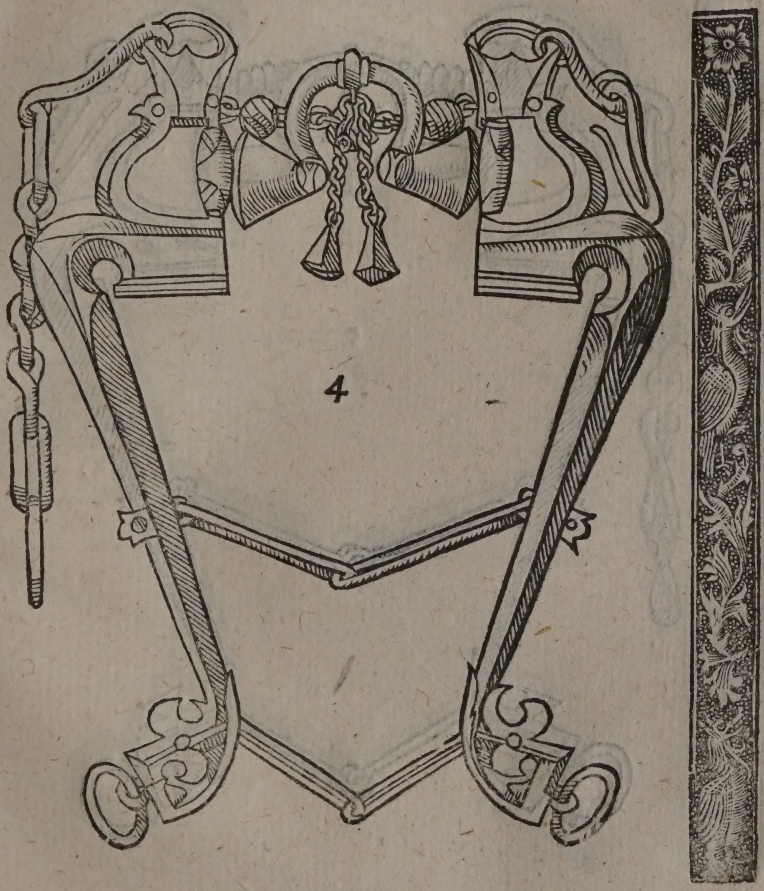
A Scach With a Whole porte.



A Whole port With peares.

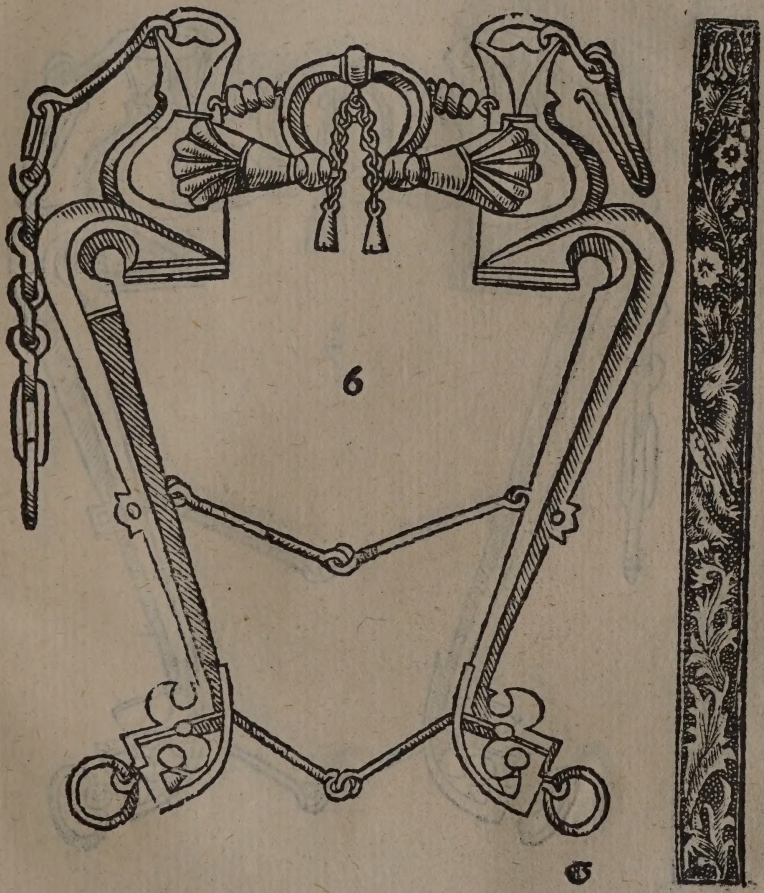


A Whole porte With Campanels.

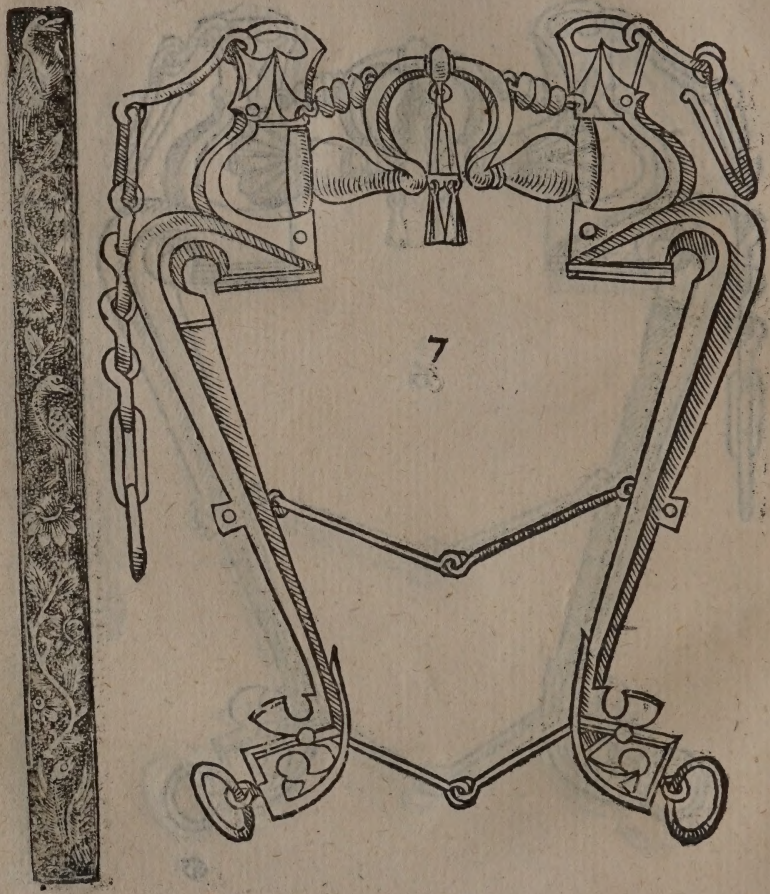


A Whole porte wyth Dyues hauing a trench aboue.

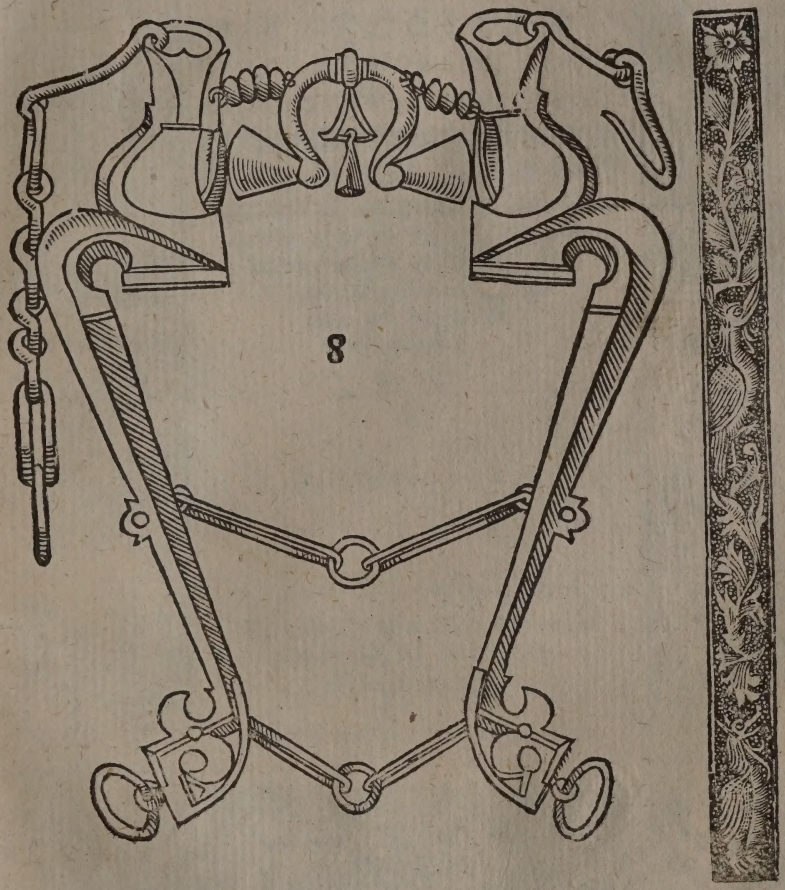
A Scach With a whole porte hauyng a trench aboue.



A Whole Porte wyth peares hauing a trench aboue.

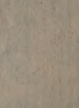


A whole porte With Campanels hauyng a trench aboue



S^r. Tho Herbert's booke.

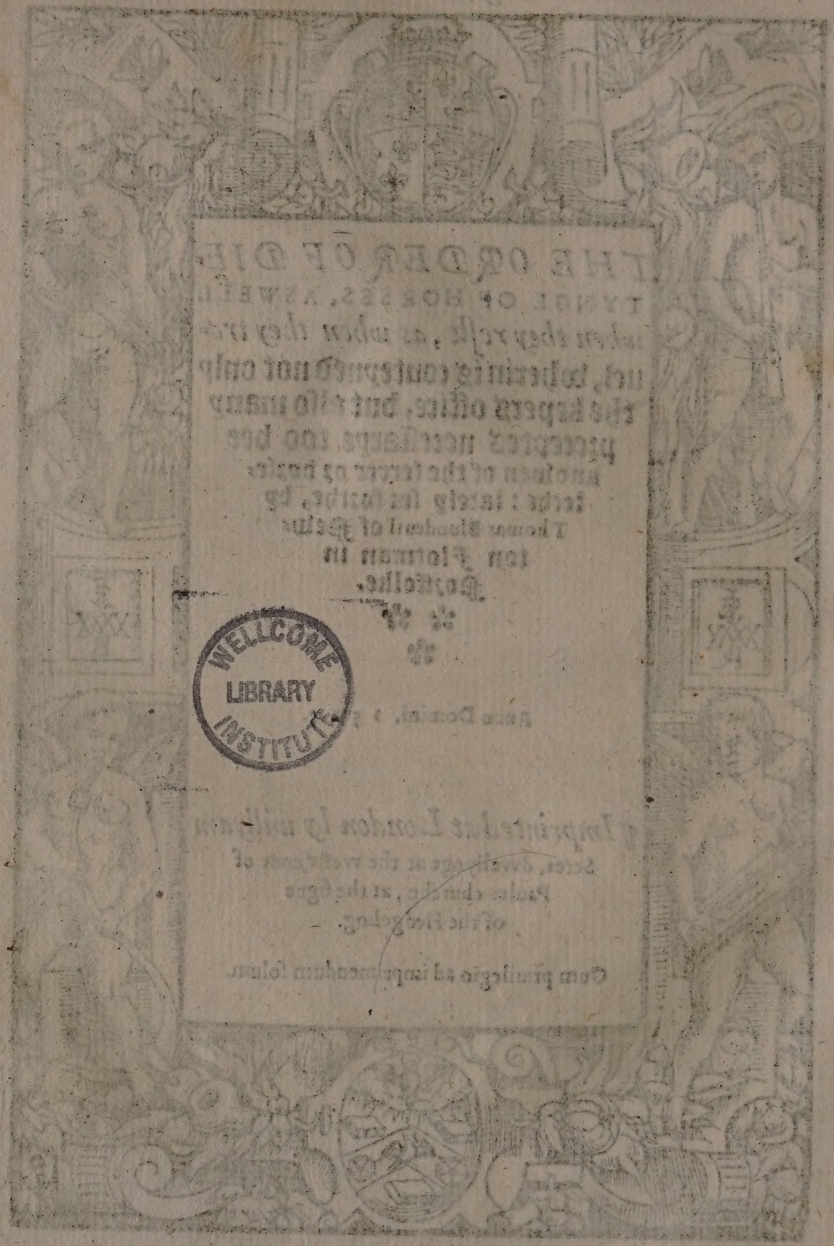
THE ORDER OF DIETYNGE OF HORSES, ASWELL *when they reste, as when they trauel, wherin is conteyned not only the kepers office, but also many preceptes necessarye too bee knowen of the ferrer or horseleche: lately set forthe, by* Thomas Blundeuil of Newton Flotman in Norffolke.



Anno Domini. 1565.

¶ *Imprinted at London by willyam* Seres, dwellynge at the weste ende of Paules churche, at the signe of the Hedgehog.

Cum priuilegio ad imprimendum solum.


WELLCOME LIBRARY INSTITUTE

TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE AND HIS SYNGVLER GOOD LORDE THE *Lorde Roberte Dudley, Erle of Leycester*, Barron of Denbighe, knight of the honorable order of the Garter, Maister of the Quenes maiesties horses, and one of her highnes priuie councell. Thomas Blundeuill wissheth perfect felicitie.

HAVING *at length ended* the order of dyetyng of horses for preseruacion of their healthe, (wherein is wholly conteyned the kepers office) I boldely presente the same here vnto your honour, most humblye besechyng you not onelye too take it in good worthe: but also to be a protectour and defender of the same against such as rashly perhappes shal iudge therof. For I doubt not but that I shal seme to some at the fyrst blushe to be more exquisite then nedeth, & to haue gyuen to curious a shape vnto so grosse a matter, vsing therin to muche Philosophie for playne mens vnderstandyng. Notwithstandynge if it shall please them to consider that I wright this boke fyrst vnto your honor (who delighteth in all good learnyng & vertuous exercises) thē to the other learned Gentlemē of thisrealme, and fynally to such kepers and ferrers as are of capacite to conceyue reason & not to the ignorant sorte, whiche haue neither letters, iudgemēt, nor good vnderstāding:

and also that I can not vse lesse Philosophie then I do, onles I shall breake ꝯ order which I haue thought moste meete to be obserued in this boke: Then I trust they will rest satisfyed, and thynke me not to be curyous inough rather then otherwyse. For truely my chefe intente is to instructe the Jentleman so as he maye be hable to iudge both of the keper and of the Ferrer, and to teache them their office (if neade be) rather then he to be taught of them. And therefore if this my trauell may please your honour, and al other Jentlemē I haue my desyre, esteaming alwaies more the due praise of one Plato, then the folish wonderyng of the vnlearned multitude. Thus committyng bothe my selfe and my boke to your good iudgemēt and correction, I leaue to trouble your honour with any further talke, praying God long to preserue thesame in healthfull lyfe and prosperous state.

Moste bound to serue your Honour in all that he can, Thomas Blundeuyle.

A shorte Preface, declaryng the order of this Booke.

MYndynge heare to treate of the keepers of hyce, shewyng how a Horse should be vsed, kepte, and dyeted, so as he may continewe long in healthy, and not fall by disorder into diseases. I thinke it good to vse suche kynde of talke, as not onely the keper but also the Ferrer or horsleche maye learne thereby in what poyntes their knowledge chefely consysteth, and with what order or iudgement they ought to proceade, whyles they seeke eyther to preserue a horse from diseases, or elles to cure him when he is fallen into them. Neyther let any man maruayle here that I ioyne the keper and the ferrer togither. For sythe there be two endes of Physycke the one to preserue a healthfull body from sycknes, the other to restore a sycke bodie to healthe: (whereof the fyrste ende is cõmon, as well to the keper as to the Ferrer) It is requisyte therfore, that the keper be in a maner as skylfull as the Ferrer, and specially in dyetynge hym, and in knowyng when he is dysposed to sycknes, though not altogether so cunnynge in iudgynge the diuersitie of diseases, or in curyng the same. But neyther of them both (in my iudgemẽt) shalbe hable to do their office truelye, onles he gyue himself to vnderstande the nature, qualitie and disposition of a horse, and to know wherof he is compounded, and all the partes and members of him togyther with the vse of the same, and also how to dyet him aswell when he is sycke, as when he is whole. Wherfore, for their better instruction it shall not greue me in treatyng of this matter, to followe the

selfesame order that the learned Physycions do observe in treatynge of mans bodye, to thyntente it maye haue some lykenes of an arte or scyence, & the rather, for that the horse is so noble a beaste, so necessarye and seruyceable to man, and partelye to gyue occasion to suche Ferrers as haue some knowledge already, to seke for more, wherein I will vse so muche playnes and breefnes as I can possiblie. To know thē the nature of a horse, and how to dyet him, me thynks it is very meete & necessary, fyrst to consider the thynges naturall, whereof he is compounded. Secondlye the thynges not naturall, wherby he is nourished and his healthe maynteyned: And thirdly the thynges vnnaturall or agaynst nature, whereby his health and nature bothe is decayed. Notwithstandyng in this booke I mynde onely to treate of the thinges naturall and not naturall, (with what order the chapiters hereafter folowyng do declare) sparynge to speake of thynges agaynst nature (whiche be the diseases) togyther with the dyet and cure belongyng thervnto, vntill I come to talke of the Ferrers office, whiche God willynge shall bee in the nexte booke following.

* * *

The

Of the thynges naturall whereof a Horse is compounded, howe manye there be, whiche they bee, and why they are so called. Cap.i.

Of the.iiii. Elementes, and what vertues and operations they haue. Cap.ii.

Of tẽperaments, how manie there be, which they be aswell simple as cõpound, & of what tẽperature a horse is, also of the qualities, bothe fyrste & seconde. Cap.iii.

Of humors to what ende they serue, & how to know the diuerse cõplexions of horses, & which be best. ca.iiii.

Of the members of a horse, aswell semblable as instrumentall. Cap.v.

Of the nũber & qualitie of ỹ synowes of a horse. ca.vi.

Of the vaynes of a horse & how many ther be. ca.vii.

Of the nũmber and sytuation of bones that be in a horses bodye. Cap.viii.

What proportion and measure is requyred in euerye member of a well shapen horse, accordynge to Vegetius description. Cap.ix.

Of the.iii. powers or vertues, wherby aswell the bodye of a horse as of euery other beast is gouerned. Ca.x.

Of the actions and operations that belonge to the vertues before recyted. Cap.xi.

Of the spirites bothe animall, vitall, and naturall of a horse, wherto thei serue, and in what part of his body they do chefely remayne. Cap.xii.

Of the thynges not naturall, wherby a horses healthy is preserued, howe manye there be, which they bee, and why they are so called. Cap.xiii.

In what ayre is beste for a horse to lyue, and how his stable

stable ought to be sytuated, made, kept & vsed. Ca. xiiii.

Of the horses meate and drincke, and of the dyuerse kyndes therof, and howe he shoulde be dyeted, when he restyth. Cap. xv.

What water is good for a horse to drincke, and whether it be good to washe a horse or not. Cap. xvi.

Of the diuerse kyndes of mouyng and rest belonging to a horse, wherin is declared howe, where and when a horse should be corried, kempt and trymmed, also howe his keper should approche vnto hym, and wehther it be good to curtall horses or not. Cap. xvii.

Of exercyse bothe moderate and vnmoderate, and of the effectes thereof. Cap. xviii.

Howe a horse shoulde be prepared agaynst he be iourneyed, and how to make hym to receyue the bydle, and also howe the keper shoulde leade hym when he dothe bynge hym forthe, and finallye how he should be vsed and dyeted whilest he is iourneyed. cap. xix.

Of the sleepe and watche of a horse, & howe he shoulde be lyttered. Cap. xx.

Of repletion and emptynes and of the diuerse kyndes therof. xxi.

Howe and when a horse shoulde be let bloudde, and to what ende and by what sygnes a man maye knowe whither it is requisite to let him bloud or not. Cap. xxii.

How and when a horse should be scoured with grasse or otherwyse, and also what meate will sonest fatte him Cap. xxiii.

Of the affections of a horse, & howe the keper ought to behaue himselfe that there maye bee a mutuall loue betwixt the horse and him. Cap. xxiiii.

Here endeth the contentes of the Chapters.

¶Of the thynges naturall, howe manye there bee, whiche they bee, and why they are so called. Cap.i.

THe naturall thynges, wherof not onely a horse, but also all other beastes, aswell reasonable as vnreasonable, are made & compounded, are in number seuen. And they be these Elementes, temperamentes, humors, mẽbers, powers or vertues, actions or operations, and spyrites, which be called thyngs naturall: because the naturall perfection of the bodye of euery sensible beast, wholly dependeth vpõ these thyngs.

Of the. iiii. Elementes, and what vertues and operations they haue. Cap.ii.

AND fyrste as touchyng the Elementes, you shall vnderstande, that this word Element, here is as much as to say a fyrst beginnyng, beyng of it self most pure and symple, wherof all thynges are made, and agayn all thinges are resolued into thesame, and it is so pure and simple a thyng in deede, as by our outwarde senses it can not be discerned. Some agayne do breefelye thus defyne it, saying that an Element is the least parte, or smalleste portion of that thyng, which is made thereof. Of Elementes, that be the cõmon begynnynges of all thynges, there are but iiii. that is: fyer, ayre, water and earthe. I meane not that fyer, ayre, water and earthe, whiche we

dayly see here beneathe with oure eyes (for they are bodies compounded lyke oure selues) otherwyse we could not see them. But those Elementes aboue, whiche oure outwarde senses are not able to discerne, whereof the fyre is hyghest, & therwith lightiest, beyng placed nexte the Moone, and thoughe this Element is bothe whot and dyre, yet naturally it exceadith most in heate. And the vertue & proprietie therof by meanes of his heate, is to moue matter to generation, and in mixte bodies to separate thynges of diuerse kindes, (called of the Philosophers Heterogenia) one from the other, & to ioyne thynges of lyke kynde (called Homogenia) togyther. For by vertue of the fyre, the bones eyther in man or beaste be seuered from the flesshe, and the flesshe from the synewes, and the harte from the lyuer. &c. So lykewyse the diuerse partes of the woodde which is burnt in the fyer, by meanes of the heate thereof, are seuered one frō an other, as the vapor, the smoke, the flame and the asshes. The lyke experience is also seene in trying or purifying of mixt mettalles. For the fyre by meanes of his heate doth seuer euery sondrie mettall by him selfe, and gather the lyke togyther. Moreouer the vertue of the fyre is to rypen and to digeste thynges rawe and vndigested, to myngle the dyre with the moyste, to open the powers that the ayre beyng somwhat grosser, may enter into the body, and finally to breake the cold of the water and earth, so as it maye not distemper the bodie. The ayre is placed nexte the fyre, and is lighte & whot, but most chefely moyste. The vertue of this Elemente by meanes of his moystnes is to make the matter apte to receyue shape, eyther naturall or accidentall, and also

togither

togyther with the fyre, to bryng the powers and influences of the Heauens and starres into the inferiour bodies, and to make the mixt bodies not oneiye subtyle and penetrable, but also light, to thintent they maye be neyther to grosse nor to heauy: Agayn the ayre with his moystnes doth slake the burnyng heate of the hart, and of the other members as is well sene by the office of the lunges, which lyke a payre of bellowes doth continually dryue fre the ayre vnto the hearte. And thoughe the ayre semeth to oure outewarde sences not to bee so moyste as the water, yet in deede according to the Philosophers opinions, it is farre moyster, whiche is well proued (say they) in that it is so flexible and spreadeth so farre abroade, fyllyng all emptye corners whiche bee the speciall properties of moystnes. And therefore it is much harder to be kept within his own boundes, then the water is. Notwithstandyng some holde opinion, that as the water was altered by God from his fyxte naturall place, to the better behouse of man and beaste: Euen so the ayre was not altogither lefte in his fyxte naturall disposition. For then it shoulde be so moyste as man nor beaste were able to breathe or lyue. Nexte vnto the ayre is the Elemente of water whiche is heauye and moyste, but moste colde. The vertue of this Element is by meanes of her coldnes in myxte bodies, to conglutinate or ioyne togither partes or members that be of diuers kyndes, as bones with flesh and synowes, and flesche agayne with synowes and bones. Lykewyse in tyme of frost, you see the colde doth bynde togyther thynges of diuerse kyndes, and bring them al into one masse as durte, stones, sticks, strawes and such like.

The water also with her coldnes doth temper the feruẽt heat of the fyre, & doth gather togyther those thinges, which the fyre woulde disperse a sonder. Next vnto the water is the earthe, whiche is moste heauye and colde, but moste chefelye drye, the vertue whereof is in mixte bodies, so to harden them as they maye reteyne theire shapes, whiche otherwyse by meanes of the ayre and water, would be fluxible and not abyde, as is easye to see in a piece of wax, newly wrought and sealed with some pynne, whiche before it be hard and drye will not holde: And note that accordynge to Hyppocrates opinion, when any lyuyng and sensible bodie dyeth, not onlye eche qualitie, but euery substance, and parte thereof, returneth to the Element from whence it came. That is to saye, that which is whot, to the fyre: that whiche is moyst, to the ayre: that which is colde, to the water: and that whiche is drye, to the earth. Thus muche of the lower Elementes, whiche bee the common begynnynges of all thynges, aswell liuyng as vnliuing, sensible as vnsensyble. For of thynges liuyng and sensyble, hauinge bloud, there be other nygher Elementes or begynnynges, which be called the proper Elementes of generation, that is to say, the engenderyng seed and menstruall blood, from whence euery beast taketh his fyrste beyng or shape. And yet these proper begynninges depend vppon the qualities of the fyrste common begynnynges before reheatsed, that is, of moyste, drye, whot and colde, without the which they coulde do nothyng, nor yet be any thyng themselues.

¶ Of temperamentes, howe many there bee, whiche they be, aswell symple as compounde, and of what temperature a horse is, also the qualities both fyrste and second. Cap. iii.

OF the commixtion of the fower Elementes aboue rehearsed, do springe .ix. tẽperaments, wherof .viii. be called vnequall & the ninthe equall. Of the .viii. vnequall, iiii. be called symple, and .iiii. compounde, the .iiii. symple be these, whot, colde, moyst and drye, whiche of the Philosophers and Physicians be otherwyse called the fyrst qualities, wherof the fyrste .ii. be actiue, and the other ii. passiue. The fower compounde bee these, whot and moyste, whot and drye, colde and moiste, colde and drye. Agayne the equall temperamente is deuyded into two, that is to saye, into that which is vniuersall or general, and into that which is especiall. The equall temperament vniuersall is, when there is an equall proporcion of the .iiii. Elementes, that is to saye, not more of one then of an other appertaynynge to nature vniuersall. The equall temperamente, especiall is when the Elements are proporcioned accordyng as euery kynde doth moste properlye require, be it plante or beast. As for example, we saye that wormewoode hath his due temperament, when it hath such qualities, as wormwood should haue, which is to haue suche commixtion of the Elementes, as in his operation it maye bee whot, drye and astringente. The lyke is to be sayde of the dogge, swyne, horse, or any other beast, whereof euerye one is sayde to haue his due temperamẽt, when he hath suche temperamẽt, as is moste proper vnto his kynde, whiche

is beste knowen by his doynges. As for example, the horse is knowen to bee whote and moyste, by his lightnes, swiftnes, boldnes, and longe lyke, and also to be of a temperate nature, in that he is tame hable, docible, and will be obedient vnto manne. And so longe as a horse or any other thyng contynueth in the mediocrite or meane of his proper temperament, we say cõmonlye that he is of a good temperature, but if he exceade in any qualitie more then he should do, as in heate, coldenes, moystnes or drieth. Then we saye that he is eyther whote or colde, drye or moyste accordyng, to that qualitie, wherein he exceadeth.

Agayne euery kynd hath his due temperamente accordyng to his age, and contrey, wherin he is bredde. And also accordyng to the tyme of the yeare, as for example. A horse in his fole age, is naturallye whot, and moyst, in his middelage more whotte & drye then moyste, and in his olde age more cold and dry then eyther whote or moist. Likewyse the horses ỹ be bred in Grece, Aphrick, & Spain be naturally far whoter thẽ those that be bred here in England, or such lyke colde contries. Neyther is any horse being in helth, so whot in springe time, which is the most temperate part of the yeare, as in Sommer, nor yet so colde in Sommer, as in Wynter. All whiche thynges are to be consydered, aswell of the keper, which hath to tende them, and to dyet them beynge whole, as also of the Ferrer or Horseleche, whiche goeth about to cure thẽ when they be sycke. For onles he consyder their natures and temperatures, together with these circumstances, he maye be quickly deceyued in his ministration, and

and therefore I would wish him to haue a good respect vnto the kynde, age, contrey and tyme of the yeare, to thintent he may apply his medicines accordingly. It is necessarye also to consider the seconde qualityes, so called because they take their beginning of the firste qualitys before mentioned, of which seconde qualitys some be called tangible or touchable: as these, softnesse, hardnesse, smothnesse, roughnesse, toughnesse, brittlenesse, lightnesse, heuinesse, thinnesse, thicknes, smalenes, grosnesse, and such like. Some againe be not tangyble, as those that appertaine to hearing, seeinge, and smelling, as noyses, coulours, odoures, and suche lyke. For by obseruyng well these seconde qualitys, he shall quickly knowe whether the Horse be dysposed to anye sickenes or not.

¶ Of Humors to what ende they serue, and howe to knowe the dyuerse complexions of horses, and which be best. Cap. iiii.

The humors whereof not onely a horse but all other beastes are made, be in number fowre. That is to say, bloud, fleame, choler, and melancholye. The bloud of his owne nature being vncorrupted is whot and moyst, and sweete to the taste. Fleame is colde and moyste and also sweete, or at the least without any tast lyke vnto pure water. Choler is whot & dry, & bitter to the taste. Melãcholy is cold & dry, & therwith sower & heauy, & bi meanes of these qualitys .iiii. humors be answerable vnto .iiii. elemẽts.

For the bloud in nature is lyke vnto the ayre, fleame vnto water, Choler vnto fyre, and Melancholye vnto the earthe. And though these fower humors be mixte throughoute all the partes of the bodye: yet euerie one aboundeth in one part more then in an other, and haue their peculier restyng places accordynglie. For bloudde chefely dwelleth about the harte, fleame in the brayne, Choler in the lyuer, and Melancholye in the splene. Moreouer as euerye one of these humors hath more or les soueraintie in any beaste, so is the beaste naturallye the better or worse coloured, qualefyed or disposed. As for an example. That horse in whome bloud doth moste raygne, is baye of colour, and therewith pleasant, nymble and of a temperate mouyng. But yf fleame haue the chefe dominion in him, then is he moste commonlye a mylke white, and therewith slowe, dull and heauye. Agayne, yf Choler be chyef, then he is of coulour moste commonly a bryght sorell, and therwyth very hot and fiery, & seldome of any great strength. And if the earthy hath soueraintye, then he is blacke of colour or a mouse dunne, and therwyth fearful, faint hearted, dul and heauye. Agayne euerye humor hath his proper vse, or ende wherto it serueth. For bloud serueth chefly to nourysh the body, fleame to helpe the mouing of the ioynts, choler to prouoke the belly to auoyd excrements, and Melancholy to prouoke appetyte. And so long as these humors kepe theyr naturall qualities: they are wholsome and be called by their simple names without any addicion, but if they chaunce by some misorder to be altered or corrupted: then they be vnholesome, and be no longer called by their simple names but haue some addicio

therunto: as Cholorike, Flegmatike or Melancholye bloud, salte fleame, Cholor aduste or burnt Cholor, and frettyng Melancholy, whereof proceadeth manye greuous diseases and sycknesses, as we shall declare hereafter.

¶ Of the members of a Horse, aswel semblable as instrumentall. Cap. v.

Of members, some be called of the Phisicions Similaria, that is to say, like or semblable, and some instrumentall. The members semblable be those, which beynge deuided into partes: all the partes therof be lyke in substãce to the whole, & haue lyke definition, & do beare ỳ same name. As flesh, bone, synew, & such lyke. For the flesh of a beast beyng deuided into sundrie partes, euery such part is flesh, & called flesh, aswell as ỳ whole: The lyke may be sayde of bone, synew, or any other member semblable, of what kynde so euer it bee. Members instrumentall be those, which beyng made of partes semblable, and deuyded into partes: the partes be not lyke, nor haue not all one name with the whole, as the head, hande and foote, or suche lyke. For euerye parte of the head is not called a head, nor euery parte of the hande a hande: And these members instrumentall, are of more perfection then the members semblable, in doyng their office. Of whiche instrumentall members there be. iiii. chefe or principall, that is to saye, the brayne, the harte, the lyuer, and the stones, wherof the fyrst thre, are onely to preserue that synguler body wherein they be. The fourthe is to preserue the whole kynde. Agayne from

these members do spryngе other members whiche do serue them: as the synewes from the brayne, the arters from the harte, the vaynes from the lyuer, and the seed vesselles from the stones. All which partes and members togethеr with the rest that be in a horses body: I wishe that our Ferrers and Horseleches woulde be diligent in searchyng to knowe them, by cuttynge vppe of dead horses, to thintent they may be the more perfecte, in discernyng one thyng from another, when they come to deale with the partes of a lyuynge horse, for lacke of which knowlege, I haue knowen some in my dayes to haue cut principal synewes asonder, in stead of vaynes. Wherfore I do meane, God willyng, hereafter yf I shal haue leasure and tyme, to sette out a perfecte anotomye or description of a horse, declaring all the chefest partes, and howe they hange togyther, and are deryued one of another, togyther with the vse of the sayde partes, and also what diseases do moste commonlye breade in the same. And in the meane tyme I shall desyre you to contente your selfe with a breefe description, onely of the synewes, vaynes and bones, gathered out of a lerned Authour, called Vegetius, whose wordes do here followe.

¶ Of the number and qualitie of the synewes of a horse. Cap. vi.

IT behoueth vs also to describe vnto you the number, qualitie and measure of the synewes of a horse. From the mid mostrelles vp to the toppe of the headde, and so down all a longest the backe, euen to the crouper comes two great cordes or tendons, euery one. xii. fote

longe

longe. Then is there two branches and principall synewes of the brayn, conteyning. iiii. foote. Then from the shoulders to the next ioynt downwarde, two great synewes or tendons. And from that ioynte downe to the Pastornes. iiii. greate synewes. Also in the fore part and about his brest, aswell within as without, are ten synewes, and as many in his hinder partes. Then from the raignes of his back vnto his stones, are iiii. so that in his whole bodye, he hathe in all. xxiiii. apparant synewes.

¶ Of the vaynes of a horse, and howe manye there be. Cap. vii.

IT is necessary also for you, to know the vaines of a horse, and specially those, where a horse should be lette bloud in tyme of nede, and therefore I will recyte vnto you all the inwarde vaynes, proceadyng from the lyuer, which is the spring and fountayne of bloud in all beastes. You shall vnderstand then, that within the palate of the horses mouth be two notable vaynes, which are commonly wonte to be touched or stricken, when the horse hath any disease in his head, or brayne. There be also twoo apparante vaynes vnder his eyes, and other twoo vnder his fore shoulders, he hath also two marualouse great ones in his breste, which are wonte to be stryke, when the horse hath any kynde of feuer, or is sycke at the hearte, or in his lunges. There be also fower vayns in his thighes, called of Vegetius, Subsarrhes, and twoo in his pastornes, which are wonte to be stryken, when the horse is werped, or tyered, or otherwyse soyled on his feete. There bee also twoo that come downe to his houes.

Moreouer he hathe. iiii. in his flanckes, and. ii. in hys hannes, or rather houghes, and twoo in his hinder legges. But vnder his taile, he hath no more but one that is apparant. A horſe hath all theſe vaynes before rehearſed, beſydes the necke vaynes that go towardes the whythers, which be the common vaynes of letting bloudde. The ſumme of all the vaynes meete to be ſtriken, amounteth to the number of. xxix.

¶ Of the number and ſituation of bones that be in a horſes bodie. Cap. viii.

Euerye Horſe, or oxe, hath in the vpper part of his head two bones, and from his forehead vnto his noſtrelles, other twoo. Alſo two neather Jawe bones, and of teethe, in all to the number of. xl. that is to ſaye, of Jawe teethe or ſyde teethe. xxiiii. of tuſhes. iiii. of forteethe, otherwyſe called the ſhearyng teethe. xii. The ioynt bones, aſwell of the necke as of the backe, be in all xxii. that is to ſaye, from the head to the withers. vii. & from thence to the raygnes or kydnes. viii. and from thence to the tayle. vii. Then is there the greate broade hinder bone, called the ſacred bone, whiche hathe. xii. ſeames or ioynctures. Alſo in the horſe ſhoulder be two great bones, called the ſpade bones, and from thence to the forcelles or Canell bones, other two bones, & from thence to the fyrſt ioynte aboue the legges, other twoo, and from thence to the knees. ii. called the thighe bones, and from thence to the paſtorns, other twoo, called the ſhancke bones, and from thence downeward to the houes, be in all. xvi. litle bones. Then is there a greate

bone

bone in hys breast, wherevnto are fastened .xxxvi. ribbes. And to the Columelle behynde be two bones, and from the molayrs to the ioyntes other two, and also two towardes the ribbes. From the bendinge of the houghe vnto the legge, are two small bones, and from the legge to the two fociles of the legge, other twoo litle bones, and from the pastorns to the houfe. xvi. litle bones. The summe of all the bones, is a. Clxx.

What proportion and measure is requyred in euerye member of a well shapen horse, accordyng to Vegetius description. Cap. ix.

IN the palate of his mouthe be. xii. degrees or steppes, standynge one aboue another, lyke a payre of stayers. His tongue woulde be halfe a foote long, his vpper lippe sixe ynches, and his neather lip. v. ynches long, euery Jawe ten ynches lōg, his head from the middle of his forehead vnto his nosthyrlles would be a good fote of the standard, his eares in myne opinion (for Vegetius appointeth no certayne measure vnto them) accordyng to his owne proportion already begonne, would be about fyue ynches longe, for sixe ynches, as he sayeth, is the iuste lengthe of an oxe hys eare. The circuit or compasse of his eye woulde be fower ynches about, his neck from the nape of his head vnto his wythers, would be. vii. Calculs. From thence to the raygnes. xxii. and from thence to his tayle. xii. The length of hys thighe before, would be. xii. ynches, and the length of his shanke. vi. ynches, and his thyghe behynde requireth to be a foote longe, and the shanke to be. v. ynches longe, and the lengthe of his whole bodie

die from head to tayle, woulde conteyne syxe feete.

¶ Of the three powers or vertues, whereby as well the bodye of a horse, as euery other beast is gouerned. Cap. i.

The powers and vertues, whereby the bodie of euery beast is gouerned, are in number .iii. that is to say, the power Animall, the power Vitall, & the power Naturall. The power Animall, is a vertue incident to the brayne, which through ỹ synowes conuyng lyke conduite pypes from the brayne, distributeth felinge and mouyng to all the partes of the bodie. The power Vitall, is a vertue belongyng to the harte, whiche gyueth lyfe and spirite to all the bodie, and to euerye parte thereof, by meanes of the arters, whiche also lyke conduit pypes do procede from the harte, the chefe fountayne of natural heate. The power Naturall is a vertue properlye appertaynyng to the lyuer, which giueth nutriment vnto all the bodie, and to euery parte thereof, by meanes of the vaynes, which lykewyse procede from the lyuer lyke conduite pypes, carrynge the bloud from the lyuer, whiche is the fountayne of bloud vnto euerie parte of the bodie. Moreouer the power naturall comprehendeth .iiii. other vertues, that is to saye, the vertue Attractiue, whereby it draweth sustenaunce mete to nourishe the bodie, then the vertue retentyue, whereby it reteyneth & kepeth the sustenaunce receyued, thirdly the vertue digestyue, whereby it digestyth the same, and finally the vertue expulsyue, whereby it expelleth excrementes, or superfluites. Thus you see

that

that the.iii.powers before recyted,be of no small importaunce, and therefore the Ferrer hadde neede to haue a speciall regarde vnto them. For yf any of them fayle,the beast cannot lyue.

¶ Of the actions and operations that belongs to the vertues before recyted. Cap. xi.

FRom the.iii.powrs before reherſed,do procead diuerſe actions or operations, for the action and operation of the power animall, is to diſcerne,to moue,and to feele. We diſcerne by meanes of ỹ vertue Imaginatiue, diſcourſatiue,and memoratiue,wherof the fyrſte is placed in the forehead,the ſecõd in the middle of the brayne, and the third in the hinder parte of the head. All which are comprehendid vnder the power animall before deſcribed. We moue,and haue oure mouyng by meanes of the vertue motyue, whoſe action and operation is to ſtrayne,or to let flacke the ſynewes,wherof al the members haue their mouyng. Agayn our feelyng is by meanes of the vertue ſenſatiue, whoſe action is occuppyd in the.v.ſenſes,as to ſee,to heare, to ſmell, to taſte,and to feale or touche. And all theſe actions do proceade from the power animall. The action or operation of ỹ power vytall is, to reſtayne & to loſen, the hart and the arters proceading from the hart,which action, whether it be hurt or diſturbed in mans body or not,is eaſely knowen by the vnequal beatyng of the pulſe,that is to ſay of the arters,which cometh frõ his hart,down vnto both his wriſtes,and I thincke to a diligente Ferrer,are eaſye ynoughe to bee founde in the forelegges of a horſe, or at the leaſt in the Temples of his headde.

For

For as his skinne is much thicker then a mannes skin: so be his arters also greater, and do beate with greater violence, and therefore are the more easy to be felte. The actions or operations of the power naturall are to engendre, to encrease, to nourishe, to desyre with appetite, to attracte or to draughe, to alterate or to chaunge, to disgest, or to distribute, to retayne, and to expell, & manye such lyke. These actions therefore, are to be consydered of the Ferrer, to thintente that he maye learne by them, not onelye the whole state of a horses bodie, but also what particuler member or parte thereof, is at any tyme euyll affected or greued. But nowe you shall vnderstande, that of actions some be voluntarie, and some not voluntarie. The voluntarie be those, whiche bothe man and beast may further and hinder, stay or let, when they will themselues, as the mouynge of the legges, for it is in their power, to go, to stād, or to lye downe when they wil thēselfs. The actions not voluntary, are those, that depende not vpon the will of man or beaste, but be done of their owne accorde, and naturallye, as the mouyng of the harte & of the arters, which do continuallie moue & beate, whether the beaste sleapeth, or waketh. Thus much of actions.

¶ Of the spyrites, bothe animall, vitall, and naturall of a horse, wherto they serue, and in what partes of his body they do chefely remayne. Cap. xii.

A Spyrite, here is to be vnderstāded for that, fyne, pure, cleare, & ayery substaunce, which is ingendred of the fyneft part of the bloud, to thintent that the vertue of euerye principall member may resorte vnto all the other

partes

partes of the bodye, so as they may do their offices and actions accordinglye, and therefore the selfsame compacison may be made betwixte the bloud and the spiryte, that is betwixt the fyre and the sparke. Of spirites, accordyng to Galene, there be but two kyndes, that is to say, the spiryte animall, and the spirit vitall. The spirit animall is, that which giueth power of felyng and mouyng vnto the beaste, in whiche twoo thynges the nature of all beaste chiefely consysteth. And therefore Aristotle dothe defyne a beaste in this wyse, sayinge: Animal est quod sentit & mouetur. A beast (sayethe he) is that which hath felyng and mouyng. This spirite animall hath his chiefe restyng place in the brayn, from whence through the synewes, it is dispersed into al other parts of the bodie. And as it is engendred of the vitall spirite, beyng more behementlie wrought and laboured, & partlie of continuall breathinge: Euen so it is partlye preserued by the Chaule of the brayne, which dothe continuallye water it and nourishe it. The spirite vitall is conteyned in the harte from whence it floweth into all the partes of the bodie, beynge the chiefe cause of all the natural heate in the bodye, and is preserued and nourished partly by breathing, and partly by bloudde. To these, ii. spyrites, you may yf you wil for order sake, adde the spirite naturall, which (as Galene sayeth) yf there be any suche, it is without dought conteyned in the lyuer, and the vaynes. But the other two be such principal things as the bodye can not lyue without them, nor yet haue anye beyng at all. And therefore it is necessarie, that the Ferrer haue a speciall regard vnto them, that they may be alwayes preserued in their force and vertue. Thus

hauinge brefely talked of the .vii. naturall thynges, wher of a horse or any other beast is made and compounded, now it resteth that we speake of the thynges not naturall, whereby the healthfull state of anye beast is preserued and mayntayned, declaryng therewith howe suche thinges ought to be vsed accordingly.

¶ Of the thynges not naturall, whereby a horses health is preserued, howe manie there be, which they be, and why they are so called. Cap. xiii.

THe thinges not naturall, whereby the bodye eyther of man or beast is preserued, be in number sixe, that is to saye, the ayre, meate and drincke, mouinge and reste, slepe and watche, emptines and fulnes, & the affectes of the mynde, which thinges are called not natural, because that as they preserue the bodye beyng rightlie applyed: So agayne, yf they be otherwyse vsed thē well, they destroy the body.

¶ In what ayre is beste for a horse to lyue, and how his stable ought to be sytuated, made, kept and vsed. Cap. xiiii.

BVt for so much as a horse is a farre grosser beaste then manne, and made to serue man in all seasons and weathers, be they whot, cold, drye or moyste: And also for that he dothe seldome surfet through the intemperature of the ayre, onles he haue ben chafed and dryuen into some sweate before, or by some other accidente. I meane therfore not to talke moche of the ayre, but onely to saye,

to saye, that sythe all beastes lyue by the ayre, the more pure and clearer that the substaunce of the ayre is, the more wholsome it is for the horse. And as for the qualitie of the ayre, it maye be wholesome or vnwholesome, accordyng to the complexion of the horse. For some require to lyue in a whotte ayre, and some in a colde, and some in a meane, as those that bee of a good temperature, to whome the temperate ayre is alwayes moste wholsome. But when a horse dothe exceade in anie of the .iiii. qualities, that is to saye, in heat, moystnes coldnes or dryeth: It is beste for him to lyue in that ayre whiche is contrarie to that qualitie, wherein he exceadeth. And in diuerse diseases, the chaunge of the ayre is verie necessarie and profitable, aswell to a horse or other beast, as to a man. But syth stonyd horses for the moste parte be kepte in the house, and lyue not abroade in the open ayre: I wil shew you, how a horses house or stable should be situated, made, kept, and vsed. The stable then according to Palladius opinio (whither it be for horses or oxe) would be placed towards the southe, & yet so as it may haue windowes also towards the North, which as he sayeth, beyng close shutte in winter season, cannot hurte them, and beynge opened in Somer season, shall greatly refreshe them. And a stable woulde be placed on a drye grounde, and nye vnto a well, or some other good watring place, and so as the owner may haue a delight to come alwayes thyther to see his horses. For according to the olde prouerbe, that horse is moste commonlie fatte, which is fedde with his masters eye. And in any case lette no swynes coate be nighe vnto the stable. For the sylthie sauor of swyne, and of all thynges that come

from them, is very pernitius & hurtfull to horſes. But now, as touchyng the makynge of the ſtable, Vegetius would haue it to be verye lightſome, leſte the horſes beyng vſed to darkenes, when they come abroade, be not able to abyde the light of the ſonne, daſelyng their eyes ſo, as they cānot perfectly ſee. But then the wyndowes woulde be glaſed or latyſed, to thintente that no foules may enter in: whoſe feathers and doūge, be very daungerous, the one to the throte, and the other to the belly. And as touchyng the flozth or plancher, Columella, Palladius, & others, would haue it to be made of ỹ hart of harde oke, & not of ſmooth & ſofte wood. And the ſame Plancher, to ſtande ſomewhat flope wyſe or fallynge, to thintent that no water or horſepiſſe may abide theron, to hurte their houes. For the conueyaunce of whiche water or piſſe, there woulde be made at the lower ende next vnto the tayle tree, a conuenient gutter, cloſe couered with a plancke or borde, in ſuche ſorte, as the ſame beyng lyfted vppe, the gutter may be often ſwepte, and kepte cleane, at the ende of whiche gutter, the grounde would be ſuche, as it may drincke vp the water, or elles it muſte be conueyed further into ſome back dyke or pit, meete for the purpoſe. Notwithſtādyng in many parts of Italie, the flozthes of the ſtables be made with roūd pauyng ſtone, and not with planckes, which no doubt, is verye good to harden their houes, but I thincke it were to colde a flozthe, to be vſed in this countrey. Notwithſtanding all the ſtables of Syr Thomas Chenye, ſomtimes Lord warde of the. v. ports (as I vnderſtād) wer made with ſuch pauyd flozths. Who delighted not onely to haue a nomber of good horſes, but alſo to haue

them

them well kepte and vsed accordynglie. The maunger would bee also made of thicke oken planckes, and close borded in the bottome, to thintent, the prouender maye not fal through and be spilt. And because that al horses vse not lyke speade in their fedynge, Vegetius woulde that euerie horse shoulde haue a locker to eate his prouender in, peculier to himselfe. Whiche woulde be somewhat narrower in the bottome thē at the brimme, and no wyder then one horse maye easelye put in his headde at once, whiche kynde of lockers are commonlye vsed in Italie, and for the moste parte they be of marble or such lyke harde stone, and are aptlye placed & fastened within the maunger, so as they cannot be moued, and in manie places, such kynde of maungers do serue also in stead of rackes. For betwixt euerye two prouender pottes or lockers, the bottom of the maunger is not close borded, but rateled with latthes, beyng about an ynche or more distant one from an other, so as the duste that comes from the haye, which is cast therein, maye fall downe to the ground. And to thintent that the horses may strayn their neckes the more in stouping lowe for their meate. Such rackelyke maungers accordyng to Petrus Crescentius opinion, ought to be placed lowe by the grounde, euen before the horses knees. And though these kynde of rackes be of late dayes leafte in moste places: yet I see no great cause, why they should be lefte, and specially in great mennes stables. For fyrste it is more naturall for a horse to feade downwarde then vpwarde, accordyng to the shape that nature hath gyuen, aswell to him as to all other vnreasonable beastes, for man onely loketh vp to the heauens, whiche is very aptlye touched by Ouid

in

in these. iii. verses:

Pronaq; cum spectent animalia cætera terram,
Os homini sublime dedit, cœlumq; videre
Iussit, & erectos ad sydera tollere vultus.

Agayne, he streacheth the reynynge parte of his necke, which hath most nede to be streached, more by stouping downwarde, then by lokynge vpwarde, whiche is not onely painfull vnto the horse, but also incommodious, for when the racke standeth aboue headde, it fylleth the horses mayne full of dust, and besydes that, yf ther shold be any feather, hens donge, or such lyke euil thyng in the heye, it woulde soner fall into his throte, then when he taketh his meate from beneathe. Notwithstandynge, moste men nowe a dayes doo vse the highe standynge rackes, for two causes. Fyrste for that the horses cannot blowe vpon the heye so much as if it laye beneath. Secondlie, for that they shall not destroye so muche heye, lyeng aboue head, as when it lyeth beneathe, and some man perhappes, would adde the thyrde cause, sayinge, that a horse laboureth more in pullyng oute his meate from aboue, then from beneath, but syth that suche labor exercisyth the teeth more then any other part of the bodie, it is not therefore so materiall. And as for the other two discommodities before alledgyd, are sone remedyed in great mens stables, wher the gromes of the stable do nothing elles but attend vpon the horses, to serue them of meate by lytle at once, accordynge as they shall see it nedefull, so shall they haue it freshe and fresh, which shall do them more good, then that whiche lyeth longe before them. And therefore in great mens stables, where seruauntes do nothyng elles but serue horses, I

woulde

would wiſhe the maunger to be made racklyke, and to ſtande as before is ſayde. And in meane mens ſtables, where ſeruauntes can not be ſuffered to gyue continual attendance on their horſes, the rackes may be placed aboue head, as they be euerie where at this preſente, but therewith at ſuch heyghth, as is moſte agreable to the horſes ſtature that ſhall ſtande thereat, that is to ſaye, neither ſo low as may touche their eyes or headde, nor yet ſo high as it ſhall payn them to reche vnto it, and to thintent that euery horſe maye ſtand and lye ſeuerallye by himſelf, it is meete that the ſtable floythe or plancher be deuyded into conuenient roomes, with poſtes ſet vp, and mortiſed into the taile tree. Unto euerywhich poſt, and alſo vnto the maunger, woulde be faſtened a conuenient barre of tymbre, with a cord or thonge of leather, in ſuch ſort, as the barre may ſwaye euery waye, ſo ſhall it ſaue the horſes from ſtrykyng one another withoute doyng them any hurte: And they that lyſte to beſtowe more coſt, may dubble borde euerye partition betwixte rome and rome, yf they will, and make the partitions ſo hyghe, that the horſes ſhalbe neyther able to byte nor ſtryke one another, no nor yet one to ſee another. But ſuche coſt is not greatly commodious, onles they might carry their ſtables alwayes with them, & vpon the back ſyde of euery ſuche poſte of partition, would be ſet a pin of woodde, to hange thereon euerye horſes bridle ſeuerally by it ſelf, & on the in ſyde of euery poſte, ther would be two peces of whipcord, of a cõuenient lẽgth, faſt wedged in at ſuch length as may ſerue, to ſtaye eche cheke of the byt, whiles ỹ horſe ſtandeth with his taile toward the maũger, chãping on ỹ bridle to get him a ſtomacke.

Wher,

Whereof we shall speake hereafter in his proper place. Moreouer there would be set in places cõuenient, pins, hookes, and shelues, meete to hange or laye vp suche instruments, as are to be occupied in the stable, about the curryng, frettynge, or trimmynge the horses, or otherwyse. Also nighe vnto the stable woulde be the horsekepers chamber, in the whiche, or elles in some other close roume, cut out of the stable of purpose, would be placed, tubbes, or hutches, meete to receyue the prouẽder. And also close presses for the saddels, harnesys, guyrsts, styrrippes, or byttes to be kept cleane from duste, and mouldyng, and fynallie to auoyde all daunger of fyre and candell, I woulde wythe all stables to bee vaulted as they be in Italy. If not, that the plates, wherin the candels should stand, be stronge, and broade fotyd, meete to receyue all sparkes or droppynges, and therewith to bee placed, where they maye gyue moste lighte, with lesse daunger. Thus much touchyng the sytuatyng and buildyng of the stable, nowe let vs shew you, how the same should be vsed and kept. Vegetius sayth, that stables in winter season, would rather be kepte luke warme, then very whotte. For although, sayth he, that aboundance of heat, causeth the horses to be fatte and full, yet it maketh rawe digestiõ, and greatly hurteth nature, because that many kyndes of diseases are ingẽdred in ỹ beastes, of the verye vapour that ryseth out of the stable. And beynge vsed to suche warmth within doores, when they come abroade, they easely surfet of euery litle colde. And in any case, Zenophon would haue the stable to be kept cleane and neat, aswell when the horses are present, as absent, which (as he saythe) dothe not onelye please the

eye,

eye, and commend the diligence of the kepers, but also preseruith and encreaseth the healthe of the horses, by meanes that the fylthy and stinkyng sauers be remoued from thence. whereby not onelye the horses breathe, but also the ayre it selfe is infected and corrupted, whereof may spryng a further mischiefe. Moreouer the same Zenophon would haue all instrumentes belongyng to the stable, to be placed orderly euery one in his owne proper place, that they may be redy to fynde, & so as they maye touche no food, wherof the horses haue to eate, nor that the horses themselfes may reach them, to byte or gnaw on them, as some wantonne horses will, for that is not wholesome, and therefore I cannot prayse such kepers, as vse moste commonlie to hange their corryeng combe in the racke amongst the horses meate, and in his sight and smell, or to leaue their dustinge clothe in the maunger. Zenophon also would haue no keper in the night season, to bryngе in anye candel into the stable withoute a lanterne. Willynge him to be carefull thereof, for heye and strawe will soone take fyre. Also that he kepe the stable dore alwayes shutte for two principall causes, the one is to the intent that the horse be not begyled of his meate, and the other is, that he maye knowe whether the horse do eate or spoyle that meate whiche is gyuen him, or not. For as Zenophon sayth, there be two principall sygnes to knowe a horses healthe, the one within the stable, and that is when the horse eateth his meate greedelie, and with a good appetite, the other abroade, and that is by the moystnes and whyte fomyng of hys mouthe.

¶ Of the horses meate and drinck, and of the diuerse kyndes thereof, and howe he shoulde be dyeted when he reuyth. Cap. xiiii.

THe seconde thyng not Naturall, whereby the body of the horse is preserued and nourished, is his meate and drinck, touchynge the which, manie thynges are to be considered, as the kyndes and substauntes of meate, and whiche be beste, the quantitye, the qualitye thereof, and the delight and custome of the horse, the order and tyme of the daye, in geuyng him his meate, also the tyme of the yeare, and the horses age. The moste naturall kyndes of meates, wherewith horses ought to be fedde, accordyng to Rullius are these, gralle, hey, strawe, barley, and otes, some adde therebnto, wheate, and sytches, and also blendyd corne. Gralle is very nourishyng, but therewith to moyste to be gyuen vnto horses of seruice, onelesse it be when they haue neede to be scoured, or be fallen into some sycknes, sweete heye also is a greate nourisher, and delateth the bodie. But yf a horse be continuallie fedde therewith, it will make him syde belyed, foggye, pursye, and heauie in his laboure: strawe is a dryer kynde of foode, and though it nourish not so much as heye, yet it breadeth syme fleash, & maketh the horse longe breathed, hard and stronge. For which cause they vse in moste places beyonde the seas, to feade their horses chiefely with shoues of wheat strawe vnthreshed, the eares onelie cut of, which our Calys men also vsed, callyng that kynde of foode Garbage, and for prouender also they gaue their horses chopte strawe myngled wyth a fewe otes, for the which they had a litte instrument

of pur-

of purpose, to cut their strawe shorte for the nonce, with which kynde of dyet they made their horses so harde of warde, so lustie, stronge, and lyuelie withall, as was a pleasure to behold them. Barlie is cold and dry, yet according to Camerarius, it nourisheth more then otes, and beyng lesse rawe, engendereth lyner bloud. And it is the chiefe prouender that is vsed in Italy. Notwithstandyng we dare not vse it here in England. For it hurteth oure horses, and maketh their stale to looke redde, lyke bloud. I thinke the reason is, because that our barlie is not so fyne a graine as theirs, nor so dry. For the which cause I beleue that no good malte can be made of their barlei, like as of ours, for that it wil not swel in the water as ours doth, and especially that which they call spelta, which is a very dry grayne, long and slender. Otes according to Galene, vsed as a medicine, doth refrigerate, but as a nutriment, it warmeth sufficient lye. Notwithstandyng it nourisheth but slenderlie, because it is a verie lighte grayne, and of small substaunce, or strength, and yet, I take it to be the moste kyndlye prouender, that maye bee gyuen continuallie vnto horses here in Englande, and speciallie the blacke otes, when they are well dryed, and myngled with chopte strawe, as before is sayde. Wheate is a great nourisher, and is much commended of many authors, to be very good for horses being well dried, but it is to costlye a prouender to be vsed here in England. Notwithstandyng when kyng Phyllip came into this Realme, the Spanyards dyd vse it muche, and gaue their Jenettes almoste none other prouender, whereat the artificers and other plain people in London that knewe it, grudged very sore, and

the rather, for that there was at that tyme a greate dearth of corne. Some agayne vse to gyue their horses blended corne, as peas, fetches, beanes, & wheat brãne, myngled togyther, which no doubt dothe nourishe verye muche, but I take it to be a pursy and wyndie meat, onlesse the branne doth somewhat correct it. Neyther can I greatly praise our Englysh horsebread, and especiallye, beynge so vnholesomelye made as it is nowe a dayes, and of such fylthie and dustie stuffe. For a horses prouender ought to be swete, cleane, pure, and without all dust and fylthe, and lykewyse his heye or straw that he fedeth on must be sweete, and sauory, and not foysty. For otherwyse it will not engender good blond, but fyl him ful of diseases. Thus much of the kynds of meates, and which be beste. The qualitie of the horses meate, as whether it be whot, drye, colde or moyst, is most chiefely to be consydered, when the horse is sycke, to thintent he may be fedde with that meat, which shalbe most meete for his sycknes, whereof we shall speake hereafter, in the dyetynge of sycke horses. But as touchyng the quantite and order to be obserued in gyuing a horse his mate, beyng in health: you shall vnderstand, that dyuerse menne be of dyuerse opinions, but more for the order, then for the quantitie. For to say the truth, the quantitie cannot be certaynlye determined, syth euery horse is not of lyke stomack or appetyte in feding, for so that he hath meate ynough, it maketh no matter, and there is lesse daũger, in geuyng a horse to muche then to lyttell, and specially of heye, strawe, or garbage, for prouender is to be measured accordyng to his labor, reste, or exercyse. For yf he rest, and be not greatly exercysed or laboured, a very litle

prouen-

prouender will serue. But yf his labour and exercyse be greate, then he had nede to haue the greater allowance, to thintente he may be in good lust, that is to saye, neyther to fat nor to leane. For as fatnes engendreth euyll humours, so leannes diminisheth the horses strengthe, and maketh him to seme foule, and il fauored to the eye. Camerarius thynketh it a sufficient quantitie, to gyue a horse halfe a pecke of otes or barley at once for his prouender, or asmuch as a man may easely take vppe at.vi. tymes with both his hādes togyther. And as touching the order of seruyng a horse, the sayd Camerarius saith, that he oughte to haue no heye gyuen him in the mornyng, but onelye that prouender whiche you do accustomably allowe him, and after he hath eatē that, let there be gyuen him about the third houre of the day, a bottel of haye, which when he hath eaten, let him be watered, and that wilbe about the.ix. houre of the day, and then cast him an other bottel of heye, and within.iii. howers after, which shalbe about.xii. of the clocke, gyue him for his nonemeale the lyke quantitie of prouender, that you gaue him in the mornyng, then about two or. iii. of the clocke, gyue him another bottell of heye, whiche so sone as he hathe eaten, let him drincke, then in the euenynge, gyue him his night prouender, with somewhat larger measure then he had eyther in the mornyng, or at none. But before the horse smell the prouender, offer him clear water to drincke, least he be thurstie, and yf he be watered abroade, his prouender beyng fyll wel syfted & clensed of all fylthes, would againste his commyng be layde redy in the manger, whiche also must be so cleane swept as is possible. Thus you see that Camerarius woulde

haue a horse to be serued with prouender thryse a daye: and yet it appeareth, as he saith, by Zenophons words, that in olde tyme, they gaue their horses prouender but twyse a daye. The Turkes agayne at this presente, do vse to gyue their horses prouender but once a daye, and that at night, allowyng to euery horse at that once, as muche as others do at thryse, and all the daye besydes, they feede him with strawe, and gyue him no heye, but onelye after water, and then they gyue him an handfull or twoo, to sauour his mouth. But accordyng to Vegetius, it is much better to gyue a horse his prouender by litle and lytle, then all at once. Whose woordes are in this sorte. It is not good to geue a horse his prouender all at once, or at twyse, but rather by manye portions. For whē he taketh it by litle & lyttel, he doth throughlye disgest it, but when he eateth it all at once and greedely, it palleth whole and vndisgested through his belie. And as Vegetius woulde haue the prouender to be gyuen him by many portions: Euen so do I wishe also that the heye, strawe, or garbage, whereof the horse feedyth all the daye, be gyuen hym by lytle and lytle, euen as he dothe spende it, and not to be layde before him all at once, for that will lothe him, and take away his appetyte, neyther would I wishe him to be fedde all the day longe, but rather from noonetyde, vntill it be. iii. of the clock in the afternone, to be brydled, and to stande champyng thereō, with his tayle tourned toward the maunger. For which purpose there would be two litle cordes fastened to the two postes of partition, to stay his head on bothe sydes, accordyng as I shewed you before, and that shall make him haue a good stomack to his meate,

and

and also to haue a pleasure in his byttle. Many horses after they haue drouck and eaten their prouender, will fall to pullyng out of their lytter, from vnder the maunger and eate therof, which the keper may not suffer. For it is very hurtfull and vnholesome. For the cleaner that a horse feadeth, the lesse corruption shall breed in him, and therfore as I sayde before, what so euer meate you geue him, let it be fyrst clensed of all dust and fylthe. The custome also, and delyghte of the horse, the tyme of the yeare, and his age are (as I sayd before) thynges meete to be consydered. Fyrst the custume and the delyghte of the horse, to thintent he be fedde with that fodd, wherunto he hath ben moste accustomed, and hath moste delighte in: for that will soneste disgest, though perhappes it be not so good. And yf you would breake him from anie suche custome, see that you doe it by lytle & lytle, and not violently, because nature abhorreth all sodeyn chaūges. Secondly the tyme of the yeare. For anie beast will eate more in winter then in Somer, by reason of his inwarde heate. Agayne in the spryng tyme, or at the fall of the leafe, horses woulde be fedde for a certayn dayes with grasse, to scoure them, and to make them cleane within, whereof wee shall talke hereafter in his proper place. Moreouer as Rullius sayth, horses that stande in the stable, would be housed in somer season with cāuas, to defende the flyes, and in wynter with a thick woollen housyng clothe, to kepe them warme, which some agaīn do not allow, sayinge that it maketh a horse to tender, and therefore would haue them to be housed with light canuasse, all the yeare longe, whiche is necessarie for two causes, the one to kepe their coates cleane from dust, and

raying,

raying, and also from the stynging of flyes in somer season, and such housyng clothes of canalle, would be made to couer not onely the bodie, but also the necke & head. Finallie the horses age is also to be consydered, to thintent he may be fedde with suche meate as is moste agreable to the same, for whylest a horse is yong & growyng, he would be fedde eyther with graile or heye, and not with straw, and suche harde and drye meate, for feare of hinderyng his growthe. Again in his olde age, he hadde need to be fedde with soft meate, because his teethe perhaps will fayle him, so as he shall not be hable to chow his meate, yf it be ouer harde, and then he cannot continue, but will sone pyne away, and dye.

What water is good for a horse to drincke, and whether it be good to washe a horse, or not. Cap. xvi.

HEtherto we haue talked onelye of the horses meate, now lette vs speake somwhat of his dryncke. The Authors do not altogyther agree, touchynge the water whereof a horse should drynke. For Vegetius would haue it to be verie cleare and colde, alwayes springyng, and runnyng, but not ouer swifte. But Aristotle sayethe, that a horse delighteth rather to drynke of that water which is somewhat troubled and thicke, in so muche as if it be to cleare, he will not drincke thereof, vntill he hath slurryd, or troubled it with his foote. Rusticus also sayethe, that the water would be somewhat brackish, or salte, or at the least somewhat thicke, and therewyth lytle or nothyng at all. For suche waters (as he sayethe)

beyng

being warme and fatty, do nourish a greate deale more then those that be colde, & do runne swiftly. Notwithstanding in Somer season when the weather is whot, such colde waters may be very well suffered, and specyally if the horse be vsed therunto, whose vse and custome is chiefly to be considered at all tymes, & in any case beware of sulphery waters, such as be at Stokwy in Cãbridgeshyre, and dyuerse other places of thys Realme, for manye Horses haue taken theyr bane by drynckynge of those waters. But because a horse canne not be fatte oneles he dryncke abundantlye, it is very necessarye (as Rullius sayth) somtyme to rub the inside of his mouth with salte deipt in wine, and that shall make hym both to drincke, & also to eate with the more gredy appetyte. For thoughe a Horse (as Aristotle sayeth) delyghteth muche to dryncke, yet he is able to abstaine from drincke fower dayes. Petrus Crescentius wolde haue a horse when he should drincke, as well in the Morning, as in the Euening, to be led faire and softly to the water, and not too bee galloped, eyther to or fro, as the shrewed boyes and lackeys (so well in France as els wher moste commonlye vse to do) for feare of hurtynge his wynde. Notwithstanding daylye after water it is good moderately to chase hym vp and downe, or otherwyse to stur hym in the stable to warme the water in hys bellye. Moreouer the same Author wold haue a horse to stand somtyme in the water vp to the knees, the space of .ii. or iii. houres together, whether the water be fresh or salt. For the freshe water sayth he, with her coldnes, and also the salt with his drynesse, doth let the humors from dyscending into the Horses legges, and so preserue him

from many greues. But yf the horse be leane and in po uertie, let not the water come to his bellie, for yf the wa ter ouermuche coole his belly, he shall not feele that his meate doth him any good. But it is good for fat horses, to stand oftentymes vp to the harde bellye, for it will a bate their fat, and kepe them sound & in a meane estate. Moreouer the saine Petrus Crescentius woulde not haue a horse brought agayne into the stable, after he hathe droncke, vntill his legges be throughlye wyped and well dryed, affirmynge that the vapors of the sta ble in moyst legges do engendre the cratches, wyndgal les, and such euyll sorances. Some Authors agayne, as Vegetius, and Camerarius, & Zenophon, would haue a horse to wette his foote as lytle as is possyble, for feare of softenynge his houes, vnles it be to ease some gryefe he hath in his legges, whereof wee shall speake hereaf ter. Moreouer Camerarius thinketh it a greate deale better for horses to be watered abroade thē in the stable vnles some greate necessitie do otherwyse requyre, and then he exhorteth the keper to be carefull, that the wa ter which he offreth vnto his horse, be swete and pure, without any motes or strawes, and when so euer his horse hath laboured, and is whotte, he would not haue him to drincke, vntill he hath stalyd, and be throughely dryed of his sweat. Nowe as touchyng the washyng of horses, moste Authors do allowe it in somer season, wis shynge fatte and lustie horses sometimes to bee ridden or dryuen into some runnynge streame, euen ouer the back, which in the whotte dayes is maruaylous good to re freshe thē, so that they wer not traucled, nor sweat not before, for that were very daungerous, and specially yf

they

they should take colde vpon it: but in winter season, horses would be washed very seldome, but neuer after labour, vnles it be with a lytle wyne or beare boiled with butter, or els with warme dishewater, to supple theyre legges, and to comfort the synewes of the same. Yet it is a common thynge here amongest vs in Englande, to washe our horses after labor in winter season, yf they be very foule: and especiallye yf we chaunce vppon a pytte mete for the purpose at oure iourneyes ende, not regardyng whether our horses sweat or not, which vse marreth many a good geldyng, and maketh them laine and styffe in short space.

¶ Of the dyuerse kyndes of mouyng and rest, belongyng to a horse, wherein is declared howe, where, and when a horse should be corried, kempt, and trimmed: also howe his keper should approche vnto him, and whether it be good to curtall horses or not. Cap. xvii.

OF mouyng belongynge to a horse, there be three kyndes, that is corryenge, exercyse, & labour. And fyrst as touching the currying of a horse, yf it were meete and requisyte to be so curious, I could make as manye differencis thereof, as the Phisytions doo of froction, and rubbyng belongyng to a mans bodie, which in all be vi. that is to saye, harde to bynde the flesh and muscles, soft to loosen, muche to extenuate, meane to encrease, rough or sharpe, to drawe humors to the outward partes, and tentle or soft to retayne the same in the members. But forasmuch as horses for y most parte take more hurt by the lack then by the superfluitie of corrienge, I will bidde

make iii. differences, that is harde, meane and soft, and that also accordynge to the places of the horses bodye. For where as it is thickest of skynne, heare and flesche, there I woulde haue him to be hardest corried, as hys necke and buttockes. But his backe and sydes, flancks, bellie, & thighes with a moderate hand. And as for the rydge of his back, it would neuer be touched with cõbe, but onely with the hande, and the bare parte of his bellye nexte vnto his coddes would be corried maruelouslie, softly, or rather not at all, but onely rubbed faire and softlye with a wyspe or clothe. Moreouer some horses are thicker cooted then others, and therefore shykke of combes are necessarie, whose teethe woulde be fyled of purpose, sharpe or blunte, deepe or shallowe, not onelye to serue diuerse coates, but also the diuerse partes of the bodye before rehearsed. But to thintent the keper maye be ignorant in nothing, it shall not greeue me here to rehearse, bothe the tyme and order of corrienge of a horse, prescribed by Zenophon an auncient writer, and a noble Jentleman, in his booke de re equestri, and also by Camerarius his interpretor, and a later writer of the same matter. A horse then saithe Camerarius, would be curryed and haue hys mayne and tayle compte wyth a wette combe, bothe euerynge and mornyng before he be watered, and that not in the stable, but without, in some dyke inner court paued with rounde stone, entrey, or porch meete for that purpose, and specially in fayre wether when it rayneth not, so shal the keper see better to fryinne him, and to rydde him of all fylthe. And in olde tyme when a horse was broughte forthe to be corried, he was not bridled with ante byt, but onelie had

a head

a headde strayne put on his head, whiche dyd restrayne him from byting without hinderyng his breath, wherby he was tyed to a ryngе fastned in some wall or poste of purpose, eyther shorte or long, accordyng as his good or shewed demaner required. And to thintente the keper maye haue the more suer accesse to any horse that he dresseth. Zenophon doth councell him neuer to come behynde him, nor yet before him, but alwayes on his syde, and to stande close vnto him, so shall he be cleane oute of daunger: & when he cometh to corrye him, he woulde haue him to begin fyrst with his vpper partes, as with his necke, and then with his Sydes, Bellye, Buttockes, and thyghes orderlye, because it were in vayne, (saithe he) to make cleane the neather parts, the vpper partes beyng still foule, for so the nether partes must be twyse dressyd. But he maye not once touche the rydge of his backe with any combe, but with his hand or clothe, strokyng him alongst the heare fayre & softely, and then to brushe out all the duste of his coate with a clothe of roughe canuasse or heare, as they commonlye do vse at this presente, in stead whereof they vsed in olde tyme a lytle shorte swoord, made of a thyn lathe, wherwith they beate the dust out of his coate. Some agayne had rubbers for that purpose, made of the barcke of date trees, wherwith they made their coates so slyke, as they did shyne. But his head beyng bonie, maye not be touched with any combe, but onely washed with faire water, or els rubbed with a drye clothe: Neyther would the bare part of his bellye be kempte. His legges also from the knees downewarde woulde not be kempte, but rubbed with a clothe or wysye of drye strawe. Neyther woulde

Xenophō haue a horses legges or thighes to be washed, as som vse to do, for feare of softenyng his houes, but as for his mayne, foretop & taile, he would haue them to be often kempte with a wette combe, and that shall make them growe, whiche is verie necessarie, for thoughe his foretoppe be longe, yet it can neuer hinder his syght, yea rather it defendeth his eyes from all noysome thynges: it is also requisyte that his mayne be of a reasonable lengthe, for beysdes the comelynes or bewty thereof to the shewe, it is also a good helpe to the ryder, when soeuer he will take his backe. And as for his tayle, the lenger it be, he shal the better defende himselfe therewith in somer season from the flyes. And therefore Camerarius doth not a litle maruaile at those which vse to curtall their horses, and to sheare their mayne vpon euerie light occasion, as perhappes, because the heare falleth awaye, or that they be swynge tayled, and seeke not rather to remedie suche faultes otherwyse, and to preserue thereby the naturall bewtie of the horse, without the whiche he is not onelye foule to the eye, but also infamous. And though some holde opinion, that suche curtallyng maketh the horses backe the stronger, without alleadgynge any great reason why, yet suche strengthe dothe not counteruayle the greate deformitie and infamye, whiche to auoyde, the Italians will fynde the meanes, yf they happe vpon a curtall, to deck him with a fayned tayle of horseheare, and that so connynglie as it can not bee seene. Yet here and in Fraunce it is no shame at all to ryde vppon a curtall, so muche hathe custome preuayled agaynste nature. There be some keepers also that delight muche to wynde vp their horses fore-

toppes

toppes in a lace of diuerse colours, whiche Cameratius doth not allowe, affirmynge it to be rather a deformitie, then anie bewty to the horse. And yf they do it to thintent the horse shoulde see the better, they be reproued by Senophon, whiche sayeth as you haue heard before, that the foretoppe dothe not trouble the horses syghte at all. Notwithstanding it is a comely thyng to kepe bothe that and his mayne at a reasonable length, by pullyng it from tyme to tyme, as neede shall require. And to make it lye smothe and euen: It is very necessarie to kembe it with a wette combe, yea and perhappes sometyme also to brayde it. But a cleanly horsekeper also must not be withoute his sheares, aswell to sheare away the heare of his necke behynde his eares, where the hedstall should lye, about the breadth of .iii. fyngers onely, and no more, without diminishynge any parte of his foretoppe, (for that were vnsemely) as also to sheare the insyde of his eares in somer season, for in winter, some thincke it were better to lette the heare growe to defende the colde from entrynge into his headde: Thus muche of the corryinge and trymmyng of a horse, wherwith Columella sayeth he is muche delighted, and it dothe him as muche good as his meate, whiche thyng the Italians and Spanyardes do verie wel consyder, for their horsekepers do neuer lye frō their horses heles, neyther must they be absent an halfe houre in a day, but must be alwayes at hande, readie to wype awaye euery mote that falleth, whereby their horses coates are kept so cleane, as yf you rubbe on them with a veluet coate, no dust will cleane thereunto. But nowe lette vs speake sumwhat of the exercyse, labor, and rest, of a horse.

Of

¶ Of exercyse bothe moderate and vnmoderate, and of the effectes thereof. Cap. xviii.

AS exercyse rightlye vsed doth greatlye preserue the healthe of the horse by increasing his naturall heate, which strengthneth his instrumentall members, and maketh them the more able, bothe to drawe, and also to disgeste that nutrimente, wherewith the horse is fedde and nourished: euen so yf it be peruerslye vsed, it maye greatlie decaye his healthe. That exercise may be rightlie applied, two thinges are nedefull to be consydered, that is, tyme and measure. For sythe that moderate exercyse (as I sayde before) helpeth disgestion, it is onelye to be vsed in the morning or euenynge, when the horse is emptie. For yf he be exercysed vpon a full stomacke, it will cause him to disgest his meate soner then nature requireth, which is a rawe disgestion, and neuer bredeth good bloud, but fylleth the bodie full of humors. Measure also is muche to be regarded in exercise, for otherwyse it may quicklie growe to an extreme labour, and therefore exercise woulde be continued no lenger, then vntill suche tyme as the horse beginneth to sweat. For yf he sweate vntill he droppe, it is a sygne of extenuation, and therfore it is good to leaue of somwhat before so shall it not weaken him, but doe him muche good, and strengthen all the partes of his bodie, after whiche exercyse, see that he be well walkyd, rubbed and trymmed, and that he drincke not, vntill he bee throughelye colde. Thus muche of moderate exercyse, which the ofter it be vsed, the more healthfull, and the stronger shal the horse be. But labour and trauell is of an other qua-

litie,

litie, decayeng rather then encreasyng a horses strēgth, as when a horse is tourneyed, or sarueth in the felde, or runneth at the ryng, tylte, and tourneye. Yea, and when he is fyrste broken or schooled, it is a great labor vnto him, and no exercyse at all. Notwithstandyng, yf tyme and measure be obserued in these labors or trauels, the horse shal continew the lenger, and I see no cause why, but that they ought and may be very well obserued, in all kynde of trauell, vnles it be when the horse sarueth in the felde, for there neyther tyme, nor measure certayn can bee appoynted, yea, there it sufficeth that they bee well meated, whiche manie tymes is not to be had, albeit an olde beaten souldiour will fauour his horse, and shyfte better for him, and make him to continew in courage, a great deale lenger then the negligent and careles yonge souldiours moste commonlye doe, whiche for the moste parte, take so muche of their horses when no neade is, as when neade in deede requireth, their horses are able to do nothyng. And yet these, whyleſt they serue in the felde, seme to bee more excusable, then those that beyng quiet at home, when they runne at the ring for their pleasure, will not lette, euen in the verie heate of the daye, to gyue their horses. viii. or. ix. courses, one after an other, whereas foure or fyue were sufficient for one daye, & those also would be gyuen with some pause betwixt, and that verie early in the mornyng, when the horses be emptie, or in some other cold tyme of the day, so shall their healthe and breathe be best preserued, and their mouthes not distempered: Lykewyse the ryder when he breaketh a yonge horse, muste haue an especial regarde to tyme and measure, and throughlie consyder

the disposition, qualitie, & strengthe of the colte, to thintent he trauell him not aboue his force. But to vse tyme and measure in this case, requireth not only a good discretion, but also a maruaylous pacience, for lacke whereof manie ryders, whylest they seeke to teache their horses muche at once, they make them so dull, heauye, and sayntie harted, as they learne nothyng at all, yea and manie tymes by ouermuche rashenes they make them also starke lame and crooked. Wherefore I wyshe that all ryders lackyng pacience, had that pacience which I know to be in my verie good frende M. Ashley, Master of the Jewell house, which his pacience, yf it had not ben verie greate in deede, he could neuer haue brought some of his horses to that perfection, whereunto they now are come. Thus farre of suche labours and trauels, as most commonlie do seme to be but moderate exercyses, and yet in deede, as I sayde before, bee no les labours then tourneyng is, whereof I purpose now to speake.

¶ Howe a horse shoulde be prepared agaynst he be tourneyed, and howe to make him to receyue the brydle, and also howe the keper shoulde leade him when he dothe bryng him forthe, and fynallie howe he shoulde be vsed and dyeted whilest he is tourneyed. Cap. xix.

But fyrst it is mete that I declare vnto you, the preceptes gyuen by Zenophon, Camerarius, and Laurentius Rullius, and dyuerse other authors, touchyng the preparyng of the horse, that is to be tourneyed. Fyrste then see that he be well shodde, that is to saye, with shooes that be neyther to short nor to long, but meete

mete and aunswerable to his houes. And as Ruſſius ſayth, the lyghter and straighter the ſhooes be, the better, for the lyghter they be, the eaſelyer ſhall the Horſe lyft vp hys feete: and the narrower that they be in compaſſe, the greater and stronger will hys houes be, ſo that they be not ouer straight, for then they wyll pynch hys fete, and cauſe hym to trauell with payne. But as touching ſhooes, and the order of ſhooyng, we ſhall ſpeake thereof at large in the end of the Ferrers office, whereas you ſhal ſee the ſhapes of all maner of ſhoes, ſet forth in fygures. Your horſe then beyng well ſhodde, ſee that hys ſaddle be meete to his backe, that is to ſay, neyther to wyde, nor to straygght, for if it be to wyde, it will ſhog vppe and downe, and ſo hurt his backe, neyther can the ryder haue any ſteady ſeate therein. Agayne, if it be to straight, it will preſſe his backe and gall hym, wherefore ſee that the pannell be well ſtuffed, and that the ſaddle ſtand ſteadely on his backe, hauing no occaſion to greue him, nor to gall hym anye maner of waye, and in Sommer ſeaſon let his ſaddle be ſo light as may be, for a heauye ſaddle by keping his backe to whot, may cauſe diſſoluſion of humors, aſwell in hys wythers, as in other partes of hys backe, wherof may ſpring diuers great ſorances, to the vtter vndoing of the horſe. Moreouer ſee that the guirtes be ſure & ſtrong, and that the buckles & thonges thereof be whole and ſound, and alſo the thonges whole & faſt nayled, wherunto they ſhould be buckled. And when you guird your horſe, guird him forward and not backwarde towardes the flancke, for that wyll make hys belly and ſydes to ſwell, and greue the horſe in hys guttes, by meanes that the wynde is encloſed

in a more narrowe rome, then it was beefore, and pente in, so as it cannot eaſelie gette oute. A diligent horſekeper will alſo ſee, that the ſtyrroppes and ſtyrroppe leathers, the paytrill and crooper, with all kynde of other hatneſſe be ſtronge and ſuer, and therewith cleane and neate, and that euery horſe haue his owne brydell, wher with he is accuſtomed to be ridden, & that none of them lacke eyther kurble or kurblehooke, or any other thynge belongyng to the bytte, headſtal, or raynes. And when the horſekeper commeth to brydle anie horſe, Zenophon woulde haue him to obſerue this order. Fyrſte that he come on the leaft ſyde of the horſe, holdyng the headſtal togyther with the raynes in his leafte hande, and after that he hath put the raynes of the brydle ouer the horſes head, with his right hande, euen vp to the poyntes of his ſhoulders or wythers, then lette hym ſhyfte the headſtall into his righte hande, and put the bytte into his mouthe, with the lefte hande, whiche yf the horſe will not readelye take, lette him not force his mouthe with the bytte, by rubbynge his gomes therewith (as ſome doe) for that will make hym to abhorre the bytte ſo muche the more: but rather that he cauſe him to open his mouthe, by thruſtynge in his thumbe into the hinder parte of his mouthe, and yf that wyll not ſarue, then with his thumbe let him preſſe doume his neather lyppe vppon the neather toſche, and that for the moſte parte will make anye horſe to open his mouthe. And ſee that the bytte, by ſtanding to highe in his mouth, preſſe not his wyckes. (For that will breede corne fleaſh, and make him harde mouthed.) Nor agayne by hangyng to lowe, gyue the horſe liberty, to take it betwixt his teeth

at

at his pleasure, and so not suffer to be ruled, but as he lyste hymselfe. Zenophon and all other auncient wryters, do vtterlie reiecte that horse as vnprofitable, that will not suffer to be easely brideled, and therfore do counsell euerie man, when he byeth a horse redie broken, to proue fyrste, whyther he wilbe easely brydeled or not, otherwyse not to bye him. And to thintent that a horse maye willynglie receyue the brydell, they wryte that it is verie good to vse to bridle hym, a lytle before you geue him his prouender, and then to pull it of agayn, so shall he not refuse it, when you woulde putte it on to labour him. The horse then beyng thus made readie, lette hym stande with his tayle turned towardes the maunger, and champe on the brydle beyng fast tyed with the two cordes, vnto the two postes (as is afore sayde,) vntyll his ryder or master be ready to take his backe. So shall he not stryue to pull anye heye out of the racke, nor to rubbe agaynst anie thyng, or to foyle his sadle or harnesse. And when you bryngе him forth, Zenophō would not haue you to leade him behynde you, at the lengthe of this raynes ende, for that will gyue him to muche lybertie to playe his vagarie, but rather to take him, eyther by the syde of his headstall, a lytle aboue the portsmouthe, or els to holde bothe the raynes fast togyther, harde to the cheekes of the brydle, keppnge your selfe alwayes close to ỹ horse side, so shal he be able to hurt you no maner of waye, nor any other horse that standeth by, but that you maye guyde him as you will your selfe, by kepyng close to hym, and goyng round about with him. And whē his ryder or master cometh to take his backe, let him come vnto him quietlye, and after a gentle sorte,

and not rashly, to the intente the horse maye the more willingly receyue him, and when he mounteth, let hym take the raynes in his left hand, holding them so slacke as that neyther in hys goyng vp, nor when he is vp, he straine or pynch the horses mouth wyth the bytte. Zenophon wold haue a soldiour to vse sometyme to take hys horses backe on the ryght syde, to the intent he be redy on euery syde, when nede shall require, then being mounted, let him not sturre hys horse, but settle him selfe and his clothes about him, and make his raynes iust and euen, that done, he may geue him a turne or two on eche hand, and so prosede faire and softly on his iourney, and specially at his fyrst setting forth, vntil his horse be thoroughly breathed, and then he mai cause him to amend his pace without daunger, but so it be neither to swift, nor to slowe, but in a meane, to thintent he may contynew in the same, which is muche better for the horse to do, then sometyme to go swiftly, somtime slowly, sometime to runne or galloppe, and sometyme to stand styll, by meanes wherof, more horses are surfeited and cleane destroyed here in Englande (I beleue) then in anye other contrey. Agayne our men will not stycke to ryde xl. l. lx. myles in a day, wherewith it is vnpossible for any horse or geldynge to continewe anye longe tyme. But the discrete Italyons, thynche it sufficient to ryde xxb. or xxx. myles in a daye at the moste, and that they doe moste commonlye without takynge anye bayte, neyther dooe they wyllynglye labour theyr Horses in the greate heate of Sommer, nor yet in the extreame colde of Wynter, whiche Rusticus also forbydeth, rendryng the cause why in thys sorte. A Horse (sayth he) wolde not

be sore

be sore laboured, from the myddest of Julye, vnto the end of August, because that ouermuch heate and labor wyll inwardely drye vp his moisture, and waste his bodye anon. And therefore in such tyme, the horse (as he sayeth) wolde rather be kept in colde or moyste places, and be fedde with grasse, or els with sweete newe hay, then to be laboured. Againe a horse wolde not be laboured in the hart of winter, as in December, or January, for feare of takinge colde after sweate, whiche then is soone done. Moreouer the same Rusticus saieth, that ryding late in the euening, doth hurt a horse very muche, because that not onelye throughe great labour he maye sweate so muche, as he can not be drie in a conuenient time, and so as he may be safelye watered, and haue his prouender geuen him in due season, but also surfeite of colde, by meanes of the colde aire of the nyght immediatelye folowinge vppon his sweate. For the aire of the night, is farre colder then the aire of the day. And therfore for all respectes, he doth allowe the morning to be the best time of the day to trauel in. And whilest I talke hereof traueiling by the way, I think it good to tel you of a very good custom which the Italions vse, and that is this. Betwixte whiles, when they come to anye faire softe grene plotte by the highe waye side, they prouoke their horses with their voices, and whistling to stale, & otherwise to ease thē selues, which is a great refreshing to the horse, and the cause whi thei chose out such a soft & grassy plot, is to thintent that the horses stale shulde not sprinckle vppe vpon his legges & scald of the heere, which is very hurtfull to the horse, and yet lyttle regarded of manye of oure Contreymen, whiche doe vtterlye omit to prouoke their horses to stale in any suche place.

Yea manye tymes they will scante stande still, or suffer their horses to stale, when they woulde doo it of their owne accorde. It is a great refreshyng also to a horse in somer season, when you passe by some water, meete for the purpose, to be rydden in almost vp to the bellye, and so out agayne, and when soeuer you let him drinke by the way, washe his mouthe well fyrste, and lette him stande in the water aboue the knees at the leste, for to stande sholde or shallow, and speciallie (yf he be whotte) is the nerte waye to foundre him, and when you come at your Inne, yf your horse be anye thynge whotte, see that you geue him neyther meate nor dryncke, vntyll he be well cooled, whiche Rusticus would haue to be done, by walkyng him vppe and downe, fayre and softlie, duryng whiche tyme, he woulde also haue him to be couered with some warme clothe, for takyng of colde. Notwithstanding, the Frenchemen do seldome vse to walke their horses, and speciallie in the colde ayre, but rather do sette them vp by and by in the stable without meat, couerynge them with some warme blancket or couerlet, and seeke to coole them by continuall rubbyng, & trymmynge of them, wherein the hostelers of Fraunce be verie painefull and diligent, and will do more for a French penie, then one of oure menne will doo for an Englyshe grote, and in somer season, they will cleane take of hys sadle, and couer him onely with a litle freshe strawe, castyng a light blanket ouer the same, guyrte with a surcingle, whiche dothe refreshe the Horse marueloushye, and though in winter season, it be not good to take the saddle cleane away, for anye longe tyme: Yet it is verye good to take it away whyleste his back be rubbed with

freshe

fresh strawe alongst the heare, and to strowe a litle therof vpon his back, and then immediatly to set the saddle on agayne. For the fresh strawe shal both drye his back, and also the pannell of the saddle. I shal not nede here to put your Horskeper in remembraunce, to see that euery thyng about the horse be made cleane orderly, whilst he is a dressynge, syth euery hosteler can doo that without any teachyng: but onely to charge hym that he giue hym neyther water nor prouender, before he be thorowlye drye, but onely a lyttell sweete haye to refresshe his mouthe. For as Rusticus sayeth, by meanes of labour, the naturall heate of the horse is dispersed into the outwarde partes of his bodye, and so he is but weake and feeble within, and not able duelye to digeste the meate which shuld then be gyuen hym, and not beyng perfectlye digested, it breedeth opplations, or stoppynges, and fylleth the horse full of corrupte humours. And if your horse be any thing faint, it is very good (as some write) to gyue hym a soppe or two of bread in wyne. Vegetius prayseth wyne and oyle to be gyuen hym cold in somer, and luke warme in wynter. Also his mouth and tonge to be washed with water & salte. Or let not accordyng to our countrey vse, to gyue him a pinte of good Malmsey, and that shall comforte his hearte, and all his bytall sprightes, in suche sorte as I haue knowen a Gueldynge to be ridden .iiii. score myles in one day for a wager, withoute any other bayte. And to saye the trueth, a great bayte in the day tyme is not good, and specially when he must be labored vpon it. Wherfore I woulde wysshe hym to haue but a lytle prouender at noone, and a great deale at nyghte, to thintent he maye sleepe well

vpon it, whiche sleepe is the mother of disgestion, neyther is it good to gyue him any thyng in the morynyng, when he shulde trauell, as some men vse to do. For the more empty thathe be in the morning, the better he shal labor. But in any case, let him be thoroughly corryed first, and well drest. And at euerye bayte, let your horsekeper haue a speciall regarde to your horses backes, that their saddle pinch them not, and to their feete, that they lack no shoes nor nayles. And see that he empty their houes and searche them well for feare of grauelynge, taynte, or hurte, with stone or otherwyse. And in Somer season when the wayes be harde, it shall be good euery nyght after he hath clensed their houes, to cramme them ful of Cow dunge, for that wyl both aswage the paine of surbatynge, and also make their houes toughe. Hytherto, of exercyse, labor, and trauell: nowe let vs speake somewhat of reste, whiche as it is verye necessarye somtyme to restore a weryed or a tyred horse to his strengthe, or whylste a horse is scoured with grasse, or fynallye in any other tyme when eyther sickenes, or any other occasion shall requyre rest: euen so when a horse is in good lust & health, there is nothyng more pernycious and hurtfull to his healthy then rest. And therfore as I sayd before, the healthe of a horse is onely preserued by good dyet & moderate exercyse. Which things beyng wel obserued, he shall seldome or neuer haue nede of the Ferrers helpe.

¶ Of the sleepe and watche of a Horse, and how he shulde be lyttered. Cap. xx.

Sleepe

Sleepe is so necessarye a thynge, to euerye beaste that hath feelynge and mouynge, as it can not lyue without it. For sleepe causeth disgestion, and therby norysheth the bodye. And whilste the beaste sleepeth, the powers animal do take their rest, without the which, thei should be soone weryed, and were not able to do their office, and to contynue their actions and operacions, whiche, (as I sayde before) is to gyue feelynge and mouynge to the beaste. And whylste they reste, the powers naturall haue the more lybertie to do their office, in disgestinge the meate and nourysshynge the bodye. So that sleepe maye be well defyned to be the rest or quyetynge of the senses, appointed by nature for the restoring of strengthe Slepe according to the Philosophers is not engendred of sharpe or subtyll vapours (for those do rather hinder sleepe then further it.) But of sweete, fattye, and grosse vapours, eleuated from the hart to the brain, with the coldnes of whiche braine, those vapours beyng congealed and thickened together, do stoppe the pypes of the sensatyue spyrytghtes, so as they can not resorte to the instrumentes of the senses, to gyue feelynge or mouyng to the body, and so the body for that time is depriued of sense, and mouynge. And accordynge as those vapours, do more or lesse fyl the pypes: so is the sleepe of the beast more or lesse sownde or sure. But as touchyng the sleepe of man, many thynges are to be considered, as the tyme, the quantytie, the order of lyeng in his bed, and his dreames. Wherof fewe or none are nedeful to be considered in a horse, because the beaste is a better obseruer of natures lawes then man, and wyl neyther sleepe more nor

lesse, nor at any other tyme, then nature dothe requyre, vnlesse he be sycke. And as for the order of his lienge, Aristotle saieth, that a horse sleepeth as muche standynge as lyenge. Notwithstandynge as that horse whiche seldome or neuer lyeth, is not without some griefe, eyther in his backe, or body: & therfore is afrayde to lye downe lest he shulde not be able to ryse agayne. Euen so, that horse which coueiteth to lie down oftner then he shuld, semeth not to haue verye stronge legges. But sythe all horses for the moste parte, do lye some part of the night to take their reste, the keapers office is to lytter them well at nyght, so as they maye stande vp to the belye in freshe strawe: and specially in winter season. For accordynge to Petrus Crescentius, the warmer & softer they lye, the better. And therfore the strawe woulde be well shaken with a forke, and couched vp rownde togyther of purpose. And therewith let the keaper remember to tye his horses so, as they caste not them selues in their owne collers or halters, in their lyenge downe or rising vppe. Thus muche of the horses sleepe, for of his watchinge I shal not nede to speake, sithe sleepe and watch be two contrary passions, occupied both about one subiecte. And therfore no beaste can alwayes sleepe nor alwaies watche, but do sometyme the one, and sometime the other. Neither nede I here to speake of the horses dreames. For though he dreameth somtime in dede (as Aristotle and Plinie writeth,) yet what auayleth it, vnlesse he could also speake, and declare them as man can, wherby many times is knowē what humours in mans body doth chiefely raigne. Wherefore I wyll ende this Chapiter and go to the nexte, wherin we shall talke of thynges that be of more importaunce.

Of

¶ Of repletion and emptynesse, and of the dyuers kyndes therof. Cap. xxi.

HIpocrates saieth that Phisicke consisteth onely in addyng to, and takyng fro. Wherefore some thinke that all the whole Arte of Phisicke maye be well referred to repletion and emptynes. Of repletion there be two kyndes, whereof the one is with humoures, the other with excesse of meate, whiche oppresseth the spryghtes and causeth sickenesse. Agayne, that with humours is in two sortes: for if the body be full of humours equallye encreased togyther, then it is termed of the Phisicyons Plethora, that is to say, abundaunce of humours. But if the body be full of Coler, Melancholy, fleame, or waterysshe humours, then it is called Cachochymia, that is to saye, euyll ioyce or nutrymente gathered togyther in the conduites of the body, for lacke of good disgestion Agayne, there is repletion in quantytie and qualytie: in quantytie, is when the bodye is to full of bloud, or any other humour. Repletion in qualytie is when any such humour is to whot, or to colde, to grosse, or to thinne, and suche lyke. But as all diseases that spryng of repletion muste be healed by euacuation or emptynes: euen so all diseases that come of emptynesse belongynge to mans body, must be cured by repletion. There be diuers wayes, as by lettynge bloud, by purgation, by bryne, by vompt, by fryction, scarysication and borynge, by sweatynge, bathynge, exercyse, fastynge, bledynge at the nose, and diuerse other waies not nedeful here to be rehersed, and specyally syth myne intent in this chapter, is onely

to shewe howe and when a horse oughte to be scoured, eyther by lettynge hym bloud, or with grasse, or by purgation for the preseruation of his healthy, and for curing his diseases, and also what kynde of meat wyll fat him soonest, leauynge to speake of all other kynde of euacuation belongyng vnto a horse, vntyl I come to the particuler cures of his diseases.

Howe and when a horse shoulde be let bloud, and to what ende: and by what sygnes a man may knowe whyther it is requisyte to let him bloud or not. Cap. xxii.

THE oppynyons of the Authors, touchinge the lettynge of a horse bloud, are dyuerse. For some, as Petrus Crescentius, Laurentius Russius, and other do thyncke it necessarye for the preseruation of his healthy, to let hym bloud. iiii. tymes in a yeare, that is to saye, in the spryngе, in somer, in Autumne, and in winter. Maurus agayne to saue hym from dyuers infyrmyties, thinketh it good to let hym bloude three tymes in the yeare. Fyrste, in the begynnynge of Maye, because the bloude beginneth then to encrease. Secondly in the beginning of Septembre, to the intent that the bloud, beyng then inflamed by inequalytie, may euaporate, or breath out. Thirdly, about the middest of December, to let out the grosse and knotty bloude. Some agayne woulde haue a horse to be let bloud but once a yere, and that in May before he be sent to grasse: affirming that if he be not let bloud in the spryng, the newe bloud beyng myxte with

the

the old corrupt bloud, wyll be soone enflamed, & so perhaps cause the horse to fal into some greuous sickenesse. That it is kyndely for a horse beynge lustie and stronge, to be let bloud once a yeare, is proued by the eydente experyment dayly sene and knowē in the horses of Polonia, which of their owne natural instincte & disposition fayle not yearely to let thēselues bloud. Notwithstādynge, Vegetius saieth, that the moste auncient and discrete Authors do forbyd any horse to be let bloud before he hath greate nede, leaste sneche customable lettynge of bloud, beynge at any tyme omitted, myght breede some sickenesse in the horses bodye. Besydes that, often lettynge of bloud, causeth debylitie in the beast, hyndereth the syght, and maketh the bloude to resorte inwardlye, whiche cloyeth the hearte and entrayles, and leaueth the outwarde partes destitute, wherby they waxe fatte grosse, and vnweldy. And therfore he doth not willyngly consent that any horse, and specially beyng very yong and healthfull, shulde be let bloud in any place, but onely in the palate of the mouthe, whiche is very necessarie (as he saieth) to be often vsed, yea, euery moneth, aswell in those that be yonge, as of a middle age: affirmynge that it greatly releaueth the head, the eies, & the braine, and prouoketh appetite to meate. Yea, and he doth not mislyke, that all horses of a middle age, shoulde bee lette bloude in the necke vayne, whensoeuer they be sente to pasture, vnlesse they be stallions, or gueldinges: for then saieth he, they haue no nede therof. The stallyons bycause they shall spende their bloud fast ynoughe in couerynge of mares. For one ounce of seade, dothe counteruayle many ounces of bloud. Yet, when they ceasse to

be

be bled any lenger as stallions, Absyrtus woulde haue them euery yeare when they are put to grasse, to be let bloud. For otherwyse, they will waxe blynd, by meanes that those humours, whiche were wont to be purged, the other waye wyll nowe resorte to their eies. Againe, gueldinges woulde not be let bloude, bycause they lacke their stones: wherby the natural heate is much decaied Notwithstanding, experience teacheth vs here in Englande, that to let our gueldinges bloud once a yere doth them muche good, and specially if thei be raneke & lusty, bycause they haue as I take it, more abūdance of bloud by reason of the coldnes of the countrey, then those that be bredde in a whotter clymate. And therfore in lettyng any horse bloud, the Region is alwayes to be consyderyd, and therwith the tyme of the yeare, of the day, and of the moone: and also the age, strength, and custome of the horse. The best tyme of the yeare, to let bloud in, according to the best writers, is the spryngе, because that tyme is neyther to whotte, nor to colde, but in a meane. Besydes that the olde bloud beyng let forthe, the newe bloud then cōmynge on, (as some holde opynion) shalbe the more pure, whiche otherwyse beyng myxt with the olde bloud, would be corrupt, and breede some sickenes. The best tyme of the daye, is the morninge, so that it be not immediatly after wakynge from sleepe, but aboute an houre or two after. Agayne, Rusticus woulde haue the Ferrer when he letteth a horse bloud, to foresee that the moone be not in that signe, whiche is aunswerable to that part of the body wherin he doth let him bloud, and specially if the horse be haile, for if he be sick, & that of any sharp disease, the moon is not to be taried vpon.

The

The age, strengthe, and custome of the horse, are to bee consydered, bycause if he be ponge, and not at his full growthe, to let him bloud would hinder his growthe. Againe, if he be very olde, he had more nede to haue his bloud encreased, then diminished. And accordynge as the horse is weake or strong of nature, and haue ben accustomed heretofore, so ought he to be let bloud more or lesse, accordingly. For some horse may spare two or three pownde of bloude: to some agayne, the one halfe therof perhappes may be to muche. The signes to know whether a horse hath nede to be let bloud or not, accordynge to Laurentius Rullius, be these. His eyes wyll ware redde, his vaynes wyll swell more then they are wont to do. Also he shall haue suche an itche in his skyn, and in his necke, as he wyll alwaies be rubbynge and scratchinge, and the heare of his Maine will fal awaye. Also if he hathe redde inflations or bubbles on his backe, or digesteth not his meate well, it is a signe, that he hath nede to be let bloud. For sithe that many greuous sicknesses, do moste commonlye folowe after these sygnes, it is good therfore (as he sayth) to vse remedie betimes, and alwaies to withstande the begynnynge of euylles. Moreouer, Vegetius woulde haue that horse, whiche shoulde be let bloude, to be thynly dyeted a daye or two before, to thintente, his bodye maye be quiet, and not troubled with indigestion, and at the tyme of his lettynge bloud, to be placed vpon an equall grounde. And after ỹ the Ferrer hath bound his necke strayght with a corde: then, to thintente the vayne maye the more euidently appeare, Vegetius woulde haue him to wet the vaine often with a spunge dipped in warme water, and

to take heede þ he stryke not the arter whiche passeth throughe his throte in steade of the vaine, for that may put the horse in ieoperdye of his lyfe, and after that he hath stryken him in the ryght vayne, to gyue hym a lytell heye, or the greene blades of corne to chowe on. For the mouynge of his Jawes, wyll make the bloude to spynne out the faster: whiche bloude Vegetius woulde haue to be kepte and saued, as well for medicine in time to come, as at that presente, to annoynte the horses bodye therwith, beynge mingled with a lytle vinegre and oyle: and specially the place where he is let bloud. For it is endued with a certayne naturall vertue and power, to comforte the weake and feble membres of the horse, and to drie vppe euyll humours. But when the Ferrer hath taken therof sufficiently, and stopped vp the hole, the horse wolde be caried into some close warme stable, and spetially if he be tender, and delicate, and there to be well littered with freshe strawe vp to the beilye, and fed the first day eyther with the greue blades of wheate, yf it be in such tyme of the yeare as it may be gotten, or els with verye sweate and fine haye, and good prouender cleane syfted, and offer him cleare water to drincke, at any tyme that you shal perceyue that he hath thyrst, contynewing so to dyet hym if nede be, for the space of vii. or viii. dayes together. And if he be feble, it shalbe good to geue him a mashe, made of ground barley and wheat branne, and then afterward by lyttle and little, to bring him vnto his olde accustomed meates. And within ii. or iii. dayes after that the horse hath bene so let bloude in the necke, Vegetius wolde haue him to be ledde into the sunne, and there to be let bloud in the palate of hys

mouth

mouth, and then in some warme daye to be washed in the sea, or in some freshe streame, and well dried againe. Moreouer he sayeth, that it is good to rubbe and chafe all his bodye in a mornynge in the warme sonne, with oyle and wyne mingled togyther. For by suche rubbyng and chafynge, you shall bringe his body agayne to his former and naturall heate, so as it may be able to abyde aswell the iniuries of the ayer, as to be corryed: whiche thynges beynge done and paste, horses of seruyce maye be put agayne to those vses and labors, wherunto they were wonte to serue.

Howe and when a horse should be scoured with grasse or otherwyse, and also what meates wyll sooneste fatte hym. Capitulo. xviii.

RUssius sayth, that to kepe a horses bodye in good state, it is very necessary to purge him once a yeare at the least. In his tyme in Italie, and specially aboute Rome, they vsed to scoure their horses with that whiche the Latynes call Farrago, whiche in deede is the greene blades of corne, and not a mixture of diuers rype cornes myngled togyther, as the Dictionaries & diuers other Authors do enterprete it, as it shall well appeare vnto you by the wordes of Nemesian and Vegetius, and other Auncient writers. For Nemesian sayeth thus.

Pasce igitur iuuenes nouo farragine molli.
Cornipedes. &c. That is to saye, feede your horses in Springe tyme with softe forrage. And let such forrage saieth Vegetius be of wheate if it may be gotten, if not, of barly, & it wyll be the better, if such forrage be sowen

and growe nyghe vnto the Sea, for that dothe loſen the belly, and purgeth ſooner. Agayne, Ariſtotle ſayth, that if the forrage of corne be tender and not hard or bearded, it wyll make a horſes coate to waxe ſmoth and ſleeke. Moreouer, Vegetius ſayeth in another place, if your horſe be ſicke or diſeaſed in his bladder, withdraw his prouender immediatly from hym, and feede hym onely with grene graſſe or forrage. By all whiche ſentences, you maye eaſely perceyue that forrage is not a mixture of harde corne, but as I ſayde before, the ſofte or greene blades of wheate or barlye, or any other ſinguler corne. And truely I thynke, that our warriers terme of forragynge, which properly is to gette horſemeate abrode in the feilde, was fyrſte deryued of this worde Farrago. Thoughe ſome woulde haue forragynge to be a worde compounded of foris and agens, whiche in dede is a verye good Ethymologye. Notwithſtandyng, it ſheweth not the vſe and ende of forragynge ſo well as this word Farrago doth. And note that accordynge to Ruſſius to purge or ſcoure a horſe, it ſuffyſeth to gyue hym forrage or graſſe onely the ſpace of xv. dayes. For to continue anye longer tyme, is to fatte hym rather then to purge hym. And of all kynde of graſſe, the three leaued graſſe of moſte Authors is moſte prayſed. And whilſte he is ſcoured with graſſe, Ruſſius would haue hym to ſtand in the houſe, and to be couered with a warme woollen clothe. For graſſe ſaieth he, is naturally cold and moiſt and doth coole a horſe marueylouſly. Moreouer, Theomneſtus ſaieth, that if a ſicke horſe ſhould be ſcoured abroade with graſſe, it wyl make hym ſcabby, & the heat of the ſonne wyll make hym to runne mad. Notwithſtandinge

standynge Camerarius would haue a horse when he is scoured, to be put into some close medowe, well fenced with pale or rayle, so as he can not get oute, and there to feede at his owne pleasure: affyrmynge that to bee moste comfortable vnto ꝑ horse, & to do him most good. But if such a close place is not to be had, then he would haue the grasse to be mowne, & to be put in a flat basket before hym to feede on in the day tyme, for in the night season, he would haue no grasse to be giuen him, but only the fifte part of his accustomed prouender, beynge a litle poudred with salt. It is good also to set salt before hym, to lycke on once or twyse a daye, & within two or three daies after, he beginneth to fede vpon grasse, it is necessary to prouoke hym to neese, by blowing this neesyng powder into his nosethrels: take of Rosemary, of Narde, & of sage, dried & beaten into fine pouder, of eche lyke weight. Or if you will, you maye vse this receyte here folowyng, prescribed by the auncient writers.

Recipe piperis, pulegii, origani, amarici, Costi, Irias, malabatri, radicis cocci, of eche like weight. For suche neesing, doth greatly purge his heade. And in moste places now a daies, whilste horses are in scourynge, they suffer them to stand & lye in their owne dung vp to the harde bellyes, thinking ꝑto be a great norysshyng vnto them. Albeit I se no great reason that can be made for it: for sure I am, that to their houes it doth no good, & to lye moist & wet, must nedes be hurtful to their body. Wherfore if they wyll nedes haue them to lye in their dunge, I would wysh thē to folow the Turky vse, whiche as I haue learned, is to drie their dunge in the sonne euen into powder, & to lytter them with that, so shal they lye

both warm, soft, & dri. For their dung being made i powder & thick strewde vnder thē, immediatly drieth vp al ꝑ water ꝑ shal passe frō thē. It is good also, accordyng to soin, after .v. daies scouring, in a warm day to wash him in some fresh or salt streame: & beyng thorowly dried, to annoint al his body with wine & oile mingled togither, and frō thencefoorth to feede him with grasse & prouender so long as shalbe nedefull. Some againe, wyll not scoure their horses with grasse, but with thistles: whiche the Spaniardes dyd vse very muche here in England with their Jenettes: & no doubt, it scoureth much, but it norisheth not like vnto our grasse. Some againe scoure their horses with Pepons and Mellons cut into smal pieces, whiche do first purge by vrine, & afterwarde do fat. Grapes also & grene figges, do purge a horse and heale the pursyfenes. But who so lysteth to scoure his horse onely, & not to fat him, let him take ꝑ intrayles of a Tench or of a Barbel cut into smal pieces, & gyue thē to the horse to drinke in whyte wine, for that wil purge him as a medicine. Rye also, if it be sodden, so as it burst not, & thē wel dried, & giuen him in stead of prouender, wil not onely purge him, but also kil the wormes of the belly if he eat therof. But if you list to reise a horse soone that is leane, take one part of sodden beanes wel salted, & foure partes of wheat bran, mingled with the decoction of the beanes aforesayd, & giue him that somtime in the maner of a mash, & somtime as his prouender, for ꝑ doth fat a horse aboue al things. Coleworts also being a ytle sodden & mingled with wheat bran & a litle salt, doth also fat a horse very soone. Moreouer the fattie decoction of .iii. Tortewes being wel soddē, their heades, tāles,

tails, feet, & bones being reiected, both scoureth & fatteth a horse very much. The flesh also of such Tortewes beyng mingled with their prouẽder, is good for ỹ purpose There is a corne also growing here in England, called branck or buck, which will reyse a horse very soone. Notwithstanding, I would not wysshe eyther that, or any other way of such sodeyn reysyng of a horses flesh to be vsed. For such fatnes is but puft vp, & neuer continueth, as hisdayly too wel proued in such horses or gueldings as are bought at the horsecorsers handes, which moste cõmonly serue, rather falsly to pampre their horses for an outwarde shew, thẽ truely to dyet thẽ, to thintent they may make the sooner sale of thẽ, & be at no great charge in longe keeppynge them. Thus muche of scourynge and fattynge of horses.

¶ Of the affections of a horse, & how the keper ought to behaue himselfe, that there may be a mutuall loue betwixte the horse & him. Cap. xxiiii.

That there be affections, aswel in a horse as in euery other beast endued wt the soule sensatiue, I am sure no wise mã doubteth. For as god gaue to al such bestes the vse of the senses & the vertue sensatiue, to cõprehend thyngs offered vnto the senses. So did he also giue thẽ a natural instincte or desyre, called of the Latyns. Appetitus sensitiuꝰ. Wherby thei ar moued to loue or to hate, to folow or fly such thyngs as thei do cõceiue, and to reioyce, or to be sory for the presẽte or absence of the same. Wherfore al such affectes as do belong vnto the power sensatiue, thei haue cõmon with man: as these, loue, hatred, angre, ioy, sorow, feare, & such lyke. Which affectes for that thei cause many times straunge motions in the body

body are to be considered alwell of the keaper as of the ferrer. And to thintent ꝑ the horse be not oppressed wᵗ the force of any affection, specially of feare, hatred, or wrath, which be the most perillous affectes ꝑ can be in a horse (for as feare causeth the bloud & spyrytes to resorte inward, & to leaue the outward partes destitute of lyfe & feelyng: so angre againe, & wrath on the other side causeth him to be vnquiet, fierce & frettyng:) the kepers office is to procure ꝑ loue of his horse, & to delight him all maner of wayes, as wel with his voyce as doinges. For thorough the curryfh handlyng of vnskilful kepers, many horses are dryuē into such feare & desperation, as they become restife, & haue many skyttyfh toyes. Some agayne, are so deuyllyfh for lack of due correction when nede is, as no man may come nye them to dresse them. But byeause fewe keepers can correct with discresion, I would wyfshe him rather to vse no correction at all, but onely to win him by gentle meanes: as by fayre speakyng, & by often clawyng him, & feedyng him by hand, & in sōmer season, by wyppyng away flyes, motes, or any other thing that doth annoy him, so shall the horse be alwaies glad of him & reioyce in his presence, & in time, become so familiar, as he wyll play with him lyke a dog. For truely vnlesse there be a mutuall loue betwixte the keeper & the horse, the horse seldome or neuer battleth. For if the keper loue not his horse, he wyll neuer meat hym thoroughly, nor delight to dresse him, nor the horse wyl be delighted with his dressynge. And therfore, the chiefest point of a horsekeper, is to loue his horse, and to seeke to be loued agayne of him. So shall he profyte the horse, & pleasure his maister. And thus I end this boke.

FINIS.

¶TO THE IENTILMEN of Englande.

ALL HORSES FOR the most part do come vnto their decaye soner then they should do by one of these. iiii. wayes, that is to say, eyther for lacke of being well bredde, or through the rashenes of the ryder, the negligēce of the keper, or els through the vnskylfulnes of the Ferrer: And therfore hauinge heretofore sufficyently spoken in my other bookes, of Bredinge, Ridinge, and keping Horses: This boke shall onely treate of the Curyng of Horses dyseases, wherein you haue not onely the good preceptes and experiments of all the auncient wryters, but also the no lesse assured then lately approued practises of M. Martyn Ghelley of Artoys otherwise called Martyn Alman chiefe Ferrer to the Quenes maiestie, with whiche Martyn by my lorde of Leycesters meanes I haue had bothe often, and long conference, (and at my lordes earnest request the sayd Martyn hath not onely conferred with me and frankly declared his opinion and order of curing all suche diseases as he hath dealte withal, euer synce he fyrst professid this arte (which is aboue xl. yeres) but also whilest I laye with him at saincte Albons, made me daily to see his workemanship with mine eye vppon suche Horses as were continually brought vnto hym from all quarters to cure, wherin I saw him to behaue him selfe with suche Iudgement, skil, and diligence, as I can not chose but confesse him to be the most skylfull Ferrer that I know in all England, and that he is nothing inferiour in skyll, or workmanship, to his olde maister Hannybal, that famouse Ferrer, vnder whom he sarued whilest kinge Henry the. viii. of good memory lyued. And as for shoowing of great Horses I beleue he farre passeth hym, yea & al other ferrers that euer I knewe in Italie or els where. And therfore knowing him so much to

excell therein, I dyd not onely discourse with hym at the full towching the trewe order of paringe and shoeynge all maner of houes: but also caused him to make me certaine paterns of diuerse shoes, to serue diuerse houes, the shapes wherof you haue hereafter presented so nighe as maye be, together with my whole discourse briefely tolde towching the same. wherein I vsed the more diligence, because I my selfe haue sene diuerse trym Horses, hauing naturally of them selues very perfect Houes, that by meanes of vnskilfull Ferrers (not knowinge howe to pare the houe and to fashion the shoe, so as it ought to be) to fytte the foote, haue had in very shorte space as weake and euyl houes as was possible. Where as contrarywise a skilfull Ferrer by arte, and diligence, can quickely make a weake houe stronge. Whiche arte is here so playnely taught as euery playne smith if he wil applie his minde therunto, may soone learne the same to his owne prayse, and the great benefite of you Ientilmen that delyghte to keepe good Horses and to haue them well shodde, and the rather through your good instructions after that you haue once redde and wel considered this booke, for I am suer that fewe or none of the countrey smithes can reede. There resteth therfore now, nothing more, for me to say, but that as this booke is chiefely for your benefite, so it maye please you fyrste to be thankefull to my good Lord of Leycester for fyrst procuring the same, and secondly to Martyn for his knowledge vttered therein. For as for myne owne parte, beinge a poore Ientylman my selfe, do thinke my selfe bounde to gratifie al honest Ientylmen & to serue my Countrey by all suche meanes as I possibly can, without lokynge for any thanckes at all, assurynge my selfe, that howe small so euer my desarte be, you wyll accepte my good wyll in good parte.

A Table

Sr Tho. Herberts booke

Of things against nature, what and which they be. 1

The first Chapter.

HAuing hitherto sufficiently spoken, as wel of things natural, wherof the horse is compounded, as also of things not natural, wherby he is nourished, & maintained in health: and therin briefly touched al the particuler parts, and members, belonging to the office of the keper: it is nowe requisite that we speake of the things against nature, the knowledge whereof, most chiefly appertayneth to the office of the Ferrer. Things against nature be those, wherby the healthfull state of the beast his body doth decay, and such things according to the learned Philitiãs be in nũbre three. That is to say, the causes, the sickneſſe, and accidentes following sickneſſe, which accidentes are called of the Latins by the Greke name Simptomata, wherof I purpose not here to make any speciall treatye, but to mingle them together with the diseases, according as all mine Authors haue done before me.

Of causes and kindes thereof.

The second Chapter.

THe causes of sickneſſe be vnnatural affectes, or euill dispositions preceding sickneſſe, and prouoking the same, which of them selues do

not hinder the actions of the body, but by meanes of sickneſſe comming betwixt. Of cauſes, ſome be called internall, and ſome externall. Internall be thoſe that bꝛede within the body of ꝑ beaſt, as euill iuyce. External be thoſe, that chaunce outwardly to the body, as heate, colde, oꝛ the ſtinging of a Serpent, and ſuch like. In knowing the cauſe of euery diſeaſe, conſiſteth the chiefe ſkill of the Ferrer. Foꝛ vnleſſe he knoweth the cauſe of the diſeaſe, it is vnpoſſible foꝛ him to cure it well, and ſkilfully. And therfoꝛe I wiſh all Ferrers to be diligent, in ſeking to knowe the cauſes of all diſeaſes, as well in the parts ſimiler, as inſtrumentall, and to know whether ſuch cauſes be ſimple, oꝛ compound, foꝛ as they be ſimple oꝛ compound, ſo do they ingender ſimple oꝛ compound diſeaſes.

Of ſickeneſſe what it is, and howe many generall kindes there be, alſo with what oꝛder, the diſeaſes of hoꝛſes are in this booke declared. And finally, of the foure tymes, belonging to euery ſickneſſe.

The thirde Chapter.

SIckneſs is an euil affect contrary to nature, hindering of it ſelfe, ſome action of the body. Of ſickneſſe there be thꝛee generall kindes, whereof the firſt conſiſteth in the partes ſimiler. The ſeconde in the parts inſtrumentall. And the thirde in both parts together. The firſt kinde, is called of the Latens

Latens Intemperies, that is to say, euill temperature, which is eyther simple or componnde. It is simple, when one qualitye onely doth abound, or excede to much, as to be to hote, or to colde. It is compound, when manye qualityes doe exceede, as when the body is to hote and to dry, or to colde and to moyst. The seconde kinde, is called Mala constitutio, that is to say, an euill state or composition, whiche is to be considered, eyther by the shape, number, quantity, or scyte of the member, or parte euill affected and diseased. The thirde kinde, is called Vnitatis solutio, that is to say, the lousening or deuision of the vnity, which as it may chaunce diuersly, so it hath diuerse names accordingly, for if such solution, or deuision be in a bone, then it is called a fracture, if it be in any fleshy part, then it is called a wounde or vlcer, in the paynes a rupture, in the sinewes a conbulsion or crampe, & in the skinne an excoriation. Againe, of diseases some be called long, & some sharpe and shorte, called of the Latens Morbi acuti, which be perillous, and do quickly kill the body. The long doe tarry longer by it. Yet moreouer, there is sickneste by it selfe, and sickneste by consent. Sickneste by it selfe, is that which being in some member, hinderth the action thereof by it selfe. Sickneste by consent, is deriued oute of one member into an other, thorow the neighborhoode and communitye that is betwixt them: as the payne of the heade which commeth from the stomacke. Thus the learned Physytians that wryte of mannes body, doe deuyde sycknesse. But Absirtus wryting of horsleache craft, sayth

that of sickneſſe or rather malady (for so he termeth it, vsing that worde as a generall name to all maner of diseases that be in a Horse) there be foure kindes: That is to say, the moyst malady, the dry malady, the malady of the ioyntes, and the malady betwixte the flesshe and the skinne. The moyst malady is that, which we call the Glaunders. The dry maladye is an incurable consumption, which some perhappes would call the mourning of the cheyne, but not rightly, as shal wel appeare vnto you hereafter. The malady of the ioyntes, comprehendeth al griefes, and sorances that be in the ioyntes. And the malady betwixte the flesshe and skynne, is that which we call the scabbe, vnto which foure kindes of maladies, Vegetius addeth three others, that is the Farcine, the paine of the raines or kidnees, and the cankred maunginesse, most commonly called of the olde writers the Leprosy, & so maketh seuen kinds of maladyes, vnder which all other particuler diseases are comprehended. Againe, Laurentius Rusius vseth an other kinde of diuision of sickenesse. Of Horses diseases (sayth he) some bee naturall, and some accidentall. The naturall be those, that commeth eyther through the exceſſe, or lacke of ingendring seede, or by errour of nature, in misshaping the yong, or els by some defect of ỹ Dame, or Syre, in that perhaps they be diseased within, and haue their seede corrupted. The accidentall diseases be those, that come by chaunce, as by surfeyting of colde, heate, and such lyke thyng. But for so muche as none of these writers doe follow their owne deuisions

uisions, nor handle the partes thereof accordingly: to auoyde their confusion, and to teach plainely: I thought good therefore to vse this my owne deuysion and order here following. First, then of diseases, some be inwarde, and some be outwarde. The inwarde be those that breede within the horses bodye, and are properly called maladyes or diseases, whereof some doe occupy al the whole body, & some but perticuler partes, or members of the bodye. Of those then that occupy all the bodye, and be not incident to any priuate member, I doe first treate, as of Agues, of the Pestilence, and such lyke, and then of those that be incident to euery perticuler member, beginning at the heade, and so procede orderly throughout all the members, euen downe to the sole of the foote, obseruing therin as nigh as I can the selfe same order, that Galen vseth in his booke, De locis male affectis, declaring firste, what maner of disease it is, and howe it is called in Englishe, and also in Italian, because the Queenes stable is neuer without Italian Ryders, of whom our Ferrers also haue borowed many names, as you shall perceyue hereafter. Then the causes whereof it procedes, and the sygnes how to knowe it, and finally the cure and dyet belonging to the same. And bycause I finde not inwarde diseases inough to aunswere euery parte of the body, I doe not let to interlace them with outward diseases, incident to those parts, yea, rather I leaue out no outwarde disease, belonging to any perticuler member, to the intente that you may the better knowe, to what diseases or

sozances euery part oz member of the hozse his bo-dy, is most commonly subiect. And note by the way, that I call those outwarde diseases that pzoceedes not of anye inwarde cause, but of some outwarde cause, as when a hozse is shouldered by meanes of some outwarde fozce, oz his backe galled wyth the Saddle, oz his sydes spurgalled, oz his houe cloyde with a nayle, and such lyke, which pzoperly may be called sozances oz griefes. Thirdly, I talke of those diseases as well outwarde as inwarde, that maye indifferently chaunce in any part of the body, as of Impostumes, cancrous Ulcers, woundes, Fistules, burnings, bzousings, bzeaking of bones, and suche like. Fourthlye, bycause moste diseases are healed, eyther by letting of bloude, by taking vp of baynes, by purgation, oz else by cauterisation, that is to say, by giuing the fire: I talke of those foure necessary thinges seuerallye by them selues, and finallye, I shewe you the true ozder of paring and shooing all maner of Houes, accozding as the diuersitye of Ho-ues require, and to the intente you may the better vnderstande me, you haue the perfecte shapes of all necessary shooes, playnly set fozth in figures befoze your eyes. Thus much touching mine ozder obser-ued in this booke. Nowe it is necessary to knowe, that to euery disease, oz maladye, belongeth foure seuerall tymes, that is to say, the beginning, the in-creasing, the state, and declynation, whiche tymes are diligently to be obserued of the Ferrer, bycause they require diuerse applying of medicine, foz that medicine which was meete to be vsed in the begin-

ning

ning of the disease, perhappes is not to be bled, in the declination thereof. And that which is requysyte and very nedefull, to be applyed in the state, or chiefest of the disease, maye perhaps be very daungerous to be bled in the beginning. And therefore the Ferrer ought to be a man of iudgement, and able to discerne one tyme from another, to the intent that he may apply his medicines rightly. Hytherto of causes and sickness in generall. Nowe it is also meete, that we speake in generall of the signes, whereby sickness is knowen.

Of the signes, of sickness in generall.

The fourth Chapter.

Sickness according to the learned Phisitians, is knowen foure maner of wayes: First, by inseperable or substanciall accidents, as by the shape, number, quantity, and scyte of the part, or member diseased. For if it be otherwise formed, or more or lesse in number or quantity, or else otherwyse placed then it oughte to be, then it is not well. Secondly, sickness is knowen by alteration of the qualitye, as if it bee to hote, or to colde, to moyst, or to drye. Thirdely, when the action of any member, is hurt or letted, as when the eye syght is not perfect, it is a manifest sygne, that the eye is euill affected or sicke. Likewyse, when there breedeth no good blonde in the bodye, it is an euidente token, that the lyuer is not well. Fourthly, sickness

is knowne by the excrementes, that commeth from the beast, as by his dong, or stale, for if his dong be to strong of scent, ful of whole cornes, or of wormes, to harde, or to softe, or euill coloured, it is a token that he is not well in his bodye: so likewyse if his stale be to thicke, or to thinne, to whyte, or to redde, it betokeneth some surfette, raw disgestion, or else some griefe in his raynes, bladder, or stones. But Vegetius sayth that it is best knowē, whether a horse be sicke or not, or towards sickneſſe, by these signes here folowing: for if he be more slow, and heauy in his trotting, or galloping, or harder of spur, than he was wonte to be, or spreadeth his litter abrode with his feete, often tombling in the night season, fetching his breath short, and violently, loud snofling in the nose, and casting out hote vapours at his nosetrilles, or lyeth downe immediately after his prouender, or maketh long draughtes in his drinking, or in the night season is now downe, and now sodenly on foote, or if in the next morning, he be very hote in his pastornes, or betwixt his eares, or that hys eares hang more than they are wonte to doe: againe, if his eye sight be dymme, and hys eyes hollow in his heade, his haire standing right vp, and his flankes hollow and empty, whensoeuer two or three of these signes doe concurre together, then it is to be thought saith Vegetius, that the horse is not well, and therefore he woulde haue him immediatelye to be seperated from his companions, that be whole, and to be placed by hym selfe, vntill his disease be perfectly knowen and cured, and spe-

cially

cially if it be any contagious disease. I haue sene diuerse Ferrers here in Englande to vse that, for the tryall of a horses sickenesse, which I neuer read in any Authour, that is to feele his stones, whither they be hote or colde, and to smell at his nosetrils, and so by the sauour therof to iudge what sickenesse the horse hath. Truely I thinke that no euill way, if they can discerne with their sense of smelling, the diuersitie of sauours, that commeth out of his nosetrils, and then aptly apply the same to the humors, wherof such sauours be bredde, and so orderlye to seke out the originall cause of his sickenesse. But I feare me, that more Ferrers smell without iudgement, than with such iudgemente, and no marueil why, syth that few or none be learned, or haue bene brought vp with skilfull maisters. But from henceforth I trust that this my trauell, will cause suche Ferrers as can reade, and haue some vnderstanding already, to be more diligente in seking after knowledge, than they haue bene heretofore, wherby they shal be the better able to serue their coũtrey & also to profite themselues, with good fame: whereas now for lacke of knowledge they incurre muche slaunder.

Of the Feuer and diuerse kindes therof in a Horse.

The fifth Chapter.

I Thinke it will seeme verye straunge vnto some, to heare that a horse shoulde haue an Ague, or Feuer, but it was not straunge vn-

to ỹ mẽ of old time, as to Absirtus, Hierocles, Zenophon, Vegetius and such like olde Souldiers, thorowely experimented in horses griefes. A Feuer according to the learned Philitians, is a vnnatural and an immoderate heate, whiche proceding first from the hearte, spreadeth it selfe thorowout all the arteiers, and baynes of the body, and so letteth the actions thereof. Of Feuers there be three generall kindes, whereof the first is that which breedeth in the sprightes, being inflamed or heated more than their nature requireth. The second breedeth in the humors, being also distempered by heate. The thirde in the firme partes of the body, being contynuallye hote. What spryghtes, and humors bee, hath bene tolde you before in the kepers office. Of these three generall kindes do spring many other speciall kindes, as Quotidians, Tertians, Quartans, Feuers hectique, and many others, whereunto mannes bodye is subiect, wherof none of my Authours do treate, vnlesse it be Vegetius, who speaketh somewhat of a Feuer Quotidian, of a Feuer continuall, and also of a Feuer accidental. He speaketh also of Sommer, Autumne, and Winter Feuers, without making any great difference betwixt thē, more than that one is worse than an other, by reason of the tyme and season of the yeare, so that in effect all is but one Feuer. Wherefore according to Absirtus opinion, I will briefly shewe you fyrste the causes wherof it procedes, and then the signes how to knowe it, and finally how to cure the same. The Feuer chaunceth sometyme by surfeyting of

extreme

extreme labor or exercise, as of to much trauelling, and specially in hote weather, of to swifte gallopping & running, and sometyme by extreme heat of the Sunne, and also by extreme colde of the ayre, and sometyme it breedeth of crudite or rawe dygestion, which many times happeneth by ouer gredye eating of sweete greene corne, or of such prouender as was not thorowly dryed nor clensed: for after such gredy eating, and specially of such meates, neuer foloweth perfect dygestion. The signes to knowe a Feuer be these. The horse doth contynuallye holde downe his heade, and is not able to lift it vp, his eyes are blowen so as he can not easelye open them, yea and many tymes they be watering, the flesche of his lippes and of all his bodye is lushe and feble, his stones hang low, his bodye is hote, and his breath is also very hote and strong, he standeth weakely on his legges, and in his going draweth them laselye after him, yea he can not goe but very softly, and that staggeryng here and there, he will lye downe on his syde, and is not able to turne him selfe, or to wallow, he forsaketh his meate, both hay and prouender, and is desirous of nothing but of drinke, which as Absyrtus sayth is an assured token of a Feuer: he also sleepeth but little. The cure and dyet. Let him blonde in the face and temples, and also in the palat of his mouth, and the first day giue him no meat, but only warme drinke, and that by little and little. After warde giue him continually grasse, or else verye sweete hay wet in water, and let him be kepte warme, and sometyme

walke him vp and downe faire and softly, in a temperate ayre, and then let him rest, and when you see that he beginnes to amende, giue him by little at once barly faire sifted, and wel soden and also mundifyed, that is to say, the huske pulled away, lyke as when you blanch Almondes.

Of diuerse sortes of Feuers according to Vegetius, and first of that which continueth but one day.

The sixt Chapter.

The Feuer of one day, called by the Greeke name Ephimera, or else by the Laten name Diaria, chaũceth many tymes, through the rashnesse, and small discretion of the keper, or some other that letteth not to ryde a horse vnmeasurabiye, eyther before or after watering, whereby the horse afterwarde in the stable entreth into an extreme heate, and so falleth into his Feuer, which you shall know partly, by his waterish and bloudshotten eyes, and partly, by his shorte, violent, and hote breathing, and panting. Moreouer he will forsake his meate, and his legges will waxe stiffe and feble. The cure. Let him haue rest all the next daye folowing, and bee comforted with warme meate, then lette hym be walked vppe and downe fayre and softly, and so by little and little brought agayne to his former estate.

Of

Of the Feuer continuall.

The seuenth Chapter.

The Feuer contynuall is that which cõtinueth without intermission, and is called in Italion by the Laten name Febre continua, which spryngeth of some inflamatiõ, or extreme heat, bred in the principall members, or inwarde partes about the hearte, which is knowen in this sort. The horse doth not take his accustomed rest, whereby his flesh doth fall away, euery day more and more, and sometyme there doth appeare hote inflamations in his flankes, and about his wythers. The cure. Purge his heade, by squirting into his nosetrels mannes vrine, the water of an Ore that hath bene rested a certayne tyme, to the intent suche water may be the stronger, & then giue him the drinke written in the next Chapter.

Of the Feuer taken in Autumne, that is to say, at the fall of the leafe

The eyght Chapter.

If a horse chaunce to get a Feuer at the fal of the leafe, cause him immediately to be let blonde, in the necke vayne, and also in the thirde forrow of the rouke of his mouth, and then gyue him this drink. Take of Iermander, foure ounces,

of Gum dragant, & of dryed roses of ech one ounce, beate them all into fine powder, and put them into a quarte of Ale, adding there vnto of Oyle Olyue foure ounces, and of Hony as much, and giue it the horse luke warme.

Of the Feuer in Sommer season.

The nynth Chapter.

A Feuer taken in Sommer season is muche worse, than in anye other tyme, and specially if it be taken in the Dog dayes, for then the accidentes be more furious. The signes be these: his artiers will beate euidently, and he will shed his seede when he staleth, and his going will be vnorderly. The cure. Let him bloud in a vayne that he hath in his hinder haunch, about foure fingers beneth the fundamente, or if you can not finde that vayne, let him bloude in the necke vayne, towarde the wythers, and if it be nedefull you may giue him also this drinke. Take the iuyce of a handefull of Purllen mingled with Gum dragant, with ensens, and a fewe Damaske Roses, beaten all into fine powder, and then put therevnto a sufficient quantitye of Ale made sweete with Hony.

Of the Feuer in Winter.

The tenth Chapter.

FOR the Feuer in Winter, it shall be good to take the powder of the drugges last men-

mentioned, & with a quil or reede, to blow it vp into his lefte nosetrel, to make him to neese. It shall be good also, to let him bloud in the neck vayne, & in ỹ palat of the mouth, & thē to giue him one of these drinks here folowing. Take of Ireos fire ounces, of round Pepper one ounce, of Bay buries, and of the seede of Smallage, of eche one ounce, and lette him drinke them with sodden wine, or else take a pinte of good mylke, and put therein of oyle foure ounces, of saffron one scrupple, of mirre, two scrupples, of the seede of Smallage a sponefull, & make him drinke that, or make him this drinke. Take of Aristoloch, otherwyse called rounde Hartwort one ounce, of Gention, of Isop, of Wormwood, of Sothernwort, of eche one ounce, of drye fatte Figges, fire ounces, of the seede of Smallage thre ounces, of Rewe a handfull, boyle them all in a cleane vessell with riuer water, vntyll the thirde part be consumed, and when you see it loke blacke and thicke, take it from the fyre, strayne it, and giue the horse to drinke thereof luke warme. As touching his dyet, let hys water be alwayes luke warme, wherin woulde be put a little wheate meale, and remēber to giue him no meate, so long as his fytte continneth. And bycause in all Agues it is good to quicken the naturall heate of the horse, by rubbing and fretting his body, it shal not be amisse in some faire day to vse this friction, called of the auncient wryters Apoterapie, whiche is made in this sorte. Take of Damaske Roses one pounde, of olde Oyle a pynte, of strong Vineger a pynte and a halfe, of

Mints and Rewe beaten into powder, of eche one ounce and a halfe, together with one old dry Nut, beate them, and mingle them together, then being strayned and made luke warme, rubbe and chafe all the horses bodye therewith against the haire, vntill he beginneth to sweate, then sette him vp in the warmest place of the stable and couer him wel.

Of the Feuer which commeth of rawe disgestion, or of repletion.

The. xi. Chapter.

YOu shall knowe if the Feuer procedeth of any suche cause, by these signes here folowing. The horse will blowe at the nose more than he is accustomed to doe, seming to fetch his winde only at his nose, and his breath wil be short, hote, and drye, you shal see his flankes walke, and his backe to beate. The cure. Cause him to be lette bloude abundantlye in the heade, and palat of his mouth, and by squirting warme Vineger in the morning, into his nosetrelles, force him to neese, and if he be costyue, let his fundament be raked, or else giue him a glister, to ease the payne in his heade. And as touching his dyet, giue him but little prouender, or hay, neyther let him drinke much nor often, but betwixt tymes. But in any wyse let him be well rubbed and chafed, and that a good while together, and if you vse the friction declared in the last Chapter before, in such sorte as there is sayde,

it

it shall do him very much good.

Of the Feuer accidentall comming of some Ulcer in the mouth or throte

The xij. Chapter.

The horse not being well kepte and gouerned, after that he hath bene let bloud in the vpper partes, yea, and also besydes that, of his owne nature, is subiecte vnto the distillation in his throte, or partes there aboute, the paynefull swelling or Ulcer whereof, causeth the horse to fall into a greuous Ague. Wherfore besydes the former remedyes apt to purge humors, it shall be necessarye also, to let him bloude in the vayne of the head, & in the palat of his mouth, and to be shorte, in all those places where the disease causeth moste grieke. And if the horse be so sore pained, as he can not swallow downe his meate, it shall be good to giue him luke warme water, mingled with barly meale, or wheat meale, & besydes that, to make him swallowe down seuen soppes sopped in sodden wine, one after an other, at one tyme, some vse at the seconde tyme, to dyppe such soppes in swete sallet Oyle, thus farre Vegetius.

Of the pestilent Ague.

The xiij. Chapter.

It semeth by *Laurentius Russius* that Horses be also subiecte to a pestilent Feuer,

whiche is almost vncurable, called of him infirmitas Epidimialis, that is to say, a contagious and pestiferous disease, whereof there dyed in one yeare at Rome aboue a thousande Horses, whiche as I take it, came by some corruption of the ayre, whereunto Rome in the chiefe of Sommer is muche subiect, or else of corrupte humors in the bodye, ingendred of vnkinde foode, by reason perhaps, that the City was then pestered with more horsemen, than there coulde be conueniently harbored, or fedde. Laurentius him selfe rendereth no cause thereof, but only sheweth signes howe to know it, which be these. The horse holdeth downe his head, eateth little or nothing, his eyes be waterishe, and his flankes doe continually beate. The cure. First, giue him this glister. Take of the pulpe of Coloquintida one ounce, of Dragantum one ounce & a halfe, of Centuarye and Wormewood, of eche one handefull, of Castoreum halfe an ounce, boyle them in water, then being strayned, dissolue therin, of Gerologundinum sixe ounces, of Salte an ounce and a halfe, and halfe a pounde of Oyle Oliue, and minister it luke warme with a horne, or pype made of purpose. Make also this playster for his heade. Take of Squilla fiue ounces, of Elder, of Castoreū, of Mustarde seede, and of Euforbium, of eche two ounces, dissolue the same in the iuyce of Daffadill, and of Sage, and lay it to the temples of hys heade nexte vnto his eares, or else giue him any of these three drinkes here following. Take of the best Triacle two or three ounces, and distemper it in good wine,

and

and giue it him with a horne, or else let him drinke euery morning the space of three dayes, one pound or two of the iuyce of Elder rootes, or else giue him euery morning to eate, a good quantitye of Uenus haire, called of the Lattens Capillum Veneris, newely and freshe gathered, but if it be olde, then boyle it in water, & giue him the decoction therof to drinke with a horne.

Martins opinion and experience touching a horses Feuer.

The xiij. Chapter.

THough *Martin* haue not seene son any seuerall kindes of Feuers to chaunce to horses, yet he confesseth that a horse wil haue a feuer, and sayth that you shall knowe it by these signes. For after the Horse hath bene sicke two or three dayes, if you looke on his tongue, you shall see it almost rawe and scalte, with the heat that commes out of his body, and he wil shake and tremble, reele and stagger, when his fitte commeth, which it will kepe his due houres, both of coming and also of continuance, vnlesse you preuent it by putting the horse into a heate, which woulde be done so sone as you see him begin to tremble, eyther by tyding him, or by teying vp his legge, & by chafing him vp and downe in the stable, vntyll he leaue shaking, and then let him be kept warme, and stand on the litter the space of two

houres, that done, you may giue him some hay, by little at once, and giue him warme water, wyth a little ground Mault twise a day, the space of three or foure dayes, and once a day washe his tongue with Alom, Vineger, and Sage. But if you see that all this preuayles not, then purge him with this drinke, after that he hath fasted all one night. Take of Alloes one ounce, of Agaricke, halfe an ounce, of Lykoras and Annis seedes, of ech a dram, beaten to powder, and lette him drinke it with a quart of whyte wyne luke warme, and made swete with a little Honye, in the morning fasting, and let him be chafed a little after it, and be kepte warme, and suffered to stande on the bitte meateleste two or three houres after, and he shall recouer his health againe quickly.

Of the Pestilence.

The xv. Chapter.

The Pestilence is a contagious disease, proceding as Pelagonius sayth, sometyme of ouermuch labour, heate, colde, or hunger, and sometyme of sodayne running after long rest, or of the retention or holding of stale, or drine, or of drinking colde water whyleste the horse is hote & sweating, for all these things do breede corrupt humors in the Horses bodye, whereof the Pestilence doth chiefly procede, or else of the corruption of the ayre, poysoning

poysoning the breath, whereby the beastes shoulde liue, which also happeneth sometyme of the corruption of euil vapours and exhalations, that springs out of the earth, and after great flouddes, or earthquakes, and somtyme by meanes of some euill constellation, or influence of the planettes, corrupting sometyme the plants and fruites of the earth, and sometyme dyuers kinde of Cattell, and sometyme both men, women, and children, as we dayly see by experience. It seemeth that this euill or mischiefe in times past came sodenly, without giuing any warning, for none of mine Authours doth declare any sygnes howe to knowe, whether a horse hath thys disease or not but onely affirme, if that one horse do dye of it, all his felowes that beare him cõpany will followe after, if they be not remedyed in tyme: so that as far as I can learne, the soden death of one or two first, must be the onely meane to knowe, that this disease doth raygne. And the remedy that they giue is this. First seperate the whole from the sicke, yea, and haue them cleane out of the ayre of those that be deade. The bodyes whereof as Vegetius sayeth, if they be not depe buryed, wyll infecte all the rest. And let them blonde as well in the necke, as in the mouth, and then giue them this drinke. Take of Gentian, of Aristoloch, of Bay buryes, of Myrre, of the scrapings of Iuerye, of eche lyke quantitye, beate them into fyne powder, and giue as well to the sick as to the whole, whom you would preserue from this contagion, euery day a sponefull or two of this powder, in a pinte of good wyne, so long as

you shall see it nedefull. This medicine before rehersed, is called of the aunciente wryters Diapente, that is to say, a composition of fyue simples, and is praysed to be a soueraine medicine and preseruatiue against all inward diseases, and therfore they woulde haue suche as trauell by the way, to cary of this powder alwayes about with them. There be many other medicines which I leaue to wryte, bycause if I should rehearse euery mannes medicine, my booke would be infinite. I for my parte woulde vse no other than eyther that before expressed, or else Wine and Triacle onely.

Of the diseases in the heade.

The.xvi. Chapter.

The Heade is subiecte to dyuers diseases, according to the dyuers partes thereof: for in the pannicles, or little fyne skynnes, cleauyng to the bones, and couering the braine, doe most properlye breede headeache, and mygram. Againe, in the substaunce of the braine, (which in a horse is very little or none) doe breede the Frenzie, Madnesse, Sleping euill, the taking, and forgetfulnesse. Finally, in the ventricles or celles of the brayne, and in those cunduycts throughe which the spyghtes animall doe gyue feelyng, and mouyng to the bodye, doe breede the turnesicke, or staggers, the falling euill, the night mare, the Apoplexye, the Palsie, and the conbulsion or crampe, the

the Cathar̃ or Rheume, which in a horse is called the Glaunders, but firste of headeache.

Of Headeache.

The.xvij.Chapter.

The headeache eyther commeth of some inward cause, as of some cholericke humor, bred in the paniclcs of the braine, or els of some outward cause, as of extreme heate, or colde, of some blow or of some vyolent sauour. Eumelus sayth, that it cõmeth of rawe disgestion, but Martin sayth, moste commonly of colde. The sygnes be these. The horse will hang downe his heade, and also hang downe his eares, his sight wil be dimme, his eyes swollen, and waterish, and he will forsake his meate. The cure. Let him bloude in the palat of his mouth. Also pourge his heade with this perfume: Take of Garlicke stalkes a handefull, all to broken in short peces, and a good quantitye of Franconcense, and being put into a Chaufingdish of fresh coales, hold the Chaufingdishe vnder the horses nosetrilles, so as the fume may ascende vp into his heade, and in vsing him thus once or twice, it will make him to cast at the nose, and so purge his heade, of all filthe. Pelagonius sayth, ỹ it is good to poure into his nosetrilles, wyne wherein hath bene sodden Euforbium, Centuarye, and Franconcense.

Of

Of the Frenzy and Madnesse of a horse.

The xviij. Chapter.

The learned Phisitians do make dyuers kindes, as well of Frenzye, as of Madnesse, whiche are not nedefull here to be recyted, sythe I coulde neuer read in any Authour, nor learne of any Ferrer, that a horse were subiect to the one halfe of them. Absirtus, Hierocles, Eumelius, Pelagonius, & Hipocrates, doe wryte simply de furore & rabie, that is to say, of the madnesse of a horse. But in dede Vegetius in his seconde booke of horseleach crafte, semeth to make foure mad passions belonging to a horse, intituling his Chapters in this sorte, de Appioso, de Frenitico, de Cardiacis, de Rabioso, the effectes whereof thoughe I feare me it will be to no greate purpose, yet to contente suche as perhaps haue reade the Authour as wel as I my selfe: I will here briefely rehearse the same. When some naughty bloude (sayth he) doth strike the fylme or pannicle of the brayne, in one part onely, and maketh the same grieuously to ake, then the beast becommeth Appiosum, that is to saye, as it semeth by his owne wordes nexte following, both dul of minde and of syght. This worde Appiosum, is a straunge word, and not to be found againe in any other Authour, and bycause in this passion, the one syde of the heade is onely grieued, the horse turneth rounde, as thoughe he wente in a Myll. But when the poyson of suche corrupt bloude doth

infecte

infecte the mid brayne, then the horse becommeth frentike, and will leape and flyng, and runne against the walles. And if such bloud filleth the baynes of the stomacke, or breast, then it infecteth as well the heart, as the brayne, & causeth alienation of mind, & the body to sweat, and this disease is called of Vegetius, Passio cardiaca, whiche if Equus Appiosus, chaūce to haue, thē he becōmeth Rabiosus, ỹ is to say, starke madde. For (sayth he) by ouer much heate of the Lyuer, and of blonde, the baynes and artiers of the heart, are choked by, for griefe and payne wherof, the horse byteth him selfe, and gnaweth his owne flesh: thus farre Vegetius. Of two sortes of mad horses I (beleue) I haue seene my selfe here in this Realme. For I saw once a blacke Sweathlande horse (as I toke him to be) in my Lorde of Hunnisdons Stable at Hunnisdon, comming thither by chaunce with my lord Morlay, which horse would stand all day long bytyng of the Maunger, & eate little meate or none, suffring no man to approche vnto hym, by which his doynges, and partly by his colour and complexion, I iudged him to be vexed with a melancholy Madnesse, called of the Phisitians Mania, or rather Melancholia, which commeth of a corrupt Melancholy, and fylthy bloud or humor, sometyme spread throughout all the baynes of the body, & sometyme perhaps remayning only in the heade, or else in the splen, or places next therunto adioyning. The other mad horse was a Roane of Mayster Atheleys, Mayster of the Jewell house, which with his teeth crushed his Maysters ryghte

forefinger in peces, whyleſt he offered him a little hay to eat, wherby he loſt in a maner the vſe of hys whole hande, to the great griefe of all his frendes, and alſo of all the Muſes, whiche were wonte to be much delighted with ſuch paſſing ſweete Muſicke as that his fine quauering hande coulde ſometime make, vpon dyuerſe Inſtrumentes, but ſpecially vpon the Virginalles. This horſe I ſay thoughe he coulde eate his meate, drinke his drinke, & ſlepe, yet if he were neuer ſo litle offended, he would take on lyke a ſpright, and both byte and ſtryke at anye man that came nygh hym, yea and would byte him ſelfe by the ſhoulders moſte tirribly, pulling away lumpes of fleſhe, ſo brode as a mannes hande, and when ſo euer he was rydden, he was fayne to bee muſled with a muſſell of Iron, made of purpoſe to kepe him from byting, eyther his Ryder or him ſelf, whiche no doubt proceded of ſome kynde of frenzye or madneſſe, wherevnto the horſe was ſubiecte, by meanes that hote bloude (as I take it) abounded, ouer much in him. But now as touching the cauſes, ſygnes, and cure of a horſes madneſſe, you ſhall heare the opinion of olde wryters, for Martin neuer toke ſuch cure in hande. Abſirtus, and the other Authors before mētioned ſay, that the madneſſe of a horſe cōmeth eyther by meanes of ſome extreme heate, taken by trauelyng or long ſtanding in hote ſunne, or elſe by eating ouer manye Fitches, or by ſome hote bloude reſorting to the pannycles of the braine, or thorow aboundaunce of Choler, remayning in the vaynes, or elſe by drynking of ſome vn-

holſome

holsome water. The sygnes be these, he will byte the Maunger, and hys owne body, and runne vpō euery man that commes nygh hym, he wyll continuallye shake hys eares, and stare with his eyes, and some at the mouth, and also as Hypocrates sayth, he will forsake his meate, and pyne him selfe wyth hunger. The cure. Cause him to be let bloude in his legges aboundantly, which is done (as I take it) to conuert the bloude from his heade. Notwithstanding it were not amisse, to lette him bloude in the necke & breast vaynes. Then giue him this drinke. Take the roote of wylde Coucumber, and boyle it in harse redde wyne, and put therevnto a little Nitre, and giue it him with a horne luke warme, or if you can get no Coucumber, then take Rewe, and Wynts, and boyle that in the wyne. It were not amisse also, to adde therevnto a handefull of blacke Ellebozus, for that is a verye good hearbe agaynst madnesse. Eumelius sayth, that if you giue him mans dong in wyne to drinke three mornynges together, it will heale him, also take of blacke Ellebozus two or three handefull, and boile it in a sufficient quantitye of strong Vyneger, and therewith rubbe and chause both his head, and al his body once or twice in a day, for the oftner his heade is rubbed, the better, and often exercyse is verye profitable to all his body. Some againe woulde haue the skinne of his heade to be pearced in dyuerse places with a hote Iron, to let out the euill humors, but if none of all this will preuayle, then the last remedy is, to gelde him of both hys stones, or else of one at the least, for

eyther that wyll heale him, or else nothing. As touchyng the dyet and vsage of a madde horse, the Authors do not agre, for some would haue him kept in a close, darke, and quyet house, voyd from all noyse, which Absirtus saith, wil either make him madder, or else kyll him out of hande. His dyet would be thin, ỹ is to say, without any prouender, and that day that he is let bloud, & receyueth hys drynke, they would haue hym to faste vntyll Euen, and then to haue a warme mashe of Barlye meale, yea me thynkes it were not amisse, to feede him onelye with warme mashes and hay, and that by little at once, vntill he be somewhat recouered.

Of the sleeping euill.

The. xix. Chapter.

THIS is a disease forcyng the beast continually to sleepe, whether he will or not, taking his memory and appetyte cleane awaye, and therefore is called of the Phisitians, Lethargus: it procedeth of abundaunce of flegme, moysting the brayne ouer much. It is easy to knowe, by the continuall sleeping of the horse. The cure of this disease according to Pelagonius, Vegetius, and others, is in this sort. Let him bloude in the necke, and then giue him this drink. Take of Camomyl, & Motherwort, of eche two or three handefull, & boyle them in a sufficient quantity of water, and put therynto a little wheate branne, salte, and Vineger, and let him

him drinke a pynte of that euerye day, the space of thre or foure dayes together. It is good also to perfume and chafe his heade, wyth Tyme and Peniryall sodden together in Vineger, or with Brymstone and Feathers burned vppon a chafing dish of coales, vnder his nose, and to prouoke him to neese, by blowing Pepper, and Perithre, beaten to powder, vp into his nosetrils: yea and to annointe the palat of his mouth, with Hony and Mustarde mingled together, and in his drinke which woulde be alwayes warm water, to put Parsely sede, & Fenel sede, to prouoke vrine. His legges also woulde be bathed, and his Houes filled with wheate bran, salte, and Vineger, sodden together, and layd to, so hote as he may endure it, and in any case suffer him not to sleepe, but kepe him waking, and styrring, by continuall crying vnto him, or pricking him wyth some sharpe thing, that can not passe clene through the skinne, or else by beating hym with a whip, and thus doing he shall recouer.

Of a horse that is taken.

The. xx. Chapter.

A Horse is said to be taken, When he is depryued of his feeling, and moouing, so as he is able to sturre no maner of waye, but remayneth in suche state or fourme, as he was taken in. Whiche disease is called of the Philitians by the Greeke name Catalepsis, and in Laten Deprehensio,

or Congelatio, and of Vegetius, Sederatio, which also calleth those beastes that haue this disease Iumenta sideratitia. The Phisitians say, that it commeth of abundaunce of Flegme, and Choler, mixte together, or else of Melancoly bloud, which is a colde dry humor oppressing the hynder partes of the brayne. But Vegetius sayth, that it cometh of some extreme outwarde colde, striking sodenlye into the emptye vaynes, or of some extreme heate, or of rawe disgestion, or else of some greate hunger, caused by long fasting. It is easy to knowe by the discription before mentioned. And as touching the cure, Vegetius sayth, that if it come of colde, then it is good to giue him to drinke, one ounce of Laserpitium, with wine and oyle mixt together, and made luke warme, if of heate, then to giue it him with water and hony, if of crudite, then to heale him by fasting, if of hunger, then by feeding him well with pease. But Martin sayth, that this disease is called of the Frenche men Surprius, and it commeth (as he sayth) most chiefly of colde, taken after a heate, and he wisheth a horse that is thus taken, to be cured in this sort. First to be let bloude on both sydes of the breast, and then to be put in a heate eyther by continuall sturring, and molesting hym, or else if he will sturre by no meanes, then to bury him all saue the heade, in a warme dongh̄ill, and there to let hym lye, vntill his lymmes haue some feeling. And before you so bury him, it shall be good to giue him this drinke. Take of Malmesy three pyntes, and put therbnto a quarterne of Suger, and some Cynamon and Cloues,

and

and let him drinke it good and warme, and vntyll he be perfectly whole, let him be kepte warme, and often exercysed, and walked vp and downe in the stable, and thinlye dyeted, and drinke nothing but warme water, wherein if you put some Fenell, and Perslye seede, to provoke him to payne, it shall bee the better. And if he cannot doung, let him be raked, and haue a glister made of the broth of Mallowes, and fresshe butter.

Of the Staggers.

The xxii. Chapter.

This is a doolinesse of the head, called of the Latens Vertigo, and of the Italians as I remember, Capistura. It commeth of some corrupte blonde, or grosse and toughe humors, oppressing the braine, from whence proceedeth a vaporous sprighte, dissolued by a weake heate, which troubleth all the heade. The signes be these: dymnesse of sight, the reeling and staggering of the horse, who for very payne will thrust his heade agaynst the walles, and forsake his meate. The cure according to Martin is thus. Let him blonde in the temple vaynes, and then with a knife, make a hole of an ynche long ouerthwarte his forehead, hard vnderneath his foretoppe, and rayse the skyn with a cornette, thrusting it vpwarde towardes the headstal, a good handefull, and then put in a teynt dypt in Turpentyne, and Hogges greece molten to

gether, tenuing the tayute euery day once, vntill it be whole, and doe the lyke vppon the rydge of the rumpe, but me thinkes it were better to do the lyke in the powle of his heade, or nape of his necke, for so shoulde the euill humors haue both wayes the easyer and spedyer passage: And as touching hys dyet, let him haue continuallye warme drinke, and mashes, and once a day be walked vp and downe fayre and softly, to exercyse his body.

Of the Falling euill.

The xxii. Chapter.

This is a kinde of convulsion or Crampe, called of the Latens by the Greke name, Epilepsia, in Italion, il morbo caduco, depriuing the beast at certain tymes and for a certayne space, of the vse of feeling, hearing, and seyng, and of all the other senses. And though it be a disease, that hath bene seldom seene, to chaunce vnto horses, of thys cuntrey, yet it appeareth by Absirtus, and also by Vegetius, & diuers others, that horses be subiect thereunto. For Absirtus writyng vnto his frende Tiberius Claudius, sayth, that vnto horses chaunceth inanye tymes the falling sickneſſe. The sygnes whereof are these. The horse wyll fall downe sodenlye, partlye through the resolution of his members, and partly through discention of his synewes, and all his body will quiuer and quake, and sometyme he wyll some at the mouth. Vegetius agayne wryteth in this sort,

by a certain course of the Moone, horses and other beastes many tymes do fall, and dye for a tyme, as well as men. The sygnes whereof are these. Being fallen, their bodyes wyll quyuer and quake, and their mouthes wyll fome, and when a man woulde thinke that they woulde dye out of hande, they rise sodenly vp, and fall to their meate. And by feelyng the gristle of their nosetrilles with your finger, you shall know whether they will fall often or not, for the more colde the gristle be, the oftner, and the lesse colde it be, the seldomer they will fal. The cure. Let him bloude aboundantly in the necke vaynes, and within fiue dayes after, let him bloude agayne in the temple vaynes, and let him stande in a warme and darke stable, and annoynt all hys body, wyth comfortable oyntements, and his heade and eares with oyle de Bay, and lyquid Pitch or Tar, mingled together. And also put some thereof into his eares, and then make a Biggin for him of some softe warme skinne, as of a shepes skinne, or else of Cannas, stuffed vnderneath with woll, and make him this purging drinke. Take of Radishe rootes two ounces, of the roote of the hearbe called in Laten Panax, or Panaces, & of Scammony, of eth one ounce, beate all these thinges together, and boyle them in a quarte of honye, and at sundry tymes, as you shall see it needefull, giue him a good sponefull or two of this in a quarte of Ale luke warme, whervnto would be put thre or foure sponefull of Oyle. It is good also to blow the powder of Motherwort, or of Pyrethrum, vp into his nosetrilles, and if the dis-

ease do continue stil for al this, then it shal be nedefull to pearse the skynne of hys foreheade, in diuers places with a hote yron, and to let out the humors oppressing his brayne.

Of the night Mare.

The xxiii. Chapter.

THys is a disease oppressing eyther man or beast, in the nighte season when he slepeth, so as he can not draw his breath, and is called of the Latens Incubus. It commeth of a continual crudity, or raw disgestion of the stomack, from whence grosse vapors ascending vp into the head, doth oppresse the brayne, and all the sensityue powers, so as they can not do their office, in giuing perfect feeling and mouing to the bodye. And if this disease chaunsing often to a man, be not cured in time, it may perhappes growe to a worse mischiefe: as to the Falling euill, Madnesse, or Appoplexie. But I could neuer learne, that horses were subiect to this disease, neyther by relation, nor yet by reading, but onely in an olde English writer, who sheweth neither cause nor sygnes how to knowe when a horse hath it, but onelye teacheth howe to cure it with a fonde foliche charme, which bicause it may perhappes make you gentle reader to laugh, as well as it did me, for recreation sake I will here rehearse it. Take a Flynte stone that hath a hole of his owne kinde, and hang it ouer hym, and write in a bill.

In

In nomine patris.&c.

Saint George our Ladyes knyght,
He walked day so did he night,
Untill he her founde,
He her beate and he her bounde,
Till truly her trouth she hym plyght,
That she woulde not come within the night,
There as Saynt George our Ladyes knight
Named was three tymes, Saint George.

And hang this Scripture ouer him, and let him alone. With suche proper charmes as this is, the false Fryers in tymes paste were wonte to charme the money out of playne folkes purses.

Of the Appoplexie, and Pawlsye.

The.xxiiii. Chapter.

THe Appoplexye is a disease, depriuing all the whole body of sense, & moning. And if it depriue but parte of the body, then it is called of the Latins by the Greeke name Paralisis, in oure tongue a Pawlsie. It procedes of colde, grosse, and tough humors, oppressing the brayne all at once, which may breede partly of crudites and rawe disgestion, and partly by meanes of some hurte in the heade, taken by fall, strype, or otherwyse. As touching the Appoplexye, few or none writing of horsleach craft, do make any mention therof. But of the Pawlsye Vegetius wryteth in this maner. A horse (sayth he) may haue the Pawlsye as well as man,

which is knowen by these signes. He wil go groueling, and sydelyng like a Crabbe, carying his necke awry, as if it were broken, and goeth crokedly with his legges, beating his heade against the walles, and yet forsaketh not hys meate, nor drinke, and his prouender semeth moyst, and weate. The cure. let him bloude in the temple vayne, on the contrary syde of the wrying of his necke, and annoynte hys necke with comfortable oyntmentes, and splent it with splentes of wood, to make it stande right, and lette him stande in a warme stable, and giue hym such drinkes as are recyted in the next Chapter following. But if all this profiteth not, then drawe his neck with a hote yron, on the contrary side, that is to say on the whole syde, from the neyther parte of the eare downe to the shoulders, and drawe also a good long stryke on his temple, on that syde, and on the other temple, make a lytle starre in this sort * and from his raynes vnto his mid backe, drawe little lynes in this maner ⟋⟋⟋ & that will heale hym.

Of the Crampe or conbulsion of the Synewes and Muskles.

The .xxv. Chapter.

A Conbulsion or Crampe, is a forcible and paynefull contraction or drawing together of the Synewes & Muskles, which doth happē somtimes throughout the whole body, and somtyme

tyme but in one part, or member onely. And accor-ding as the body may be dyuerslye drawen, so doe the Phisitians and also mine Authours, that write of horseleach crafte, giue it dyuers names. For if the bodye be drawen forwarde, then they call it in Greeke Emprosthotonos, in Laten Tensio ad anteriora. And if the body be drawen backewarde, it is called in Greeke Opisthotonos, in Laten Tensio ad posteriora. But if the body be starke, and strayte, bowing neyther forwarde, nor backewarde, then it is called symplye in Greeke Tetanos, in Laten Distentio, or Rigor. Which names also are applyed to the lyke convulsions of the necke. Notwithstanding Vegetius wryting of this disease, intytuleth his Chapters de Roborosis, a straunge terme, and not to be founde again in any other Authour. A Convulsiō as I sayd before, may chaunce as well to one parte or member of the body, as to the whole body, as to the eye, to the skinne of the foreheade, to the rootes of the tongue, to the Jawes, to the lips, to the arme, hand, or legge, that is to say, when so euer the Synewe or Muskle, seruing to the mouing of that parte, is euill affected, or grieued. Of which Convulsions, though there be manye diuers causes: yet Hipocrates bringeth them all into two, that is to say, into fulnesse, and emptinesse: for when a Convulsion proceedes eyther of some inflamation, of superfluous eating or drinking, or for lacke of due purgation, or of ouer much rest, and lacke of exercyse, all such causes are to be referred to repletion, or fulnesse. But if a Convulsion come by meanes

of ouer muche purging or bleeding, of muche watching, extreme labour, long fasting, or by wounding, or pricking of the Synewes, then all suche causes are to be referred vnto emptynesse. And if the Conbulsion procede of fulnesse, it chaunceth sodenly, and all at once. But if of emptenesse, then it commeth by little and little, and laysurelye. Beside these kinds of Conbulsions, there is also chaūcing many times in a mannes fingers, legges, and toes, another kinde of Conbulsion, whiche may be called a windye Conbulsion, for that it procedes of some grosse, or toughe vapor, entred into the branches of the Sinewes, which maketh them to swel, like a Lute string, in moyst weather, which though it be very paynefull for the tyme, yet it may be sone driuen away, by chafyng, or rubbing the membre grieued, with a warme cloth. And this kinde of Conbulsion or Crampe, chaunceth also manye tymes to a horses hinder legges, standing in the stable. For I haue seene some my selfe, that haue had one of their hinder legges drawen vppe with the Crampe, almoste to the bellye, so styffe and hard as no man hath bene able to sturre it, neyther coulde the horse him selfe, set it downe to the grounde of a long season, whiche I thinke might be sone remedyed. First by continuall chafing and frotting his legge, with a good wispe, and then by teying vppe the other hinder legge, or else the forelegge on the fore syde, wherby he shoulde be forced to set downe the payned legge. Thus farre I haue discoursed of the Conbulsion of Synewes, and of the causes

thereof

thereof, according to the opinions of the learned Phisitians. Nowe I will briefly shewe you, the causes, signes, and cure therof, according to the doctrine of mine Authours that wryte of horseleathe crafte. Absirtus sayth, that this disease doth come, eyther by dryuing the horse into a sweate, when he halteth, for that he hath troden vpon some naile, or by taking colde after tourneying, and sweating in Winter season, whereby his lippes are clong togyther, or by long lying a rest after sweating, wherby the Sinewes of his forelegges be numned, or by hauing some stripe of his priuye mẽbers, or by long trauelyng in the colde Mountaynes, where snowe and Ise doth abounde. For Theomnestus wryteth, that commyng out of Pæonia, with the king and his army, and passing ouer the mountaynes, to go into Italye, there fell suche abundance of Snowe, as not onelye many Souldyers dyed, sytting styll on their horses backes, with their weapons in their handes, being so starke and styffe, and cleauing so fast to their Saddelles, as they coulde not easelye bee pulled out of them: but also dyuers Horses in their going were so numned, as they could not bowe their legges, yea and some were found starke dead, standing still on their feete, and few horses or none escaped at that tyme, free from the Conbulsion of Sinewes, in so much as Theomnestus his own horse which he loued dearlye, was sore bered therewith. The sygnes to know whether a horse be troubled with the Cõbulsion of the synewes or not, be these. His head and necke will be so stiffe and starke, as

he can bow it no maner of way, his eares will stand right vp, and his eyes wyll be hollow in his heade, and the fleshye partes therof, in the great corners, will be turned backewarde, his lippes will be clong fast together, so as he can not open his mouth, and his tongue so nummed as he can neyther eate nor drinke, his backebone and tayle will be so stiffe, as he can not moue it one way nor other, and his legges so stiffe, as they wil not bowe, and being layde he is not able to ryse, and specially on his hinder legges, but falleth downe on his buttockes, lyke a dogge when he sitteth on the ground, and by meanes of the Conbulsion in his backe, his bledder also for neighbourhode sake, suffereth, whereby the horse can not stale, but with great payne. The cure. Put him into a sweate, eyther by burying him all saue the heade in some warme dunghill, or if he be a horse of pryce, carye him into a hote house, where as is no smoke, and let him sweate there. Then annoynt all his body, heade, necke, legges, and all, with oyle of Cypres, and oyle de Baye mingled together. Or else with one of these oyntments. Take of Hogges greace two pound, of Terepenthin halfe a pounde, of Pepper beaten in powder one Dram, of newe Waxe one pounde, of olde oyle two pound, boyle all these together, & being made very warme, annoynt all his body therewith. Or else with this oyntment. Take of new waxe one pounde, of Terepenthin foure ounces, of oyle de Bay as muche, of Opoponax two ounces, of Deares sewet and of oile of Storax, of ech thre oũces, melt al these together,

and

and annoint all his body therewith. It is good also, to bath his heade with the decoction of Fitches, or else of Lupins, and make him this drinke. Take xx. graynes of long Pepper, fynelye beaten into powder, of Cedre two ounces, of Nytre one ounce, of Lacerpitium as muche as a Beane, and mingle al these together, with a sufficient quãtity of white wine, and giue him thereof to drinke a quart euery Morning & Euening, for the space of three or foure dayes, or else this drinke. Take of Opoponax two ounces, of Storax three ounces, of Gention three ounces, of Manna Succary, three ounces, of Mirre one scrupple, of long Pepper two scrupples, and giue him this with olde wine, or make him a drinke of Lacerpitium, Cammin, Annis seedes, Fengreke, Bay buryes, and olde oyle. In olde time they were wonte to let him bloude in the temples, which Absirtus doth not allowe, saying, that it will cause the Synewes of his lyppes to dry vppe, so as the horse not being able to moue them, shal pine for hunger. As touching his dyet, giue him at the first warme maches, and such softe meate as he may easelye get downe, and wet hay, bringing him to harder foode by little and little. And in any case, let him be kepte very warme, and rydden or walked once a day to exercyse his legges, and lymmes. Theomnestus cured his horse as he saith, by placing him in a warme stable, & by making a clere fyre without any smoke round aboute him, and the horse not being able to open his Jawes of him self, he caused his mouth to be opened, and put therein soppes dypt in a confec-

tion, called Entrigon Conditum, and also annointed al his body with a medicin, or oyntment called Acopū, (the making where of hereafter followeth) dissolued in Cypres oyle, which made him to fal into a sweat, and being before halfe deade and more, brought him againe to his feeling, and mouing, so as he did rise and eate his meate.

The recept of the medicine or oyntment called Acopum.

TAke of Eufozbium two ounces, of Castozeum foure ounces, of Adarces, half a pound, of Bdellium three ounces, of Pepper one pounde, of Fore greece two ounces, of Opoponax foure ounces, of Lacerpitium three ounces, of Amoniacum halfe a pounde, of Pygions dong as much, of Galbanum two ounces, of Nitrum fiue ounces, of Spumanitrie three ounces, of Ladanum one pounde, of Perethrum, and of Bay buryes, of eche three ounces, of Cardamomum eyght ounces, of the seede of Rewe halfe a pounde, of the seede of Agnus Castus foure ounces, of Parslye two ounces, of the dryed rootes of Ireos, or Floure de Luce, fiue ounces, of Isoppe and of Carpobalsamū one pound, of oyle of Floure deluce, and oyle de Bay, of eche one pound & a halfe, of oyle of Spiconard three pound, of Oleum Cipzinum, three pounde and halfe, of the oldest oyle Oliue that you can possible get sixe pounde, of Pitche not smelling of the smoke, one pound eyght ounces, of Turpētine one pound. Melte euery one of these

that

that will melte, seuerally by them selues, and then myngle them together, with the rest of the simples beaten into fyne powder, and after that they haue bene a little boyled on the fyre, take it of, & straine it into a fayre bellell, and whensoeuer you will giue your horse any therof, giue it him with wine. And if with long keppyng it waxeth harde, then soften it with oyle of Cypres, so as it may be good & thicke. This confection is both a medicin, & also an ointement, & is called of the old writers Acopum. Which if it be put into a horses nosetrilles, it will drawe out all noysome humors, and discharge his heade of all griefe, yea this medicine healeth all Conuulsions, coldes, & drynesse, or withering of the body, and dryueth away all werynesse, and tyering.

Of colde in the heade.

The. xxvi. Chapter.

ACcording as the colde whiche the horse hath taken is newe, or olde, greate, or small, and also according as humors do abounde in his heade, and as suche humors be thicke or thin, so is the disease more or lesse daungerous. For if the horse casteth lyttle or no matter out of his nose, nor hath no very great coughe, but is onelye heauy in his heade, and perhappes lightlye cougheth nowe & than, it is a lygne that he is stopped in the head, whiche we were wont to call the pose. But if his head be full of humors, congealed by some extreme

colde, taken of long tyme paste, and that he casteth foule, filthye, and stinking matter out at the nose, and cougheth grieuouslye: then it is a sygne, that he hath eyther the Glaunders, or Stranguyllion, Mourning of the Chayne, or Consumption of the Lungs. For all such diseases do breede for the most part of the Rheume, or distillation that commeth frō the head. Of the cures therof we leaue to speak, vntil we come to talke of the diseases in the throte, minding here to shewe you how to heale the Nose, or colde before mentioned. Martin sayth, it is good to pourge his head by perfuming him with Franconcense, and also to prouoke hym to neese, by thrusting two Goose feathers dypt in oyle de Bay vp into his nosetrilles, and then to trotte him vppe and down, the space of halfe an houre, for these feathers will make him to caste immedyately at the nose.

Laurentius Rusius woulde haue him to be perfumed, with wheate, Penirpall, and Sage, sodden well together, & put into a bagge so hote as may be, which bag would be so close fastned to his heade, that all the sauour thereof, maye ascende vp into his nosetrilles, and his heade also woulde be couered and kept warme: and to prouoke him to neese he would haue you to binde a softe cloute, annoynted with Sope, or else wyth Butter, and oyle de Bay, vnto a sticke, and to thrust that vppe and downe into hys nostrilles so hye as you may conuenientlye go, & let him be kept warme, and drink no colde water. Yea it shall be good for three or foure dayes, to boyle in his water a lyttle Senegreke, Wheat meale, and a

few

fewe Annis seedes. And euery day after that you haue purged his head, by perfuming him, or by making him to neese, cause him to be trotted vppe and downe, eyther in the warme Sunne, or else in the house, halfe an houre, which woulde be done before you water him, and giue him his prouender.

Of the diseases in the eyes.

The xxvii. Chapter.

HOrses eyes be subiect to diuers grieses, as to be waterish, or bloudshotten, to be dymme of syght, to haue the pyn and webbe, and the haw, whereof some commes of inwarde causes, as of humors resorting to the eyes, and some of outward causes, as of colde, heate, or strype.

Of weping or watering eyes.

The xxviii. Chapter.

THis as *Laurentius Russius* sayeth, may come sometyme by confluence of humors, and sometime by some stripe, whose cure I leaue to recite, bycause it doth not differ much, from Martins experience here folowing. Take of Pitche, Rosen, and Mastick, lyke quantity, melt them together. Then with a little sticke, hauing a cloute bounde to the ende thereof, and dipte therein: annoynt the temple vaynes on both sydes, a handefull aboue the

eyes, as broade as a Testerne, and then clap vnto it immediatly, a fewe Flocks, of like colour to the horse, holding them close to his heade, with your hande, vntill they stycke faste vnto his heade, then let him bloude on both sydes (if both eyes be infected) a handfull vnder the eyes. Rulsius also thinketh it good, to washe his eyes once a day, wyth pure whyte wyne, and then to blowe therein a lyttle of Tartarum, and of Pomys stone, beaten into fyne powder.

Of bloodshotten eyes, for a blowe, or ytching, and rubbing in the eyes.

The. xxix. Chapter.

Martin neuer vsed any other medicine, than this water here folowing wherewith he did alwayes heale the forsayde griefes. Take of pure rose water, of Malmesy, of Fenell water, of eche thre sponefull, of Tutia, as muche as you may easely take with your Thombe and Finger, of Cloues a dosen beaten into fyne powder, mingle them well together, and being luke warme, or colde, if you will, washe the inwarde partes of the eye, with a fether dipt therin, twice a day, vntill he be whole. Rulsius sayth, that to bloude shotten eyes it is good to lay the whyte of an Egge, or to washe them with the iuyce of Selidony.

Of

Of dimnesse of syght, and also for the Pynne and webbe, or any other spot in the eye.

The xxx. Chapter.

IF the Horse be dimme of sight, or hath any pearle growing in his eie, or thin fylme couering the ball of hys eye, then Rusius woulde haue you take of Pommis stone, of Tartarum, and of Sal Gemma, of eche lyke wayght, and being beaten into very fyne powder, to blowe a lyttle of that into his eye, continuing so to do euery day once, or twice, vntil he be whole. Martin sayth that he always vsed to blow a little Sandyuoire into the eye once a day, which simple he affirmeth to be of such force, as it wil breake any pearle or webbe in short space, and make the eye very cleare and fayre. Rusius amongest a number of other medicins, prayseth most of all the powder of a blacke Flynte stone.

Of the Haw called of the Italians l'vnghia de gli occhi.

The. xxxi. Chapter.

THis is a gristle couering sometime more than the one halfe of the eye. It proceedes of grosse, and toughe humors, discending out of the head, which Haw, as Martin sayth, woulde be cut awaye in this sorte. Fyrst pull both the eye lyddes

open with two seuerall threedes, stitched with a nedle to eyther of the lyddes. Then catch holde of the Hawe with the stych of another nedle & threde, and pul it out so farre as you may stay it vpon your fynger, to the intente that you may cutte it rounde the bredth of a penny, and leaue the blacke behinde. For by cutting away to much of the fatte, & blacke of the eye, the horse many tymes becommeth bleare eyed. And the Haw being clene taken away, squirt a little whyte wyne, or beere, into his eye.

Of Lunatike eyes.

The. xxxii. Chapter.

Vegetius writeth *de Oculo Lunatico*, but he sheweth neyther cause nor sygnes thereof: but onelye sayth that the old men termed it so, bycause it maketh the eye sometyme to loke, as thoughe it were couered with white, and sometyme cleare. Martin sayth that the horse that hath this disease, is blinde at certaine tymes of the Moone, in so much as he seeth almost nothing at all during that time, and then his eyes will looke pealowishe, yea and somewhat reddyshe, whiche disease according to Martin is to be cured in this sorte. First vse the playster mentioned before in the Chapter of watery the or weping eies, in such order as is there prescribed, and then with a sharpe knyfe make two slittes on both sydes of hys heade, an ynche long, somewhat towardes the nose, a handful beneath the eyes, not touching

touching the payne: and with a cornet loosen the skinne vpwarde, the bredth of a grote, and thruste therein a rounde peece of Leather, as brode as a twopenny peece, with a hole in the middest, to kepe the hole open, & loke to it once a day, that the matter may not be stopped, but continuallye runne the space of ten dayes, then take the Leather out, and heale the wounde with a little Flaxe dypte in the salue here following. Take of Turpentyne, of Hony, of Waxe, of ech like quantity, and boyle them together, whiche being a lyttle warmed, will be lyquid to serue your purpose, and take not away the playsters from the temples, vntill they fall away of them selues, which being fallen, then with a small hote drawing yron, make a Starre in the middest of eche temple payne, where the playster dyd lye. Which Starre woulde haue a hole in the middest, made with the button ende of your drawing yron in this sorte. ✲

Of the Cancer in the eye.

The xxxiii. Chapter.

This commeth of a ranke and corrupt bloud discēding from the head, into the eye. The sygnes. You shall see redde pymples, some small, and some greate, both within and without vpon the eye lydes, and all the eye will loke redde, and be full of corrupte matter. The cure according to Martin is thus. First let him bloude on that syde

the necke, that the eye is grieued, to the quantity of a Bottell. Then take of roche Alum, of greene Coꝛpoꝛas, of eche halfe a pounde, of whyte Coꝛpoꝛas one ounce, and boyle them in thꝛee pyntes of running water, vntill the halfe be consumed, then take it from the fire, and once a day washe his eye with this water, being made luke warme, with a fyne linnen cloth, and clense the eye therewith, so as it may loke rawe, contynuing thus to doe euery day once vntill it be whole.

Of diseases incident to the eares, and powle of the heade, and first of an Impostume in the eare.

The xxxiii. Chapter.

IMpostumes bꝛeede eyther by reason of some blowe, oꝛ bꝛousing, oꝛ else of euyll humoꝛs congealed in the eare by some extreme colde. The sygnes be apparant, by ꝯ burning & painfull swelling of the eare and parts therabout. The cure accoꝛding to Martin, is in this soꝛt. First ripe the Impostume with this playster. Take of Lynesede beaten into powder, of wheate flower, of eche halfe a pynte, of Hony a pinte, of Hogges greace, oꝛ Barrows greace one pounde. Warme all these thinges together in an earthen potte, and sturre them continually with a flatte stycke, oꝛ sclyce, vntill they be thoꝛowly mynngled and incoꝛpoꝛated together, and then spꝛeade some of this plaister being warme vpon a peece of linnen cloth, oꝛ soft whyte Leather, so

broade as the swelling and no more, & lay it warm vnto it, and so lette it remayne one whole day, and then renewe it with freshe oyntment, continuing so to doe vntill it breake: then launce the sore so as the matter may haue passage downewarde, and taynt it to the bottom, with a taynt of Flaxe dipt in this oyntment. Take of Metrosatū, of oyle Oliue, & Turpentine, of ech two oūces: and mingle them together, and make hym a Byggen of Camas to close in the sore, so as the taynte wyth the oyntement may abyde within, remuing the taynt once a day, vntill it be whole. But if the horse haue payne in his eares without any great swelling or Impostumation, then thrust in a little blacke woll dipte in oyle of Camamyll, and that will heale it.

Of the Powle euill.

The .xxxv. Chapter.

THys is a disease lyke a Fistula growing betwixte the eares and the Powle or nape of the necke, and proceedeth of euill humors, gathered together in that place, or else of some blowe or brouse, for that is the weakest and tenderest parte of all the heade, and therefore soneste offended, whiche rude Carters doe little consyder, whyleste in their fury they beat their horses vpon that place of the head, with their whipstockes, and therefore no horses be more subiecte to this disease, than Carte horses. And this disease

commeth most in Winter season. The sygnes. You shal perceyue it by ꝑ swelling of the place, which by continuance of tyme will breake of it selfe, rotting more inward than outward, and therefore is more perillous if it be not cured in tyme, and the soner it be taken in hand the better. The cure according to Martin is thus. If it be not broken, rype it with a playster of Hogges greace, layde vnto it so hote as maye be, and make a Byggyn for the powle of hys heade to kepe it from colde, which Biggen woulde haue two holes open, so as his eares may stande out: and renne the playster euery day once vntill it breake, keping the fore place as warme as may be. And if you see that it will not breake so sone as you woulde haue it, then there as it is softest, and moste meetest to be opened: take a rounde hote yron as byg as your little fynger, and sharpe at the poynte, and two ynches beneath that soft place, thrust it in a good depenesse vpwarde, so as the poynte of the yron may come out at the rypest place, to the intent that the matter may discende downeward, & come out at the neather hole, whiche woulde be alwayes kepte open, and therefore taynt it with a taynt of Flate dypt in Hogges greace, and lay a playster of Hogges greace also vpon the same, remuing it euery day once, the space of foure dayes, which is done chiefly to kill the heat of the fyre. Then at the foure dayes ende, take of Turpintyne halfe a pounde, cleane washed in nine sundry waters, & after that thorowly dryed, by thrusting out the water wyth a fyrre on the asshes side, then put therevnto two

yolkes

yolkes of Egges and a little Saffron, and myngle them well together: that done, searche the depth of the hole with a wholle quill, and make a taynt of a peece of sponge, so long, as it may reache the bottom, and so big as it may fill the wounde, and annoynt the taynt with the foresayde oyntment, and thrust it into the wounde, eyther with that quill, or else by winding it vp with your finger and thombe, by little and little, vntill you haue thrust it home: and then lay on the playster of Hogs greace made luke warme, renuing it euery day once or twice, vntill it be whole. But if the swelling ceasse, then you needde not to vse the playster, but onelye to taynt it, and as the matter decreaseth, so make your taynt euery day lesser and lesser, vntil the wounde be perfectly whole.

Of the Vpues.

The xxxvi. Chapter.

THe Vpues be certaine kirnels growing vnder the horses eare, proceding of some rank or corrupt bloud resorting to that place. which within are full of little whyte graynes, like whyte salte kirnelles. The Italians call them Viuole, which if they be suffered to growe, Laurētius Rusius sayth, that they will grieuously pain the horse in his throte, so as he shall not be able to swallow his meat, nor to breath. They be easy to knowe, for that they may be felte, and also sene. The

cure accoꝛding to Martin, is in this ſoꝛte. Firſte
draw them ryghte downe in the mydſt with a hote
Iron, from the rote of the eare. ſo farre as the tippe
of the eare wil reach, being pulled downe: and vn-
der the roote againe drawe two ſtrykes on eche
ſyde, lyke an arrowe heade in this foꝛme →
then in the midſt of the firſt lyne, launce them with
a launcet, and taking holde of the kirnelles with a
paꝛe of Pynſons, pull them ſo farre foꝛwarde, as
you may cut the kirnelles out, without hurting the
bayne, that done, fill the hole with white ſalt. But
Hierocles would haue them to be cured in this ſoꝛte.
Take a piece of Sponge ſowſed well in ſtrong
Vineger, & binde that to the ſoꝛe, renuing it twiee
a day vntill it hath rotted the kirnelles, that done,
launce it in the nethermoſte parte where the mat-
ter lyeth, and let it out, and then fill it vp with ſalte
finely brayed, and the nexte day waſche all the filth
away with warme water, and annoynte the place
with Hony and Fytch flower myngled together.
But beware you touche none of the kirnelles with
your bare finger, foꝛ feare of benoming the place,
which is very apt foꝛ a Fiſtula to breede in.

Of the cancoꝛous Vlcer in the noſe.

The .xxxvii. Chapter.

THIS diſeaſe is a fretting hu-
moꝛ, eating and conſuming the fleſhe,
and making it all rawe within: and
not being holpen in tyme, will eate
thoꝛow

thorow the gristle of the nose. It commeth of a corrupt bloude, or else of sharpe hunger, ingendred by meanes of some extreme cold. The signes be these. He will bleede at the nose, and all the flesche within wil be rawe, and filthy stinking sauours, and matter will come out at his nose. The cure according to Martin, is thus. Take of grene Coporas, of Alom, of eche one pounde, of whyte Coporas one quarterne, and boyle these in a Pottell of running water vntill a pynte be consumed, then take it of, and put therunto halfe a pynte of hony: then cause his heade to be holden vp, with a drinking stalke, and squirt into his nosetrilles with a squirte of Bzalle, or rather of Elder, some of this water being luke warme, thre or foure tymes one after another, but betwixt euery drinking, giue him libertye to holde downe his heade, and to blowe out the fylthy matter, for otherwyse perhappes you may choke hym. And after this, it shall be good also without holding vp his heade any more, to washe and rub hys nosetrilles with a fyne clout bounde to a whyte stickes ende, and wet in the water aforesayde, and serue him thus once a day vntill he be whole.

Of bleeding at the nose.

The. xxxviii. Chapter.

I Haue seene horses my selfe, that haue bledde at the nose, which haue had neyther sore nor Ulcer in their nose, and therfore I can not choose, but say wyth

the Philitians, that it commeth by meanes that the vayne which endeth in that place, is eyther opened, broken, or fretted. It is opened many tymes by meanes that bloud aboundeth to muche, or for that it is to fyne or to subtill, and so pearceth thorow the vayne. Againe it may be broken by some vyolent strayne, cutte, or blowe. And finally it may be fretted, or gnawen through, by the sharpnesse of the bloude, or else of some other euyll humor contayned therein. As touching the cure. Martin sayth, it is good to take a pynte of redde Wyne, and to put therein a quarterne of Bole Armeni, beaten into fine powder, and being made luke warme, to poure the one halfe thereof, the first day into his nosetril that bleedeth, causing his heade to be holden vp, so as the lyquor may not fall out: and the next day to giue him the other half. But if this preuayleth not, then I for my parte, woulde cause him to be lette, bloude in the breast vayne, on the same syde that he bledeth at seuerall tymes. Then take Frankincense one ounce, of Aloes halfe an ounce, and beate them into fyne powder, and mingle them thorowlye with the whytes of Egges, vntill it be so thicke as Honye, and wyth soft Hares hayre, thrust it vppe into his nosetrill, fylling the hole so full, as it can not fall out, or elle fyll his nosetrilles full of Asses dong, or Hogges dong, for eyther of them is excellent good to restrayne any flux of bloude.

Of

Of the diseases in the mouth, and first of bloudy ryftes or Choppes in the palat of the mouth.

The.xxxix.Chapter.

THis disease is called of the Italians, Palatina, which as Laurentius Rusius sayth, commeth by eating hay or prouender, that is full of pricking seedes, which by continual pricking, and fretting the forrowes of the mouth, doe cause them to rancle, and to blede corrupte and stinking matter, which you shall quickly remedye as Martin sayth, by washing first the sore places with Vineger & salte, and then by annoynting the same with Hony.

Of the Bladders in a Horses mouth which our olde Ferrers were wont to call the Gigges. The Italians call them Floncelle.

The.xl.Chapter.

THese be little softe swellinges or rather postules with black heades, growing in the inside of his lyppes, nexte vnto the great Jaw teeth, which are so paynefull vnto the horse, as they make hym to let his meate fall out of his mouth, or at the least to kepe it in his mouth vnchowed, whereby the horse prospereth not. Rusius sayth, that they come eyther by eating to muche colde grasse, or else of pricking, dusty, and filthy prouender. The cure wherof according to Martin, is in this sort. Slytte

them with a launcet, and thrust out all the corruption, & then wash the sore places, with a little Vineger and salt, or else with Alom water.

Of the Lampasse.

The. xli. Chapter.

THe Lampasse, called of the Italians Lampascus, proceedeth of the aboundance of blonde, resorting to the firste forrowe of the mouth, I meane that which is next vnto the vpper fore teeth, causing the sayd forrow to swell so hye as the horses teeth, so as he can not chowe his meate, but is forced to let it fall out of his mouth. The remedy is to cut all the superfluous flesshe away, with a croked hote Iron, made of purpose, which euery smyth can doe.

Of the canker in the mouth.

The. xlii. Chapter.

THis disease as *Martin* sayth, is a rawnesse of the mouth & tongue, which is full of blisters, so as he can not eate his meat. Which proceedes of some vnnaturall heate, comming from the stomacke. For the cure wherof. Take of Alom halfe a pounde, of Honye a quarterne of a pint, of Colombine leaues, of Sage leaues, of ech a handefull. Boyle all these together in

in thre pintes of water, vntil a pint ebe consumed, and washe the sore places therwith, so as it maye bleede, continuing so to do euery day once vntill it be whole.

Of the heate in the mouth and lippes.

The.xliii.Chapter.

SOmetime the heate that commeth out of the stomacke, breedeth no canker, but maketh the mouth hote, & causeth the horse to forsake his meate. The cure whereof as Martin sayth, is in this sorte. First turne vp his vpper lippe, and iagge it lightlye with a Launcet, so as it may blede, and then washe both that and all his mouth & tongue, with vineger and salte.

Of the tongue being hurt with the Bytte, or otherwise.

The.xliiii.Chapter.

IF the tongue be cut or hurt any maner of way, Martin sayth, it is good first to washe it with Alom water, and then to take the leaues of blacke Brimble, & to chop them together small with a little Larde, that done to bynde it within a little cloute, making it round lyke a ball, then hauing dypt the rounde ende in hony, to rubbe the tongue

therewith: continuing so to doe once a day, vntyll it be whole.

Of the Warbles, or Pappes vnderneath the tongue.

The xlv. Chapter.

These be two little Pappes called of the Italians Barbole, growing naturally (as I thinke,) in euery horses mouth, vnderneath the tongue, in the neather Jawes, whiche if they shoote out of any length: Rusius sayth that they will hinder the horses feeding, and therefore he and Martin also, would haue them to be clipt away, with a payre of sheeres, and that done, the horses mouth to be washed with Vineger and Salte.

Of the payne in the teeth, and gummes, of the Wolfes teeth, and Jaw teeth.

The xlvi. Chapter.

A horse may haue payne in hys teeth, partly by discent of humors from his heade, downe into his teeth and gummes, which is to be perceyued by the rankenesse & swelling of the gummes, & partly by hauing two extraordinary teeth, called the Wolfes teeth, whiche be two little teeth growing in the vpper Jawes, nexte vnto the great grinding teeth, whych are so paynefull to the horse, as

as he can not indure to chowe his meate, but is forced eyther to lette it fall out of his mouth, or else to kepe it still halfe chowed, wherby the horse prosperith not, but wasteth leane and poore: and he will do the like also, when his vpper Jawe teeth be so farre growen, as they ouerhang the neather Jawe teeth, and therwith be so sharpe, as in mouing his Jawes they cut and rase the inlydes of his chekes, euen as they were raced with a knife. And first as touching the cure of the payne in the teeth, that cometh by meanes of some distillation: Vegetius sayth, it is good to rubbe all the outlyde of his gummes with fine Chaulke, & strong Vineger mingled together, or else after that you haue washed the gummes with Vineger, to strow on them the powder of Pomegranate pilles. But me thinkes that beslydes this, it were not amisse to slop the temple vaynes, with the playster before mentioned, in the Chapter of weping and watrish eyes. The cure of the wolfes teeth, and of the Jaw teeth according to Martin, is in this sorte. First cause the horse heade to be tyed vp to some Racker or Poste, and his mouth to be opened with a corde, so wide as you may easelye see euery part therof. Then take a rounde strong Iron toole, halfe a yearde long, and made at the one ende in all poyntes lyke vnto the Carpenters Gouge, wherewith he pearceth his holes to be bored with a Wimble, or Awgor, and with your lefte hande sette the edge of your toole at the foote of the Wolfes teeth, on the outlyde of the Jawe, turnyng the hollow lyde of the toole downeward, holding

your hand steadely, so as the toole may not slippe, nor swarue from the foresayde tooth: then hauing a mallet in your right hande, stryke vpon the head of the toole one prety blow, and therwith you shall loosen the tooth, and cause it to bend inward: then staying the middest of your toole vppon the horses neather Jaw, wrinch the tooth outwarde, with the insyde, or hollow syde of the toole, & thrust it cleane out of his heade, that done, serue the other Wolfes tooth on the other syde in lyke maner, and fyll vp the empty places with salte finelye brayed. But if his vpper Jawe teeth, doe also ouerhang the neather teeth, and so cutte the insyde of his mouth, as is aforesayd, then keping his mouth still open, take your toole and Mallet, & pare all those teeth shorter, running alongst them euen from the first vnto the laste, turning the hollow syde of your toole towards the teeth, so shal not the toole cut the insides of his cheekes, the backe or rounde syde being turned towarde the foresayde cheekes, and that done washe all his mouth with Vineger and salte, and let him goe.

Why the diseases in the necke, wythers, and backe, be declared here, before the diseases in the throte.

The xlvii. Chapter.

HAuing hytherto spoken of the diseases incident to a horses heade, and to all the partes therof. Naturall order requireth that

that we should now discend into ỹ throte as a parte next adiacent to the mouth. But for so much as the diseases in the throte haue not onely affinity with the heade, but also with the Lunges and other inwarde partes, whiche are many tymes grieued by meanes of distillation comming from the head and throughe the throte: I will first speake of the diseases incident to the necke, wythers, and backe of a horse, to the intent that when I come to talke of diseases, as Rheumes and distillations doe cause: I may discourse of them orderlye, without interruption.

Of the Crycke in the necke.

The xlviii. Chapter.

Because a Crycke is no other thing, but a kinde of Convulsion, and for that we haue spoken sufficientlye before, of all the kindes thereof in the Chapter of Convulsion: I purpose not here therfore to trouble you with many wordes. But onely shew you Rusius opinion, and also Martins experience therein. The Crycke then called of the Italians Scima, or Lucerdo: according to Rusius, yea and according to Martin is, when the horse can not tourne his necke anye maner of way, but holde it still right forth, in so muche as he can not take his meate from the grounde, but by tymes, and that very slowlye. Rusius sayth it commeth by meanes of some great wayght layd on the

horses shoulders, or else by ouer much dryng vp of the Synewes in the necke. The cure wherof accordyng to Martin, is in this sorte. Drawe him with a hote iron from the roote of the eare, on both sydes of the necke, through the middest of the same, euen downe to the breast, a strawe depe, so as both endes may meete vpon the breast. Then make a hole in his forheade, hard vnder the foretoppe, and thruste in a cornette vpwarde, betwixt the skinne and the flesshe, a handfull deepe, then put in a goose feather doubled in the midest, and annoynted with Hogs greace, to kepe the hole open, to the intent the matter may runne out the space of ten dayes. But euery day during that tyme, the hole muste be clensed once, and the feather also clensed, and freshe annoynted and so put in agayne. And once a day let him stande vppon the bitte, one houre or two, or be ridden two or three Myles abrode, by such a one as will beare his heade, and make him to bring it in. But if the Crycke be such, as the horse can not hold his necke straycht, but clene awry, as I haue sene dyuers my selfe: then I thinke it not good, that the horse be drawen with a hote Iron, on both sydes of the necke, but onely on the contrary syde. As for example, if he bende his heade toward the right syde, then to drawe him as is aforesayde, onely on the left syde, and to vse the rest of the cure as is aboue sayde, and if nede be you may splent hym also with handesome staues meete for the purpose, to make his necke stand vpright.

Of Wennes in the necke.

The xlix. Chapter.

A Wen, is a certayne kynell like tumor or swelling, the inside whereof is harde lyke a gristell, and spongious lyke a skinne full of Wettes. Of Wens some be great, & some be small. Againe some be very paynefull, and some not paynefull at all. The Phisitians say, that they procede of grosse and vicious humors, but Vegetius sayth that they chaunce to a horse, by taking colde, or by drinking of waters that be extreme colde. The cure according to Martin is thus. Take of Mallowes, Sage, and redde Netels, of eche one handfull, boyle them in running water, and put therunto a little butter, and hony, and when the hearbes be soft, take them out and all to bruse them, and put therunto of oile of Bay two ounces, and two ounces of Hogges greace, and warme them together ouer the fire, mingling them well together, that done, playster it upon a pece of Leather, so bygge as the Wen, and lay it to so hote as the horse may indure it, renuing it euery day, in such sort, the space of eyght dayes, and if you perceyue that it will come to no heade, then launce it from the middest of the Wen downewarde, so depe as the matter in the bottom may be discouered and lette out, that done, heale it up with this salue. Take of Turpentyne a quarterne, and washe it nine tymes in fayre newe water, then put

therebnto the yolke of an Egge, and a little Englishe Saffron beaten in powder, and make a taynt or rowle of Flax, and dippe it in that oyntment, and lay it vnto the sore, renuing the same euerye day once, vntill it be whole.

Of swelling in the neche after bloud letting.

The. I. Chapter.

THis may come of the flegme being rustye, and so causing the payne to rancle, or else by meanes of some colde winde striking sodenlye into the hole. The cure according to Martin, is thus. First annoynt it with oyle of Camomill warmed, and then lay vpon it a lyttle hay wet in colde water, and binde it about with a cloth, renuing it euery day, the space of fiue or syx dayes, to see whether it will growe to a heade, or else banishe away. If it growe to a heade, then giue it a slytte wyth a Launcet, and open it with a Cornet, that the matter may come out. Then heale it vp, by taynting it with Flaxe dypt in Turpentine, and Hogs greate, molten together, dressing it so once a day, vntill it be whole.

Howe to staunch bloude.

The. II. Chapter.

IF a horse be lette bloude, when the fygne is in the necke, the payne perhaps will

not

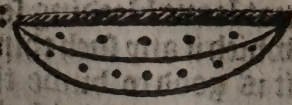
not leaue bleeding so sone as a man would haue it, which if any such thing chaunce, then Rusius sayth, it is good to binde therevnto, a little newe horse-dong tempred with chaulke, and strong Vineger, and not to remoue it from thence, the space of three dayes, or else to lay therevnto, burnt Sylke, Felt, or Cloth, for all such thinges will staunch bloud.

Of the falling of the Creast.

The xli. Chapter.

This commeth for the most part of pouertye, and specially when a fatte horse falleth away sodenlye. The cure according to Martin, is thus. Drawe his Creast the depenesse of a strawe, on the contrary syde, with a hote yron, the edge of whiche yron, would be halfe an ynch brode, and make your beginning, and ending, somewhat beyond the fall, so as the first draught may go all the way hard vpon the edge of the mayne, euen vnderneath the rotes of the same, bearing your hande righte downewarde, into the neckewarde, then aunswere that with an other draught beneath, & so farre dystante from the first, as the fall is brode, compassing as it were all the fall: but styll on the contrary side: and betwirt those two draughtes right in the middest, draw a thirde draught, then with a button yron of an ynche about, burne at eche ende a hole, and also in the spaces betwirt the draughtes, make dyuers holes distant three fingers brode one from an other,

as this figure doth shew you: that done, to slake the fire, annoynt it euerye day once, for



the space of nine dayes, with a feather dipt in fresh butter molten. Then take of Wallowes and of Sage, of eche one handful: boyle them wel in running water, and washe the burning away, vntill it be rawe flesche. Then dry it vp with this powder. Take of Hony halfe a pynte, & so muche fleet Lyme as will make that hony thycke, lyke paast. Then holde it in a fyre pan ouer the fyre, vntyll it be baken so harde, as it may be made in powder, & sprincle that vpon the sore places.

Of the maungineſſe in the Payne.

The.liii. Chapter.

The Maungyneſſe procedes of rancknesse of bloude, or of pouertye, of lowsynesse, or elſe of rubbing where a Maungy horſe hath rubbed, and of filthy duſt lying in the Payne, for lacke of good dreſſing. The ſygnes be aparaunt by the ytching and rubbing of the horſe, and the ſcabbes, fretting both fleſh, and ſkinne. The cure according to Martin, is thus. Take of freſh greace one pounde, of Quickſyluer halfe an ounce, of Brimſtone one ounce, of Rape Oyle halfe a pynte, mingle them togyther, and sturre them continually in a pot with a ſtycke, vntill the Quickſyluer be ſo wrought with the reſt, as you ſhall perceyue no Quickſyluer therin.

in. That done, take a blunt knyfe, or an olde horse-combe, and scratch all the maungy places therwith vntill it be rawe, and bloudy, and then annoynt it with this oyntment, in the sunne shine, if it may be, to the intente the oyntment maye sinke in: or else holde before it a fyre pan, or some broade barre of Iron made hote, to make the oyntment to melte into the flesh. And if you se that within the space of thre dayes after, with this once annointing, he leaue not rubbing: then mark in what place he rubbeth, and dresse that place agayne, and you shall see it heale quickly.

Of the falling of the haire of the Mayne.

The liii. Chapter.

IT falleth for the most part, because it is eaten with little wormes, fretting the rootes in sunder, whiche according to Martin, you shall remedye in this sorte. Annoynt the mayne, and creast with Sope, then make strong Lye, & washe all the mayne and creast withall, and that will kill the wormes within twice, or thrice washing.

Of griefes in the Withers.

The liv. Chapter.

IF a horses Withers, and backe, doe chaunce many griefes and sorances, whiche as Rusius sayth, doe sometyme pro-

cede of inwarde causes, as of the corruption of humors, and sometime of outward causes, as through the galling and pinching of some naughty saddle, or by some heauy burthen, layd on the horses backe, or such like. And of such griefes, some be but superficiall blisters, swellinges, lyghte galles, or brousinges: and be easelye cured. Some againe doe pearce to the verye bone, and be daungerous, and specially if they be nigh the backe bone: let vs first then shewe you the cure of the smaller griefes, and then of the greater.

Of Blystringes, or small swellinges in the wythers or backe, and of gallings.

The. lvi. Chapter.

When soeuer you se any swelling ryse, then Martin woulde haue you to bind a little hote horse dong vnto it, and that will asswage it. If not, then to pryncke it rounde about the swelling, eyther with a fleame, or else with a sharpe poynted knife, not to deepe, but so as it may pearce the skinne, and make the bloud to issue forth. That done. Take of Mallowes, or else of Smallage, two or thre handfull, and boyle them in running water, vntill they be so soft as pappe. Then strayne the water softlye from it, and brose the hearbes in a Treane dishe, putting thervnto a lyttle Hogs greace, or else Salet oyle, or shepes Sewet, or any other fresh greace, boyle

boyle them and stur them together, not toying them harde, but so as it may be softe and supple, and then with a clout lay it warme vpon the soze, renuing it euery day once, vntill the swelling be gone. Foz this will eyther dzyue it away, oz else bzing it to a head, which lyghtly chaunceth not, vnlesse there be some gristle oz bone perished. Rusius biddeth you, so sone as you see any swelling rise, to shaue the place with a Rasoz, and to lay therevnto this playster. Take a little wheate floure, and the whyte of an Egge beaten together, and spread it vpon a Linnen cloute, whiche being layd vnto the swelling two oz three dayes, and not remoued, will bzyng it to a heade, and when you come to take it of, pul it away so softly as you can possibly, and where as you se the cozruption gathered together, then in the lowest place thereof, pearce it vpwarde with a sharp rozne somewhat hote, that the cozruption may come out, and annoynt the soze place euery day once, with freshe butter, oz Hogges greace. But if the skinne be only chafed of, without any swelling, then washe the place with water and salte, oz else with warme wyne, and sprincle this powder theron. Take of vnsleyct Lyme, a quantitye beaten in to fyne powder, and mingle it with hony, vntill it be so thick as Paast, and make rolles oz balles therof, and bake them in a fyze panne ouer the fyze, vntill they be so hard, as they may be brought to powder, foz this is a very good powder to dzy vp any galling oz soze. The powder of Myrre oz burnt Silk Felt oz cloth, oz of any olde post, is also good foz suche purposes,

but when so euer you vse this powder of Lyme and Hony, let the place be first washed as is afore said.

Of greate swellinges and inflamations in a horses Wythers.

The. xvii. Chapter.

IF the swelling be very greate, then ỹ cure according to Martin is thus. First draw rounde about the swelling, with a hote yron, and then crosse hym him with the same yron in this maner then take a rounde hote yron hauing a sharpe poynte, and thrust it into the swelling place on ech side vpwarde toward the poynt of the Wythers, to the intente that the matter may issue downewarde, at both the holes. That done, taynt both the holes, firste with a taint dipt in Hogges greace, to kyll the fyre, and also annoynt all the other burnt places therewith, continuing so to doe, vntill the swelling be aswaged, renuing the taints euery day once, vntill the fiery matter be fallen away, and then taint him againe with washed Turpentyne, mingled with yolkes of Egges, and Safron, in such maner, as haue bene beforesayd renuing the taynte euery day once, vntil it be whole. If you see that the swelling, for all this go not away, then it is a sygne of some impostumation within, & therefore it shall be necessarye to launce it, and to let out the corruptiõ, then take of hony halfe a pint,

of

of Verdigreace two ounces beaten to powder, and mingle it together with the hony, then boyle them in a pot vntill it looke red, then being luke warme, make eyther a taynt, or playster, accordyng as the wounde shall requyre, renuing the same euery day once vntill it be whole. But the sore may be so behemente, that for lacke of loking to in tyme, it will pearse downewarde betwixte both shoulders, towardes the intrayles, which is very daungerous, yea and as Rusius sayth, mortall, bycause the corruption of the sore, infecting the Lungs, and heart (which be the vitall partes, and chiefe preseruers of life) the body must nedes decay. And therfore, Martin would haue you to fyll the hole with the salue laste mentioned, & to thrust in after it a pece of sponge, aswel to kepe the hole open, as also to sucke out the corruption, renuing it euery day once, vntyll it be whole.

Of the hornes or harde bones, growing vnder the Saddle syde.

The lviii. Chapter.

This is a dead skinne like a pece of leather, called of the Italyans Corno, that is to say a horne, for that it is hard vnder hande, and commeth by meanes of some strayt saddle, pinching the horse more on the one syde than on the other: or else on both sydes equally. The cure whereof accordyng to Martin, is in this sort. Annoynt them with fresh but-

ter, or Hogges greace, vntill they be mollifyed and made so softe, as you may eyther cutte them, or pull them away, and then wash the wound with mans stale, or with whyte wine, and dry it vp with powder of vnslect Lyme.

Of Wennes or knobbes, growing about the Saddle shyftes.

The lix. Chapter.

These be great harde knobbes, growing most commonly betwixt two ribbes, aparaunt to the eye, which by their hardnesse, seme to come of some old broose, and are called of the Italians le Curte. The cure whereof according to Martin, is thus. First mollifye them, by annointing them with hote Hogges greace, euery day once or twice, the space of eyght dayes, and if you perceyue that it wil come to no head with this, then launce it from the middle downeward, that the matter may come out: then taint it wyth washed Turpentine, yolkes of egges, & saffrō mingled together, as is aforesaid, renuing the taint euery day once vntil it be whole.

Of the Nauill gall.

The lx. Chapter.

The Nauill gall is a broose on the backe behinde the Saddle, ryght agaynst the Nauel of the horse, and therof it taketh his

his name. It commeth eyther by splytting of the Saddle behinde, or for lacke of stuffing, or by meanes of the hynder buckle, fretting that place, or else by some greate wayght layd on his backe: you shal perceyue it by the pufted vp, & spongy flesche, loking like rotten lightes or lungs, and therefore is called of the Italyans Pulmone or Pulmoncello. The cure wherof according to Martin, is thus. Cut it round about with a sharpe knife or rasor, euen to the bone, leauing no rotten flesche behinde: that done. Take the whyte of an Egge, and salte beaten together, and lay that playster wyse vnto the sore, vpon a little toawe, renuing it once a day, the space of two dayes. Then take of hony a quarter of a pynte, and of Verdigreace one ounce, beaten into powder, & boyle them together in a potte, stirring it styll vntil it lokered, and being luke warme, make a playster with toawe, and clappe it to the wounde, washing and clensing well the wounde firste, with a lyttle warme vineger, or whyte wyne, continuing so to do once a day, vntill it begin to heale, and to skin, then dry it vppe, by sprincling thereon this powder folowing. Take of Hony a quarterne, and as much of flect Lyme as will thicken the honye lyke vnto paast, and in a fyre pan ouer the fyre sturre it styll vntill it be harde baked, so as it may be beaten into powder, but before you throw on the powder, wash the wound first, with warme Veneger, contynuing so to doe, vntyll it bee perfectelye skynned and whole.

Of the swaying of the backe.

The.lxi. Chapter.

This is called of the Italians Mal feruto, and according to Rufsius, and Martins opinions, commeth eyther by some greate straine, or elfe by heauye burdens. You shall perceyue it, by the reeling and rowling of the horses hinder partes, in his going, whiche will falter many tymes, and sway, sometyme backewarde, and sometyme sydelyng, and be ready to fall euen to the grounde, and the horse being layde, is scante able to gette vppe. The cure according to Martin is thus. Couer his backe with a sheepes skin, comming hote from the sheepes backe, laying the fleshye syde next vnto his backe, and laye a warme howsyng cloth vpon the same, to keepe his backe as warme as may be, and so let it continue, vntill it begin to smell: then take the olde skinne away, and lay a newe vnto it, continuing so to do the space of thre weekes, and if he amende not with this, then drawe his backe with a hote yron ryghte out on both sydes of the rydge of his backe, from the pitche of the buttocke, vnto a handefull within the Saddle, and then agayne ouerthwart, in this sorte. And let euery line be an inch dystaunt, one from another, and let not suche strykes be very depe, but so burned as euery one may loke yellow, then lay vpon the burning

ning this charge here folowing. Take of Pitch one pounde, of Rosen halfe a pounde, of bole Armonie halfe a pound made in powder, and halfe a pinte of Tarre, and boyle all these together in a potte, stirring it vntill euery thing be molten, and thorowly mingled together, then being luke warme, dawbe all the burning therwith very thycke, and therupon clap as many Flockes of the horses colour, as you can make to byde on, and remoue it not before it fall away of it selfe, and if it be in Sommer, you may turne him to grasse.

Of weakenesse in the backe.

The lxi. Chapter.

IT doth appeare by *Laurentius* Rusius, that there is an other kinde of weakenesse in the backe, called in Italion le gotte, or morsecatura, de le reni, that is to saye, the fretting or byting of the raynes, whiche as the sayde Rusius sayth, procedeth of abundaunce of humors, resorting to that place, whereby all the hinder partes of the horse do lose their feeling and strength, and the horse falleth downe to the grounde: yea & such humors manye tymes resorting to the heart, doe suffocate the same, and in two or three houres do cause the horse to dye. The remedy according to Rusius, is in this sorte. Let him blonde abundantly in the necke, and drawe his backe with a hote iron, in such sorte as is declared in the last Chapter. He

sayth also, it is good to make him swim thorowe a Ryuer, and to rowle him vpon the haunches, nigh the huckle bones: and to make the haire to growe agayne, it is good as he sayth, to annoint the place with Hogs greace, and thre leaued grasse stamped together.

Of Hyde bownd.

The lxxi. Chapter.

HYde bound is when the skinne cleaueth so faste to the horses backe, that a man can not pull it from the flesche with his hand, which Ruellius calleth Coriago, it commeth for the moste parte of pouerty, or else when the horse after some greate heat, hath bene suffered to stand long in the rayne or wette weather, for that wil cause the skin to shrinke, and to cling to his rybbes. It is knowen by the leannesse of the horse, and gauntnesse of his belly, and by the fast sticking of the skinne vnto his ribbes, when you pull at it with your hande. The cure according to Martin, is thus. Let him bloud on both sydes the bellye, in the flanke vaynes betwixt the flanke, and the girding place, that done, giue him this drinke. Take a quart of good white wine, or else of good Ale, and put therevnto thre ounces of good Salet oyle, of Comen one ounce, of Annis seedes two ounces, of Licoras two ounces, beaten all into fyne powder, and giue it him luke warme with a horne. And when he hath dronke, lette one

standing

standing at his huckle bone, rubbe him hard with his hande alongst the backe, and ouerthwart the rybbes the space of halfe an houre, that done sette him in a warme stable, and let him stande in litter vp to the belly, and couer all his backe and rybbes with a sacke, first thoroughly soked in a Tub of colde water, and then well and harde wrong, and ouer that cast an other cloth, and girde it fast with a surcingle, stuffing him well about the backe with fresh strawe, continuing thus to doe euery day once the space of a weeke, during whiche tyme giue him no colde water, but luke warme, and put therein a little ground mault. The wette sacke will cause the backe to gather heate of it selfe, and the skin to losen from the flesh, and if you will bestow more cost, you may annoynt all his body, with wine and oyle, mingled together, according to the opinions of the olde writers, whiche no doubte is a verye comfortable thing, and must nedes supple the skinne, and losen it from the flesh.

Of the diseases in the throte and lungs, and why the grieues of the shoulders and hippes be be not mentioned before amongst the grieues of the withers and backe.

The lxiiii. Chapter.

SOme perhappes would loke here that for so muche as I haue declared the diseases of the necke, wythers, and backe, that I should also follow on now, with the

griefes of the shoulders and hippes. But syth that such griefes, for the moste parte doe cause a horse to halt, and that it requireth some skill to know when a horse halteth, whether the fault be in his shoulder, hippe, legge, ioynte, or foote, I thinke it not good to seperate those partes a sunder, specially syth nature hath ioyned them together, that is to say, the shoulders to the forelegges, and the hippes to the hinder legges. And therfore according to natures order, I will treate of them in their proper place, that is to say, after that I haue shewed you all the diseases that be in the inwarde partes of a horses body, not onely aboue the midriffe, as the diseases of the throte, lungs, breast, and heart, but also vnder the Midriffe, as those of the stomacke, Lyuer, Guttes, and of all the rest. And first as touching the diseases of the throte, the Glaunders, and Stranguyllion, to all horses is most common.

Of the Glaunders, and Stranguyllion, so called according to the Italion name Stranguijlione.

The.lxx. Chapter.

Most Ferrers do take the Glaunders and Stranguylion to be all one disease, but it is not so, for the Glaunders is that which the Phisitians call Tonsille, and the Stranguylion is that which they call in Laten Angina, in Greeke Synanchi, and we commonly cal it in English, the Squinācy, or

or Quinzie Toncille is interpreted by them to be inflamations of the kirnelles called in Laten Glandes, in Italion glandule, whiche lye on eche syde of the throte, underneath the rote of the tongue, nigh vnto the swallowing place, of whiche worde glandes or glandule, I think we borrow this name Glaunders, for when the horse is troubled with this disease, he hath greate kyrnelles vnderneath his Jawes, easy to be seene or fealte, payning him so, as he can not easily swallow downe his meate, whiche commeth firste of colde distillation out of the heade. But if such kirnels be not inflamed, they will perhaps go away of them selues, or else by laying a little hote horse dong & straw vnto them, the warmth whet of will dissolue them, and make them to banische away. But if they be inflamed, they will not go away, but increase and waxe greater and greater, and be more paynefull euerye day than other, and cause the horse to caste continually filthy and stinking matter, out at his nose. The cure whereof according to Martin, is thus. First rype the kyrnelles with this playster. Take of Bzanne two handefull, or as much as will thicken a quart of wyne, or Ale: then putte therevnto halfe a pounde of Hogges greace, and boyle them together, and lay it hote to the sore with a clothe, remuing it euery day vntill it be ready to breake: then launce it and let out al the matter, and taynt it with a taynt of Flaxe, dipte in this salue. Take of Turpentyne, of Hogs greace, of eche like quantity, and a little waxe, and melt them together, and renue the taynt euery day vntill it be

whole. Laurentius Rusius sayth, that this disease is very cõmon to Colles, bycause in them doth abounde fluxible moysture, apt to to be dissolued with euery little heate, and so turne to putrifaction, and therefore if the horse be not ouer yong, he woulde haue you first to let him bloude in the necke vayne, and then to lay vnto the sore a ryping playster, made of Mallowes, Linseede, Rewe, Wormewood, ground Iue, oyle of Bayes, and Dyalthea, and to annoynt his throte also, and al the sore place, with fresh butter. And the sore being rype, to launce it, or else to rowle it, that the matter may come forth. But if the kirnelles will not decrease with this, then pull them away by the rootes, & to dry vp the vlcerous place with an oyntmente, made of vnslect Lyme, Pepper, Bryn stone, Nitrum, and oyle Oliue. It shall be good also to purge his heade by perfuming him euery day once, in suche sorte as haue bene before declared. And let the horse be kept warme about the heade, and stande in a warme stable, and let him drinke no colde water. But if you see that after you haue taken away the kirnelles, the horse doth not for all that leaue casting fylthy matter at the nose, then it is to be feared, ỹ he hath some spice of the mourning of the Chyne, for both diseases doe procede of one cause, and therefore I thinke good to speake of it here presently.

Of the mourning of the Chyne.

The .lxvi. Chapter.

This

This word mourning of the Chyne, is a corrupt name, borrowed of the Frenche tongue, wherein it is called Mort deschyen, that is to say, the death of the backe. Bycause many doe holde opinion, that thys disease doth consume the marye of of the backe, for remedy wherof, they vse straunge kinds of cures. For some taking it to be a Rheume, go aboute to stoppe it, by laying Astrictyue, or byndyng tharges, vnto the nape of the necke. Some agayne do twyne out the pyth of the backe with a long wyar, thrust vp into the horses heade, and so into his necke & backe, with what reason I knowe not. Well I knowe, that few horses do recouer that haue this disease. Some agayne thinke that the Lungs of the horse be rotten, and that the horse doth caste them out at his nose. But Martin sayth, that he hath cut vp dyuers horses which hath bene iudged to haue died of the mourning of the Chyne, but he coulde neuer finde eyther backe or Lungs to be perysshed, but onely the Lyuer, and most commonly that syde of the Lyuer, whiche aunswereth the nosetrill whereat he casteth, whereof we wyll talke in his proper place, when we come to speake of the diseases in the Lyuer. The Italians doe call this disease Ciambrro, the olde Authours do cal it the moyst Maladye, whereof Theomnestus maketh two differences. For in the one, the matter whiche he doth cast at the nose is whyte, and doth not smell at

all, and in the other, that whiche he casteth is a filthy and stinking corruption. They procede both of colde humors, congealed in the heade, but more abounding in the one, than in the other: by reason perhappes, that the horse was not cured in tyme: for of colde, first commeth the Pose, and the Cough, then the Glaunders, and laste of all the mourning of the Chyne. When the horse casteth matter at the nose, that is not stinking, he maye be easely cured, by such remedyes as haue bene before declared in the Chapter of the Pose. But if the matter be very filthye and stinking, then it is verye harde to cure. Notwithstanding it shall not grieue me to wryte vnto you here, the experience of Theomnestus, and of Laurentius Rufsius. Theomnestus cure is thus. Take of water and hony called of the Phisitians Hedromel, a quart, and put therevnto thre ounces of oyle, and poure that into his nosetril euery morning, ỹ space of thre dayes, and if that doe not profite him, then let him drinke euerye day, or once in two dayes, a quarte of olde wyne, mingled with some of the medicine, or rather the precious meat, called of the olde wryters Tetrapharmacum, and that will restore him to his former estate. Laurentius Rufsius sayth, that of all diseases there is none more perillous, nor more to be suspected, than the Rhewme whiche commeth of colde, for horses haue large Cundits, and are full of moysture, and therfore if colde encounter, it findeth matter inough to worke on, to breede continuall distillation, as well outwardlye at the nose, as inwardly, discending downe to the vital parts,

in such sorte, as it doth suffocat the saint. The sygnes accordyng to the sayde Rulsius be these. The horse doth cast matter continually at the nose some tyme thin, and sometime thicke, his nosetrils, eares, and all his outwarde partes, will be colde to the feeling, his eyes, head, and all his body heauy, and he will coughe, and haue smal appitite to his meat, and lesse to his drinke, and sometyme he will tremble and shake. His cure is in this sorte. Purge his heade, partly by perfuming him, and partly by making him to neese in such sort, as hath bene before taughte in the Chapter of the Pose, whiche waies of perfuming & purging the head, as they be good, so doth Rulsius praise these two here folowing to be most excellent. The first is this. Take of the stalkes of Vitis Alba, otherwyse called Brioni, or wilde Vine, two or three good handfull, and broose them betwixt two stones, and being so broosed, put them into a Linnen bagge, and fasten the bagge to the horses heade, so as he may receyue the scent vp into his nosetrilles, without touching the hearbe with his mouth, and this will cause the humors to come downe abundantlye. The seconde medicine. Take of Euforbiū beaten into fyne powder thre ounces, of the iuyce of Betes one pounde, of Swines blond halfe a pounde. Boyle all these together vntill they be thorowly myngled, & lyquid lyke an oyntment, and then take it from the fire, and put therunto one ounce more of Euforbium, and mingle them again thorowly together, and preserue the same in a boxe to vse at nedefull tymes, in this sort. Make two

styffe long rowles, or tampins, of linnen cloutes, or such lyke stuffe, sharpe poynted lyke Suger loues, which tampins are called of the Phisitians in Laten Pessi, and being annoynted with the oyntment afore sayde, thruste them vppe into the horses nosetrilles, and let them abyde therein a prety while, then pull them out, & you shall see such abundaunce of matter, come forth at his nose, as is marueilous to behold. Rusticus also prayseth very much this medicine here folowing. Take as much of the middle barke of an Elder tree, growing on the water side, as will fil a newe earthen pot, of a meane syse, putting there vnto as much cleare water, as the potte will holde, and let it boyle vntill the one halfe be consumed: & then to be fylled vp againe with fresh water, continuing so to do thre tymes, one after an other, and at the last time, that the one halfe is consumed, take it from the fyre, and straine it thorow a lynnen cloth. Then take two partes of that decoction, and one part of Hogges greace, or butter, and being warmed agayne together, gyue the horse to drinke thereof one horne full, and poure an other hornefull into his nosetrull that casteth, and when so euer you gyue him this medicine, letre the horse be empty and fasting, and kepe him without meate also two or three houres after. For this is a very good drinke for any sickneesse, that commeth of colde. Moreouer open the skinne of his foreheade, and of his temples, & also of his tayle, with a sharpe hote yron, that the corrupt humors may issue outward. That done, Take hote Bricks, or else a pan

of

freshe burninge coales, and holde it nighe vnto hys bellye, and flankes, to the intent they may be thorowly warmed, & being so warmed, annoynt them all ouer, with oyle de Bay, or Dialthea, to defende his body from the colde, and let his head be well couered, and all his bellye kepte warme. yea and it were good to bathe his heade sometime as Ruffus sayth with a bathe made of Rhewe, Wormewood, Sage, Jeneper, Bay leaues, and Hyssop. And lette his drynke be warme water myngled with wheat meale, yea and to make it the more comfortable, it were good as Ruffus sayth, to put therevnto some Cynamon, Synger, Galingale, and such hote spyces. And his meat in Winter season would be none other but sodden corne, or warme maches, made of ground Mault and wheate Branne: in Sommer season if he wente to grasse, I thinke it woulde doe him most good, so that he go in a dry warm ground, for by feding alwayes downeward, he shal purge his heade the better as Ruffus sayth. Thus muche of the Glaunders, & mourning of the Chyne. Nowe we will speake somewhat of the Stranguylion, according to the opinion of the old Authours, though not to the satisfaction perhappes of our Englishe Ferrets.

Of the Stranguylion or Squynancye.

The lxvii. Chapter.

The Stranguylion called of the Latens Angina, according to the Phisitians, is

an inflamation of the inwarde parts of the throte, and as I sayde before, is called of the Greekes Sinanchi, whiche is as muche to say in Englishe as a strangling, wherof this name Stranguylion as I thinke is deryued, for this disease doth strangle eyther man or beast, & therefore is numbred amongst the perillous and sharpe diseases, called of the Latens Morbi acuti, of which strangling the Phisitians in mannes body make foure differences. The first and worst is, when no part within the mouth, nor without, appeareth manifestly to be inflamed, and yet the patient is in great perill of strangling. The second is, when the inward partes of the throte onlye be inflamed. The thirde is when the inwarde and outward parts of the throte be both inflamed. The fourth is, when the Muskles of the necke are inflamed, or the inwarde ioyntes therof so loosened, as they strayten therby, both the throte, or weasand, or windpipe, for shorte breath is intident to all the foure kindes before recyted, and they procede all of one cause, that is to say, of some Colorick or bloudy fluxion, which commes out of the braunches of the throte vaynes into those partes, and there bredeth some hote inflamation. But nowe to proue that a horse is subiecte to this disease, you shall heare what Absirtus, Hierocles, and Vegetius and others doe say. Absirtus writing to his frende, a certayne Ferrer or Horsleache, called Aistoricus, speaketh in this maner. When a horse hath the strāguylion, it quickly killeth him, the sygnes wherof be these. His temples will be hollowe, his tongue will swell, & hang

out

out of his mouth. his heade and eyes also will be swollē, and the passage of his throte stopt, so as he can neyther eate nor drinke. All these sygnes be also confirmed by Hierocles. Moreouer Vegetius rendereth the cause of this disease, affirming, that it proceedes of aboundaunce of subtill blonde, whiche after long trauell, wil inflame the inwarde or outwarde muskels of the throte or wesand, or suche affluence of blonde may come, by vse of hote meates after great trauel, being so alteratiue, as they cause those partes to swell in such sorte, as the horse can neyther eate nor drinke, nor drawe his breath.

The cure accordíng to Vegetius, is in this sort. First bath his mouth and tongue well with hote water, and then annoynte it with the gall of a Bull, that done, giue him this drinke. Take of olde oyle two pounde, of olde wyne a quarte, nine Figges, and nine Leekes heades, well stampte and brayed together. And after you haue boyled these a whyle, before you strayne them, put therebnto a little Nitrum Alexandrinum, and giue him a quarte of this euery morning, and euening. Absirtus and Hierocles, woulde haue you to let him blonde in the palat of his mouth, and to poure wyne & oyle into his nosetrilles, and also to giue him to drink this decoction of Fygges and Nitrum, sodden together, or else to annoynt his throte within with Nitre oyle, and hony, or else with hony and Hogs dong myngled together, which differeth not much from Galen his medicine, to be giuen bnto man. For he sayth, that hony mingled with the powder of Dogges dong

that is whyte, and swalowed downe, doth remedy the Squinancye presentlye. Abstrtus also prayseth the oyntmente made of Bdellinum, and when the inflamation beginneth somewhat to decrease, he sayth it is good to purge the horse, by giuing hym wylde Coucumbre, and Nitre to drinke. Let hys meate be grasse, if it may be gotten, or else wet hay, and sprinkled with Nitre. Let his drinke also be luke warme water, with some Barly meale in it.

Of the Cough.

The.lxviii.Chapter.

OF Coughes some be outward, and some be inwarde. Those be outwarde whiche doe come of outwarde causes, as by eating a feather, or by eating dusty or sharpe bearded straw, and such lyke things: which tyckling his throte, causeth him to Coughe. You shall perceyue it by wagging and wrying his heade in his choughing, & by stamping sometyme with his foote, labouring to get out the thing that grieueth hun, and can not. The cure according to Martin is thus. Take a Willow wand, rowled throughout with a fyne Linnen clout, and then annoynte it all ouer with hony, and thrust it downe his throte, drawing your hande to and fro, to the intente it may eyther dryue downe the thing that grieueth him, or else bring it vp, and doe thys twice or thrice, annoynting at euery tyme the stycke with frech hony.

Of

Of the inwarde and wet Coughe.

The.lxix. Chapter.

F inwarde Coughes some be wet and some be dry. The wet cough is that, which commeth of colde, taken after some greate heate giuen to the horse, dissoluing humors, which being afterwarde congealed, doe cause obstruction and stopping in the lungs. And I cal it the wet coughe, bycause the horse in his coughing, will boyde moyste matter at his mouth, after that it is once broken. The sygnes be these. The horse will be heauy, and his eyes will run a water, and he will forsake his meate, and when he cougheth, he thrusteth out his head, and reacheth with great paine at the firste, as though he had a dry cough, vntill the Flegme be broken, and then he will cough more hollow, which is a sygne of amendment. And therfore according to Martins experience, to the intent the Flegme may breake the soner, it shall be necessarye to kepe hym warme, by clothing him with a double cloth, and by litteryng him vp to the bellye with freshe strawe, & then to giue him this drinke. Take of Barlye one pecke, and boyle it in two or three Gallons of faire water, vntill the Barlye begin to brust, and boyle therewith of brouised Lycoras, of Annis seedes, of Raysins, of eche one pounde, then straine it, and to that lyquor, put of hony a pynte, and a quarterne of Sugercandy, and keepe it close in a potte to serue

the horse therewith foure seuerall mornings, and cast not away the sodden Barly with the rest of the strayninges, but make it hote euery day to perfume the horse withall, being put into a bagge, and tyed to his heade, and if the horse will eate of it, it shall doe him the more good. And this perfuming in Winter seasō would be vsed about ten of the clocke in the morning, when the sunne is of some heyght, to the intent the horse may be walked abrode, if the sunne shyne, to exercyse hym moderately. And vntill hys coughe weare awaye, faile not to giue him warme water, with a little ground Maulte. And as his cough breaketh more and more, so lette his water euery day be lesse warmed, than other.

Of the dry Coughe.

The lxx. Chapter.

This semeth to come of some grosse and tough humor, cleauing harde to the hollowe places of the lungs which stoppeth the wind pipes, so as ỹ horse cā not easly draw his breath, & if it continue, it wyll eyther grow to the Purlick, or else breake his winde altogether. The sygnes be these. He wil cough both often, dryly, and also vehementlye, without voyding at the nose or mouth. The cure according to Martin, is in this sort. Take a close earthen potte and put therin, three pyntes of strong Vineger, and foure Egges, shelles and all vnbroken,

ken, and foure Garlick heades clene pilled & brou-
sed, and set the pot being very close couered, in some
warme dongehill, and there lette it stande a whole
night: and the next morning with your hand take
out the Egges, which will be so soft as sylke, & lay
them by, vntil you haue strayned the Garlycke and
Vineger thorow a fayre cloth, then put to that ly-
quor, a quarterne of hony, and halfe a quarterne of
Sugercandye, and two ounces of Lycoras, & two
ounces of Annis seedes, beaten all into fyne pow-
der. And then the horse hauing fasted all the night
before, in the morning betwixte seuen and eyght of
the clock, open his mouth with a corde, and whorle
therein one of the Egges, so as he may swallow it
downe, and then immediatelye poure in after it a
horne full of the foresayde drynke, being first made
luke warme, and then cast in an other Egge, with
an other horne ful of drinke, and so continue to do,
vntill he hath swallowed vppe all the Egges, and
dronke vp all the drinke: and then dryle him, and
couer him with warmer clothes thā he had before,
and bring him into the stable, and there lette him
stande on the bitte, at the bare racke, well littered
vp to the bellye, the space of two houres. Then vn-
bitte him, and if it be in Winter, offer him a hande-
ful of Wheaten straw, if in Sōmer, giue him grasse,
and let him eate no hay, vnlesse it be very well duf-
ted, and sprinckled with water, and giue him not
much thereof. And therfore you shall neede to giue
hym the more prouender, whiche also must be well
clensed of all filthe, and dust, and giue him no colde

water, the space of nine dayes. And if you perceyue that the cough doth not weare away, then if it be in Winter, purge him with these pilles. Take of larde two pounde layde in water two houres, then take nothing but the cleene fatte thereof, and stampe it in a morter, and thereto put of Lycoras, of Annis seedes, of Fenegreke, of eche beaten into powder three ounces, of Aloes in powder two ounces, of Agarice one ounce. Knede these together lyke paast, make thereof fiue balles, as big as an Egge. Then the horse hauing fasted ouer nighte, giue him the nexte morning these pilles, one after another, annointed with hony and oyle mingled together, in a Platter, and to the intente he may swallowe them downe whyther he will or not, when you haue opened his mouth, catch holde of his tongue, and holde it faste whilest you whorle in one of the pilles, that done, thrust it into his throte with a rowlingpinne, and then let his tongue go vntill he hath swalowed it downe: then giue hym in like maner all the rest of the pilles, & let him stande on the bit warme clothed, and littered the space of three houres at the least, and after that giue him a little wette hay, and warme water with a little grounde Maulte in it, to drinke, and lette him drinke no other but warme water, the space of a weke. And now and then in a fayre sunnye day, it shall be good to trotte him one houre abroade, to breath him.

Of the fretted, broken, and rotten lungs.

The .lxxi. Chapter.

This

This procedes as *Absirtus* and Theomnestus sayth, eyther of an extreeme coughe, or of behement running, or leaping, or of ouer greadye drinking after greate thirst, for the lungs be inclosed in a very thin film or skinne, and therefore easy to be broken, which if it bee not cured in tyme, doth growe to apposthumation, and to corruption, oppressing al the lungs, which of the olde Authors is called Vomica, and Supputatio. But Theomnestus sayth, that broken lungs, & rotten lungs, be two dyuers diseases, and haue dyuers sygnes, & dyuers cures. The sygnes of broken lungs be these. The horse drayweth his wind short, and by little at once, he will turne his heade often toward the place grieued, and groneth in his breathing, he is afrayde to coughe, and yet coughyeth as though he had eaten small bones. The same Theomnestus healed a frendes horse of his, whose lungs were fretyzed or rather broken as he sayth, by continual eating of salte, with this maner of cure here folowing. Let the horse haue quiet and rest, & then let him bloude in the haunches, where the vaynes appeare most: and giue him to drinke the space of seuen dayes, Barlye or rather Otes, soden in Goates mylke, or if you can get no milke, boyle it in water, and put therein some thicke Collops of Larde, and of Deares sewet, and let him drinke that: and let his common drinke in winter season, be the decoction of wheat meale, and in Sommer tyme, the

decoction of Barly, and this as he sayth will binde his lungs agayne together. Vegetius vtterlye disalloweth letting of blonde in any such disease as this is, and also all maner of sharpe medicins, for feare of prouoking the coughe, by meanes whereof the broken plates can neuer heale perfectly. And therfore neyther his medicins nor meate woulde bee harshe, but smouth, gentle, and cooling. The best medicine that may be gyuen him at all tymes is this. Take of Fengreke, and of Lynsede, of ech half a pounde, of Gum dragant, of Mastick, of Mirre, of Suger, of Fytch floure, of eche one ounce. Let all these things be beaten into fyne powder, and then infused one whole night in a sufficient quantity of warme water, and the next day giue him a quart of this luke warme, putting therevnto two or three ounces of oyle of Roses, continuing so to doe many dayes together, and if the disease be new, this will heale him. Yea and it will ease him verye muche though the disease be olde, whiche then is thought vncurable. And in winter season so long as he stãdeth in the stable, let him drinke no colde water, & let his meate be cleene without dust, but in Somner season it were best to let him run to grasse. For so long as he eateth grasse, a man shall scantly perceyue this disease: thus much of broken lungs.

Of putrified or rotten lungs.

The lxxii. Chapter.

The

The sygnes to knowe whether a horses lungs be putrifyed or rottē, according to Theomnestus, are these. The horse wil both eate & drink more gredily than he was wont to do, and he shall be oftner vexed with a dry cough, and in coughing he wil cast little lumps of matter out at his mouth. The cure wherof, according to Theomnestus, is thus. Giue him to drinke euery morning, the space of seuen dayes, the iuyce of Purllen mingled with oyle of Roses, and adde thervnto a little Tragagantū, that hath bene layde before in steepe in Goates mylke, or else in barlye or oten milke, strayned out of the corne. When the Apostume is broken, then a verye strong and euill sauour will come out at his nosetrilles. For remedy whereof, it shall be good to giue him the space of seuen dayes this drinke here folowing. Take of the roote called Costus two ounces, and of Casia, or else of Cynamon three ounces, beaten into fyne powder, and a fewe Raysins, and giue it him to drinke with wyne. But Vegetius woulde haue him to be cured in this sort, and with lesse cost, I assure you. Take of Franconcense, and of Aristoloch, of eche two ounces, beaten into fyne powder, and giue him that with wine, or else take of vnburnt Brimstone two ounces, and of Aristoloch one ounce and a halfe beaten into powder, and giue him that with wyne. And he would haue you also to draw his breast with a hote yron, to the intent that the humors may issue forth outwardly.

Of shortnesse of breath.

The.lxxxiii.Chapter.

A Horse may haue shortenesse of breath, by hastye running after drinking, or vpon a full stomacke, or by the discending of humors vnto his throte or lungs, after some extreme heate dissoluing the sayd humors, which so long as there is nothing broken, maye in the beginning be easilye holpen. The sygnes be these. The horse will continually pant, and fetch his breath shorte, which wil come very hote out at his nose, & in his breathing he will squese in the nose, and his flankes will beat thicke, yea and some can not fetch their breath vnlesse they holde their neckes right out, and straigth, whiche disease is called of the olde writers by the Greeke name Orthopnœa. The cure. Let him bloude in the necke, and giue him this drinke. Take of wyne, and of oyle, of eche a pynte, of Franconcense, halfe an ounce, and of the iuyce of Horehound halfe a pynte. It is good also to poure into his throte honye, butter, and Hogges greace molten together, & made luke warme. Tiberius sayth, it is good to giue him whole Egges, shelles and al, steeped and made soft in Vineger: that is to say, the first day three, the seconde day fyue, and the thirde day seuen, and to poure oyle and wine into his nosetrilles. I for my part would take nothing but Annis seedes, Lycoras and Sugercandy, beaten al into fyne powder,

gyue

giue him that to drinke, with wine and oyle, mingled together.

Of the Pursicke.

The.lxxxiii.Chapter.

This is a shortenesse of breath, and the horse that is so diseased, is called of the Italians, Cauallo pulsino, or Bolso, whiche I thinke is derined of the Laten worde Vulsus, by chaunging V. into B. and I thinke differeth not muche from him that hath broke lungs, called of Vegetius and other olde writers Vulsus, for suche shortenesse of breath commes eyther of the same causes, or else muche lyke, as of abundaunce of grosse humors cleauing harde to the hollowe places of the lungs, and stopping the winde pipes. And the winde beyng kepte in, doth resort downeward as Rusius sayth, into the horses guttes, and so causeth his flankes to beate cõtinually without order, that is to say, more swiftlye, and hyer vp to the backe, than the flankes of any horse that is sounde of wynde. And if this dysease be olde it is seldom or neuer cured, and though I finde many medicins prescribed by dyuers Authours, fewe or none doe contente me, vnlesse it be that of Vegetius, recyted before in the chapter of broken lungs. And if that preuaileth not, thẽ I thinke it were not amisse accordyng to Rusius to pourge him with this drinke here followyng. Take of mayden haire, of Ireos, of Athe, of Lycoras, of Fẽgreke,

of Raysins, of ech halfe an ounce, of Cardamum, of Pepper, of bytter Almonds, of Baurach, of ech two ounces, of Nettle seede, and of Aristoloche, of eche two ounces, boyle them all together in a sufficiente quantitie of water, and in that decoction dissolue halfe an ounce of Agaricke, and two ounces of Coloquintida, together with two pounde of hony, and giue him of this a pinte or a quart at dyuers times, and if it bee to thicke, make it thinner, by putting therunto water, wherin Lycoras hath bene soddē, and if nede be, you may also drawe both his flanks crossewyse with a hote Iron, to restrayne the beating of them, and also slytte his nosetrilles, to giue him more ayre. And if it be in Sommer, turne him to grasse, if in Winter, lette him be kept warme, and giue hym now and then a little sodden wheate. Rusius woulde haue it to be giuen him three dayes together, and also newe sweete wyne to drinke, or else other good wine, mingled with Licoras water.

Of a Consumption.

The. lxxv. Chapter.

A Consumption is none other thyng but an exulceration of the lungs, proceding of some fretting or gnawing humor, discending out of the head into the lungs. And I take it to be that disease whiche the olde writers are wonte to call the dry malady. Whiche perhappes some woulde rather interprete to be the mourning

mourning of the Chyne, with whom I intend not to stryue. But thus much I muste nedes say, that euerye horse hauing the mourning of the Chyne, doth continually cast at the nose, but in the dry maladye it is cleane contrary. For all the Authours that wryte therof affyrme, that the horse auoydeth nothing at the nose. And the sygnes to knowe the dry maladye according to their doctryne, be these. Hys flesche doth cleene consume away, his bellye is gaunt, and the skin therof so hard stretched, or rather shronk vp, as if you strike on it with your hand it will sounde lyke a Tabor, and he wyll be hollowe backt, and forsake his meate, and though he eateth it, (as Absirtus sayth) yet he doth not disgest it, nor prospereth not withall, he woulde coughe and can not but hickingly, as though he had eaten smal bones. And this disease is iudged of al the Authours to be incureable. Notwithstanding, they say all, that it is good to purge his heade with such perfumes as haue bene shewed you before, in the Chapter of the Glaunders, & also to gyue him alwayes Colewarts, smal chopt wyth his prouender. Some woulde haue hym to drinke the warme bloude of sucking Pigges newe slayne, and some the iuyce of Leekes, together with oyle and wyne myngled together. Others prayse wyne and Franconcense, some oyle and Rhew, some woulde haue hys bodye to be purged, and sente to grasse.

Of the Consumption of the flesh, and howe to make a leane horse fatte.

The lxxvi. Chapter.

Martin sayth that if a horse take a great colde after a heat: it will cause his flesche to waste, & his skin to ware hard & dry, & to cleave fast to his sides, and he shall haue no appetite vnto his meate, and the fillettes of his backe will fall away, and all the flesche of his buttockes, and of his shoulders, will be consumed. The cure whereof is thus. Take two sheepes heades vnfleaed, boyle them in thre gallons of Ale, or fayre running water, vntyll the flesche be consumed from the bones, that done, strayne it through a fine cloth, and then put thereunto of Suger one pounde, of Cynamon two ounces, of conserue of Roses, of Barbaries, and of Cheries, of ech two ounces, and mingle them together, & giue the horse euery day in the morning, a quarte thereof luke warme, vntill all be spent: and after euery tyme he drinketh, let him be walked vp and downe in the stable, or else abrode if the weather be warme, and not wyndye, and let him neyther eate nor drinke in two houres after, and let him drinke no colde water, but luke warme the space of fiftene dayes, and let him be fedde by little and little, with such meate as the horse hath moste appetyte vnto. But if a horse be nesche & tender, and so ware leane without anye apparant griefe or disease, then the olde wryters woulde haue him to be fed now and then with partched wheate, & also to drinke wyne with his water, and to eate continuallye wheate

branne

branne mingled with his prouender, vntill he wax strong, and he must be often dressed and trymmed, and laye soft, without the which thinges his meate will doe him but little good. And his meate must be fyne and cleane, and giuen him often, and by little at once. Russius sayth, that if a horse eating his meat with a good appetite, doth not for all that prosper, but is stil leane; then it is good to giue him Sage, Saunyn, Bay burryes, Earth nuttes, and Boares greace, to drinke with wyne: or to giue him the intrayles of a Barble or Tench, with whyte wyne. He sayth also that sodden Beanes mingled wyth bran and salte, will make a leane horse fatte in very shorte space.

Of grieke in the breast.

The. lxxvii. Chapter.

Laurentius Russius Wryteth of a disease called in Italian Granezza di petto, whiche hath not bene in experience amongst our Ferrers, that I can learne. It commes as Russius sayth, of the superfluity of bloud, or other humors dissolued by some extreme heate, and resorting downe to the breast, payning the horse so as he can not well goe. The cure wherof according to Russius is thus. Let him bloud on both sydes of the breast, in ỹ accustomed paynes, and rowel them vnder the breast, and twice a day turne the rowelles with your hande, to moue the humors that they may issue forth, and let

hym go so rowelled the space of .xb. dayes.

Of the payne at the harte called Anticor, that is to say contrary to the heart.

The.lxxviii.Chapter.

THis procedes of abundaunce of ranke bloud bredde with good feeding and ouer much rest. Which bloud resorting to the inwarde partes, doth suffocate the hart, and many tymes causeth swellings to appeare before the breast, whiche wil grow vpwarde to the necke, and then it killeth the horse. The sygnes. The horse will hang downe his heade in the maunger, forsaking his meate, and is not able to lifte vp his heade. The cure according to Martin, is thus. Let him bloude on both sydes abundantlye in the plat baynes, and then giue him this drinke. Take a quarte of Malmesy, and put therevnto halfe a quarterne of Suger, & two ounces of Cynamō, and giue it him luke warme. Then kepe him warme in the stable, stuffing him well aboute the stomacke, that the winde offende him no maner of way, and gyue him warme water wyth mault alwayes to drinke, and giue him such meate as he wil eate. And if the swelling do appeare, then besydes letting hym bloude, strike the swelling in dyuers places wyth your fleame, that the corruption may go foorth: and annoynt the place wyth warme Hogges greace, and that will eyther make it to weare away, or else to grow to a heade, if it be

couered

couered and kept warme.

Of tyered horses.

The.lxxix.Chapter.

Because we are in hande here with the vitall partes, and that when horses be tyered with ouer muche labour, their vitall sprightes wax feble, I thinke it best to speak of them euen here, not with suche long discoursing as Vegetius vseth, but briefly to shewe you howe to refresh the poore horse, hauing nede thereof, which is done chiefly by geuing him rest, warmth, and good feeding, as with warme maches and plentye of prouender. And to quicken his sprightes, it shall be good to poure a little oyle and Vineger into his nosetrilles, and to giue him the drinke of shepes heades, recyted before in the Chapter of the consumption of the flesh, yea and also to bath his legs with this bath. Take of Mallowes, of Sage, of eche two or three handfull, and a rose Cake. Boyle these thinges together, and beyng boyled, then put vnto it a good quantity of butter, or of Sallet oyle. Or else make him this charge. Take of bole Armony, and of wheate flower, of eche halfe a pounde, and a little Rosen beaten into powder, and a quart of strong vineger: and mingle them together, and couer all his legges therwith, and if it be in Sommer turne him to grasse.

Of the diseased partes vnder the mydriffe, and first of the stomacke.

The.lxxx.Chapter.

THe olde Authours make mention of many diseases incidente to a horses stomacke, as lothing of meate, spuyng vp his drinke, surfetting of prouēder, the hungry euyll, and such lyke, which fewe of our Ferrers haue obserued: and therefore I will briefly speake, of as many as I think necessary to be knowen, and first of the lothing of meate.

Of the lothing of meate.

The.lxxxi. Chapter.

A horse maye lothe hys meate through the intemperature of his stomacke, as for that, it is to hote or to colde. If his stomacke be to hote, then most commonlye it will eyther inflame his mouth, and make it to breake out in blisters, yea and perhappes cause some canker to breede there. The cure of all whiche thinges haue bene taught before. But if he forsake his meate onely for verye heate, whiche you shall perceyue by the hoteneſſe of his breath and mouth, then coole his stomacke by giuing him colde water mingled with a little vineger and oyle to drinke, or else giue him this drinke. Take of milke, and of wyne, of eche one pynte, and put

put therebnto thzee ounces of Mel Rosatum, and wash all his mouth with Vineger and salte. If his stomacke be to colde, then his haire will stare and stande right bp, which Absirtus & others were wonte to cure, by giuing the hozse good wyne and oyle to dzynke, and some woulde seeth in the wyne, Rhew, oz Sage, some would adde therebnto, white Pepper and Myzre, some woulde giue him Onyons and Roket seede to dzinke with wyne, some the bloude of a yong Sowe with wyne. Absirtus would haue the hozse to eate the greene blades of wheate, if the tyme of the yeare will serue foz it. Columella sayth, that if a hozse oz any other beast doe loth his meat, it is good to giue hym wyne, and the seede of Gith, oz else wyne and stampt Garlicke.

Of casting out his dzinke.

The.lxxxii.Chapter.

Egetius sayth that the hozse may haue such a Pawlsy pzoceeding of colde in his stomacke, as he is not able to kepe his dzinke, but many tymes do cast it out again at his mouth. The remedye whereof is to lette him bloud in the necke, and to giue him cozdiall dzinks, that is to say, made of hote and comfoztable spyces, and also to annoynte all his bzeast and bnder hys shoulders with hote oyles, & to purge his heade, by blowyng bp into his nosetrils, powders that pzouoke nesing, such as haue bene taught you befoze.

Of surfetting with glut of Prouender.

The.lxxxiii.Chapter.

THe Glut of Prouender or other meate not digested, doth cause a Horse to haue great payne in his body, so as he is not able to stande on his fete, but lyeth downe, & waltereth, as thoughe he had the Bottes. The cure whereof according to Martins experience is in this sorte. Let him bloude in the necke, then trotte him vp and downe for the space of an houre, and if he can not stale, drawe out his yarde, and washe it with a little white Wine luke warme, and thrust into his yard eyther a brosed Cloue of Garlicke, or else a little oyle of Camamill, with a wax Candle. If he can not doung, then rake his fundament, & giue him this glistre. Take of Mallowes two or three handful, and boyle them in a pottell of fayre running water, and when the Mallowes be soden, then straine it, and put therevnto a quarte of freshe Butter, and halfe a pinte of oyle Oliue, and hauing receyued this glister, leade him vp and downe, vntill he hath emptyed his bellye. Then set him vp and kepe him hũgry, the space of three or foure dayes, and the Hay that he eateth, let it be sprinckeled with water, and let him drinke warme water, wherein would be put a lyttle bran, and whẽ he hath dronke, giue him the bran to eat, and giue him little or no prouender at all, for the space of eight or tenne dayes.

Of

Of an other kinde of surfetting with meate or drinke, called of vs foundering in the body.

The.lxxxiiij.Chapter.

THis disease is called of the olde writers in Greeke Crithiasis, in Latine Hordiatio, it cõmeth as they say by eating of much Prouender, sodenlye after labour whyleſt the Horse is hote and panting, whereby his meate not being digested, bredeth euill humors, which by little and little do spreade throughe his members, and at length do oppresse all his body, and doe cleane take away his strength, & make him in such case as he can neyther go, nor bow his ioynts, nor being layde is able to rise againe, neyther can he stale but with great pain. It may come also as they say, of drinking to much in trauelling by the way when the horse is hote, but then it is not so daungerous, as when it commeth of eating to much. But how so euer it commeth, they say all, that the humors will immediatelye resort downe into the horses legs, & feete, & will make him to cast his houes: and therfore I must nedes iudge it to be no other thing but a plaine foũdering, which word foũdering is borowed as I take it of ỹ frẽch word Fundu, ỹ is to say moltẽ. For foũdering is a melting or dissolutiõ of humors, which the Italians cal infusione. Martin maketh diuers kinds of foundering, as foundering in the body, which the Frenche men

call most commonlye morfundu, and foundering in the legges, and feete, also foundering before, and foundering behinde, which some Autours do deny, as Magister Maurus, and Laurentius Rusius, affirming that there are fewer humors behinde than before, and that they can not easelye be dissolued or molten, being so farre distante from the hearte, and the other vital partes. Wherunto a man might aunswere, that the naturall heate of the heart doth not cause dissolution of humors, but some vnnaturall and accidentall heate, spred throughout all the members, whiche is dayly proued by good experience. For we see horses to be foundered not only before or behinde, but also of all foure legges at once, which most commonly chaunceth, either, by taking colde sodenlye after a great heate, as by standyng still vpon some colde pauemente, or abrode in the colde winde, or else for that perhaps the horse trauelyng by the way, and being in a sweate, was suffered to stande in some chowld water whilest he did drinke, which was worse than his drinking, for in the meane time the colde entring at his fete, ascended vpward, and congealed the humors which the heate before had dissolued, and therby when he cõmeth once to rest, he wareth stiffe and lame of all his legges. But leauing to speake of foundering in the legges, as well before as behind, vntil we come to the griefes in the legges and feete, we intende to talke here onely of foundering in the body accordyng to Martins experience. The signes to knowe if a horse be foundered in his body bee these. Hys

haire

haire will stare, & he will be chill and shrugge for colde, and forsake his meate hanging downe the heade, and quiuer after colde water, and after two or three dayes he will begin to coughe. The cure according to Martin is thus. First scoure his bellye with the glistre last mentioned, and then gyue him a comfortable drinke made in this sorte. Take of Malmesey a quarte, of Suger halfe a quartern, of hony half a quartern, of Cynamom halfe an ounce, of Lycorys and Annis seedes of ech two sponeful, beaten into fine powder, which being put into the Malmesey, warme them togither at the fire so as the hony may be molten, and then giue it him luke warme. That done walke him vp and downe in the warme stable the space of halfe an houre, and then let him stand on the bitte two or three houres without meate, but let him be warme couered & wel littered, and giue him hay sprinckeled with a little water, and cleane sifted prouender by little at once, and let his water be warmed with a little grounde Mault therin. And if you se him somewhat chered, then let him bloude in the necke, and also perfume him once a day, with a little Frankencense, and vse to walk him abrode when the weather is fayre and not windye, or else in the house if the weather bee foule, and by thus vsing him you shall quickly recouer him.

Of the hungry euill.

The.lxxxv.Chapter.

THis is a gredy desire to eate folowing some great emptinesse, or lacke of meate, and is called of the olde authours by the Greeke name. Bulimos, which is as much to say, as a greate hunger proceeding as the Phisitians say at the first of some extreme outward colde, taken by long traueling in colde barren places, and specially where snowe aboundeth, whiche outwarde colde causeth the stomacke to be colde, & the inwarde powers to be feeble. The cure accordìng to Absirtus and Hierocles, is in the beginning to comfort the horses stomacke, by giuing hym bread sopte in wyne, and if you be in a place of rest, to giue him wheate flower, and wyne to drinke, or to make him Cakes or Balles of flower and wine kneded together, and to feede him with that, or with wine and Nuttes of pyne trees. Hierocles sayth, if anye such thing chaunce by the way whereas no flower is to be had, than it shall be best to giue him wine and earth wrought together, eyther to drinke or else to eate in Balles.

Of the diseases in the Liuer.

The.lxxxvi.Chapter.

ALl the old Authours speake much of the payne in the Lyuer, but none of them doe declare wherof it cõmeth, or by what meanes, sauing

sauing that Hipocrates sayth, that some horses do get it by violent running vppon some stony or harde ground. I for my parte thinke that the Lyuer of a Horse is subiect to as many diseases, as the Lyuer of a man, and therefore may be payned dyuersly. As sometime by the intemperateneſſe of the same, as for that it is perhaps to hote or to colde, to moyst or to dry: sometime by meanes of euill humors, as Choler, or Flegme, abounding in the same, according as the Lyuer is eyther hote or colde: for heate breedeth Choler, and colde Flegme. By meanes of which intemperature proceedeth all the weakneſſe of the Lyuer. It may be payned also sometime by obstruction and stopping, and sometime by harde knobbes, inflamation, appostume, or vlcer bredde therein, sometime by consumption of the substance thereof. The sygnes of heate and hote humors be these, lothing of meate, great thirst and loseneſſe of belly, voyding dong of strong scent, & leaneneſſe of body. The sygnes of colde, and colde humors be these: appetite to meate without thirst, belly neither continually loose, nor stipticke, but betwene times, no strong scent of dong, nor leaneneſſe of body, by which kind of signes, both fyrst and last mentioned and such like, the weakeneſſe of the Lyuer is also to be learned and sought out. Obstruction or stopping moste commonly chaunceth by trauelling or labouring vpon a full stomacke, whereby the meate not being perfectlye digested, breedeth grosse and tough humors, which humors by behemence of the labour, are also driuen violently into the small vay-

nes whereby the Lyuer shoulde receyue good nutri-
ment, and so breedeth obstructiō and stopping. The
signes whereof in mannes body is heauinesse, and
distentiō, or swelling, with some griefe in the right
syde, vnder the short ribbes, and specially when he
labourech immediately after meate, which sygnes
I beleue if it were diligently obserued, were easye
inoughe to finde in a horse by his heauy going at
his setting forth, & often turning his heade to the
side grieued. Of an olde obstruction, and specially
if he humors be Choloricke, breedeth many times
a harde knob on the Lyuer, called of the Phisitians
Scirrhus, which in mans body may be felt, if the body
be not ouer fatte, and it is more easye for him to lye
on the righte side, than on the lefte, bycause that ly-
ing on the left side, the waight of the knob woulde
oppresse the stomacke, and vitall partes very sore,
by which sygnes me thinkes, a diligent ferrer may
learne, whither a horse hath any suche disease or
not. The inflamation of the Lyuer commeth by
meanes that the blonde eyther through the abun-
dance, thinnesse, boyling heate, or sharpnesse there-
of, or else throughe the violence of some outwarde
cause, breaketh out of the vaynes, and floweth into
the bodye of the Lyuer, and there being out of his
proper vessels, doth immediatelye putrifye, and is
inflamed, and therewith corrupteth so muche flesh-
ye substance of the Lyuer as is inbrued withall,
and therefore for the most parte the hollow side of
the Lyuer is consumed, yea and sometime the full
syde. This hote bloudye matter then, is properlye

calle

called an inflamation, which by naturall heate, is afterwarde turned into a plaine corruptiõ, and thẽ it is called an impostume, which if it break out & rũ, thẽ it is called an vlcer, or filthy soze. Thus you se, ỹ of one euil foũtaine may spring dyuers griefes, requyring dyuers cures. And though none of mine Authours, nor any other Ferrer that I know, haue waded thus farre, yet I thought good by wryting thus much, to giue such Ferrers as be wise, discrete, and diligent, occasion to seeke for more knowledge and vnderstanding than is taught them, and mee thinkes that it is a great shame, that the Ferrers of this age should not know much more, than the Ferrers of old time, sith that besides that, the old mens knowledge is not hidden from them, they haue also their owne experience, and time also bringeth euery day newe things to light. But now to procede in discoursing of the Lyuer according to the Phisitians doctrine as I haue begon, I say then of an inflamation in the hollow side of the Lyuer. The sygnes be these. Lothing of meate, great thirste, loosenes of belly, easy lying on the right side, & painfull lying on the left. But if the inflamation be on the full syde or swelling syde of the Lyuer, then the Patient is troubled with difficultye of breathing, with a dry Coughe, and grieuous paine, pulling & twitching the winde Pipe, and to lye on the right syde is more painefull than on the lefte, & the swelling also may be felt with a mans hand. But you must vnderstand by the way, ỹ all these things last mentioned, be the signes of some great inflamatiõ for smal inflamations haue no such sygnes but are

to be iudged only by griefe vnder the shoꝛt ribbes, and long featching of the bꝛeath. The sygnes of Appostumation is painefull, and great heate. The sygnes of Ulceration is decrease of the heate, with feablenesse & fainting. Foꝛ the filthy matter flowing abꝛode with euil vapours, coꝛrupteth the heart and many tymes causeth death. The sygnes of the consumption of the Lyuer, shall be declared in the next Chapter, and as foꝛ the curing of all the other diseases befoꝛe mentioned, experience muste firste teach it ere I can wꝛite it. Notwithstanding I can not thinke, but that suche things as are good to heale the like diseases in mans body, are also good foꝛ a hoꝛse, foꝛ his Lyuer is lyke in substaunce and shape to a mans Lyuer, differing in nothing but onely in greatnesse. And therefoꝛe I would wishe you to learne at the Philitians handes, whiche I am sure firste as touching the weaknesse of the Lyuer pꝛoceding of the vntemperatenesse therof, wyll bid you to heale euery suche vntemperatenesse by his contrary, that is to say, heate by colde, and dꝛynesse by moysture, and so contrary. And therefoꝛe it shall be very necessarye foꝛ you to learne the qualities, natures, and vertues of hearbes, dꝛugs, and all other simples, and howe to applye them in time. And foꝛ to heale the obstruction of the Lyuer, they will councel you perhaps to make to the hoꝛse, dꝛinkes of such simples, as these be, Agrimony, Fumitoꝛy, Camamill, Woꝛmewoode, Lycoꝛas, Annis seedes, Smallage, Perslye, Spicknard, Gentian, Succoꝛy, Endiue, Sperage, Lupius, the vertues

whereof

wherof you shal learne in the Herbals: but amõgst all simples, there is none more praysed than the Lyuer of a Wolfe beaten into pouder, & mingled in any medicine that is made for any disease in the Lyuer. The cure of an inflamation consisteth in letting bloude, and in bathing, or fomenting the sore place with such hearbes & oyles, as may mollifie & disperse humors abrode, wherewith some simples that be astringent, would be alwayes mingled, yea and in all other medicins that be applyed to the Lyuer, for any maner of disease. Simples that mollify and disperse be these. Linesede, Fengreke, Camamill, Annis seedes, Melilot & such like things. Simples astringent be these. Redde Rose leaues, Brimble leaues, Morremode, Plantayne, Myrrh, Mastick, Styrax, and suche like. Appostumes are to be ripped and voyded. Ulcers must be clensed, & scowred downeward, eyther by the belly, or by vrine, and therefore the vse of suche simples as prouoke vrine in such cases is necessary. The old writers of Horseleach crafte do saye, that when a horse is grieued in his lyuer, he will forsake his meate, & his body will wast, his mouth will be dry, his tong rough and harche, yea and it wyll swell, and he wil refuse to lye on that side where his griefe is. The cure whereof according to Absirtus is in this sorte. Let him drinke stampt Ireos with wine allayed with water. He prayseth also an hearbe much like vnto Calamynt called of Plinie Polimonia, or let him drinke Sauery with wine and oyle, I thinke that Agrimony or Lyuer wort is as good as the best of

them. Absirtus woulde haue his body to be chafed with wine and oyle mixte together, and to be well littered that he may lye softe, and his prouender that should be giuen him, to be stryped first in warm water, and nowe and then some Nytrum to be put in his drinke.

Of the consumption of the Lyuer.

The. lxxxvij. Chapter.

I Beleue that no inward member of a Horse doth suffer so muche, as the Lungs and Lyuer, and that not so much by continuall, as by vnordinate, and vntimely trauell, labor and exercise, whereby eyther the Horses Lungs or his Lyuer doe moste commonly periche, and is consumed, yea and sometyme both. Of the consumption of the Lungs, we haue talked sufficientlye before. Therefore let vs shewe you here the causes whereof the consumption of the Lyuer procedeth. The Phisitians say, that it maye come of anye humor, but chiefly and most commonlye of Choloricke matter, shead thorowout the substance of the Liuer, which putrifying by little and little, and layfurely doth at length corrupt, and periche all the substance of the Lyuer, which thing in mannes body doth first proceede as the Phisitians say, eyther by eating corrupt meates, or else by continual drinking of swete wynes. But me thinkes that the consumption of a horses Lyuer shoulde come by some extreme heate, infla-

inflaming the bloud, which afterwarde being putrifyed, doth corrupte and exulcerate the substance of the Lyuer. For after inflamation, as I sayde before commeth apostumation, and then exulceration which is very hard to cure, bycause the substãce of the Lyuer is spongious lyke vnto the Lungs, & whyleſt the Lyuer is so corrupted, there can be no good digestion, for lacke whereof the body receyueth no good nutriment, and therefore must nedes also languish and consume. The sygnes according to Martin be these. The horse wil forsake his meate, and will stande stretching him selfe in length, and neuer couet to lye downe, and his breath wyll be so strong as no man can abide it, and he will continually cast yealowishe matter at the one nosetrill, or elſe at both, according as one or both sides of the Lyuer is corrputed, and on that syde that he casteth he will haue vnder hys iawe, euen about the midst thereof a knob or kirnell as muche as a Walnut, which when Martin findeth, he committeth his carcasse to the Crowes, taking him to be past cure. But if he were let bloude in time and had such drinkes giuen him, as are good to comfort and strengthen the Lyuer, he thinketh that the horse might be recouered. I neuer red any medicine for the wasting of the Lyuer as I remember, but this onelye dyet, which I founde in an olde English booke. Let him drinke for the space of three dayes no other thing but warme wort, and let him eate no other meate but Otes baked in an Ouen, and let him stande meateleſſe the firſte night before you giue him the

wort. But I thinke it were not amisse to put into the worte that he drinketh, euery morning some good confection or pouder made of Agrimony, red Rose leaues, Saccharū Rosaceum, Diarchadon, Abbatis, Diasantalon, Lycoras, and of the Lyuer of a Woulfe, and such other simples as doe comfort & strengthen the Lyuer or else to giue him ỹ same things with Goates milke luke warme.

Of the diseases in the Gall.

The.lxxxvij. Chapter.

IN my opinion the Gall of a Horse is subiect to dyuers diseases as well as the Gall of a man, as to obstruction whereof commeth fulnesse and emptynesse of the Bladder therof, and also the stone in the Gal. But obstruction may chaunce two maner of wayes. First, when the way wherby the Choler should proceede, from the Lyuer vnto the Bladder of the Gall, as vnto his proper receptacle, is stopped, & thereby the Bladder remayneth empty, whereof may spring dyuers euill accidents, as vomiting, the laxe or bloudy Flyx. Secondlye when the way wherby such Choler should issu forth of the Bladder of the Gall, downe into the Guttes, is shutte vp, whereby the Bladder is ouer full, and aboundeth with to muche Choler, whiche causeth heauinesse, suffocatiō, belking, heate, thirst, and dispolition to angrynesse. The signes of both kindes

of

of obstruction in the Gall is costluenesse, and yealowishnesse of the skinne infected with the yeallow Jaundis. The stone in the gal which is somewhat blackishe, proceedeth of the obstruction of the cunduyts of the Bladder, whereby the Choloz being long kept in, wareth dzy, and turneth at length to harde grauell, oz stones, whereof bycause there is neyther sygnes, noz any grieuous accident knowē to the Phisitians, I leaue to talk any further therof, and the rather foz that none of my Authours do make any mention of the Gall at all. Notwithstāding to giue some lighte vnto the vnlearned Ferers, and that they may the better vnderstande the inwarde parts of a hozse, I thought good to wzite thus much, thinking it no tyme losse whyle I may profite them any way.

Of the diseases in the Splene.

The. lxxxix. Chapter.

The splene as I said befoze in the kepers office, is the receptacle of Melācholy and of the dzegges of the bloude, and is subiecte to the like diseases that the Lyuer is, that is to say to swelling obstruction, harde knob, and inflamation, foz the substaunce of the splene is spongious, and therfoze apt to sucke in all filth, and to delate it selfe, wherefoze being full, it must nedes swell, which will appeare in the left syde vnder the shozt rybbes, & such swelling causeth also shoztnesse of bzeath, and spe-

cially when the body doth labour or trauayle. It is painefull also to lye on the ryghte syde, bycause the splen being so swollen oppresseth the midriffe, and specially when the stomacke is full of meate, and the Pacient hath worse digestion than appetyte, & is troubled with muche winde, both vpwarde and downewarde. Moreouer the vapour of the humor doth offende the harte making it faint, and causeth all the body to be heauy and dull, and if such swelling be suffered to go vncured, then if it be a Melãcholy humor and abounding ouermuche, it waxeth euery day thicker and thicker, causing obstruction not onely in the vaynes, and artires, which is to be perceyued by heauynesse and griefe on the left syde, but also in the splen it selfe, whereas by vertue of the heate it is hardned euery day more and more, and so by little and little waxeth to a harde knob, which doth not onely occupye all the substance of the splen, but also many tymes all the lefte syde of the wombe, and thereby maketh all the euill accydentes or griefes before recited, muche worse than they were. Now as touching the inflamatiõ of the splen which chaunceth very seldom, for so much as euery inflamation procedeth of pure bloude, which seldome entreth into the splen: I shall not nede to make many words, but refer you ouer to the Chapter of the Lyuer, for in suche case they differ not, but proceeding of like cause haue also lyke sygnes, and do requyre lyke cure. The olde writers say, that horses be often grieued with griefe in the splen, and specially in Sommer season wyth gredy eatyng of

sweete

sweete greene meates, and they call those horses Lienosos, that is to say splenticke. The signes whereof (say they) are these, hard swelling on the left side, short breath, often groning, and gredy appetite to meate. The remedy whereof according to Absirtus, is to make the horse to sweate once a day during a certaine tyme, by ryding him or otherwyse traueling hym, and to poure into his lefte nosetrill euery day the iuyce of Mirabolaus mingled with wyne, and water, amounting in all, to the quantitye of a pynte. But me thinkes it would do him more good if he dranke it as Hierocles would haue him to do. Eumelius prayseth this drinke. Take of Cumyn seede, and of hony, of ech sixe ounces, and of Lacerpitium as much as a beane, of Vineger a pinte, and put al these into three quartes of water, and let it stande so all night, and the next morning giue the horse to drinke thereof, being kept ouernight fasting. Theomnestus prayseth the decoction of Capers, specially if the barke of the roote thereof may be gotten sodē in water to a Syrop, or else make him a drinke of Garlycke, Nytrum, Horehounde, and wormewode soden in harshe wine, and he would haue the lefte syde to be bathed with warme water, & to be harde rubbed. And if all this will not helpe, then to giue hym the fyre, which Absirtus doth not allowe, saying that the splen lyeth so, as it can not be easly fyered, to doe him any good. But for so much as the Lyuer and splen are members much occupyed in the ingēdring and seperating of humors, many euill accydents and griefes doe take their first beginning of

them,as the Jaũdis called in a horse,the yealows, dryneſſe of body,and conſumption of the fleſh,with out any apparaunt cauſe why,whiche the Phiſitians call Atrophia,alſo euill habit of the body called of them Cachexia,and the Dropſy. But firſt we wyll ſpeake of the Jaundis or yealows.

Of the yealows.

The.xc.Chapter.

The Phiſitians in mans body do make two kinds of Jaundis, that is to ſay, the yeallow proceeding of Cholor, diſperſed thorowe out the whole body, and dying the ſkin yeallow,and the blacke proceding of Melancholy diſperſed likewiſe thorowout the whole bodye, and making all the ſkinne blacke. And as the yeallow Jaundis commeth for the moſt parte eyther by obſtruction or ſtopping of the conduits, belonging to the bladder of the Gall, which (as I ſayde before) is the receptacle of Cholour, or by ſome inflamation of the Lyuer whereby the bloude is conuerted into Cholour,and ſo ſpreadeth thorowout the body: euen ſo the blacke Jaundis commeth by meanes of ſome obſtruction in the Lyuer vayne, that goeth to the ſplene, not ſuffering ỹ ſplene to do his office, in receyuing the dregges of the bloude from the Lyuer wherein they abounde to much, or elſe for that the ſplen is already to full of ſuche dregs, and ſo theadeth

deth them backe againe into the vaynes. But as for the blacke Jaundis they haue not bene obserued to be in horses as in men, by any of our Ferrers in these dayes that I can learne. And yet the olde writers of horseleach crafte, doe seme to make two kindes of Jaundis called of them Cholera, that is to say the dry Choloz, and also moyst Choloz. The signes of the dry Choloz as Absirtus sayth is great heat in the body, and costiuenesse of the belly, whereof it is sayde to be dry. Moreouer the horse will not couet to lye downe, bycause he is so payned in his body, and his mouth will be hote and dry. It commeth as he sayth by obstruction of ỹ conduit, wherby the Choloz should resorte into the bladder of the Gall, and by obstruction also of the vrine vessels, so as he can not stale. The cure accozding to his experience is to giue him a glister made of Oyle, water and Nytrum, and to giue him no prouender before that you haue raked his fundament, and to poure, the decoction of Mallowes mingled with sweete wyne into his nosetrels, & let hys meate be grasse, or else sweete hay sprinckled with Nytre and water, and he must rest from labor & be often rubbed. Hierocles would haue him to drinke the decoction of wilde Colewarts sodden in wine. Againe of the moist Choloz or Jaundis, these are the signes. The horses eyes will looke yeallow, and his nosetrilles wil open wyde, his eares and his flanks wil sweat, and his stale will be yeallow and Cholozicke, and he will grone when he lyeth downe, which disease the sayde Absirtus was wonte to heale as he sayth,

by giuing the horse a drinke made of Tyme & Comin of eche like quantity stampt together, & mingled with wyne, hony and water, and also by letting him bloude in the pastornes. This last disease seemeth to differ nothing at all from that which our Ferrers call the yeallows. The signes wherof according to Martin be these. The horse will be faint, and sweat as he standeth in the stable, and forsake his meate, and his eyes, and the inside of his lippes and all his mouth within wil be yeallow. The cure whereof according to him, is in this sorte. Let him bloud in the necke vayne, a good quantity, and thē giue him this drinke. Take of white wyne, or of Ale, a quart, & put therunto of Saffron, of Turmerike, of eche halfe an ounce, and the iuyce ꝑ is wrōg out of a great handefull of Selondine, and being luke warme giue it the horse to drinke, and kepe him warme the space of thre or foure dayes, giuing him warme water with a little branne in it.

Of the euill habit of the body and of the Dropsie.

The.xci.Chapter.

AS touching the dryneſſe and consumption of the flesche without any apparant cause why, called of the Phisitians as I sayd before Atrophia, I know not what to say more than I haue done already before in the Chapter of Consumption of the flesh, and therefore resorte thyther, and as for the euill habitte of the body

body which is to be euill coloured, heauy, dull, and of no force, strength, nor lyuelinesse, commeth not for lacke of nutryment, but for lacke of good nutriment, for that the bloud is corrupted with Flegme, Choler or Melancholy, proceding eyther from the splene, or else through weakenesse of the stomacke, or Lyuer, causing euill digestion, or it may come by fowle feding, yea and also for lacke of moderate exercyse. The euill habit of the body is nexte cosyn to the Dropsye, wherof though our Ferrers haue had no experience, yet bycause mine olde Authors wryting of horse leache craft do speake much therof: I thinke it good here briefly to shewe you their experience therein, that is to say, howe to knowe it, and also howe to cure it. But sith none of them do shew the cause wherof it procedes, I thinke it mete firste therefore to declare vnto you the causes thereof, according to the doctrine of the learned Philitians, which in mans body do make thre kinds of Dropsyes, calling the first Anasarca, the second Ascites, and the thirde Timpanias. Anasarca is an vniuersall swelling of the body throughe the aboundaunce of water, lying betwixt the skin and the flesche, and differeth not from the disease last mentioned called Cachexia, that is to say euyll habit of the body, sauing that the bodye is more swollen in this than in the Cachexia, albeit they procede both of like causes, as of coldenesse & weakenesse of the Lyuer, or by meanes that the heart, splen, stomacke, and other mẽbers seruing to digestiõ, be grieued or diseased. Ascites is a swelling in the couering of the belly called

of the Phisitians Abdomen, cõprehending both the skin, the fat, eyght Muscles, and the tylme or panicle called Peretoneum, throughe the aboundaunce of some wayish humor entred into the same, which besydes the causes before alleaged, proceedeth moste chiefly by meanes that some of the bessels within be broke or rather cracked, out of the which though the bloud being somwhat grosse can not issue forth, yet the wayish humor being subtill may run out into the belly, lyke water distilling through a cracked potte. Timpanias called of vs moste commonly the Timpany, is a swelling of the foresayde couering of the belly, through the aboundance of winde entred into the same, whiche winde is ingendred of crudity and euill digestion, and whylest it aboundeth in the stomacke, or other intrayles, finding no issue out, it breaketh in violently through the small conduits amongst the pannicles of the sayd couering, not without great paine to the patient, & so by tossing to and fro, windeth at length into the spare of the couering it selfe. But surely such winde can not be altogether voyd of moysture. Notwithstanding, the body swelleth not so muche with this kinde of Dropsye, as in the other kinde called Ascites. The sygnes of the Dropsye is shortnesse of breath, swelling of the body, euill Colour, lothing of meate, and great desire to drinke, and specially in the Dropsye called Ascites, in which also the belly will sound like a Bottle halfe full of water, but in the Timpany, it will sounde lyke a Tabor. But nowe though mine Authours make not so many kindes of Dropsyes,

yet

yet they say all generally that a horse is much subiect to the Dropsye. The sygnes according to Absirtus and Hierocles be these. His belly legges and stones, will be swollen, but his backe, buttockes, and flankes, will be dryed and shronke vp to the verye bones. Moreouer the vaynes of his face and temples, and also the vaynes vnder his tongue will be so hidden as you can not see them, and if you thrust your finger harde against his body, you shall leaue the printe therof behinde, for the flesche lacking naturall heate, will not returne againe to his place, and when the horse lyeth downe he spreadeth himselfe abrode not being able to lye rounde together on his belly, and the haire of his backe by rubbing will fall away. Pelagonius in shewing the signes of the Dropsye, not much differing from the sygnes of the Phisitians firste recited, seemeth to make two kindes therof, calling the one the Timpany whiche for difference sake may be called in Englishe the winde Dropsye, and the other the water Dropsye. Notwithstanding both haue one cure so farre as I can perceyue, whiche is in this sorte. Let him be warme couered and walked a good while together in the sunne to prouoke sweate, and let all his body be well and often rubbed alongst the haire, and let him fede often on Colewortes, Smallage, and Elming bowes, and of all other things, that may loosen the belly, or prouoke vrine, and let his common meate be grasse if it may be gotten, if not, then hay sprinckled with water and Nitrum. It is good also to giue him a kinde of pulse called Cyche, steeped

a day and a night in water, and then take out, and laye so as the water may drop away from it. Pelagonius woulde haue him to drinke Parslye stampte with wine, or the roote of the hearb called in Latin Panax, with wine. But if the swelling of the belly wil not decrease for all this, then slitte a little hole vnder his belly a handfull behind the Nauill, and put into that hole a hollow Reede or some other Pype, that the water or wind may go out, not all at once, but by little and little, and at diuers times, and beware that you make not ỹ hole ouerwide, least the Caule of the belly fall downe thereunto, and when all the water is cleane runne out, then heale vp the wounde as you doe all other woundes, and let the Horse drinke as little as is possible.

Of the diseases in the guttes of a Horse, and first of the Cholycke.

The.xcij.Chapter.

The Guts of a horse may be diseased with diuers griefes, as with the Cholicke, with Costiuenesse, with the Lare, with the bloudy Flixe, and wormes. The Cholick is a grieuous paine in the great Gutte, called of the Physitians Colon, whereof this disease taketh his name, which gut bicause it is very large, and ample, and ful of corners it is apt to receyue diuers matters, and so becommeth subiect to diuers griefes. For sometime it is tormented with the abundance of grosse humors, gotten

gotten betwixt the panycle of the sayde Gutte, and sometime with winde hauing no issue oute, sometime with inflamation, and sometime with sharpe fretting humors. But so farre as I can learne, a horse is most commonly troubled with the Cholick, that commeth of winde, and therof oure ferrers doe terme it the winde Cholyck. The sygnes wherof be these. The horse wil forsake his meate, & lye downe and wallow, and walter vpon the groũd, and standing on his fete he will stampe for very payne with his forefete, and strike at his belly with his hinder foote, and looke often towardes his belly, which also towards the flankes will swell, and seeme greater to the eie, than it is wont to be. The cure wherof according to Martin is in this sorte. Take a quart of Malmesye, of Cloues, Pepper, Cynamom, of eche halfe an ounce, of Suger halfe a quarter, and giue it the horse luke warme, and annoynt his flankes with oyle of Bay, and then bridle him, and trotte him immediately vppe and downe, the space of an houre vntill he dong, and if he will not dong, then rake him, and if nede be, prouoke him to dong, by putting into his fundament an Onyon pilled and iagged with a knife, crosse wise, so as the iuyce therof may tickle his fundament, and for the space of three or foure dayes let him drinke no colde water, and let him be kepte warme. Rusius was wonte to vse this kinde of cure. Take a good bygge Reede a spanne long or more, and being annointed with Oyle, thrust it into the horses fundament, fastning the outwarde ende thereof, vnto his tayle, so as it

eate not slippe out, and then hauing first annointed and chauked all ỹ hezses belly, with some hote oyle, cause him to be ridden somewhat hastely, vppe and downe some hilly ground, and that will make him to void the wind out of his belly, through the Rede, which done, let hym be kepte warme, and fed with good prouender & warme maches made of wheat meale, and Fenell sede, and let him drinke no colde water, vntill he be whole. Absirtus would haue you to giue him a glister made of wilde Coucumber, oz oz else of hennes dong, Nytrum, and strong wyne.

Of Costiuenesse, oz belly bounde.

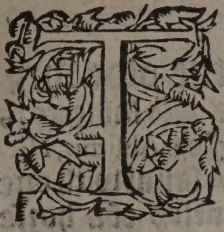
The xciij. Chapter.

COstiuenesse is when a hozse is bounde in the belly and cannot dong, which may come by glut of prouender, oz ouer much feeding and rest, wherof we haue talked sufficiently befoze, also by winde, grosse humozs, oz colde caulyng obstruction, and stopping in the Guttes. The cure wherof accozding to Martin is in this sozte. Take of the decoction of Mallowes a quarte, and put therevnto halfe a pinte of oyle, oz in stede thereof, halfe a pint of freshe Butter, and one ounce of Benedicte laxatiue, and poure that into his fundamente with a little hozne mete foz the purpose, that done clap his taile to his fundament, holding it so stil with your hand, whylest an other doth leade him in his hande, and trotte him vppe and downe, that the medicine may wozke

worke the better, and hauing voyded all that in his belly, bring him into the Stable, and there let him stande a while on the litte well couered, & warme littered, and then giue him a little hay, and let his drinke be warmed, it shal not be amisse also to giue him that night a warme mashe.

Of the Lare.

The.xciij. Chapter.



The Italians cal this disease Ragiatura, and the horse that hath this disease Cauallo arragiato, or Sforato. It may come through the abūdaunce of Choloricke humors discending from the Lyuer, or Gall, downe to the Guttes. But Rusius sayth, that it commeth most commonly, by drinking ouer muche colde water immediatelye after trouender, or by sodayne traueling vpon a full stomacke, before his meat be digested, or by hasty running, or gallopping immediatly after water. If this disease continue long it wil make the horse very weake, & feble, so as he shall not be able to stande on his legges. Notwithstanding sith nature feling hir self oppressed, endeoureth thus to ease hir selfe by expelling those humors that grieue hir, I would not wishe you sodaynely to stop it, least some worse inconuenience grow thereof. But if you see that the horse loseth his flesche, and waxeth more dull and feble than he was wonte to be, then giue him this drinke often experimented by Martin, and that shall

stoppe hym. Take of Bene flower, and of dole Armeny of eche a quarterne, mingle these things together in a quart of red wine, and giue it him luke warme, and let the horse rest and be kept warme, and let him drink no colde drinke but luke warme, and put therein a little Beane flower, and let him not drinke but once a daye, and then not ouer much for the space of three or foure dayes.

Of the bloudy Flixe.

The.xcv.Chapter.

IT seemeth by the olde writers that a horse is also subiecte to the bloudy Flixe. For Absirtus, Hierocles, and Democritus say al with one voyce, that the Guttes of a horse may be so exulcerated that he will voyde bloudy matter at his fundament, yea and that his fundament therewith will fall out, whiche disease they call Disenteria, which is as much to say, as a painefull exulceration of the Guttes, vnder the which the olde men, as it seemeth by the wordes of Hierocles and Absirtus, woulde comprehende the disease called of the Phisitians Tenesmus, that is to say a desire to dong often, and can doe but little, and that with great paine: And also an other disease called Procidentia ani, that is to say the falling out of the fundament, which the Phisitians do accoumpt as seuerall diseases. Notwithstanding for somuch as Disenteria and Tenasmus doth spring both of lyke causes,

causes, yea and also for that the falling out of the fundament hath some affinity with them, I wil followe myne Authours, in ioyning them all together in this one Chapter. The Phisitians make diuers kinds of bloudy flix. For sometime ỹ fat of the slimy filthe whiche is voyded, is sprinkled with a little bloude, sometyme the matter tha voydeth is mixte with the scrapings of the guts, and sometime it is wateriche bloude, like water wherein bloudy flesche hath bene washed, and sometime bloud myxt with Melancholy, and sometime pure bloud, and by the mixture of the matter you shall knowe in mans body whether the vlceratiõ be in the inner small guttes, or in the thicke outwarde guttes, for if it be in the inner guttes, then the matter and bloude wyll be perfectly mixt together. But if it be in the outwarde guttes, then they be not mingled together, but come out seuerally, the bloude most commonly following the matter. Of this kinde is that disease called before Tenasmus, for ỹ is an vlcer in the right gutte seruing the fundament, and doth procede euen as the Flix doth, of some sharpe humors which being violently driuen, and hauing to passe thorow many croked and narrow wayes, doe cleaue to the guttes, and with their sharpenesse frette them, causing exulceration and grieuous paine. The Flyxe may come also of some extreme colde, heate, or moystnesse, or by meane of receyuing some violent purgation, hauing therin ouer much Scamonie, or such like vyolent simple, or through weakenesse of the Lyuer, or other members seruing to digestion.

Nowe as touching the falling out of the fundament, the Phisitians say, that it commeth through the resolution, or weakenesse of the Muskles seruing to drawe vp the fundament, which resolution may come partly by ouer much straining, and partly they may be losened, by ouer much moysture, for whiche cause, childzen being full of moysture are more subiect to this disease than men. And for the selfe same cause I thinke that horses hauing verye moyst bodyes be subiect therevnto. Thus hauing shewed you the causes of the diseases before recited, I wil shewe you the cure prescribed by the old writers. Abstirtus would haue the fundament on the out side to be cutte rounde about, but so as the inwarde ring thereof be not touched, for that were daungerous and would kill the horse, for so muche, as his fundament woulde neuer abide within his body, & that done he would haue you to giue him to drinke the pouder of vnripe Pomgranet shelles, called in Latine Malicorium, together with wine and water, whiche in dede bycause it is astringent is not to be misliked, but as for cutting of the fundament I assure you I can not iudge what he shoulde meane thereby, vnlesse it be to wyden the fundament, by giuing it long slittes or cuttes on the out side, but wel I know that it may cause more payne, & greater inflamation. And therefore me thinkes it were better in this case to follow the Phisitians preceptes, which is first to consider whither the fundamēt being fallen out, be inflamed or not, for if it be not inflamed, then it shall be good to annoint it firste

with

with oyle of Roses somewhat warmed, or else to washe it with warme redde wyne. But if it be inflamed, then to bath it well, first with a sponge dipt in the decoctiō of Mallowes, Camamil, Lineseede, and Fengreke, and also to annoint it wel with oile of Camomill & Dill, mingled together, to asswage the swelling, and then to thrust it in againe faire and softly, with a softe linnen cloth. That done, it shall bee good to bath all the place about with red wine, wherin hath bene sodden Acatiū, Galles, Accorne cuppes, parings of Quinces, and suche lyke simples as be astringent, & then to throw on some astringent powder made of bole Armenye, Frankencense, Sanguis Draconis, Myrrh, Acatium, and such like. Yea and also to giue the horse this drink much praysed of all the olde wryters. Take of Saffran one ounce, of Myrrh two ounces, of the hearbe called in Latin Abrotanum, named in some of our English Herbals Sothernwod, three ounces, of Parslie one ounce, of Garden Rhew otherwise called herbe grace, three ounces, of Pirethum, otherwise called of some spittlewort, and of Isop, of eche two ounces, of Cassia which is like Cinamom, one ounce. Let all these things be beaten into fine powder, & then mingled with Chaulk, & strong Vineger wrought into a paste, of which paste make little Cakes, and dry them in the shadow, and being dryed, dissolue some of thē in a sufficient quantity of Barly milke, or iuyce, called of the olde wryters, and also of the Phisitians Cremor Ptisanæ, & giue the horse to drinke thereof with a horne: for this medicine, as the Au-

thours wrīte doth not onely heale the bloudy Flix, and the other two diseases before recited, but also if it be giuen with a quarte of warme water, it will heale all griefe and payne in the belly, and also of the Bladder, that cōmeth for lacke of staling. And being giuen with sweete wine, it will heale the byting of any Serpent or mad dogge.

Of the Wormes.

The.xcvi. Chapter.

In a horses guttes doe breede thre kinds of Wormes, euen as there doth in mans body, though they be not altogether lyke in shape. The first are long and rounde, euen lyke to those that children do most commonly voyde, and are called by the generall name wormes. The seconde are lyttle wormes hauing great heades, and small long tayles lyke an Edle, and be called Bottes. The third be shorte & thicke lyke the ende of a mans little finger, and therefore be called Troncheons: And though they haue dyuers shapes, according to the diuersity of the place perhappes wher they brede, or else according to the figure of the putrifyed matter whereof they brede, yet no doubt they procede all of one cause, that is to say of a rawe grosse and flegmatike matter apt to putrification, ingendred most commonly by fowle feeding, and as they proceede of one selfe cause, so also haue they like signes, & like cure. The signes

be

be these. The horse will forsake his meate, for the Tronchons and the Bottes will couet alwayes to the Maw & payne him sore. He will also lye downe and wallow, and standing he will stampe & strike at his belly with his hinder foote, and loke often towarde his belly. The cure according to Martin is thus. Take of swete milke a quarte, of hony a quarterne, and giue it him luke warme, and walke him vp and downe for the space of an houre, and so lette him rest for that day, with as little meate or drinke as may be, and sucker him not to lye downe. Then the next day giue him this drinke. Take of herbe grace a handefull, of Sauine as muche, and being well stampt, put therevnto a little Brimstone, and a little foote of a Chimney beatē into fyne powder, and put all these things together in a quarte of worte or newe Ale, and there lette them lye in steepe the space of an houre or twoo, then strayne it well through a fayre cloth, and giue it the horse to drinke luke warme, then bridle him, and walke him vp and downe the spate of an houre, that done bring him into the Stable, and let him stande on the bitte two or three houres, and then giue him a little hay. Laurentius Russius sayth, that it is good to giue the horse the warme guttes of a yong Henne, with a little salte three dayes together in the morning, and not to let him drinke vntill it be Noone. Some say that it is good to ryde him hauing hys vpt first annointed with dong, comming hote from the man. Some agayne vse to giue him a quantity of Brimstone, and halfe as much Rosen beaten in-

to powder & mingled together with his pronender, which he must eat a good while before he drinketh.

Of the payne in the kidneyes.

The .xcvij. Chapter.

Me thinkes that the kidneys of a horse shoulde be subiecte to as many griefes as the kydneys of a man, as to inflamation, obstructiō, Impostumes, and Vlcers, and specially to obstruction, that commeth by meanes of some stone or grauel gathered together in the kidneys, wherby the horse cannot stale but with payne, for I haue sene diuers horses my selfe that haue voyded much grauell in their stale, which without doubt did come from the kidneys, but my Authours doe referre such griefes to the bladder, & vrine, and write of no disease but onelye of the inflamation of the kidneys, whiche is called of them Nephritis, and so is it also called of the Phisitians. It commeth as they say by some great straine in leaping ouer some ditch, or else by bearing some great burthen. The sygnes whereof be these. The horse will go rolling behinde and staggering, his stones will shrinke vp, and his stale wil be blackishe and thicke. I thinke this disease differeth not from that which we called before the swaing of the backe, when we talked of the griefes in the backe and loynes, and therfore resorte thither. The cure of this disease according to the best of the olde

olde writers is in this sorte. Bath his backe and loynes, with wyne, oyle, and Mytrum, warmed together, and after that you haue so bathed him, let him be couered with warme clothes, and stand littered vp to the belly with strawe, so as he may lye softe, and giue him such drinkes as may prouoke vrine, as those that be made with Dil, Fenell, Annis, Smallage, Perslie, Spicknard, Myrrh, & Cassia. Some say it is good to giue him a kinde of pulse called Cyche, with wine. Some againe do prayse Ewes milke, or else Oyle and Deres sewet molten together to be giuen him to drinke, or the roote of the herbe called Asphodelus englyshed by some Daffadill sodden in wine.

Of the diseases belonging to the Bladder and vrine of a horse.

The xcviij. Chapter.

Herocles sayth that a horse is subiect to three kindes of diseases incident to the bladder or vrine, the first is called Stranguria, the seconde Disuria, the thirde Ischuria. Stranguria otherwise called in Latine Stillicidium, and of our olde Ferrers accoording to the French name Chovvdepis, is when the horse is prouoked to stale often, and voydeth nothing but a fewe droppes, whiche commeth as the Phisitians say eyther through the sharpnes of the vrine, or by some exulceration of the bladder, or else by meanes of some Appostume in the Lyuer or kidneys, which

Apposteume being broke, the matter resorteth down into the bladder, and with the sharpenesse thereof causeth a continuall prouocation of pissing. Disuria is when the horse can not pisse but with great labour and paine, which for difference sake I wil call from henceforth the paynepisse. It may come some time through the weakenesse of the bladder, & colde intemperature thereof, and sometime through the abundaunce of Flegmaticke, and grosse humors, stopping the necke of the bladder. Ischuria is when the horse can not pisse at all, and therefore may be called the pissuppresse, or suppression of vrine whether you will: me thinkes alwayes the shorter a proper name be, the better, and more easy to pronounce. It may come as the Phisitians say, by weakenesse of the bladder, or for that the water cõduit is stopte with grosse humors, or with matter discending from the Lyuer or kidneys, or with the stone, yea and sometymes by meanes of some inflamation, or hard knob growing at the mouth of the Conduit, or for that the sinewes of the bladder is nummed, so as the bladder is without feeling: or it may come by retention, and long holding of the water, most of whiche causes Hierocles also reciteth, adding therbnto, that it may chaunce to a Horse through ouer much rest and Idlenesse, and also by meanes of some extreme cold, and specially in winter season, for the which the warmth of fire is a present remedy. But now mine Authours do not shew for euery one of these three kindes of diseases seuerall signes, but onely say that when a horse can not

stale

stale, he will stande as though he woulde stale, and thrust out his yarde a little, and also for very paine stande beating his taile betwixt his thighes. Neyther do they seeme to appoint seuerall cures, but do make a hochepot mingling them al together, some of them praysing one thing, and some an other, for some saye it is good to mingle the iuyce of Leekes with sweete smelling wine and oyle together, and to poure that into his right nosetryll, and then to walke him vp and downe vpon it, and that will make him to stale. Some say it is good to giue him smallage sede, or else the roote of wilde Fenell, sodden with wine to drinke, or to put fiue sharpe Onyons, cleane pilled, and somewhat brouſed into his fundament, and to chauſe him immediatelye vpon it, eyther by ryding him or other wyſe, & that shall cauſe him to stale presently. It is good also to bath al his backe and Loynes wyth warme water. The scrapinges of the inwarde parts of his owne houes beatē into powder, and mingled with wine, and poured into his ryght nosetryll will make him to stale if you chauſe him vpon it, and the rather as Hierocles saith, if you carry him to some shepes coate, or other place where sheepe are wont to stande, the smell of whose dong and pisse, without any other medicine as he sayth, will prouoke him to stale. Some will gyue the horse white dogs dong dryed and mingled with salt, wine, & Amoniacum to drinke, some Hogs dong onely with wine, & some the dregges of horsepisse with wine, and many other medicins whiche I leaue to reherse for feare of being to

tedious, and specially, sith Martins experience folo-weth here at hande, agreing in all pointes with Laurentius Rusius cure which is in this sorte. First drawe out his yarde and wash it well in white wyne, and scoure it well, bycause it will be many tymes stopped with dirt, and other baggage together, & hardned like a stone, and then put a little oyle of Camomill into the Cunduit with a waxe Candle and a brouled cloue of Garlicke, and that will prouoke hym to stale. And if that will not helpe, then gyue him this drinke. Take of Perlly two handefull, of Coriandre one handfull, stampe them and straine them with a quarte of whyte wyne, & dissolue therin one ounce of cake sope, and gyue it luke warme vnto the horse to drinke, and kepe him as warme as may be, and let him drinke no colde water for the space of fiue or sixe dayes, and when you would haue him to stale, lette it be eyther vpon plentye of strawe, or vpon some grene plotte, or else in a sheps coate, the sauor whereof will greatly prouoke hym to stale as hath bene afore sayde.

Of pissing bloude.

The.xcix.Chapter.

Elagonius sayth, that if a horse be ouer much laboured, or ouer charged with heauy burthen, or ouer fat, he will many tymes pisse bloude, and the rather as I thinke, for that some vayne is broken within the horses body,

body, and then clere bloude will come forth many tymes, as the Phisitians say, without any pisse at all. But if the bloud be perfectly mingled together with his stale, then it is a sygne that it commeth from the kidneys, hauing some stone therin, which through behement labour, doth fret the kydneys & baynes thereof, & so causeth them to blede, through which whylest the vrine passeth muste nedes be infected, & dyed with the bloud. It may come also by some stroke, or from the muscle that incloseth the necke of the bladder. The cure according to Pelagonius, Absirtus, Hierocles, and the rest, is thus. Let the horse bloud in ꝑ Palat of the mouth, to conuert the bloud ꝑ cõtrary way. Then take of Tragagãt that haue bene steeped in wyne, halfe an ounce, and of Popy seede one dram and one scruple, and of Styrax as muche, and .xij. Pyneaple kyrnels. Let all these things be beaten and mingled well together, and giue the horse therof euery morning the space of seuen dayes, the quantity of a Hasell nut distempered in a quart of wyne, me thinks that the quantitye of a Walnut were to little for so muche wine. Some write that it is good to make him a drinke with the roote of the herbe Asphodelus, which some call Daffadyll mingled with wheat flower, & Sumach sodden long in water, and so to be giuen the horse with some wyne added therebnto, or make him a drinke of Goates milke and Oyle, strayning therebnto a little Fromenty. Anatolius sayth, that it is good to giue the Horse three dayes together, sodden Beanes cleane pilled, wherebnto would be

added some Beres sewet and a little wyne.

Of the Colt euill.

The.C.Chapter.

This name Colt euill in my iudgement, doth properly sygnifye that disease which the Philitians call Priapismus, which is a continuall standing together, with an vnnaturall swelling of the yard proceeding of some winde, filling the artiers, and hollow synewe or pype of the yarde, or else through the abūdance of sede, which do chaūce oft tymes to man, and I thinke sometime to stoned horses. Notwithstāding Martin sayth, that the Colt euill is a swelling of the sheathe of the yarde, and the part of the belly there about, caused of corrupte seede, comming oute of the yarde, and remayning within the sheath where it putrifyeth. And Geldings moste commonly are subiect to this disease, not being able for laeke of naturall heate, to expell their seede any further. For horses as Martin sayth, are seldome troubled with this disease bycause of their heate, vnlesse it be when they haue bene ouer trauayled, or otherwise weakened. The cure according to him is thus. Washe the sheath cleane within with luke warme Vineger, then drawe out his yarde, and washe that also. That done, ryde him into some running streame vppe to the belly, tolling him therein to and fro to allay the heate of the mebers,

bers, and vse him thus two or three dayes and he shalbe whole.

Of the mattering of the yarde.

The.Ci.Chapter.

IT commethe at couering tyme when the Horse & Mare both are ouer hote, and so perhaps burn them selues. The cure according to Martin is thus. Take a pinte of whyte wyne, and boyle therein a a quarterne of roche Alome, and squirt thereof into his yearde three or foure squirtfull, one after an other, and thrust the squyrt so farre in as the lyquor may perce to the bottom to scoure away the bloudy matter, continuing thus to doe once a day vntyll he be whole.

Of the sheading of seede.

The.Cij.Chapter.

THis disease is called of the Phisitians Gonorrhea, which may come some tyme through abundaunce and ranckenesse of seede, & sometyme by the weakenesse of the stones, and seede vessels not able to retayne the seede, vntill it be digested, and thickned. Vegetius sayth that this disease wil make the horse very faint and weake, & specially in sommer season for cure wherof the sayd Vegetius would

haue the horse to be ridden into some colde water, euen vp to the belly, so as his stones may be couered with water, and then his fundament being first bathed with warme water or oyle, he woulde haue you to thruste in your hande and arme euen to the very bladder, and softly to rubbe and clawe ỹ same, and the partes there aboutes whiche be the seede vessels. That done to couer him warme that he take no colde, and euery day he woulde haue you to giue the horse Hogges dong to drinke with red wyne, vntil he be whole. I for my part, if I thought that it came of weakenesse as is afore sayde, which I would iudge by the waterishnesse of the seede, & vnlustinesse of the horse, would giue him red wine to drinke, and put therein a little Acatium, the iuyce of Plantain, and a little Mastick, & bath his backe with red wine, & oyle of Roses mingled together.

Of the falling of the Yarde.

The. Cix. Chapter.

IT commeth as I take it throw the weakenesse of the member, by meanes of some resolution in the muscles & synewes seruing the same, caused at the first (perhaps) by some great straine or strype on the backe. It may come also by wearynesse and tyering. For remedy whereof Absirtus was wonte to washe the yarde with salte water from the Sea if it might be gotten, if not, wyth water and salt, and if that preuayled not, he would

all

all to pricke the outmost skinne of the yarde wyth a sharpe nedle, but not deepe, and then washe all the prickes with strong Vineger, and that did make the horse as he sayeth to draw vp his yarde againe immediately, yea and this also will remedy the falling out of the fundament. Pelagonius would haue you to put into the pype of his yarde, hony and salte boyled together and made lyquid, or else a quicke flye, or a graine of Franconsence, or else a cloue of Garlicke clene pilled, and somewhat brouled, and also to poure on his backe Oyle, Wyne, and Nytre, made warme & mingled together. But Martins experience is in this sort. First wash the yarde with warme whyte wyne, & then annoynt it with oyle of Roses, & hony mingled together, and put it vp into the sheath, and make him a Codpiece of Cannas to kepe it still vp, and dresse him thus euery day once, vntill he be whole. And in any case let his backe be kept warm, eyther wyth a double cloth, or else with a charge made of bole Armeny, Egges, wheate flower, Sanguis Draconis, Turpentyne, and Vineger, or else lay on a wet sack, which being couered with an other dry cloth wil kepe his backe very warme.

Of the swelling of the Codde and stones.

The. Cxiij. Chapter.

Absirtus sayth that the inflamatiō and swelling of the Cod and stones, commeth by meanes of some wound, or by the stinging of some Serpent, or by fighting one horse with an o-

ther. For remedy whereof, he was wonte to bath the Cod with water, wherein had bene sodden the rootes of wilde Coucumber and salte, and then to annoynt it with an oyntmente made of Cerusa, oyle, Goates greace, and the whyte of an Egge. Some againe would haue the Cod to be bathed in warme water, Nytrum, and Vineger mingled together, and also to be annoynted with an oyntment made of Chaulke, or of potters earth, Ore dong, Cumyn, water and vineger, mingled together, or else to be annoynted with the iuyce of the hearb Solanum, called of some nighte shade, or with the iuyce of hum-blocke growing on dong hilles, yea & also to be let bloude in the flankes. But Martin sayth, that ỹ swelling of the Coddes commeth for the most part, after some sickneſſe, or surfeyting with colde, and then it is a sygne of amendment. The cure according to his experience is in this sorte. First let him bloude on both sydes the flanke baynes. Then take of oyle of Roses, of Vineger, of eche halfe a pinte, and halfe a quarterne of bole Armonie, beaten into pouder. Mingle them together in a Cruse, and being luke warme, annoynt the Coddes therewith with two or three feathers bound together, and the nexte day ryde him into the water, so as his Coddes may be within the water, giuing him two or three turnes therein, and so returne fayre and softely to the stable, and when he is dry annoynt hym againe as before, continuing thus to do euery day once vntill he be whole. The sayde Martin sayth also that the Coddes may be swollen by meanes of some hurt or

euill

euil humors reſorting vnto the Codde, and then he would haue you to couer the Coddes, with a charge made of bole Armeny and vineger wrought together, renuing it euery day once vntill the ſwelling go away, or that it breake of it ſelfe, and if it breake, then taint it with Mel Roſatum, & make him a breche of Canuas to kepe it in, renuing ỹ taint euery day once vntill it be whole.

Of incording or burſting.

The.Cv.Chapter.

This tearme incording is borowed of the Italion worde Incordato, whiche in playne Englyſhe is as much to ſay as burſten, and myght be more rightly termed of vs incodded. For when a horſe is burſten, his Gutte falleth downe into the Codde, making it to ſwell. The Italians as I take it did call it Incordato, bycauſe the gutte followes the ſtring of the ſtone called of them Il cordone, or Lachorda, whereof incordato ſemes to be deryued with ſome reaſon. Accoording to which reaſon we ſhould call it rather inſtringed than incorded. Notwithſtanding ſyth that incoording is alredy receyued in the ſtable. I for my part am very well content therewith, minding not to contend againſt it. But now you haue to note, that eyther man or beaſt may be burſten dyuerſlye, and accoording to the names of the partes grieued. The Phiſitians doe giue it diuers names, for you ſhall

vnderstand, that next vnto the thicke outwarde skin of the belly, there is also an other inward thin skin couering all the Muskles, the Caule, and the guts of the belly, called of the Anotomists, Peritoneum, which skin commeth from both sydes of the backe, and is fastened to the midryffe aboue, and also to the bottom of the belly beneath, to kepe in all the contentes of the neather belly. And therefore if this skin be broken, or ouer sore strayned or stretched, then eyther some parte of the Caule or Guttes slippeth downe, sometime into the Codde, sometyme not so farre. If the gut slippe downe into the Cod, then it is called of the Phisitians by the Greke name Enterocele, that is to say Gutte bursten. But if the Caule fall downe into the Codde, then it is called of the Phisitians Epiplocele, that is to say Caule bursten. But eyther of these diseases is moste properly incident to the male kinde, for the Femall kind hath no Cod. Notwithstanding, they may be so bursten, as eyther Gut or Caule may fall downe into their natures, hanging there lyke a bagge. But if it fal not downe so lowe, but remayneth aboue nygh vnto the priuy members or flankes, which place is called of the Latins Inguen, then of that place the bursting is called of the Phisitians Bubonocele, whereunto I knowe not what English name to giue, vnlesse I shoulde call it flanke burSten. Moreouer the Codde or flanke may be sometime swollen, by meanes of some waterish humor, gathered together in the same, which is called of the Phisitians Hydrocele, that is to say water burSten, and sometyme the

Cod

Cod may be swollen, by meanes of some hard piece of flesche cleauing to the thin skinnes or panicles of the stones, and then it is called of the Phisitians Sarcocele, that is to say flesh bursten. But for asmuch as none of mine Authours, Martin, nor any other Ferrer in these dayes that I know, haue intermedled with any kinde of bursting, but onely with that wherin the gutte falleth downe into the Cod: leauing all the rest aparte, I will onely talke of this. And that according to Martins experience whiche I assure you differeth not much from the precepts of the olde writers. But first you shall vnderstande, that the gut bursten, and flanke bursten, doth proceede both of one cause, that is to say, by meanes that the skin called before Peritoneum, is eyther sore strayned, or else broken, eyther of which things doe most commonly chaunce to horses, eyther by some strype of an other horse, or else by some strayne in leaping ouer a hedge, ditch, or pale, or otherwise, yea and many tymes in passing a carter, throughe the vndiscretenesse of the Ryder, stopping the horse sodenly without giuing him any warning, wherby the horse is forced to cast his hinder legges abrode, and so strayneth or bursteth the skin aforesayde, by meanes whereof the gutte falleth downe into hys Codde. The signes be these. The horse will forsake his meat, and stand shoring and leaning alwayes on that syde that he is hurt, and on that syde if you searche with your hande, betwixt the stone and the thyghe vpwarde to the body, and somewhat aboue the stone, you shal finde the gutte it selfe bigge and

harde in the feeling, whereas on the other side you shall finde no suche thing. The cure according to Martin is thus. Bring the horse into some house or place that hath ouer head a strong bawk, or beame going ouertwhart, and strow that place thick with strawe. Then put on foure passornes with foure rynges on his feete, and fastning the one ende of a long rope to one of those rynges, threde all the other rings with the lose ende of the rope, & so draw all his forefete together, and cast him on the straw. That done, caste the rope ouer the bawke, & hoyse the horse so as he may lye flatte on his backe, wyth his legges vpward without strugling. Then bath his stones wel with warme water and butter molten together, & the stones being somewhat warme, and wel molified, raise them vp from the body with both your handes being closed by the fingers faste together, and holding the stones in your handes in such maner, worke downe the gut into the body of the horse, by stryking it downewarde continually wyth your two thombs, one labouring immediately after an other, vntyll you perceyue that syde of the stone to be so small as the other, and hauing so discorded, that is to say returned the gutte into his right place. Take a liste of two fingers brode thorowly annointed with fresh butter, & tye his stones both together with the same so nighe the body as may be, not ouer harde, but so as you may put your finger betwixt. That done, take the horse quietly downe, and leade him fayre and softly into the stable, wheras he must stande warme, & not be sturred

for

for the space of three weekes. But forget not the nexte day after hys discording to vnloosen the liste, and to take it away, and as well at that time, as euery day once or twice after, to caste a dishe or two of colde water vppe into his Coddes, and that will make hym to shrinke vp his stones, and therby restraine the gut from falling downe, and at the three wekes ende to be sure: it were not amisse to gelde the stone on that syde away, so shall he neuer be inforded againe on that syde. But let him not eate much, nor drinke muche, and let his drinke be alwayes warme.

Of the botch in the graynes of a horse.

The. Cvi. Chapter.

IF a horse be full of humors, and then sodenly laboured, the humors will resort into the weakest parts, and theyr gather together, and brede a botch, and specially in the hinder partes, betwixte the thighes not farre from the Coddes. The signes be these, The hinder legges wil be all swollen, and specially from the houghes vpward, and if you fele with your hād, you shal find a great knob or swelling, & if it be round & hard, it wil gather to a head. The cure according to Martin is thus. First ripe it wt this playster. Take of wheat flower, of Turpentine, & of hony, of ech like quātity, styrring it together to make a stiffe plaister, & with a cloth lay it vn to ꝑ sore, renuing it euery day once, vntil it breake

or ware softe, and then launce it so as the matter may runne downewarde. Then taint it with Turpentyne, and Hogs grease molten together, renuing it euery day once vntill it be whole.

Of the diseases incident to the wombe of a Mare, and specially of barrennesse.

The. Cvij. Chapter.

IT seemeth by some Writers that the wombe of a Mare is subiect to certaine diseases, thoughe not so many as the womb of a woman, as to ascent, discent, falling out, convulsion, barrēnesse, aborsement, yea Aristotle and others doe not let to write, that menstruall bloude doth naturallye boyde from the Mare, as from the woman, though it be so little in quātity, as it can not be wel perceyued. But sith none of mine Authours haue writtē therof to any purpose, nor any Ferrer of this time that I know, haue had any experience in such matters, I wil passe them al ouer w̄ silence, sauing barrēnesse wherof I promised in the breders office to declare vnto you ꝑ causes, & such kind of cure for ꝑ same, as ꝑ old wryters haue taught. A Mare thē may be barren through the vntemperatnesse of the womb or matrix, as for ꝑ it is to hote & fyery, or else to colde & moyst, or to dry, or else to short, or to narrow, or hauing ꝑ necke thereof turned awry, or by meanes of some obstruction or stopping in the matrix,

trix, or for that the Mare is to fatte, or to leane, and many tymes Mares go barren, for that they be not well horsed. Well, the cure of barrennesse that cõmeth through the faulte of the Matrix or woinbe, according to the old writers is thus. Take a good handeful of Leekes, stampe them in a morter, with halfe a Glasse full of wine. Then put therevnto. xij. flyes called of the Appoticaries, Cantharides, of diuers coulours if they may be gotten, then straine al togyther, with a sufficient quantitie of water to serue the Mare therewith two dayes together, by pouring the same into hir nature with a horne or glister pype made of purpose, and at the ende of three dayes next following, offer the horse vnto hir that shoulde couer hir, and immediately after that she is couered, wash hir nature twice together with colde water.

An other receyte for the same purpose.

TAke of Nytrum, of sparrows dong, and of Turpentyne, of ech lyke quantity, well wrought together and made like a suppository, and put that into hir nature, and it will cause hir to desire the horse, and also to conceyue. Hipocrates sayth, that it is good also to put a Nettle into the horses mouth that shoulde couer hir.

Of the Itche, Scabbe, and Waunginesse in the tayle, and falling of the tayle.

The. Cxiij. Chapter.

IN spring tyme horses be many tymes troubled with the tronchons in their fundament, and then they will rubbe their tayle, and breake the haire thereof, and yet in his tayle perhaps, shall be neyther ytche, scurffe, nor scabbe, wherfore if you rake the horse well with your hand, annointed with Sope, and searche for those tronchons, and pull them cleane oute, you shall cause hym to leaue rubbing: and if you see that the haire doe fall away of it selfe, then it is a signe, ꝑ it is eyther eaten with wormes, or that there is some scurffe or scabbe fretting the haire, and causing such an ytche in his tayle, as the horse is alwayes rubbing the same. As touching the wormes, scurffe, or scabbe, it shall be good to annoynt all the tayle with sope, & then to washe it cleane euen to the ground with strong lye, & that will kill the wormes, and make the haire to grow againe. And if much of the tayle be worne away, it shall be nedefull to kepe the tayle continually wette, with a sponge dipte in faire water, and that will make the haire to growe very fast. But if the horses taile be maungy, then heale that like as you doe the maungyneſſe of the Mayne before rehearsed. Againe if there breede any Canker in the tayle, (whiche will consume both the flesche and bone, and as Laurentius Rusius sayth, make the ioyntes to fall away one by one.) It shall be good as Martin sayth to washe all his tayle with Aqua fortis or strong water, made in this sort. Take of grene

Corporas

Corporas, of Alom, of eche one pounde, of whyte Corporas a quartern. Boyle all these things together in thre quarts of rūning water, in a very strōg earthen pot, vntyll the one halfe be consumed, and then with a little of this water being made luke warme, washe his tayle with a little clout, or flaxe bounde to the ende of a sticke, continuing so to doe euery day once, vntil it be whole.

How to know when a horse halteth before, in what parte his griefe is.

The. Cix. Chapter.

BEing nowe come to talk of the griefes in the shoulders, legges, hips, houghes, ioyntes, and houes, causing the horse moste commonly to halte: I thinke it good first to shewe you ỹ way how to finde in what part of his legges, the horse is grieued when he halteth eyther before or behinde. And firste you haue to consider that if a horse halteth before, it must be eyther in his shoulders, in his legges, or in his feete. If it be in his shoulders, and new hurt, the horse wil not lift that legge, but traile it nighe the grounde. If it be olde hurte, he wil cast that legge further from him in his going, than the other, and if he be turned on the fore syde, then he will halte so much the more. If a horse halteth in the legge, it is eyther in the knee, in the shanke, or in the pastorne ioynt, if it be eyther in the knee, or pastorne ioynt, he will not bowe that in his goyng

like the other, but goe very stilly vpon it. If he halteth in the shanke, then it is by meanes of some splent, wingall, or suche apparant griefe, apt to be sene, or felt. If he halt in the foote, it is eyther in the cronet, hele, in the toe, in the quarters, or sole of the foote. If it be in the cronet, the griefe will be apparant, the skin being broken or swollen some maner of way: If in the hele, as by ouerreache or otherwise, then he will treade most on the toe: if vpon any of the quarters, thē going on the edge of a bank or hilly ground, he will halt more, than on ỹ plaine ground, and by the horses comming towardes you, and going from you vpon suche edge or banke, you shal easely perceyue whether his griefe be in the inwarde quarter or outward quarter. The quarter is to be vnderstande, from the mid houe to the hele. If he halte in the toe which is not commonly sene, then he will tread more vpon the hele. If his griefe be in the sole of the foote, then he will halte all after one sort vpon any ground, vnlesse it be vpon the stones. And to be sure in what parte of the foote the griefe is, it shall be good first to make him go vpon the plaine ground, and then vpon a harde and stony ground, yea and also banky ground. Thus hauing declared vnto you in generall, howe to knowe in what parte a horse is grieued when he halteth before: I thinke it mete first to shew you orderly al the particuler griefes and sorances, whervnto the fore partes of a horse are subiect, together with the causes, sygnes and cure thereof. That done, I will speake of halting behinde, and shew you first gene-

rally

rally where the griefe is, and then perticulerly declare vnto you euery griefe incident to the hinder partes of a horse. And lastely I will speake of such griefes and sorances as are commō to both parts, that is to say, as well to the forelegges, and forefete, as to the hinder legges and hinder fete.

Of the griefe and pinching in the shoulder.

The.Cx.Chapter.

This commeth eyther by labouring and straynyng the horse to yong, or else by some great burthē. You shall perceyue it by the narrownesse of the brest, and by consuming of the flesche of the shoulders, in so much as the fore part of the shoulder bone will sticke out, & be a great deale higher then the flesche. And if it be of long continuance, he will be very hollow vpō the brisket towardes the armeholes, and he will go wyder beneath at the feete, then aboue at the knees. The cure according to Martin is thus. Giue him a slit of an inch long with a sharpe knife or Rasor vpon both sydes an ynche vnder the shoulder bones. Then with a Swannes quill put into the slitte, blowe vp firste the one shoulder, and then the other, as bigge as you can possibly, euen vp to the wythers, and with your hand stryke the wind equally into euery place of the shoulders. And when they be both full, then beat all the windy places with a good hasell wand

ouer all the shoulder. Then with a flatte sclise of yron, loosen the skinne within from the flesshe. That done rowell the two slits or cuttes with two round rowels made of the vpper leather of an olde shooe with a hole in the middest, that the matter may issue forth, and let such rowels be three inches brode, and so put in as they may lye playne and flatte within the cut. Then make a charge to lay vpon the same in this sorte. Take of Pytch, of Rosen, of eche one pounde, of Tarre halfe a pinte, boyle these things all together in a pot, and when it is somewhat cooled, take a sticke with a wollen clout bound faste to the one ende thereof, and dippe it into this charge, and couer or daube all the shoulders therewith. That done, clappe therevnto a pounde of Flore of such colour as the horse is, or as nighe vnto ỹ same as may be, & euery other day clense both the wounds and rowels, & put them in againe, continuing thus to doe, the space of .xv. dayes. Then take them out & heale vp the wounds with two taynts of Flax dipt in Turpentine, and Hogs greafe molten together, renuing the same euery day once, vntill the wounds be whole. But let the charge lye still, vntill it fall away of it selfe, and let the horse runne to grasse vntill he hath had a frost or two.

Of wrinching the shoulder.

The. Cxi. Chapter.

This commeth sometyme by a fall. and sometime by turning to sodenly in some vneuen ground, or by to rashe running out

at

at some doze, oz by some strype of an other hozse, oz by some sodayne stoppe in palling a Carrier. You shall percepue it in his going, by trayling his legge vppon the ground, so close vnto him selfe as he can possible. The cure accozding to Martin is thus. Let him bloude, the quantity of thze pintes on the bzest in the plat vaine, receyuing the bloud in a pot, and therbnto put first a quart of strōg Vineger, & halfe a dosen bzokē egges, shelles & al, & so much wheate flower as will thicken all that lyquoz. That done, put therbnto of bole Armeny beaten into fine pouder one pounde, of Sanguis Draconis two ounces, and mingle them all together, so as the flower may not be percepued, and if it be to stiffe, you may make it moze lyquid oz softe, with a little Vineger. Then with your hande daube all the shoulder from the mayne downewarde, and betwixt the fozebowels, all against the haire, and let not the hozse departe out of that place, vntill the charge be surely fastned vnto the skinne. That done, cary him into the stable, and tye him vp to the racke, and suffer him not to lye downe all that day, & giue him a little meate, dyetting him moderately the space of .xv. dayes, during which time, he may not sturre out of his place, but onely to lye downe, and euery day once refresh the shoulder point with this charge, laying stil new vpō the old, & at the .xv. dayes end, lead him abzode to see how he goeth, and if he be somewhat amended, then let him rest without trauayling, the space of one month, and that shall bzing his shoulder to perfection. But if he be neuer the betrer foz all this

that is done: then it shall be nedefull, to rowel him with a leather rowell vpon the shoulder poynt, and to kepe him rowelled the space of .xv. dayes, remuing the rowell, and clensing the wound euery other day, and then walke him vp and downe fayre and softly, and turne him alwayes on the contrary syde to the sore, and when he goeth vpright, pull out the rowell, and heale the wound with a taynt of Flaxe dipt in Turpētyne, and Hogges grease molten together. And if all this will not serue, then it shal be nedefull to drawe him chequerwise with a hote yron ouer all the shoulder poynte and also to make him to drawe in a plough euery day two houres at the least, to settle his ioyntes for the space of three weekes or a month, and if any thing wil helpe him these two laste remedies will helpe him, and make him to go right vp agayne.

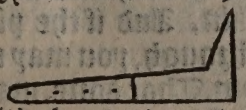
Of splayting of the shoulder.

The. Cxij. Chapter.

This commeth by some daungerous slyding or slipping, wherby the shoulder parteth from the breast, and so leaues an open rift not in the skin, but in the flesh and filme next vnder the skinne, and so he halteth, and is not able to go, you shall perceyue it by traylyng his legge after him in his going. The cure according to Martin is thus. First put a payre of straite pastornes on his forefete, keping him still in the stable, without disquieting him. Thē take of Dialthea

one

one pounde, of Sallet Oyle one pynte, of Oyle de Bays halfe a pounde, of freshe butter halfe a pound. Melte all these thinges together in a Pipkin, and annoynt the grieued place therwith, and also roũd about the inside of the shoulder, and within two or three dayes after, both that place and all the shoulder beside will swell. Then eyther pricke him with a launcet, or fleame, in al the swelling places, or els with a lyttle sharpe hote yron made in this sorte, the heade whereof would be an inch long, to the intente that the corruption may runne out, and vse to annoynt it still with the oyntment aforesayde. But if you see that it will not goe away, but swell still, and gather to a heade, then launce it where ỹ swelling doth gather most, & is softe vnder the finger & then taint it with flax dipt in this ointment. Take of Turpentine, and of Hogges grease, of ech two ounces, and melt them together, renuing the taynt twyce a day vntill it be whole.



Of the shoulder pight.

The. Cxiij. Chapter.

That is when the shoulder poynt or pitch of the shoulder is displaced, which griefe is called of the Italians Spallato, & it cõmeth by reason of some great fal forwarde, rush, or strain. The sygnes be these. That shoulder point wil stick out further then his fellow, and the horse will halte right downe. The cure according to Martin is thus.

First make him to swime in a depe water, vppe and and downe a dosen turnes, and that shall make the ioynt to returne to his place. Then make two tough pinnes of Alshen woode, as much as your little finger, sharpe at the poyntes, eche one fiue ynches lōg. That done, slitte the skin, an ynch aboue the point, and an inche beneath the point of the shoulder, and thrust in one of the pinnes from aboue downward, so as both endes may equallye sticke without the skin. And if the pin of woode will not easely passe through, you may make it way, firste with an yron pin. That done, make other two holes crosse to the first holes, so as the other pin may crosse ꝑ first pyn, right in the midst, with a right crosse, and the firste pyn woulde be somewhat flatte in the midst, to the intente that the other being rounde, may passe the better without stoppe, and close the iuster together. Then take a piece of a little lyne somewhat bigger then a whipcorde, and at one ende make a loope, which being put ouer one of the pins endes, winde the reast of the Lyne good and strait about the pinnes endes, so as it may lye betwixt the pins endes and the skin, and fasten the laste ende with a packe nedle, and a packe threede, vnto the rest of the cord, so as it may not slippe, and to do well, both the pricks and the corde woulde be first annointed with a little Hogges greare. Then bring him into the stable, and let him rest the space of nine dayes, but let him lye downe as lyttle as may be, and putte on a pastorne on the sore legge, so as it may be bounde with a corde, vnto the foote of the maunger, to kepe

that

that leg alwayes whilst he standeth in the stable more forwarde then the other. And at the .ix. dayes ende, take out the prickes, and annoint the sore places with a little Dialthea, or with Hogs greace, and then turne him to grasse.

Of the swelling of the forelegs after great labour.

The. Cxiiij. Chapter.

Great labour and heat causeth humors to resort down into the legs, making them to swel. The cure wherof according to Martin is thus. Bathe them with buttered beere, or else with this bath here folowing. Take of mallowes three handefull, a Rose Cake, of Sage one handefull. Boyle them together in a sufficient quãtity of water, and when the Mallows be soft put in halfe a pound of butter, and halfe a pinte of Sallet oyle, and then being somewhat warme, washe the swelling therewith euery day once, the space of three or foure dayes. And if the swelling will not goe away with this, then take wyne lyes, and Cumin, & boyle them together, & put therunto a little wheate flower, and charge all the swelling therewith, and walke him often, and if all will not serue, then take vp the great vayne aboue the knee on the inside, suffering him not to bleede from aboue, but al from beneath.

Of foundering in the forelegges.

The .Cxv. Chapter.

The cause of this griefe is declared before in the chapter of foūdering in the body whereas I shewed you that if a horse be foundered in the body, the humors wyl immediately resort downe into his legges. Martin sayth within the space of .xxiiij. houres, and then the horse wil goe crowching al vpon the hinder legges, his fore legges being so stiffe, as he is not able to bowe thē. The cure whereof according to Martin is in this sorte. Garter eche legge immediately one handefull aboue the knee, with a list good and harde, and then walke him to chafe him, and to put him in a heate, and being somewhat warmed, let him bloud in both the breast paynes, reseruing the bloude to make a charge withall in this maner. Take of that bloud two quartes and of wheate flower halfe a Pecke, and sixe egges, shelles and al, of bole Armeny halfe a pound, of Sanguis Draconis half a quartern, and a quarte of strong Vineger. Mingle them all together, and charge al his shoulders, breast, back, loynes, and forelegges therewith, and walke him vpon some hard ground suffering him not to stand still, and when the charge is dry refreshe it againe. And hauing walked him three or foure houres together, leade him into the stable, and giue hym a little warme water with ground mault in it, & then a litte hay and prouender, and then walke him againe eyther in the house, or else abrode, and continue

nue thus to doe the space of foure dayes, and when all the charge is spent, couer him well with a housing cloth, and let him both stande and lye warme, and eate but little meate during the foure dayes. But if you see ỹ at the foure dayes end he mendeth not a whit, then it is a sygne that the humors lye in the foote, for the which you muste search with your butter, paryng all the soles of the fore feete so thin, as you shall see the water yssue throughe the sole. That done, with your butter let him bloud at both the toes, and let him blede well. Then stoppe the payne with a little hogs grease, and Turpentyne molten together, and layde vpon a little flaxe, and then tack on the shooes, and cram the place where you did let him bloude harde with toawe, to the intent it may be surely stopt. Then fill both his feete with Hogges grease and bzan fryed together in a stopping pan, so hote as is possible. And vpon that stopping clap a piece of leather, or else two splents to kepe in the stopping. And immediatly after this, Take two Egges, beate them in a dishe, and putte therevnto as much bole Armeny and Beane flower as will thicken the same, and mingle them well together, & make thereof two playsters, suche as may close eche foote round about, somewhat aboue the cronette, and binde it fast with a lyst, or rowler, that it may not fall away nor be remoued for the space of two dayes, but let the sole be clensed, and newe stopped euery day once, and the cronets to be remoued euery two dayes, continuing so to do vntil he be whole. During which tyme, let hym reast vnwal-

ked, for feare of loſening his houes. But if you ſee that he begin to amende, you may walke him fayre and ſoftly once a day vpon ſome ſoft ground, to exercyſe his legs and fete, and let him not eate much, nor drinke colde water. But if this foundering breake out aboue the houe, which you ſhall perceiue by the loſeneſſe of the coffin, aboue by the cronette, thē when you pare ỹ ſoole, you muſt take al the fore part of ỹ ſole cleane away, leauing the heeles hole, to the intente the humors may haue the freer paſſage downewarde, and then ſtoppe him, and dreſſe him about the cronet, as is before ſayde.

Of the ſplent as well in the inſyde or outſide of the knée, as other where in the legge.

The. Cxvi. Chapter.

THis ſorraunce to any mannes feeling is a very griſtle, ſometime as bigge as a walnut, and ſometime no more than a Haſell nut, which is called of the Italians Spinella, and it cōmeth as Laurentius Ruſsius ſayth, by traueyling the horſe to yong, or by oppreſſing hym with heauy burthen, offending his tender ſynews, and ſo cauſeth him to halt. It is eaſye to know becauſe it is apparant to the eye, and if you pinche it with your thombe and finger, the horſe wil ſhrinke vp his legge. The cure whereof according to Martin is in this ſorte. Waſche it well with warme water, and ſhaue of the haire, and lightlye ſcarifye all the

sore place with the point of a Rasor, so as the bloud may issue forth. Then take of Cantharides halfe a sponefull, and of Euforbium, as muche beaten into fine powder, & mingle them together with a spone full of oyle de Bay, and then melte them in a little pan, stirring them wel together, so as they may not boyle ouer, and beyng so boyling hote, take two or three feathers, and annoint all the sore place therewith. That done, let not the horse sturre from the place where you so dresse him for one houre after, to the intent he shake not of the oyntment. Then cary hym fayre and softly into the stable, and tye hym so as he may not reache with his heade beneath the manger, for otherwyse he will couet to byte awaye the smarting & pricking medicine, which if it should touch his lippes, would quickly fetch of the skinne. And also let him stande without lytter all that day and night. The nexte day annoynt the sore place with fresh butter, cõtinuing so to do euery day once for the space of nine dayes, for this shall allay the heate of the medicine, and cause both that, and the crust to fall away of it selfe, and therewith eyther clene take away the splent, or at the least remoue it out of the knee into the leg, and so much dymynishe it, as the horse shall go right vp, and halte no more through occasiõ therof. Laurentius Rusius would haue the splent to be cured by syering it longst wyse and ouerthwart. Some againe do make it soft by beating it with a Hasell sticke, and then do sucke it out with a piece of new leather and a hote yron which many tymes diminisheth the splent, and increaseth

the halting. For if a splent be not very well dressed, the horse will halte halfe a yeare after, yea and perhappes all his lyfe long.

Of a Malander.

The. Cxvij. Chapter.

A Malander is a kind of scabbe growing in the form of lines, or strekes, ouerthwart the bent of the knee, and hath log hayres with stubborne rootes, lyke the bristles of a Boare, which corrupteth and cankereth the flesh, lyke the rootes of a childes scabbed head, and if it be greate, it will make the horse to goe stiffe at the setting forth and also to halt. This disease procedes sometyme of a corrupt blonde, but most commonly, for lack of cleane keping, and good rubbing. The cure according to Martin is thus. First washe it well with warme water, then shaue both haire & scabbe cleane away, leauing nothing but the bare flesche, wherebnto lay this playster. Take a spone full of Sope, and as much Lyme. Mingle them together, that it may be lyke Paast, and spreade as much on a clowt as will couer the sore, and binde it fast on with a list, renuing it euery day once ỳ space of two or three dayes, and at the three dayes ende, take away the playster, and annoynt the sore with Oyle of Roses made luke warme, & that shall fetch away the crust or scurfe, bredde by meanes of the playster, which scurfe being taken away, washe the sore

sore place well euery day once with his owne stale, or else with mans vrine, & then immediatly strowe vpon it the powder of burnt Oyster shelles, continuing thus to do euery day once vntill it be whole.

Of an vpper attaynt or ouer reach vpon the backe synewe of the shanke somewhat aboue the toynt.

The.Cxviij.Chapter.

The Italians cal this sorance Attincto, which is a paynefull swelling of the master synewe, by meanes that the horse doth sometime ouerreach, and strike that synewe, with the toe of his hinder foote, which causeth him to halte. The sygnes be apparant by the swelling of the place, & by the horses halting. The cure according to Martin is thus. Washe the place with warme water, and shaue of al the haire so farre as the swelling goeth, and scarify euery part of the sore place lightly with the point of a Rasor, that the bloud may issue forth. Then take of Cantharides, and of Euforbium, of eche halfe an ounce, mingle them together with halfe a quarterne of Sope, and with a sclice spread some of this oyntment ouer all the sore, suffering hym to rest there as you dresse him, for one half houre after, and then you may carry him into the stable, and there let him stand without litter and tyed as hath bene sayde before in the Chapter of the splent, and

the nexte day dresse him with the same oyntment once againe, euen as you did before. And the third day annoynt the place with freshe butter, continuing so to do the space of .ix. dayes, & at the .ix. dayes ende make him this bathe. Take of Mallowes three handfull, a Rose Cake, of Sage a handefull. Boyle thē together, in a sufficient quantity of water. And when the Mallows be soft, put in halfe a pound of butter & halfe a pint of Sallet Oyle, and then being somewhat warme, washe the sore place therewith euery day once, the space of three or foure dayes.

Of a neather taynt.

The.Cxix.Chapter.

THis is a little bladder ful of Jelly much lyke vnto a windgal, not apparant to the eye, but to the feling, growing in the midst of the pastorne, somewhat aboue the frushe. It commeth by a strain, or else by some wrinch, or by an ouer reach, and maketh the horse to halte. The signes be these. The neather ioynt towarde the fewterlock will be hote in the feeling, and somewhat swollen. The cure according to Martin is in this sorte. Tye him aboue the ioynt with a list somewhat harde, and that will cause the bladder to appeare to the eye. Then launce it with a sharpe poynted knife, and thrust out all the Jelly. That done, lay vnto it the whyte of an Egge, and a little Salt beaten together, and layd

layd vpon flaxe or toawe, and binde it fast vnto the sore, renuing it once a day the space of foure or fiue dayes, during which time let him rest, and then you may boldely labour him.

Of an ouer reach vpon the heele.

The.Cxx.Chapter.

THys is a cutte so as the skin hangs downe at the heele, made with the toe of the hinder fote, and is apparant to the eye, and it will cause the horse somewhat to halte. The cure whereof according to Martin is thus. Cut away the skin that hangeth downe, and binde vnto it a little flaxe dipte in the whyte of an Egge, mingled with a little bole Armeny, renuing it euery day once, the space of three or foure dayes, and that will heale it.

Of false quarters.

The.Cxxi.Chapter.

THis is a rifte sometyme in the outsyde, but most commonly in the insyde of the houe, bycause the insyde is euer the weaker parte, which sydes are commonly called quarters, and therof this sorance taketh his name, and is called a false quarter, that is to say a craſed or vnsoũd quarter, which name in dede is borowed of the Italians, calling it in their tong Falso quarto. It commeth by euill shooing, and partly by euill paring. The sygnes be these. The horse will for the moste

part halt, and the rifte will bleede, and is apparant to the eye. The cure according to Martin is thus. If the horſe halte, then pull of the ſhooe, and cut ſo much away on that ſyde of the ſhooe where ỹ griefe is, as the ſhooe being immediately put on againe, the rift may be vncouered. Then open the rift with a roſenette or drawer, & fill all the rift with a rowle of toawe, dipte in Turpentyne, Ware, and ſheepes ſewet molten together, renuing it euery day once vntill it be whole. And the rifte being cloſed in the toppe, drawe him betwixte the haire and the houe with a hote Iron ouerthwart that place, to the intent that the houe may ſhote al whole downeward, and when the horſe goeth vpright, ryde him wyth no other ſhooe, vntill his houe be thorowly hardened again. But as touching ſhooes for falſe quarters, you ſhall haue the order of making of them declared vnto you hereafter in the end of this booke.

Of halting behinde, and where the griefe is.

The.Cxxij.Chapter.

IF a horſe halte behynde the griefe muſt eyther be in the hyppe, in the ſtiffle, in the houghe, in the hamme, in the legge, in the neather ioynt, paſtorne, or foote, if he halte in the hip of a newe hurt, the horſe will goe ſydeling, and not follow ſo well with that legge as with the other. But if it be olde hurte, the ſore hippe will ſhrinke and be lower then the other,

and

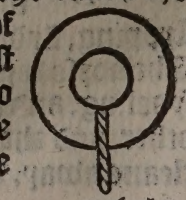
and is best seene when he goeth vp a hill, or vpō the edge of some banke so as the worste legge may goe on the higher syde, for then he will halt so much the more, bycause it is paynefull vnto hym to go so vneuenly wrinching his legge. If the griefe be in the stifle, then the horse in his going will cast the stifle ioynt outwarde, and the bone on the inside wyll be farre bigger than the other. If the griefe be in the hough, then it is by meanes of some spauen, or some other hurte apparant to the eye. And the lyke may be sayd of the hamme, wherein may be seene the selandre, or such lyke apparant sorance, causing the horse to halte. If the griefe be eyther in the legge, pastorne, or foote, then you shal finde it by such sygnes as haue bene taught you before. And therfore let vs nowe speake of those sorances, that are properly incident to the hinder legges.

Of a horse that is hipped, or hurt in the hippes.

The. Cxxiij. Chapter.

The horse is sayde to be hipte, whē the hip bone is remoued out of his right place, which griefe is called of the Italians Mal del aucha It cōmeth most cōmonly by some great stripe or strain, slypping, slyding, or falling. The signes be these. The horse wyll halte, and in his going he will goe sydeling, and the sore hyp will fall lower than the other, and the flesh in proces of time wyll consume cleane away. And if it be suffred to runne so long, it

will neuer be restored vnto his pristine estate. The best way as Martin sayth, to make him go vpright: is, to charge his hip & back with pitch & rosen moltē togeather, and layd on warme, & then some flockes of his own colour to be clapped vpon the same, and so to let him runne to grasse vntill he goe vpright. But the sore hip wil neuer rise agayne so hyghe as the other. If the horse be not hipped but only hurt in the hip, and that newly. Then fyrst take of oyle de Bay, of Dialthea, of Nerual, of swines grease, of ech halfe a pounde, melt them all togeather stirring thē continually, vntil they be throughly mingled togeather, and annoynt the sore place against the haire, wyth this oyntment, euery day once, the space of a fortenight, and make the oyntment to synke well into the flesh, by holding a hote brode barre of iron ouer the place annoynted, weauing your hande to and fro, vntil the ointment be entred into ỹ skinne. And if at the fortenightes ende, you see that the horse amendeth no whitte for this, then slyt a hole downewarde in his skinne, an ynch beneath ỹ hyp bone, making the hole so wyde, as you may easely thrust in a rowel with your finger, and then with a little brode sclice of yron, losen the skin frō ỹ flesh aboue the bone, & roūd about ỹ same, so brode as the rowel may lie flat & playne betwirt the skin & the flesh, which rowell would be made of soft calues leather, w̄ a hole in ỹ midst like a ring, hauing a threde tyed vnto it, to pul it out when you would clense the hole, in this sort, & if the rowell be



rowled

rowled aboute with flaxe faste tyed on, and annoynted wyth the oyntmente vnder wrytten, it will drawe so much the more. And thruste in the rowell fyrst double, and then spread it abrode with your fynger. That done, taynt it with a good long taint of flax or toawe dipt in a little Turpentine & hogges greace moltē together, and made warme, and cleanse the hole and the rowel euery day once, & also renew the taynt for the space of a fortenight. And before you dresse him, cause him euery day to be ledde vp and downe a foote pace a quarter of an houre, to make the humours come downe, and at the fortenights ende pull out the rowell, and heale vp the wound with the same salue, making ỹ taint euery day lesser and lesser, vntill it be whole. And so sone as it is whole, draw with a hote yron crosse lynes of eyght or nine ynches long righte ouer the hyppe bone, so as the rowelled place may be in the very mydst thereof, and burne him no deeper, but so as the skinne may looke yeallow, & then charge all that place, and ouer all his buttocke with thys charge. Take of pytch one pounde, of Rosen halfe a pound, of Tarre halfe a pynte. Boyle them together, and then being good and warme, spred it on with a clout tied in a riuen sticke. And then clappe on a fewe flockes of the horses colour, and if it be in Sommer, let the horse runne to grasse a while, for the more he trauayleth at his owne wyll, the better it is for him.

Of tickling and hurtes in the tickle.

The.Cxxiij.Chapter.

The Horse is sayd to be stykled, when the stykling bone is remoued from his right place. But if it be not remoued nor loosened, and yet the Horse halteth by meanes of some grief ther, then we say that the horse is hurt in the stifle, and not stykled. The stykle cometh by meanes of some syde blowe, or some greate straine slypping or slyding. The signes be these. If he be stifled the one bone wyll sticke out further than the other, and is apparant to the eye. Martin would haue you to cure the stykle in al poynts like vnto the shoulder pight sauing that the pinnes neede not to be so long bycause the stifling place is not so brode as the shoulder, and standing in the stable, let him haue a pastorne wyth a ring vpon his sore legge, and therevnto fasten a corde, which corde must go about his necke, & let it be so much strayned, as it may bring hys sore leg more forwarde than the other, to kepe the bone from starting out. But if the Horse be but hurt in the stykle wyth some strype, or straine, then the bone will not stand out, but perhaps the place may be swollen. The cure according to Martin is thus. Fyrst annoynt the place with the oyntment mentioned in the laste Chapter before, euery day once the space of a fortenight, and if the Horse amend not wyth this, then rowel him with a hearen rowell, or else wyth a quyll, and lette the neather hole be somewhat beneath the sore place, & cleanse the hole euery day, by turning the rowell, continuing styll to annoynt the place with the oyntmente afore-

afore sayde, and that shall make him whole.

Of foundering behinde.

The. Cxxv. Chapter.

This haps moste commonly when a horse is very fat, and hath his grease molten wtin him, which is sone done with euery litle heat. you shall perceyue it by his going, for he wyll be afrayde to sette his hinder feete to the grounde, and he wyll be so weake behinde, as he wil stande quiuering and shaking, and couet alwayes to lie downe. The cure according to Martin is thus. Firste garter him aboue the houghes, and then force him to goe a while to put him in a heate, and being somewhat warme, let him bloud in the thigh vaynes, reseruing of that bloude a pottle, to make him a charge in this sorte. Put vnto that bloude, of wheate flower & of beane flower, of eche a quarter of a pecke, of Bole Armenie one pounde, of Sanguis Draconis two ounces, syxe egges, shelles and all, of Turpentine halfe a pounde, of Vinegre a quarte. Mingle all these things together, and therewith charge both his hinder legges, raynes, and flankes, al against the haire. And if the horse can not dung, lette him be raked, and giue him this glister. Take of Mallowes three handfuls, boyle them well in faire water from a pottle to a quarte. Then straine it, and put therevnto halfe a pound of butter, and of Sal-

let oyle a quarter of a pinte, and hauing emptied his belly, gyue him also this drinke to comfort him. Take of Malmesy a quarte, and putte therevnto a little Synamom, Mace, and Pepper, beaten into fine pouder, and of oyle a quarter of a pinte, and giue the horse to drinke of that luke warme with a horne. That done, let him be walked vp & downe a good while together, if he be able to goe: if not, then tye him vp to the rack, and let him be hanged with canuas and ropes, so as he may stande vpon the grounde with his feete. For the lesse he lie, the better, and pare his hinder feete thinne, vntyll the deawe come out, and tacking on the shoes agayne stoppe the houes with branne and hogges greace boyled together, and let both his feete hauing this geare in it, be wrapped vppe in a cloth euen to his pastornes, and there tye the cloute fast. Let his diet be thinne, and let him drinke no colde water, and gyue him in winter wet hay, and in sõmer grasse.

Of the drie Spauen.

The.Cxxvi.Chapter.

The drye spauen called of the Italians Spauano, or Sparauagno, is a great harde knobbe, as bygge as a Walnut, growing in the inside of the hough, harde vnder the ioynte, nighe vnto the mayster vayne, and causeth the horse to halte, which sorance commeth sometime by kinde, bicause the horses parents perhaps

haps had the like disease at the time of his generation, & somtime by extreme labor, & heat dissoluing humors, which do discend through ỹ master vaine, continually feding that place with euil nutrimēt, & causeth ỹ place to swell. Which swelling in cōtinuance of time, becōmeth so hard as a bone, and therfore is called of some ỹ bone Spauē. It nedeth no signes to know it, because it is apparant to the eye, & most Ferrers do take it to be incurable. Notwithstāding Martin sayth, that it may be made lesse with these remedies here following. Wash it with warm water, and shaue of the haire so far as the swelling extendeth, and scarifie the place, so as it may blede. Then take of Cantharides one dosen, and of Euforbium halfe a sponefull, breake them in pouder, and boyle them together wyth a little oyle de Bay, and wyth two or three feathers bounde together, put it boyling hote vpon the sore, and let his taile be tide vp for wyping away the medicine: and then within halfe an houre after, sette him vp in the stable, and tie him so as he may not lie downe all that nyghte, for feare of rubbing of the medicine, and the nexte day annoynt it wyth fresh butter, continuing thus to doe euery day once the space of fyue or syx dayes, and when the haire is growen agayne, drawe the sore place with a hote yron, in this sort. Then take another hote sharpe yron like a bodkyn, somewhat bowing at the poynt, & thrust yt in at the neather ende of the middle line, and so vpwarde betwixte the skinne and the flesche an inch and a halfe. And then taynte it wyth a little

Turpentine and hogs greaſe molten togither and made warme, remuing it euery day once, the ſpace of nine dayes. But remember fyrſt immediatly after his burning to take vp the mayſter vayne, ſuffring him to bleede a little from aboue, and tye vp the vpper ende of the vaine, and leaue the neather ende open, to the intent that he may bleede frō beneath, vntill it ceaſſe of it ſelfe, and that ſhall diminiſh the Spauen, or elſe nothing wyll do it.

Of the wette Spauen, or through Spauen:

The. Cxxvij. Chapter.

THis is a ſofte ſwelling growing on both ſydes of the hough, and ſeemes to goe cleane through the hough, and therefore may be well called a throughe Spauen. But for the moſt part the ſwelling on the in ſide bicauſe it is cōtinually fed of the maiſter vaine, is greater than the ſwelling on the outſyde. The Italians call this ſorance La ierda, or gierdone, which ſemeth to come of a more fluxible humour, & not ſo biſcouſe or ſlimy as the other Spauen doth, and therefore this waxeth not ſo harde, nor groweth to the nature of a bone, as the other doth, and this is more curable than the other. It neede no ſygnes, bycauſe it is apparant to the eye, and eaſy to knowe, by the diſcription therof before made. The cure according to Martin is thus. Firſte waſh, ſhaue, and ſcarifie the place, as before. Thē take

take of Cantharides, halfe an ounce, of Euforbium one ounce broken to pouder, and of oyle de Bay one ounce. Myngle them well together colde, wythout boyling them, and dresse the sore therewyth two dayes together, and euery day after vntil the haire be growen agayne, annoynt it wyth freshe butter. Then fire him both without and within, as before, wythout taynting him, and immediately take vp the master vayne as before. And then for the space of nine dayes, annoynte him euery day once wyth butter, vntill the fyered place beginne to skale, and then wash it with this bath. Take of Mallowes three handfuls, of Sage one handfull, & as much of redde nettels, boyle them in water, vntill they be softe, and put thervnto a little fresh butter, and bath the place euery day once, for the space of three or foure dayes, and vntil the burning be whole, let the horse come in no wette.

Of the Selander.

The. Cxxviij. Chapter.

THis is a kinde of Scabbe breeding in the ham, which is the bente of the hough, and is lyke in all poyntes to the Malandre, proceeding of lyke causes, and requireth like cure, and therefore resorte to the Chapter of the Malander.

Of the Hough bonny.

The. Cxxix. Chapter.

This is a round swelling bonny, like a Paris ball, growing vpon the very typpe or elbowe of the Hough, & therefore I thought good to cal it the Hough bonny. This sorance commeth of some strype or bruse, and as Martin sayth, is cured thus. Take a rounde yron somewhat sharpe at the ende like a good bygge bodkyn, and let it be somewhat bending at the poynt. Then holding ỹ sore wyth your left hande, pulling it somewhat frō the synnewes, pearce it with the yron, being fyrste made red hote, thrusting it beneath in the bottom, and so vpward into the ielly, to the intent that the same ielly may issue downewarde out at the hole, and hauing thrust out all the ielly, taynte the hole wyth a taynt of flax dypt in Turpentine, & hogges grease molten together, and also annoynt the outsyde wyth hogs grease made warme, renuing it euery day once, vntyll the hole be ready to shutte vp, making the taint euery day lesser and lesser, to the intent it may heale vp.

Of the Curbe.

The. Cxxx. Chapter.

This is a long swelling beneath the elbow of the hough, in the great synewe behinde, & causeth the horse to halte after that he hath bene a while laboured, and thereby somewhat heated. For the more the synew is strayned, the greater griefe which agayne by rest is eased.

This

This cõmeth by bearing some great wayght whẽ the horse is yong, or else by some straine or wrinch, wherby the tender synewes are grieued, or rather bowed (as Russius sayth) whereof it is called in Italian Curba a Curuando, that is to say of bowing, for anguish whereof it doth swel, and such swelling is apparant to the eye, and maketh that leg to shewe bygger than the other. The cure according to Martin is thus. Take of wine lees a pinte, and a porringer ful of wheate flowre, of Comin half an oũce and stir them well together, & being made warme, charge the sore place therewith, renuing it euery day once the space of three or foure dayes, and whẽ the swelling is almoste gone, then drawe it with a hote yron in this sort, and couer the burning wyth Pytch & Rosen molten together, and layde on good & warme, and clappe thereon some flocks of his owne colour, or so nigh as may be gotten, and remoue them not, vntil they fall away of themselues. And for the space of nyne dayes let the horse rest and come in no wette.

Of the Paynes.

The. Cxxxi. Chapter.

This is a kinde of Scab called in Italian Grappe, which is ful of fretting matterish water, and it breedeth in the pastornes for lacke of cleane keping and good rubbing after the horse hath bene iourneyed, by meanes wherof the fande and dirte remayning in the haire, fret-

teth the skinne and flesh, and so breedeth to a scab. And therefore those horses that haue long haire, & are rough about the feete, are soneste troubled with this disease, if they be not the cleanlier kept. The signes be these. His legges will be swollen & hote, and water will issue out of the Scab, which water is so hote and fretting, as it wil scalde of the haire and breede Scabbes, so farre as it goeth. The cure according to Martin is thus. First wash well all the pastornes with beere and butter warmed together, and his legs being somewhat dried with a cloth: clyp away all the haire, sauing the fewterlockes. Then take of Turpentine, of hogs grease, of hony, of eche like quantitie, mingle them together in a pot, and put therevnto a little Bole Armenie, the yelkes of two egges, and as muche wheate flower as will thicken the thinges aforesayde, and make it playster like, and for that cause, it had neede to be very wel wrought and stirred together. Then with a slyce strike some of the playster vpon suche a piece of linnen cloth as will serue to go rounde about the pastorne, and binde it faste on with a rowler, remuing it once a day vntill it be whole, and let not the horse be trauayled nor stand wet.

Of Pules, or Kybed heeles, called of the Italians Mule.

The.Cxxxij.Chapter.

This is a kinde of Scabbe breeding behinde, somewhat aboue the nether ioynte, growing ouerthwart the fewterlocke, which commeth

commeth most commonly for being bredde in cold ground, or else for lack of good dressing, after that he hath bene laboured in foule mire, & dirty wayes, which dirt lying styll in his legges, fretteth ỹ skin, and maketh scabbie riftes which are sone bredde, but not so sone gotten away. The anguish whereof maketh the legs sometyme to swell, and specially in winter, and springtime, and then the Horse goeth very styffely, and wyth greate payne. Thys sorance is apparant to the eye, and is cured according to Martin in this sorte. Take a piece of lynnen cloth, and with the salue recyted in the last chapter make such a playster as may couer all ỹ sore place, and binde it fast on, that it fal not of, renuing it euery day once vntill the sore leaue running, & beginneth to waxe dry, then wash it euery day once with strong water, vntill it be cleane dried vp, but if this sorance be but in breeding, and that there is no rawe flesh, then it shal suffise to annoynt it with Sope two or three dayes, and at the three dayes ende to wash them wyth a lyttle beefe broth or dish water.

Of sorances or griefes that be commen to all foure feete.

The. Cxxxiij. Chapter.

Hytherto we haue declared vnto you the cauſes, sygnes, and cure of all such griefes as are perperlye incident, eyther to the forelegges, or hinder legges, nowe therefore we wyll

speake of those griefes that be commõ to them both, and first of windegalles.

Of windgalles.

The.Cxxxiiij.Chapter.

The Windegall called of the Italians Galla, is a bladder full of corrupt felly, whereof some be great and some be small, and do grow on ech syde of the ioynt, & is so paynful, and specially in Sommer season when the weather is hote, and the wayes harde, as the horse is not able to trauel, but halteth right downe. They come for the most part through extreme labour and heate, whereby the humors being dissolued, doe flowe and resorte into the hollowe places about the neather ioyntes, and their be congeled, and couered with a thin skin like a bladder. They be apparant to the eye, and therefore nede no other sygnes to know them. The cure whereof according to Martin is thus. Washe them with warme water, and shaue of the haire, and scarify them with the point of a Rasor, and dresse them with Cantharides in ỹ selfe same maner, as the splent in the knee was taught before, and annoint them afterward with butter, vntil the skin be whole. And if this will not heale it, then draw them with a hote yron in this maner. That done slitte the middle lyne, whiche passeth right downe, through the windegall with a sharpe knyfe, beginning

ning beneath, and so vpward the length of halfe an ynche, to the intent you may thrust the ielly out at that hole, and then lay vnto it a litle pitch, and Rosen molten together, and made luke warme, and put a fewe flore on it, and that wil heale him.

Of wrinching the neather ioynt.

The.Cxxxv.Chapter.

THis commeth many times by treading awry in some Cart roote or otherwyse. The sygnes be these. The ioynt will be swollen & sore, and the horse will halt. The cure whereof according to Martin is thus. Take of Dialthea halfe a pound, and as much of Neruall. Mingle them together, and annoint the sore place therewith, chafing it well with both your hands, that the oyntment may enter, cõtinuing so to do euery day once, vntill the oyntment be all spent, and let the horse rest. But if this will not preuayle, then washe it wel with warme water, and shaue away all the haire sauing the fewterlocke. Scarifye it, and lay vnto it Cantharides, and heale it as you doe the splent in the knee.

Of enterfering.

The.Cxxxvi.Chapter.

BEcause interfering is to be holpen by shooyng, we purpose not to speake of it, vntill we come to talke of the order of paring & shooing

shooing all maner of houes, and therefore resorte thither.

Of the shakell gall.

The. Cxxxvij. Chapter.

If a horse be galled in the pastornes, with shakell, locke, pastorne, or halter annoynt the sore place, wyth a little hony and verdegrease boyled together, vntill it loke redde, whiche is a good oyntment for all gallings on the wythers, & immediately strowe vpon the oyntment, being first layde vpon the legge, a little chopt flaxe, or toawe, and that will sticke fast, continuing so to do euerye day once, vntill it be whole.

Of hurtes in the legges, that commeth by casting in the Halter, or Coller.

The. Cxxxvij. Chapter.

It chaunceth many times that a horse hauing some ytche vnder his eares, is desyrous to scratch the same with his hinder foote, which whilest he reacheth to and fro, doth fasten in the Coller or halter, wherwith the more that he stryueth, the more he galleth his legges, and many tymes it chaũceth for that he is tyed so long, by meanes whereof, he being layd, and the halter slacke about his feete, in his ryfling perpaps or turning he snar-

marleth him selfe, so as he is not able to get vp, but hangeth either by the necke, or legges, which sometymes are galled euen to the harde bone. Rusius calleth suche kinde of galling Capistratura, whiche he was wont to heale with this ointment here folowing, prayling it to be excellent good, for the Cratches or any scabbe, broose, or wounde. Take of oyle Olive one ounce, of Turpētine two or three ounces, melte them together ouer the fyre, & then put therynto a little ware, and worke them well together, and annoint the sore place therwith. Martin sayth it is good to annoynt the sore place with the white of an egge, and Sallet oyle beaten together, and when it commeth to a scabbe, annoynt it with butter being molten vntyll it looke browne.

Of the Cratches or Rattes tayles called of the Italians Crepaccie.

The. Cxxxix. Chapter.

This is a kinde of long scabby riftes growing right vp and downe in the hinder parte from the fewterlocke vp to the Curbe, and cōmeth for lacke of cleane keping, and is easly sene yf you take vp the horses foote, and lift vp the heare. The cure according to Martin is thus. Take of Turpentine halfe a pounde of Hony halfe a pynt of Hogges greace a quarterne, and three yolkes of egges, and of bole armeny a quarterne beatyn into powder, of Beane flower halfe a pynt. Myngle all these well together, and make a salue thereof, and

with your fynger annoint all the foze places, theading the haire as you goe, to the intente you may the eaſlyer fynde them, and alſo to make the ſalue enter into the ſkinne, and lette the hoꝛſe come in no wet, vntill he be whole.

Of the Ring bone.

The .Cxl. Chapter.

This is a hard gryſtle growyng vpon the cronette, and ſometyme goeth round about the cronet, and is called in Italyan Soproſſo. Laurentius Ruſsius ſayth, that it may growe in any other place of the legge, but then we cal it not a Ringbone, but a knot oꝛ knob. It cõmeth at the firſt eyther by ſome blow of an other hoꝛſe, oꝛ by ſtryking his owne fote agaynſt ſome ſtub, oꝛ ſtone, oꝛ ſuch lyke caſualtye. The payne whereof bꝛedeth a viſcouſe and ſlympe humoꝛ, whiche reſoꝛting to the bones, that are of their owne nature, colde and dꝛy, waxeth hard, and cleaueth to ſome bone, and in pꝛoces of tyme becõmeth a bone. The ſygnes be theſe. The hoꝛſe wyll halt, and the hard ſwelling is apparant to the eye, being higher then any place of the crownet. The cure accoꝛding to Martin is thus. Fyꝛſt waſhe it wel with warme water, and ſhaue awaye all the haire, ſo as the ſoꝛe place maye be all diſcouered. Then ſcarify it lightly with the poynt of a Raſoꝛ, ſo as the bloude may iſſue foꝛth. Then if the ſoꝛe be bꝛode, take of Euforbium one ounce, of Cantharides halfe an ounce,

ounce, broken both into fyne powder, and of Oyle de Bay one ounce, and if the sore be but little, the one half of this may serue, Boile these things together, styrring them continually least it runne ouer, and with two or three feathers, lay it boyling hote vnto the sore, and let not the horse sturre from that place for halfe an houre after. Then cary him into the stable, and both vse him & cure him for the space of nine dayes, in such order as hath bene sayde before in the Chapter of the splent. But when the haire beginneth to grow agayne, then fyre the sore place with right lynes from the pastorne downe to the coffin of the houe in this maner, and let the edge of the drawing yron be as thicke, as the backe of a meate knyfe, and burne him so depe as the skinne may loke yeallowe, that done, couer the burning with Pitche, & Rosen molten together, and clappe thereon flore of the horses owne colour, or somewhat nighe the same, and about three dayes after, lay againe some of the laste mentioned playster, or oyntment, and also new flox vpon the olde, and there lette them remayne vntill they fall awaye of them selues. But if these ringbones, or knobbes brede in any other place than in the cronette, you shall cure them as is before sayde wythout fyering them.

Of the Crowne scabbe.

The. Cxli. Chapter.

This is a kind of filthy and stinking scabbe, breeding round about the feete vpon the cronettes, and is an euyche and painfull disease, called in Italian Grisaria. It semeth to come by meanes that the horse hath bene bredde in some colde wet soyle, stryking corrupt humors vp to hys feete, and therefore the horse that hath this griefe is worse troubled in winter, than in sommer. The sygnes be these. The haire of the cronettes will be thinne, and staryng lyke bristles, and the cronets wil be alwayes mattering, and runne on a water. The cure according to Martin is thus. Take of Sope, of Hogges grease, of eche halfe a pounde, of bole Armeny a little, of Turpentyne a quarterne, and mingle them well together, and make a playster, and binde it fast on, renuing it euery day once, vntil it leaue rūning, and then wash it with strong vineger being luke warme euery day once, vntyll the sore be cleane dryed vp, and let him come in no wette vntill he be whole.

Of hūrtes vpon the cronet by crossing one foote ouer an other, which the Italians call Supraposte.

The. Cxliij. Chapter.

Martin. Washe it well with whyte wine, or with a little stale, and then lay vnto it the whyte of an egge mingled with a little Chimney soote and salte, and that will dry it vp in three or foure dayes, if it be renued euery day once.

Of

Of the quitterbone.

The. Cxliij. Chapter.

THis is a harde rounde swelling vpon the cronette, betwixt the heele and the quarter, and groweth most cõmonly on the inside of the foote, and is called of the Italians Setula, or Seta. It commeth by meanes of grauell gathered vnderneath ꝑ shoe, which fretteth the heele, or else by the cloying or pricking of some nayle euill driuen, the anguishe whereof loseneth the gristle, and so breedeth euill humors, whereof the quitterbone springeth. The sygnes be these. The horse will halte, and the swelling is apparant to the eye, which in foure or fyue dayes commeth to a heade, wil breake out with matter at a little depe hole like a fistula. The cure according to Martin is thus. First burne about the quitterbone with a hote yron, in maner of a halfe circle, and then with the same yron draw an other right strike through the midst therof in this sorte. Then take of Arsenicke the quantitye of a Beane beate into fine pouder, and putte it into the hole thrusting it downe to the bottom with a quill, & stop the mouth of the hole with a little toawe, and binde it so faste with a cloth, and corde, as the horse may not come at it with his mouth, and so let it rest for that day. And the nexte day, if you see that ꝑ sore loketh blacke within, then it is a sygne that the Arsenicke hath wrought well, and done his part. Then to allay

the burning thereof, taynt the hole with flare dipte in Hogs greafe, and Turpentyne, molten & mingled together, and couer the taynt with a bolfter of toalwe dipt alfo in the oyntment afozefayde, continuing fo to doe euery day once vntil you haue gotten out the coze. Then fhall you fee whether the lofe griftle in the bottome be vncouered oz not, and if it be not vncouered, then feele with your finger, oz with a quill, whither you be nighe it oz not. And if you be, then rayfe the griftle with a little croked inftrumēt, and pul it cleane out with a payze of fmall Nyppers meete foz the purpofe. That done, taynt it againe with a full taynte dipte in the fozefayde Oyntment, to allwage the anguifhe of the laft drefing, and ftoppe it harde, to the intent that the hole may not fhrinke together oz clofe vp, and the nexte day take out that taint, and taynt it a new with the falue oz oyntement taughte in the Chapter of the fhakell gall, renuing it euery day once vntill it be hole, keeping alwayes the mouth of the foze as open as you may, to the intent that it heale not vp to faft, and let not the hozfe come in any wet, noz trauell, vntill he be perfectly whole.

Of the Graueling.

The. Cxliij. Chapter.

This is a fretting vnder the foote, moft commonly in the infyde, and fometime in the outfyde, and fometyme in both fydes together of the heele. It commeth by meanes of

lyttle

little grauell stones getting betwixt the houe, and calkin, or sponge of the shoe, which by continual labor & treading of the horse, doth eate into the quick, and the rather, if his heele be softe and weake, or that the shoe lye to flatte to his foote, so as the grauell being once gotten in, can not get out againe. The sygnes be these. The horse will halte, and couet to treade all vpon the toe, to fauour his heele. The cure according to Martin is thus. First pare the houe, and get out the grauell with a cornette or drawer, leauing none behinde, for if you do, it wil brede to a quitterbone. That done, stoppe him with Turpentyne and Hogges grease molten together, and layde on with a little toawe or flaxe, and then clappe on the shoe to keepe in the stopping, renuing it euery day once vntill it be whole. And sucker the Horse to come in no wette, vntill he be throughlye hole. If a graueling be not well stopt to keepe downe the flesshe, it will ryse higher then the houe, and not onely require more busynesse in bolstering it, but also put the horse to more payne.

Of Surbatting.

The.Cxlv.Chapter.

This is a beating of the houe against the grounde, called of the Italians Sobatitura, it commeth sometyme by meanes of euil shooing lying to flat to his foote, or by going long barefote, and sometyme by the hardenesse of the ground, and

highe lifting of the horse. And those horses that be flat footed, the coffins whereof are tender & weake, be most commonly subiect to this sorance. The signes be these. The horse will halte on both his fore legges, and goe stifly, and creeping as thoughe he were halfe foundered. The cure according to Martin is thus. Take off his shooes, pare hym as little as may be, and if the shooes be not easy, that is to say, long, large, and hollow inough, then make them so, and tack them on againe with foure or fiue nailes. That done, stoppe his feete with bran, and Hogges grease boyled together, so hote as may be, and also couer all the coffin rounde about with the same, binding all in together with a cloth, and a list fastened about the ioynt, renuing it euery day once, vntill it be whole, & giue the horse during that while warm water, and let him stande dry and warme, and not be trauayled vntill he be whole.

Of a pricke in the sole of the foote, eyther by treading on a nayle, or any other sharpe thing that doth enter into the foote.

The. xxvi. Chapter.

The signes be these. If a man be on his back whē he treadeth on any such thing, he shall feele that the horse will lift vppe his foote, and couet to stand still to haue helpe. And if it chaunce at any other tyme, the halting of ỹ horse, and the hurt it selfe will shewe. The cure according to Martin is thus. Pul of the shoe, and pare the foote,

and

and with a drawer vncouer the hole, making the mouth so brode as a two penny piece, then tack on the shoe againe. That done, stoppe it, by pouring into the hole Turpentine and hogges grease molten together, and lay some flaxe, or towe vpon it, and then stoppe all the horses foote with horsdong, or rather with Cowe dong, if you can get it, & splent it eyther with stickes, or else with an olde shoe sole, so as the stopping may abyde in, renuing it euerye day once vntill it be whole, and let the horse come in no wette. If this be not well cured, or loked to in tyme, it will cause the houe to breake aboue, and to loosen rounde aboute, and perhaps to fal cleane away. But if you see that it begin to breake aboue, then make a greater issue beneath, by opening the hole wyder, and taking more of the sole away, that the flesshe may haue the more liberty. Then take of bole Armeny halfe a quarterne, & of Beane flower, and two egges. Beate them, and mingle them wel together, and make a playster therof vpon towe, & lay it rounde about the cronet, binde it fast on, & so let it remayne the space of two dayes, & then renew it again, not fayling so to do euery two dayes, vntil you see it war hard & firme aboue. For this playster being restrictiue, will force the humors to resort all downward, which must be drawē out with Turpētyne and Hogges grease as before, vntill it leaue mattering, and then dry it vppe with burnt Allom, beaten in powder, and strowed vppon it, with a little flaxe layde againe vpon that, continuing so to do euery day once vntill it be hardened, & let not the horse come in any wet vntil he be whole.

Of the Figg.

The.Cxlvij.Chapter.

IF a horse hauing receyued any hurt, as before is sayde by canel, nayle, bone, splent, or stone, or otherwise in the sole of his foote, and be not wel dressed and perfectly cured: there wyll growe in that place a certayne superfluous piece of flesh, lyke a Figge, yea and it wil haue little graynes in it lyke a Fig, and therefore is rightly called of the Italians Vn fico, that is to say, a Figge. The cure whereof according to Martin is thus. Cut it cleane awaye with a hote yron, and keepe the flesche downe with Turpentine, Hogges greace, and a little Wax layed on with tow or flax, and stop the hole harde, that the flesh rise not, renuing it once a day vntil it be whole.

Of a Retreate.

The.Cxlviij.Chapter.

THis is the pricking of a nayle, not well driuen in the shooing, and therfore pulled out agayne by ỹ smith, and is called of the Italians Tratta mes-sa. The cause of the pricking maye be partly, the rashe dryuing of the Smith, and partly the weakenesse of the nayle, or the hollownesse of the nayle in the shanke, For if it be to weake, the point

point many tymes bendeth awrye into the quicke, when it should go right forth, agayne, if the shanke be hollow, it flattereth and shiuereth in the driuing, into two partes, whereof, one part raceth the quick in pulling out, or else perhaps breaketh cleane a sunder, and so remayneth still behinde, and this kinde of prycking is worse then a cloying, bicause it will rancle worse, by reason of the flaw, remayning in the flesche. The signes be these. If the Smith that dryueth such a nayle be so leude, as he wil not looke vnto it, before the horse departe, then there is no way to knowe it, but by the halting of the horse, & searching the houe firste with a hammer by knocking vpon euery clinging. For when you knock vpon that nayle, where the griefe is, the horse will shrinke vp his foote. And if that will not serue, then grope the houe with a payre of Pinsons rounde about, vntil you haue founde the place grieued. The cure according to Martin is thus. First, pull of the shooe, and then open the place grieued with a butter, or drawer, so as you may perceyue by feeling or seeing, whether there be any piece of nayle or not, if there be, to pull it cleane out, and to stoppe the hole with Turpentyne, Mare, and sheepes suet molten together, and so poured hote into the hole, and then laye a little tow vpon it, and clappe on the shoe agayne, renuing it thus euery day vntil it be whole, during which tyme, let not the horse come in any wette, and it muste be so stopped, though it be but prickt without any piece of naile remayning. And if for lacke of looking to in tyme, this Retreate causeth

seth the houe to breake aboue, then cure it with the playster restrictiue in suche order as is mentioned in the last chapter, sauing one before this.

Of Cloying.

The.Cxlix.

CLoying is the pricking of a whole nayle called of ỹ Italians Inchiodatura, passing through the quicke and remayning still in the same, and is clenchid as other nayles be, and so causeth the horse to halte. The grieued place is knowne, by searching with the hammer and Pinsons as is before sayde. If the horse halte immediatly, then pull of his shoe, and open the hole, vntil it beginne to bleede, and stoppe it with the oyntment afore sayde in the chapter of the Retreate, and clap on the shoe agayne, and the houe maye be so good, and the harme so little, as you maye trauaile him immediatly vpõ it. But if it be rancled, then renew the stopping euerye daye once, and let him come in no wette vntill it be whole.

Of lousening the houe.

The.Cl.Chapter.

THis is a parting of the houe frõ the cronet, called of the Italians, Dissolatura del vnghia, which if it be rounde about, it commeth by meanes of founderring, if in part, then by the anguish, caused

sed by ỹ pricking of some canel naile pearching the soale of the foote, or by some quitterbone, retreate graueling, or cloying, or suche lyke thing. The signes be these. When it is lousened by foundering then it will breake first in the fore parte of the cronet, right against the Toes, bicause the humor doth couet alwayes to discend towards the toe. Againe, when the pricking of a canell nayle or suche lyke cankered thing is the cause, then the houe wil losen round about, equally euen at the first. But when it procedes of any of the other hurtes last mentioned, thē the houe will breake right aboue the place that is offended, & most commonly will proceede no further. The cure according to Martin is thus. Fyrst, of which soeuer of these causes it proceedes, be sure to open the houe in the soale of the foote, so as the humor maye haue free passage downewarde, and then restrayne it aboue with the playster restrictiue before mentioned, & in suche order as is there written, & also heale vp the wound, as is before taught in the chapter of a pricke in the soale of the foote.

Of casting the houe.

The. Cli. Chapter.

This is when the coffin falleth cleane away from the foote, which cometh by such causes as were last rehersed, and is so apparaunt to the eye, as it needeth no signes to knowe it. The cure according to Martin is thus. Take of Turpentine one pounde, of Tarre, halfe a pynt of

vnwrought Ware, halfe a pounde of sheepes suet, halfe a pounde, of salet Oyle halfe a pynt. Boyle al these things together, and sturre them continually vntill they be throughly mingled, and compact together. Thē make a boote of leather with a good strong sole meete for the horses foote, to be laced or buckled about the pastorne, & dresse his foote with the salue aforesayde layde vpon flaxe or toaw, and bolster or stuffe his foote with softe flaxe, so as the boote may grieue him no manner of way, renuing it euery daye once vntill it be whole, and then put him to grasse.

Of the houe bounde.

The. Cliij. Chapter.

THis is a shrinking of all the whole houe. It cōmeth by drought, for that the houes perhaps are kept to drye, when the horse standeth in the stable, & sometyme by meanes of heat, or of ouer straight shooing. The Italians call the horse thus grieued Incastellado. The signes be these. The horse will halte, and the houes will be hote, and if you knocke on them with a hammer, they will sounde hollowe lyke an empty bottell, and if both the feete be not houe bounde, the fore foote will be lesser then the other, in deede, and appeare so to the eye. The cure according to Martin is thus. Pul of his shooes, & shoe him with halfe Mone shooes, called Lunette,

the

the order and shape, whereof you shall fynde hereafter among the other shooes, and rase both the quarters of the houe with a drawer, frō the corownet vnto the sole of the foote, so deepe as you shall see the dew come forth. And if you make two rases on eche syde, it shall be so muche the better, and inlarge the houe the more. That done, annoynt all the houe aboue, next vnto the corownet rounde about, with the oyntment prescribed before, in the Chapter of casting the houe, continuing so to doe euerye day once vntill he beginne to amende, and lette him be ridden vpon some softe wette grounde an houre or two, euery daye once, for the space of a Moneth, and if he goeth not well at the Monethes ende, than take off the halfe shooes, and pare al the soles, frushes and all, so thinne as you may see the dew come forth, and tacke on a whole shoe and stop all the foote within with Hogges grease, and bran boyled together, and layd hote to the foote, renuing it euery day once, the space of .ix. dayes, to the intent the sole may rise. But if this wil do no good. Then take awaye the sole cleane, and clapp one a whole shoe, and stoppe the foote with nettles, and Salte brayed together, renuing it once a day, but not ouer harde, to the intent the sole may haue liberty to rise, and being growen agayne, let him be shodde with the lunettes, and so sent to grasse.

Of the running Frushe.

The. Clij. Chapter.

The

The Frushe is the tenderest parte of the houe towards the heele, called of the Italians Fettone, and bicause it is fashyoned lyke a forked head, the French men cal it Furchette, which worde our ferrers, eyther, for not knowing rightly howe to pronounce it, or else perhaps for easinesse take of pronuntiatiō do make it a monasillable, and doe shortly pronounce it the frushe, in which frush breedeth many tymes a rottennesse or corruption proceding of humors that cōmeth out of the legge, wherby the legge is kept cleane from wynegalles, and all other tumors and swellings, by meanes that the humors haue passage that way. Notwithstanding the discomoditie of this sorraunce is greater then the commodytie, bicause it maketh the horses foote so weake and tender, as he is not able to treade vpon any hard ground. The signes be these. The horse wil halt, and specially when the passage of the humor is stopt with any grauel gathered into the Frushe, and not being stopt, it will continually runne, the sauoure whereof will be so strong as a man is not able to abide it, and in some places it will looke rawe. The cure according to Martin is thus. First take off the shoe, and pare awaye all the corrupt places, and make them rawe, so as you may see the water issue out of the raw places. Then tack on the shoe agayne, being first made wyde, & large ynoughe. That done, take of soote one handefull, of salte as muche. Searse them well together in a dishe and put thereunto the whyte of three egges, and temper them altogither, and with a litle toaw

dipt

dipt therin, stoppe all the foote, and speciallye the frushe, and splent it so, as it maye not fall out, renuing it once a daye, the space of seuen dayes, and then he will be whole. During which tyme, let the horse reast, and come in no wette, at the .bij. dayes ende, leaue stopping him, and ryde him abroade, and alwayes when he cõmeth in, let his sore foote be cleane washed, that no grauel remayne therin, without doing any more vnto him.

Of diseases or griefes indifferently incident to any part of the body, but first of the Leprosie or vniuersall maungines called of the olde writers Elephantia.

The. Cliij. Chapter.

THis is a cankred maungines spreding ouer all the body, which commeth of abundance of Melancholye, corrupt, and filthy blonde. The sygnes be these. The horse will be all maungye, and scurfye full of scabbes, and rawe plots about the necke, & euill fauoured to loke on, & alwayes rubbing & scratching. The cure according to Martin is thus. Let him blonde ỹ first day in the one side of the necke, & within two dayes after on ỹ other side of the neck, & within two dayes after that, in the flanke vaynes, & last of al in ỹ vain vnder ỹ taile. Then wash al the sore places with salt brine, & rubbing them hard, with a wispe of strawe hard twysted, so as they may blede well, and be all raw. That done, annoynt the places with this oyntmẽt. Take of quicke siluer one ounce, of Hogges grease one

pounde, of brimstone beaten into powder a quarterne, of Rape oyle a pinte. Mingle these things well together vntil the quicke siluer be throughlye incorporated with the rest, and hauing annoynted all the rawe places with this oyntment, make it to sinke into the flesh, by holding and weauing vp & downe ouer it, a hote brode bar of yron, & then touch him no more againe, the space of two or three dayes, during which tyme, if you se that he rubbeth still in any place, then rub that place againe with an olde horsecombe, to make it rawe, and annoint it with freshe oyntment. But if all this will not helpe, then with a hote yron rounde and blunt at the poynt, so bigge as a mans little finger. Burne all the maũge places, making rounde holes passing onelye through the skin, and no further. For which intent it shall be nedefull, to pull the skinne first from the flesshe, with your left hande, holding it stil vntil you haue thrust the hote yron throughe it, and let euery hole be a span one from an other, and if nede be, you may annoynt those holes with a little Sope, and let the horse be thinne dyeted, during this curing tyme.

Of the Farcyn, called in Italian of some, il verme, and of some Farcina.

The. Clv. Chapter.

THis is a kind of creping vlcer growing in knots folowing alongst some vaine, and it procedeth of corrupt bloud ingendred in

in the bodye, or else of some outwarde hurte, as of spurgallyng, or of the byting of some other horse, or of the biting of tickes, or of Hogges lice, or such like casualtyes. Or if it be in the legge, it may come by enterfering. It is easely knowen, partly by the former discription, and also it is apparant to the eye. The cure according to Martin is thus. Lette him bloud in that vayne where it commeth, as nigh the sore place as may be, & let him bleede well. Then fyre euery knot one by one, taking the knot in your left hande, and pulling it so harde as you can from his body, to the intent you may the better pearce the knot, with a round, blunt, hote yron, of the bignesse of a mans fore finger, without doing the body any hurt, and let the matter out, leauing none vnburned, be it little or much. That done, annoynt euery knot so burned with Hogges grease warmed euery day once, vntill the cores be redy to fal away, and in the meane tyme prepare a good quantity of olde vrine, and when you see that the cores are redy to fall: boyle the vrine, and put therin a little Corpozas, and salt, and a few strong Nettles, and with that water, being warme, washe out all the cores, and all the corruption. That done, fil euery hole immediately with the powder of sleict Lyme, continuing thus to do, euery day once, vntil the holes be closed vp, and if any be more ranker then others, fill those with Verdygrease, and during this cure, lette the horse be thinlye dyeted, that is to say, with straw and water onely: vnlesse it be now and then to giue him a lose of bread. For the lower he be kept

corporas

the soner he will be whole. And in any wyse let his necke be yoked in an olde bottomlesse payle, or else with shorte staues to kepe him from licking the sores, and the lesse rest he hath, the better.

Of the Canker called of the Italians il Cancro.

The. Cvi. Chapter.

A Canker is a filthy creping Vlcer, fretting and gnawing the flesche in great breadth. In the beginning it is knotty, much lyke a Farcyne, and spredeth it selfe into dyuers places, and being exulcerated, gathereth together at length into one wounde or sore. This proceedes of a Melancholy and filthy bloud ingendred in the body, which if it be mixte with sharpe and salte humors, it causeth the more painefull and grieuous exulceration, and sometyme it commeth of some filthy wounde, that is not clenly kept, the corrupt matter whereof cankreth other cleane partes of the body. It is easy to be knowen by the discription before writtē. The cure whereof according to Martin is thus. First lette him blonde in those vaynes that be nexte vnto the sore, and take inough of him. Then take of Alom, halfe a pound, of grene Corporas as much, of white Corporas one quarterne, and a good handefull of salte. Boyle all these things together, in fayre running water from a potrell to a quart, and thys water being warme, washe the sore therwith, with a clout, & then sprincle theron the powder of sleyked Lyme,

Lyme, continuing so to do euery day once, the space of .xv. dayes, and if you see that the Lyme doe not mortify the ranke flesh, and kepe it from spreading any further, then take of Sope halfe a pounde, of quick siluer half an ounce, and beate them together in a pot, vntill the quick siluer be so well mingled with the Sope, as you can perceyue none of the quick siluer in it. And with an yron sclyce, after that you haue washed the sore with the strong water aforesayde, couer the wound with this oyntment, cõtinuing thus to do euery day once, vntill the canker leaue spreading abrode. And if it leaue spreading, and that you see the ranke flesche is mortifyed, and that the edges beginne to gather a skin. Then after the washing, dresse it with the Lyme as before, continuing so to do vntill he be whole. And in the dressing suffer no filthe that cõmeth out of the sore, to remaine vpon any whole place about, but wype it cleane away, or else washe it away with warme water. And let the Horse during this cure, be as thinly dieted as may be, and throughly exercised.

Of the Fistula, called of the Italians Fistula.

The. Clvij. Chapter.

A Fistula is a deepe hollowe crooking Vlcer, & for the most parte springs of maligne humors, ingendred in some wound, sore, or canker, not throughly healed. It is easy to know by the discriptiõ before made.

The cure according to Martin is thus. First search ȳ depth of it with a quil, or with some other instrumēt of Leade, that may be bowed euery way, meete for the purpose. For vnlesse you finde the bottom of it, it wil be very hard to cure. And hauing found the bottom, if it be in such place as you may boldely cut, and make the way open with a Launcet, or Rasor, then make a slit right against the bottom, so wide as you may thrust in your finger, to feele whether there be any bone or gristle perished, or spongye, or loose flesshe, which must be gotten out, & then taynt it with a taint of flaxe, dipt in this oyntment. Take of hony a quarterne, and of Uerdigrease one ounce beaten in powder. Boyle them together vntill it looke redde, sturring it continually, least it runne ouer, and being luke warme, dresse the taynt therewith, and bolster the taynt with a bolster of flaxe. And if it be in such a place, as the taynt can not cōueniently be kepte in with a bande, then fasten on eche syde of the hole, two endes of a shoemakers threde right ouer the bolster, to kepe in the taynte, whiche endes may hang there as two laces to tye, and vntye at your pleasure, renuing the taynt euery day once, vntill the sore leaue mattering. And then make the taynt euery day lesser and lesser, vntill it be whole. And close it vp, in the end, by sprincling thereon a little sleict Lyme. But if the Fistula be in suche a place, as a man can neyther cut ryght against the bottome, nor nyghe the same: then there is no remedy but to poure in some strong water, throughe some quil, or suche like thing, so as it may

may goe to the bottome, and dreye vp the filthy matter, dreſſing him ſo twiſe a day, vntil the horſe be whole.

Of an Auburye.

The.Clviij.Chapter.

This is a great ſpongy wert full of bloud, called of the Italians Moro, or Selſo, which may growe in any place of the body, and it hath a roote like a Cockes ſtone. The cure according to Martin is thus. Tye it about with a threde, ſo harde as you can pull it, and the threde will eate in, by little and little, in ſuche ſorte as within ſeuen or eyght dayes, it will fall away by it ſelfe. And if it be ſo flat as you can binde nothing about it, then take it away with a ſharp hote yron, cutting it round about, and ſo depe as you leaue none of the roote behinde, and dreye it vp with Verdygreaſe. Ruſsius ſayth, that if it growe in a place full of ſinewes, ſo as it can not be conueniently cut away with a hote yron, then it is good to eate out the core with the powder of Reſalgar, and then to ſtoppe the hole with flaxe dipt in the white of an egge, for a day or two, and laſtly, to dreye it vp with the powder of vnſleict Lyme, and honye as before is taught.

Of woundes.

The.Clix.Chapter.

Wounds commeth by meanes of some strype or pricke, and they are properly called wounds, when some whole parte is cutte, or broken. For a wounde accoʒding to the Phisitians is defyned to be a solution, dyuision, or parting of the hole. For if there be no such solution or parting, then me thinks, it ought rather to be called a brouse, then a wounde. And therfore wounds are most commonly made, with sharp, or pearcing weapons, and brouses, with blount weapons. Notwithstanding, if by such blount weapons, any parte of the hole be euidently broken, then it ought to be called a wounde as well as the other. Of wounds some be shallow, and some be deepe, & hollow. Againe, some chaunce in the fleshye partes, and some in the bonye, and sinewe places. And those that chaunce in the fleshy partes, though they be very deepe, yet they be not so daungerous, as the others, and therfore we will speake fyrst of the moste daungerous. If a horse haue a wounde newely made, eyther in his heade or in any other place, that is full of sinews, bones, or gristles. First Martin would haue you to washe the wound wel with whyte wine warmed. That done, to search the bottome of the wounde with some instrument, meete for the purpose, suffering it to take as little wynd in the meane while as may be. The hauing founde the depth, stop the hole close with a clout, vntill your salue be readye. Then take of Turpētine, of Mel Rosatum, of Oyle of Roses, of eth

a quarterne and a little vnwrought waxe, and melt them together, stirring them continually that they maye be well mingled together, and if it be a cutte, make a handesome roule of cleane picked toaw, so long, and so bigge as maye fill the bottome of the wounde, which for the moste parte is not so wyde, as the mouth of the wounde, then make an other roule greater then that, to fill vppe the reast of the wounde, euen to the harde mouthe, and let bothe these roules be annointed with the ointment afore-sayde luke warme. But if the hurte be lyke a hole made with some pricke. Then make a stiffe taynt, suche a one as may reache the bottome, annoynted with the foresayde oyntment, and bolster the same with a little toaw. And if the mouth be not wyde ynough, so as the matter may easely runne forth, if it be in such place, as you maye doe it without hurting any sinew, then gyue it a prety slitte, from the mouth downewarde, that the matter may haue the freer passage. And in anye wise haue a speciall regarde, that the taynt maye be continually kept in, by one meanes or other, as by binding or staying the same, with the endes of a shoemakers threede, as is aforesayde. And if the hole be deepe, and in such place, as you may not cutte it, then make your taynt of a sponge, and so long as it may reache the bottome, and the taynt being made somewhat ful, with continuall turning and wrying of it, you shal easely gette it downe, and then dresse the wounde with this, twise a daye, clensyng the wounde euerye tyme with a little whyte Wyne luke warme. For this sponge annoynted with the oyntment afore-

forefayde will both drawe, and sucke by all the filthy matter, and make it so fayre within as is possible, & as it beginneth to heale, so make your taynt euery day lesser and lesser, vntill it be ready to close by, and neuer leaue taynting it, so long as it wyll receyue a taynt, be it neuer so short. For hasty healing of woundes bredeth fistulas, which properly be olde woundes, and therefore muste be cured lyke fystulas.

Of woundes in the fleshy partes.

The. Clx. Chapter.

VSe the same oyntmente, and maner of proceeding as before, & if the wounde be very large, then to kepe in the taynt or roules, you shall be fayne to put two or three shoemakers endes on eche side of the sore, leauing them so long as you may tye them together, and louten them when you wyll, lyke laces.

Of a Hurt with an arrowe.

The. Clxi. Chapter.

IF the horse be hurt with an arrowe, taynt the hole with Hogs grease, and Turpentine molten together, renuing it euerye daye once vntyll it be whole.

Of

Of pulling out shyuers or thornes.

The.Clxij.Chapter.

Martin sayth, that if it be not very deepe, Sope being layde vnto it all night, wil make it to appeare, so as you maye pull it oute with a payre of nippers. But if it be verye deepe, then you must open the place with a knife or Launcet, and gette it out, and afterward heale vp the wound, as haue bene taught you before. Rulsius sayth, ỹ the rootes of reed being stampt and mingled with honny will draw out any thorne, or sheuer, and so will snayles. as he sayth being stampt and wrought with freshe butter, and if the place be swollen, he sayth it is good to mollyfie it, with a playster made of wormewood, Paretory, Beares foote, Hogges grease, and Honny, which wyll asswage anye newe swelling, that commeth by stripe, or otherwise.

Of Brusings or swellings.

The.Clxiij.Chapter.

Martin. First pricke it with a fleame. Then take of wyne Lees a pynt, as much wheat floure as will thicken it, and an ounce of Comyn. Boyle them together, & laye this somewhat warme vnto it, renuing it euery daye once vntill

till the swelling eyther departe, or else come to a heade. And if it doe, then launce it, and heale it vp, as a wounde.

Of sinewes cut, prickt, or brosed.

The.Clxiij.Chapter.

TAke of Tarre and beane floure, and a little Oyle of Roses, and laye it hote vnto the place, and if this doe no good, then take wormes and sallet Oyle fryed together, or else the oyntment of Wormes, which you shall haue at the Poticaries, and one of these will knit it agayne, if it be not cleane a sunder.

How to cure a wounde made with Hargabush shotte.

The.Clxv.Chapter.

Martin. First seeke with an instrument whether ỳ pellet remaine within or not, and if it do, you must get it out with an instrument meet for the purpose. Then to kil the fire. Take a little vernishe, and thrust it into the wounde with a feather, annoynting it well within with the feather, and after that, stoppe the mouth fayre and softly with a little soft flaxe, to keepe the winde out, and on the outside charge all the swelling with this charge. Take of bole Armenie a quarterne, of Lyneseede beaten into

to

to pouder, halfe a pounde, of beane floure as much, and thre or foure egges, shelles and al, and of Turpentine a quarterne, and a quart of Vineger, and mingle them wel together ouer the fyre, and being somewhat warme charge all the sore place with parte therof, and immediatly clap a cloth or a piece of leather vpon it, to kepe the wound from the colde ayre, continuing both to annoynt the hole within with vernish, and also to charge the swelling without, the space of foure or fiue dayes, and at the fiue dayes ende, leaue annoynting of it, and taynt it with a taynt reaching to the bottom of the wound, and dipped in Turpentyne and Hogges grease molten together, renuing it euery day twise, vntill the fyre be throughly killed, which you shal perceiue by the mattering of the wounde, and by falling of the swelling, for so long as the fyre hath the vpper hande, no thicke matter will issue out, but onely a thinne yellowishe water, neyther will the swelling asswage. And then take of Turpentine, washed in nine seuerall waters, halfe a pounde, and put thervnto three yolkes of egges, and a little saffron, and taynt it with this oyntment, renuing it euery daye once, vntill the wounde be whole.

Of burning with Lyme, or any other fyrie thing.

The. Clxvi. Chapter.

Martin. First wash away the Lyme if there be any with warme water. Then kill the fyre with oyle & water beaten together,

dzelling him so euery day vntill it be all rawe, and then annoynt it with Hogges greale, and strowe thereupon the pouder of sleykid lyme dzelling him so euery day once, vntil it be whole.

Of the byting of a madde dogge.

The. Clxvij. Chapter.

IF a hoyse be bitten with a mad dog, the venim of his teeth will not only paine hym extremely, but also infect all his bloud, & make him to dye mad. The cure accoyding to the old wryters is thus. Take of Goats dong, of flesh that hath laid long in salte, and of the herbe Ebulus, called of some Danewoyt, of eche halfe a pound, and. l. Walnuts. Stampe all these things together, & lay some therof vnto the soze, and this will sucke out the venim, and heale the wounde. It is good also to giue the Hoyse Treacle, and wyne to dzinke, yea, and some would haue the soze place to be fyered wyth a hote pzon.

Of hurtes by the Tuskes of a Boare.

The. Clxviij. Chapter.

IF a hoyse be hurt with the tuske of a Boare, laye Vitriol and Cozpozas thervnto, and the powder of a Dogges heade, being burned, but let the tongue be first pulled out and cast away.

To

To heale the byting or stinging of Serpents.

The.Clxix.Chapter.

Laurentius Russius. Take a good quãtity of the hearbe called Sanicula, stampe it, and distemper it with the milke of a Cow, that is all of one colour, and giue him that to drinke, and that will heale him.

An other medicine for the same purpose.

Make a playster of Onions, Hony, & salt, stampt, and mingled together, and lay that to the sore place, and giue the horse wine, & Treacle to drinke. Absirtus would haue you to giue him white Pepper, Rhewe, and Tyme, to drinke with wyne.

Of drinking of Horse leaches.

The.Clxx.Chapter.

IF a horse chaunce to drinke Horse leaches, they will continually suck his bloud, and kill him. The remedy according to Absirtus, is to poure Oyle into the horses mouth, whiche will make them to fall away and kill them.

Of swalowing downe hennes dong.

The.Clxxi.Chapter.

IF a horse swallow downe hennes dong in his hay, it wil fret his guttes, and make him to voyde filthy matter at the fundament. For remedye wherof, Absirtus would haue you to giue

him a drinke made of Smallage seede, wine, and hony, and to walke him throughly vpon it, that he may empty his belly.

Of Lyce, how to kill them.

The. Clxxy. Chapter.

They be like Geese Lice, but somwhat bigger, they will brede moste about the eares, necke, and tayle, and ouer all the body. They come of pouerty, and the horse will be alwayes rubbing, and scratching, and will eate his meate, and not prosper withall, and with rubbing he will breake all his Mayne, and tayle. The cure according to Martin is thus. Annoynt the place with Sope and quick siluer, well mingled together, and to a pound of Sope, put halfe an ounce of quicke siluer.

How to saue horses, from the stinging of Flyes in Sommer.

The. Clxxij. Chapter.

Annoynt the horses coate with Oyle, and Bay burryes, mingled together, or tye to the headestall of his collor a sponge dipt in strong Vineger, or sprinkle the stable with water, wherin hearbe grace hath bene layde in stepe. Or perfume the stable with Jupe, or with Calaminte, or with Gith, burned in a panne of coles.

Of

Of bones being broken or out of ioynt.

The.Clxxiij.Chapter.

FEwe or none of our Ferrers do intermeddle with any such griefes, but doe referre it ouer vnto the bone setter, whose practised hand, I must nedes confesse, to be nedeful in such businesse. Notwithstanding, for that it belongeth to the Ferrers arte, and also for that the olde writers do make some mention thereof, I thought good not to passe it ouer altogether with silence. Albeit, they speake onely of fractures, in the legges beneathe the knee. For they make little mention or none, of bones aboue the knee, taking them to be vncurable, vnlesse it be a rybbe or such lyke. If any bone then be broken in the legge, it is easye to perceyue, by feeling the roughnesse & inequality of the place grieued, one part being higher then an other. The cure whereof, according to Absirtus, and Hierocles, is in this sort. First, put the bone againe into his right place. That done, wrappe it aboute with vnwasht woll, binding it fast to the legge with a smoth linnen rowler, soked before in oyle & Vineger mingled together. And let that rowler be laide on, as euen as is possible, and vpon that, lay agayne more woll, dipte in oyle and Vineger, and then splent it with three splents, binding them fast at both endes with a thong, & let the horses leg be kepte straight,

and ryght out, the space of .xl. dayes, and let not the bondes be louſened aboue thꝛe tymes in .xx. dayes, vnleſſe it chꝛinke, & ſo require to be newe dꝛeſt, and bounde againe. But fayle not euery daye once, to poure on the ſoꝛe place, thꝛoughe the ſplents, oyle and Vineger, mingled together, & at the .xl. dayes ende, if you perceiue that the bꝛoken place be ſowdered together, againe with ſome harde knobbe oꝛ griſtle: Then louſen the bondes, ſo as the Hoꝛſe may goe fayꝛe and ſoftly, vſing from that time foꝛth to annoynt the place with ſome ſoft greaſe oꝛ oyntment.

Of bones out of ioynt.

The. Clxxv. Chapter.

IF a hoꝛſes knee, oꝛ ſhoulder be cleane out of ioynt, and no bone bꝛoken: Martin ſayth the readyeſt way is, to bind al the foure legges together, in ſuch ſoꝛte as haue bene taught befoꝛe, in the Chapter of Incoꝛding, and then to hoyſe the hoꝛſe ſomewhat fꝛom the ground, with his heeles vpwarde, ſo ſhall the wayght and payſe of his body, cauſe the ioynt to ſhoote in agayne, into his ryghte place; foꝛ by thys meanes, he pleaſured not long ſynce a friende, and neyghbour of his, who goyng with his Carte fꝛom Saint Albons, towards his houſe, his Thyller fell, and putte his ſhoulder cleane out of ioynt, ſo as he was neither able to ryſe, noꝛ being holpen vp, could ſtande

stande on his legges. To which mischaunce, Martin being called, made no more a doe, but taking hys frendes Carte rope, bounde the horses legges all foure together, and with a leauer thruste betwixte his legges and body, and the one end of the leauer being stayed vppon the Carte whele, they puttyng their shoulders to the other end, hoysed vp the horse cleane from the grounde, the payse of whose bodye, made the bone to returne into his ryght place, with such a loud knack, as it mought be harde a greate way of, and the horse immediatelye had the vse of of his legge, so as he drewe in the Carte, and went safe home, without complayning therof euer after.

Certayne receytes of playsters, very good for broken bones, taken out of the olde Authours, wryting of horse leache crafte.

The. Clxxvi. Chapter.

TAke of *Spuma argenti*, of Vineger, of eche one pound, of Sallet oyle, halfe a pound, of Amoniacum, and of Turpentine, of eche three ounces, of waxe, of Rosen, of ech two ounces, of Bitumen, of Pitch, and of Verdygrease, of eche halfe a pound. Boyle the vineger, oyle, and Spuma argenti together, vntill it wax thicke, then put therevnto the pytche, which being molten, take the pot from the fyre, and put in the Bitumen, without sturring it at all, and that being also molten, put in then all the rest, & set the potte againe to the fyre, and let them boyle all

together, vntil they be al vnited in one. That done, straine it, and make it in playster forme, and this is called Hierocles playster.

A nother receyte for broken bones.

The. Clxxvij. Chapter.

TAke of liquid Pitch one pound, of wax two ounces, of the purest and fineh part of Frankencense one ounce, of Amoniacum foure ounces, of dry Rosen, & of Galuanum of eche one ounce, of Vineger two pyntes. Boyle first the Vineger and pitch together, then put in the Amoniacum, dissolued first in vineger, & after ỳ al the reast of the foresayd drugs, and after they haue boyled all together, & be vnited in one, straine it, and make it playster wyse, & this is called Emplastrũ flauũ, that is to say, ỳ yealow plaister.

An oyntment for broken bones.

The. Clxxviij. Chapter.

TAke of olde sallet oyle a quart, and put thervnto of Hogs grease, of Spuma nitri, of eche one pound, and let them boile together, vntill it begin to bubble aboue, and let this oyntement be very warme, when you vse it.

HItherto of al the diseases belonging to a horse. Nowe therefore my promise made vnto you, in the beginning of this boke, to speak of those things wherein

wherein the cure of all diseases do consist, that is to say, in letting bloude, in taking vppe of vaynes, in purging, and in giuing the fyre, yea, and also order it selfe bindeth me to treate of the sayde things presently, and first of letting bloud.

In howe many vaynes a Horse may be let bloude in, and to what ende.

The. Clxxix. Chapter.

AS touching the order, time of the yere, Moone & day and other circumstaunces belonging to letting of bloud, we haue sufficiently spoken alredy in the kepers office, in the xrij. Chapter. It resteth therfore here to shewe you what vaynes should be opened whē the horse is sick of any disease, according to Vegetius opinion. But first, I will rehearse vnto you once agayne, in howe many vaynes a horse maye be let bloude in, and the rather for that in following Vegetius, I lefte out in the. vij. Chapter of the kepers office, the two temple vaynes, which be the two first and principal vaines of the head. A horse then may be let bloud in the two temple vaynes. Item, in the two eye vaynes, which are eafie to finde in the face of the horse, somewhat beneath the eyes. Item, in the two pallat vaynes, of the mouthe. Item, in the two

two necke vaynes. Item, in the two platte vaynes which be in the breast. Item, in the two forthyghe vaynes. Item, in the foure shakle vaynes before. Item, in the two toe vaynes before. Item, in the two side vaynes, which maye be otherwise called flanck vaynes. Item, in the taile vayn. Item, in the two haunch vaynes. Item, in ỹ two hough vaines. Item, in the foure shakle vaynes behinde. Item, in the two toe vaynes behind, so that by this accompt a horse may be let bloude in. xxxi. vaynes. All which vaynes are easie ynough to knowe, bicause that euerye one lyeth in a little gutter, which by feeling softly with your finger, you shall finde immediatly. And Vegetius sayth, that if a horse be payned with any griefe in his heade, ache, heauinesse, frensie, falling euill, or suche lyke, then it is good to lette him bloude in the temple vaynes with a fleame. If his eyes be watersihe, bloude shotten, or grieued, with pinne, webbe, or hawe, then it is good to strike the eye vayne with a fleame. If he haue any heauinesse or wearinesse of bodye, or be diseased in the throte with the stranguillon, quynzy, or swelling of the arters, eyther within or without, then it is good to let him bloude in the mouthe, in the palat vaynes with a cornette. If he be vexed with an ague, or with any other disease, vniuersally hurting his body, then let him bloude in the necke vaynes. If his griefe be in the lungs, liuer, or in anye other inwarde member, then let him bloude in the breast vaynes, which we called before the platte vaynes. If he be grieued in the shoulder, then let him bloud

in

in the forethighe vaynes, aboue the knee with a launcet, and that very warely, bicause that place is ful of sinewes, and if he be grieued in his ioints, thē let him bloude in the shakle vaynes, and that warely, bicause that place is also full of sinewes. And if he be foyled on his forefeete by foundering or otherwise, then let him bloud in the toe vaynes, making waye first with your drawer, or tonet in the houe to come to the vayne. If he be diseased in the kydneys, raynes, backe, or belly, then let him bloud in the flanke vaynes, and in his tayle, if he hath any griefe in his hippes, or houghes, then let hym bloude in the hippe, or houghe vaynes, and if his hynder legges, ioynts, or feete, be grieued, then let him bloude in the shakle vaynes, and toe vaynes, as is before sayde.

The order of taking vp vaynes, and wherefore it is good.

The. Clxxx. Chapter.

THe order obserued by *Martin* is in this sort. First, if the horse be very curst and shrewd, then cast him vpon a dounghill, or some strawe, then hauing found the vayne, ỹ you woulde take vp, marke well that parte of the skinne which couereth the vayne, & pull that somewhat aside from the vayne, with your leaft thombe, to the intent you may slitte it with a rasor, without touching the vayne. And cut no deeper then onely

through the skinne, and that longstwise, as the vayne goeth, and not aboue an ynche long. That done, take away your thombe, and the skinne will returne agayne into his place, right ouer the vaine, as it was before. Then with a cornet vncouer the vayne and make it bare, and being bare thrust the cornet vnderneath it, and rayse it vp, so as you may put a shoemakers threede vnderneath, somewhat higher then the cornet, to knitte the vayne when tyme is, and if your cornet had a hole in the small ende thereof to put in the threade, it shoulde be the easelier done. Then the cornet standing so stil, slitte the vayne longstwayes that it may bleede, and hauing bled somewhat from aboue, then knitte it vp with a sure knot, somewhat aboue the slitte suffering it to bleede onely from beneath, and hauing bled sufficiently, then knitte vp the vayne also beneath the slitte with a sure knot, and fill the hole of the vayne, with salt, and then heale vp the wounde of the skinne with Turpentine, and Hogs grease molten together, and layd on with a little flax. The taking vp of vaynes is verye necessary, and doth ease manye griefes in the legges, for the taking vp of the forethighe vaynes easeth Farcyns, and swellings of the legges, the taking vp of the shakel vaynes before, easeth the quitterbone, and swelling of the ioyntes, scabbes, & cratches. The taking vp of the hinder vaynes, helpeth the farcyn, swellings, & both the spauens. The taking vp of the shakle vaynes behinde, helpeth swelling of the ioints, the paines, and kibed heeles and such like diseases.

Of

Of purging with purgation or Glyster.

The.Clxxxiij.Chapter.

PUrgation is defyned by the Phisicians to be the emptying or voyding of superfluous humors annoying the bodye with their euill qualitie. For suche humors breede euill iuyce and nutrimēt called of the Phisitians Cachochimia, which, when it wil not be corrected or holpen with good dyet, alteration, nor by the benefite of nature and kindly heate, then it must nedes be taken away by purgation, vomit, or glister. But for so muche, as horses are not wonte to be purged by vomit as mē be, I wil speake here only of glisters, and purgatiōs. And first bicause a horse is grieued with manye diseases in his guttes, and that nothing can purge the guttes so well as a glister, and specially the thicke guttes, I wishe that our ferrers woulde learne to know, the diuersitie of glisters, to what ende they serue, and with what drugges or simples they shoulde be made, for as the disease requireth, so muste the glister be made, some to ease griefes, & to alley the sharpenesse of humors, some to binde, some to louisen, some to purge euil humors, some to clense biters, but our ferrers do vse glisters, onlye to louisen the belly, and for no other purpose, yea few or none doe that, vnlesse it be Martin, and such as he hath taught, who is not ignorant that a glister is the beginning of purgatiō, for a glister by clensing the guttes, refresheth the vitall partes, and prepareth the way before. And therfore, when-

soeuer a horse is surfeted, and full of euill humors needing to be purged, and specially being paynted in the guttes, I woulde wysche you to beginne fyrst with a glister, lest by purging him with medicine vpon the sodaine, you sturre vp a multitude of euill humors, which finding no passage downeward, bicause the guttes be stopte with winde and dregs, doe strike vpwardes, and so perhaps put the horse in great daunger. But now you shall vnderstande that glisters be made of foure things, that is to say, of decoctions, of drugges, of oyles, or such lyke vnctuous matters, as butter or soft grease, and fourthly, of dyuers kindes of salte to prouoke the vertue expulsiue. A decoction is as muche to say, as the broth of certayne hearbes or simples boyled together in water, vntill the thirde parte be consumed, and sometyme in steede of such decoction, it shall be nedefull perhappes to vse some fatte broth, as the broth of Beefe, or of a sheepes heade, or milke, or whay, or some other such lyke lyquor, and that perhaps mingled with hony and suger, according as the disease shall require, the glister to be eyther lenitiue, that is to say, easing payne, or glutinatiue, that is ioyning together, or else abstersiue, that is to say, clensyng, or wyping away filthy matter, of which decoction or broth being strayned, you shal nede to take three pintes, or a quart at the least. And then into that, you may put such drugs, as shall be nedefull, to the wayght of three or foure ounces, according as the simples shall be more or lesse vyolent. Of oyle at the least halfe a pinte, and of salte two

or

or three Dragmes, and then to be ministred luke warme with a horne, or pipe made of purpose, when the horse is not altogether full paunched, but rather emptye, be it in the fore noone or after noone. And as touching the tyme of keping glisters in the body, you shall vnderstand, that to glisters abstersyue, halfe an houre or lesse may suffise, to glisters lenitiue a longer time, if it may be, & to glisters glutinatyue, the longest tyme of all is most nedefull.

Of Purgations.

The. Clxxxiij. Chapter.

Purgations for men may be made in dyuers sortes and formes, but horses are wonte to be purged onelye with pilles, or else with purging powders, put into Ale, wyne, or some other lyquor. But the simples wherof such pilles or powders be made, would be chosen with iudgement, and aptly applyed, so as you may purge away the hurteful humors, and not the good. Learne first therfore to know with what humor or humors the Horse is grieued, be it Choler, Fleame, or melancholy, and in what part of the body, such humors do abound, then what simples are best to purge such humors, and with what propertye, qualitye, and temperament they be indued. For some be vyolent, and next cosins to poyson, as Scamony, or Coloquintida. Some againe are gentle, & rather meate than medicines, as Manna,

Cassia, Whay, Prunes, and such lyke. And some againe be neyther to vyolent, nor to gentle, but in a meane, as Rhewbarb, Agaricke, sene Aloes. The olde men did vse muche to purge Horses with the pulpe of Coloquintida, sometyme with the rootes of wylde Coucumbre, and somtyme wyth the broth of a sodden whelpe mingled with Nitrum, and dyuers other things, wherof I am sure I haue made mentio before in the curing of horses diseases. Notwithstanding, I would not wysche you to be to rash in purging a horse, after the olde mennes example. For as their simples many tymes be very violent, so the quantitys therof by them prescribed are verye much, & daungerous for any horse to take in these dayes, in the whiche neyther man nor beast as it seemeth, is of suche force or strength, as they haue bene in tymes past. And therfore whensoeuer you would purge a horse of any valew, I woulde councell you to purge hym with suche kindes of purgations as Martin vseth, whereof you haue had examples before in dyuers places. And whensoeuer you list for knowledge sake, to deale with other simples, to proue them first vpon suche Jades, as may be wel spared. For who so mindeth to purge a horse well, that is to doe him good, and no hurt, had nede to consider many things, as the nature of the horses disease, and the horses strēgth. Also the nature, strength, and quantity of the medicine, that he ministreth, the Region, or Countrey tyme of the Disease, the tyme of the yeare, and the day. For as the diseases, and euill humors causing such diseases be

dyuers,

dyuers, so doe they requyre to be purged with dyuers medicines, diuerslly compounded, wherin consisteth a point of art to be learned at the Phisitians handes, and not at mine. Againe, weake, delicate, and tender horses, may not be purged in such sort, as those that be of a strong sturdye nature. And therefore in such cases, the qualitie, and quantity of the simples is not a little to be considered, neyther is the hoteneſſe, or coldeneſſe of the Region to be neglected, nor the tyme of the diſeaſe. For some require to be purged in the very beginning, some not vntil the matter be throughly digeſted. And though the diſeaſe procede perhaps of colde, and colde humors, yet a man may not miniſter such hote things in Sōmer, as he would do in Winter, nor in ỹ contrary caſe, such colde things in Winter, as he would do in Sommer. And therefore the tyme and ſeaſon of the yere is alſo to be obſerued, yea, & the day, and time of the day. For the more temperate the day be, the better, not an extreme hote day, for making the horſe to faynt, nor yet when the wind bloweth cold in the North, for that wil ſtop and hinder the working of the medicine, but rather in a tēperate moiſt day, when the winde is in the South, if it may be, for that will further and helpe the working of the medicine, and make the body louſe, and ſoluble. Againe, for a horſe whither you purge him with pilles or drink, it is beſt for him as Martin ſayth, to take them in the Morning, after that he hath faſted from meate and drinke all the nighte before. And hauing receiued his medicine, let him be walked vp

and downe, one houre at the least, and then set vp, and suffered to stande on the bit, two or three houres without any meate, but in the meane tyme see that he be well littered, and warme couered, and at the three houres end, offer hym a little of a warme mash made with wheate meale, or with bran, or else with ground mault. Gyue him little meate or none, vntil he be purged, al which things haue bene shewed you before in diuers places, and therefore I thinke it not good to be tedious vnto you with often rectall thereof.

Of Cauterization, or gyuing the fyre aswell actuall as potentiall.

The. Clxxxv. Chapter.

FOr so muche as the fyre is iudged of all the olde wryters to be the chiefest remedy, and as it were the last refuge in al diseases almost wherevnto a horse is subiecte. I thought good therefore, to talke of it in thys place, and the rather for that fewe or none of our Ferrers, vnlesse it be Martin or suche as he hath taught, doe knowe howe to gyue the fyre or to what ende it serueth. But fyrst you shall vnderstande, that according to the learned Chirurgians, yea also according to my olde Authours there be two kindes of Cautery, the one actuall and the other potential. The Cautery actuall is that which is done onely by fyering of the grieued place with

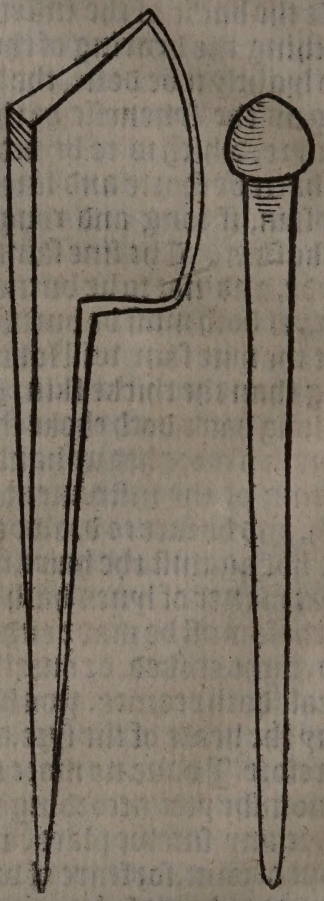
a hote yron. The potential Cautery is done by applying vnto ỹ grieued place, some medicin corosiue, putrifactiue or caustique. But we wyl speake first of the actual cautery shewing you wherfore it is good then of what metall and fashion your instruments shoulde be made, and finally, how, and when to vse them. Auicen sayth, that an actuall Cautery moderatly vsed, is a noble remedy to stoppe corruption of members, to rectifie the complexion of the same, and also to staunch bloud. Howe be it you must beware (sayth he) that you touche not the sinewes chordes, or lygamentes, least the member be weakened, or that the cramp ensueth. Vegetius also writing of horseleach craft prayseth the actual cautery very much, speaking in this sort. The actuall cautery (sayth he) byndeth together partes loosened. It doth attenuate parts blowen, & pufked vp, it dryeth vp superfluous moysture, it looseneth, disperseth and deuideth euill matter gathered together into knots, it asswageth olde griefes. It rectifyeth those partes of the bodye that are corrupted by anye maner of waye reducing them to their pristine estate, and suffereth no superfluitie to growe or encrease, for the skin being opened with a hote yron, al kynd of corruption by vertue of the fyre is fyrst digested, and rypened, and then dissolued so as the matter doth issue out at the holes, whereby the member or parte before offended, is nowe healed, and eased of all payne and griefe. Yea, the holes being once closed, and cleane shutte vp, that place is stronger and better knitte together, and couered with a tougher

skin then euer it was before. Now as touching the instruments wherof, & of what fashion they should be made. You shall vnderstande, that Vegetius and the other old writers would haue them to be made of Copper, praysing that metall to be farre better to burne with then yron. The Chirurgians for mannes body doe praise Golde and Siluer, but as for the fashion of the yrons, it is to be referred to the kind of sore, and place grieued, wherewith you haue to deale, according to the diuersitie wherof, the instruments are to be made of dyuers fashions, as some lyke searing yrons with sharpe edges, and some with blount & broad edges, some lyke right, & some lyke croked bodkyns, some lyke hookes or sicles, and some with a great button, & some with a small button at the one ende, in making whereof the ferrers iudgement is most needefull, who ought to be so skilfull, as he maye be able to make all maner of yrons that he should occupie, & to alter them according as nede shal require. And therfore I thought good onely here to set forth the shape of the commō drawing yron, and of the button yron, like in forme to those that Martin vseth, referring all the rest to your owne iudgement and specially, sith you haue bene fully instructed before, of what sort they shuld be made meete to serue your tourne in any disease. Nowe as touching the vse of the instruments two things are specially to be considered, that is, the heating of the yron, and the bearing of the hande. For the back of the yron may not be redde hote, but onely the edge, for feare of yeelding to much heate,

and

And therefore though it be made redde hote at the fyrst, yet it shall be good before you doe occupy it, to coole the backe of the instrument in water, and as touching the bearing of the hand, the more euenly and lyghtly it be done, the better, and that according as the fynenesse or thicknesse of the skin shall requyre, which is to be iudged by the haire. For if the haire be shorte and fine, then it is a signe of a fine skin, if long and rough, then it betokeneth a thicke skin. The fine skinne requyreth the lyghter hande, and not to be burned so deepe as the thicke skin, yet both must be burned vntil they loke yellow. But the fyne skin will loke yellow with lesser burning than the thicke skin. For the thicke skin with his long haire doth choke the fyre, and therefore requyreth a more heauy hande, yea, and more often heating of the instrument than the thinne skinne doth, and be sure to drawe alwayes with the haire, and not against the haire, in what forme, and with what maner of lynes hath bene taught you before, for those must be made either long, short, deepe, shalow, right, croked, or ouerthwart, according as the disease doth require. You haue learned also how to allay the heate of the fyre, after such drawing. And therefore I haue no more to say here, but onely to admonishe you according to Vegetius precepts, not to fyre any synewe place, nor bone, that is broken, or out of ioint, for feare of weakning ỹ whole member, nor to beare so heauie or vneuen hand, as you shoulde thereby deforme, or misfashion any part of the horse, nor to be to hasty in giuing the fyre, but

to attempt first all other conuenyent remedies, and when nothing else will helpe, to make the fyre your laste refuge, and yet not so muche to neglect it, and abhorre it, lyke ỹ ignorannt sort, as you wyll not vse it when nede requireth, for lack whereof, manye horses goe lame, and vncured of dyuers dyseases. Practyse youre selues therefore in giuing the fire at nedeful times with iudgement and discreatyon, so shall you doe it to the Horses benefite, and to your owne great prayse and profite.



The Drawing yron.

An yron with a button.

Of

Of Cauteris Potentiall.

The.Clxxxvi.Chapter.

Cauteris Potentiall as *Iohannes vigo* saith, are medicines corosyue, putrefactiue, & causticke. This worde corosyue, is derpued of the latten word Corrodo, which is as muche to saye, as to gnawe and frette, and of such corosyues, some be simple and some compound. The simple as Vigo saith, be such as these, Roch alom, as wel burnt as not burnte, sponge of the sea somewhat burnt, Lyme, red Corall, pouder of Mercury. Compound Corosyues be these Vnguentum apostolorum, Vnguentiū ægiptiacum, Vnguentum Ceraceū. Medicines putrefactiue, called of the learned sort Septica, according to Auicen, be those that haue strength to corrupt the complexiō of the member, and to enduce an eschar lyke dead flesche, causing great payne, yea and feuers, and therefore ought not to be ministred, but to strong bodyes and in strong diseases, as in Carbuncles, cancrous, vlcers, and such lyke, and they be these. Arsnike sublimat, realgar, and other medicines compound therewith. Siluius also addeth thereunto Sandaracha chrysocolla, and Aconitum, but he doth not agree with Auicen in the discription of the putrefactiue medicynes. For he sayth that they cause little payne or none, neyther be they so hote and drye, as those that are called Escharotica, ỹ is to say Crustiue,

which be hot in the fourth degre, & do brede a crust and scar and cause great payne, as vnslect lime and the burned dregs of wyne: wherfore it semeth that Auicens discription belongeth rather to the crustiue, than to the putrifactyue medicines. Not withstanding I must needes say that our Chirurgiās, and also ferrers, doe synde both Arsenik, and Resalgar, to be so sharpe, hot, and burning things, as when they mynister the same to any parte of the bodye, they are forced to allay the sharpenesse thereof, the Chirurgians with the iuyce of Plantan, or Daffadyll, or else of Houseleeke, the ferrers with hogs grease.

Medycynes Caustike that is to say burning, are those whose operation is moste strong, and inclyneth to the nature of fire, and yet more easily allayed as Vigo wryteth, than the medicines putrifactyue, and therefore may be more safely vsed. They be made as he sayth of strong lye, called Capitellum, or Magistra, of Vitriol Romane, Sal vitre, Aqua fortis, of this sort be all those which Vigo calleth the blistring medicines, as Apium, Cantharides, Ciclamine, Onions, strōg Garlicke, Melanacardinum, the stones or graines of vitis Alba, otherwyse called Bryonye. Moreouer Vigo maketh euery one of these Cauteris potentiall, to excell one an other, as it were by certayne degrees, saying that Cozolines be weaker than Putrifactiues, and Putrifactiues weaker than Caustick, and therfore Cozolines worke in the vpper part, and in softe flesshe. Putrifactiues in harde flesshe and depe. But Caustickes haue power to breake the skin in harde flesh, and doe enter most deepely. The vse of

the

the most parte of whiche things, hath bene taught you before, in sundry places according to Martins experience. And therefore I leaue to trouble you any further, wishing you that are desirous to know any more of these matters, to reade Taugantius writing, De piroticis the .xj. Chapter, in his first boke of Surgery. And Siluius de medicament. comp. ratione. And Iohn Vigo writing of Surgery englyshed but fewe yeares synce. But the olde writers so farre as I can iudge by the words of Absirtus, Pelagonius, and others that write of Horsleach craft, do apply this worde Causticke, to suche medicins as are astrictiue and bynding, called of Martin and other Ferrers in these dayes, bynding charges, as may well appeare by the composition and vse thereof here following, receyted by Vegetius in this sorte.

The receyte of a Caustick vsed by Chiron to dry vp superfluous moysture, and to bind parts lowsned, and to strengthen parts weakned.

The. Clxxxvij. Chapter.

TAke of *Bitumẽ Iudaicũ*, two pound of Bitumen Apolonii two pounde, of the purest part of Frankencẽse sixe ounces, of Bdelliũ Arabitũ ij. oũces, of deares suet ij. pound, of Propuleũ two ounces, of Galbanũ two ounces, of the dryps of Storax two ounces, of cõmon wax two pound, of Resin Cabial one pound, of Viscus Italicus thre ounces, of Apoxima two ounces, of the iuyce of Hysop two ounces, of the droppes of

Armoniacke two ounces, of Pytch one pounde.

A nother Caustick vsed by Pelagonius, to dry vp swellings, bladders, wingals, and splents, in the legges and toyntes.

The. Clxxxvij. Chapter.

TAke of virgin Wax one pounde, of Rosen two pounde and a halfe, of Galbanum three ounces, of Asphaltum Iudaicū two pound, of Myrrhe secundary two pounde, of Bitumen one pounde, of Armoniacke syxe ounces, of Costus syxe ounces. Boyle all these things together in an earthen pot, sauing the Asphaltum, Armoniack, and Costū, which being first ground like fine flower, muste be added vnto the other thinges, after that they haue bene boyled and cooled, and then boyled altogether againe, and well sturred, so as they may be incorporated together, and made all one substance. These kindes of emplaysters or oyntmentes, ought in my iudgement, to be called as I sayde before, rather binding charges, then Causticke medicines, bicause there be no suche extreme corosiue or burning symples in these, as are before recyted. Notwithstanding, I referre my iudgement to those that be better learned, and so ende, for feare of being ouer tedious. For if I woulde, I could take very good occasion here to speake of diuers other medicines whereof some are called Anodiua, that is, easing paine and griefe. Martin calleth them Lynoges, which are made

made of Lynseede, Camomile, softe grease, & suche lyke things, as are hote in the first degree. Some agayne are called Narcotica, that is to say, astonying or bringing to slepe, as those that are made of Opiū, Mandragora, Popye, and suche lyke colde and grosse things. And some are called Sarcotica, that is breeding flesh, as Barlye flower, & Frankencense. And many other kinds of emplaisters, ointmēts, waters, and salues, which would occupye a Booke of no small bolume, to be written hereafter by some other perhappes, if not by my selfe. And in the meane tyme, let this that I haue alredy written suffice.

Here endeth the order of curing of Horses diseases, and here followeth the true Art of paring, and shoing all maner of houes.

To cure a straine in ye back sinnes, or any other straine; Take 5 quarts of Ale, and half a pecke of Glouers Speckes. boile yᵐ till they be consumed. and then byd al cloth about the leg and ~~rob~~ prod in ye liquor, letting it remain 4 or 5 dayes, and if yt heale it not, then renew it agayne in like maner

The true Arte of Paring, and shooyng all maner of Houes

together, with the shapes and fygures of dyuers shooes, very necessarye for dyuers Houes.

¶ In what poyntes the Arte of shooyng doth consist.

The first Chapter.

THe Art of shoyng consisteth in these poyntes, that is to say, in paryng the houe well, in making the shoe of good stuffe, in well fashioning the webbe thereof, & well pearcing the same, in fitting the shooe vnto the horses foote, in making nayles of good stuffe, and well fashioning of the same, and finally, in well dryuing of the sayde nayles, and clenching of the same. But sith neyther paring nor shooing is no absolute thing of it selfe, but hath respect vnto the foote, or houe, (for the shoe is to be fitted to the foote, and not the foote to the shoe) and that there be dyuers kinds of houes both good and badde, requiring great diuersitie as well of paring, as shooing: It is meete therefore that we talke firste of the diuersitie of houes, and then shewe you how they ought to be pared and shodde.

Of Houes, and dyuers kinds thereof.

The seconde Chapter.

Of Houes some be perfecte, and some vnperfect. The perfecte Houe is that whith is round, smoth, tough, and short, so as the horse may treade more on the toe than on the heele, and also righte, and somewhat hollow within, but not ouer hollow, hauing a narrowe frush, and brode heeles. The vnperfect houe, is that whiche lacketh any of these propertyes before sayde, belonging to a perfect houe. For as touching the first poynt. If the Houe be not rounde but broade, and spreading out of the sides or quarters, that horse for the most part hath narrow heeles, and in continuance of tyme will be flatte footed, which is a weake foote, & wyll not cary a shoe long, nor trauell farre, but sone surbate, and by treading more on his heeles, than on his toes, will goe lowe on his pastornes, and suche feete through their weakenesse be much subiecte to false quarters, and to grauelling, which is most cōmonly seene in Flaunders horses, and such as are bredde in moyst grounde.

Broade Houes.

Brittle & rugged Houes.

Secondly, if the houe be not smoth, but rugged, and full of circles, lyke Rammes hornes, then it is not only vnseemely to the eye, but also it is a sygne that the foote is in no good temper, but to bote and dry, and thereby perhappes maketh the houe to be brittle, which defect is often seene in our Englishe Horses.

Thirdly,

Thirdely if it be long, then it will cause the horse to treade all vpon the heeles, and to goe low on his pastornes, and therby to breede windgalles, whervnto the Jennettes of Spaine be much subiect, by reason of their long Houes. Long houes.

Fourthlye, if the Houe be not right, but crooked, that is to say, broade without, and narrow within, whereby the Horse is splay footed, then it will cause the Horse to treade more inwarde, than outwarde, and to goe so close with his ioyntes together, as he can not wel trauel without enterfering, or perhaps stryketh one legge so harde against an other, as he becommeth lame. But if he be broade within, and narrow without, that is not so hurtfull. Notwithstanding, it will cause him to grauell soner on the outsyde than on the insyde. Crooked Houes.

Fifthly if the Houe be flat and not hollow within, which is moste commonly seene in Frezons and Flaunders horses, then it bredeth, such inconueniences, as are before declared in the firste vnperfect houe. And againe if it be ouer hollow, then it wyll dry the faster, and cause the horse to be houebound. For ỹ ouer hollow houe is a straight narrow houe, and groweth vpryght, whereby thoughe the horse treadeth vpright, and not on his heeles, yet suche kinde of houes will dry ouer fast, vnlesse they be continually stopt, and cause the horse to be houe bound, which lameth them, making them to halte, whervnto the Jennets and Barbarye horses are muche subiect. Flatte houes. Ouer hollow houes.

Sythly, if the frush be broade, then the heeles be Broade frushes,

weake, and so softe as you may almost bende them together, and then the horse wil neuer treade boldlye on the stones, or harde ground.

Narrowe hæles. Seuenthly and lastlye, if the heeles be narrow, they be tender, and the horse will growe to be houe bounde, to which defect the Jenners are most commonly subiect.

Of paring the perfect Houe and fore foote.

The thirde Chapter.

Irst pare the seat of the shoe, so euen and playne as maye be, to the intente that the shoe may sytte close, and not beare in one place more then in an other, & take more of the toe then of the heele, to the intente that the heeles bee higher then the toe, because all the waight of ỹ horses fore-body lyeth vpō the quarters and heeles of the fore-feete. And therefore those partes shoulde be moste maintayned, and taken off with the butter as little as may be. For the paryng of the heeles, being naturally thinner, and more tender than the toe, doth greatly weaken them: but the toe being naturally thicke and harde, woulde be pared so thinne almost as the edge of a knife. But in paring the hinder feete, cleane contrarye order is to be obserued, as shall be sayde hereafter in his proper place, whereof the French Ferrers haue a prouerbe, which saith Deuant dariar, dariar deuant, in English, before behinde, behinde

behinde before, that is to say, spare the fore foote behind, and the hinder foote before, as wel in paring, as in pearcing the shoe.

Of shooing the perfect houe and forefete, and how the shooe, pearcing, and nayle, should be made.

The fourth Chapter.

MAke your shoe of spruse or spanishe yron, with a broad web, fitting it to the foote, and let the sponges be thicker, & more substantiall then any other parte of shooe, yea, and also somewhat broad, so as the quarters on both sides may disbord, that is to say, appere without the houe a strawes bredth, to garde the coffin, which is the strength of the houe, and only beareth the shoe, and when you come to the pearcing thereof, spare not to pearce it from the quarter to the harde toe, but not backwardes towarde the heele, and pearce it so, as the holes may be wider on the outside then on the inside, & that the cyrcle of the pearcing maye be more distant from the edge of the toe, then from the edge of the quarter, whereas it beginneth, because the houe is thicker forewarde then backward, and therefore more holde to be taken. And as touching the nayles make them also of the same yron beforesayde, the heades whereof woulde be square and not fully so broad beneath as is aboue, but answerable

swerable to ỹ pearcing holes, so as the head of the nayles maye enter in and fyll the same, appearing aboue the shoe no moze than ỹ bzeadth of the backe of a knife, so shal they stand sure without shogging, and endure longer, and to that end the stamp that fyrst maketh the holes, and the prelchell that pearceth them, and also the neckes of the nayles, woulde be of one square fashion and bignesse, that is to say, great aboue and small beneath. which our common Smithes doe little regarde, foz when they pearce a shoe, they make the holes as wyde on the inside, as on the outside, and their nayles with so great a shouldering by dzyuing them ouer harde vpon the nayle toole, as the heades oz rather neckes of the sayde nayles, can not enter into the holes, foz to say the truth, a good nayle would haue no shouldering at all, but be made with a playne and square neck, so as it maye iustly fyll and fill the pearcing hole of the shoe. Foz otherwise the head of ỹ nayle standing high, and the necke thereof being weake, eyther it breaketh off, oz else bendeth vpon euery light occasion, so as the shoe thereby standeth loose from the houe and is quickly lost. Mozeouer ỹ shankes of the nayles woulde be somewhat flatte, and the poynts sharpe without hollownesse oz flawe, and stiffer towards the head aboue, than beneath. And when you dzyue, dzyue at the first with soft strokes, and with a light hammer, vntill the nayle be somewhat entred, and in shooing fyne delycate hozses, it shall not be amisse to grease the poyntes of the nayles with a little soft grease, that the nailes may

enter

enter the moze easely, and dzyue the two talon nayles fyzst. Then looke whether the shoe standeth right oz not, which you shall perceyue in beholding the frush, foz if the sponges on both sydes, be equally distaunt from the frush, then it standeth right, if not, then amend it and set the shoe right, and standing right, dzyue in another nayle, that done, lette the hozse set downe his fote agayne, & looke rounde about it, to see whether it fitteth the hozses foote in all places, and whether the hozse treadeth euē and iust on it oz not. And if you see that the shoe doth not furnish euery parte equally, but pethappes appeareth moze of one syde than of an other. Then make the hozses other fote to be lifted vp, to the intent he may stand the moze stedely vpon that foote, and so standing strike him on the houe with youre hammer on that side that the shoe is scant, and that shal make the shoe to come that way. The shoe thus standing straight and iust, dzyue in the rest of al the nayles to the number of eyght, that is to saye foure on one syde and foure on another, so as the poynts of the nayles may seeme to stande in the outsyde of the houe euē and iust one by an other, as it were in a cyzculer lyne, and not out of ozder lyke the teethe of a sawe whereof one is bent one waye and an other an other way. That done, cut them off & clinch them so as the clinches may be hidden in the houe, which by cutting the houe with the point of a knife, a little beneath ỹ appearing of the nayle you maye easely doe. That done with a rape, pare the houe round, so as the edge of the shoe may be sene round

aboute.

Of paring the vnperfect houes euery one according to their kindes, and first of the broad houe.

The fifte Chapter.

A Broade houe not being as yet growen to be flat, may be greatly holpen and kept frō being flat, by the skil and dyligence of the ferrer, in wel paring and shooing it. And therfore to pare it well, let him take as muche off the toe with his butter, as he can possibly, keeping it alwayes vnder, but let him not touche the quarters nor the heeles at al, vnlesse it be to make the seat of the shoe playne, & let that be done so superficially or ouerly as maye be, so shall the houes remayne alwayes strong.

Of shooing the broade houe.

The.vi. Chapter.

MAke a good stronge shoe with a broad web, and broad sponges, and pearced as is aforesayde, fitting it to the foote, being first pared as is aboue sayde, and from the talon naile towardes the heele, let the shoe appere a strawes bredth without the houe, and set it on in suche order and with such nayles as apper-

apperteyneth to the perfecte houe, sauing that you shal set fyue nayles on the outside of this houe, and foure on the inside, bicause he weareth moze without than within.

Of paring the rough and bzittle houe.

The.vij. Chapter.

THys kinde of houe is moste commonlye weaker without than within, and bicause it is foz ỹ moste parte hotter than the other houes be, the heeles thereof may be somewhat moze opened than the other, to the intent it may be moze easely stopt with cow dong, oz other oyntment to keepe it moyst, & also the raggednesse on the outside of the coffin woulde be syled away with a rape, and made smoth, and also moze often annoynted than other houes with the houe ointmēt hereafter discrybed in the end of this treatise, & as foz the rest of the houe, it must be pared as the perfect houe.

Of shooing the rough and bzittell houe.

The.viij. Chapter.

MAke his shoe neyther to lyght, but so as it maye well beare the hozse, noz yet to heauy, foz then the houe being weake will sone cast it, and pearce this shooe to be set on with nine nayles, fyue without and foure within.

Of paring the long houe.

The.ix.Chapter.

THe long houe maye be holpen by cutting awaye the toe with his butter, for the shorter foote a weake and slender legge hath, the better. And to saye the truth, it is the shorte foote that maketh the strong legge, and ỹ long foote maketh the weake legge, being forced thereby, to treade al vpon the heele, and on the pastorne, and let the rest of the houe be pared lyke the perfect houe.

Of shoing a long houe.

The.x.Chapter.

MAke thys shoe as rounde as you can at the toe, that the breadth may take away the euil sight of the length, and if the foote be very narrow, then let the shoe disborde without the houe, & pearce the shooe the deeper, and set the shoe backwarde ynough, bicause suche kynde of feete doe treade most on the heeles, and set the shoe on with eyght nayles lyke the perfect houe.

Of paring the crooked houe.

The.xi.Chapter.

First

FIrst looke on what side the houe is hygheſt and leaſt wozne, then pare all that away and make it equal with the lower ſide which is moſt wozne, without touching the wozne ſide at all, vnleſſe it be to make the ſeate of the ſhoe playne, and as foz the reſt, pare it lyke the perfect houe.

Of shooing the crooked houe.

The.xij.Chapter.

MAke an indifferent ſtrong ſhoe with a bzoad web, fitting it to the fote, and pearce it not vntill you haue layde the ſhooe vnto the foote, to the intent you maye pearce it to the hozſes moſte commoditie, which ſhall be done if you pearce the ſcante ſyde (whzich moſte commonly is the inſyde) moze towardes the toe, than the fuller oz ſtronger ſyde. And where as the houe is weakeſt, there alwayes make the ſhoe ſtrongeſt, and ſet on this ſhoe with nyne nayles, that is to ſaye, fyue on the ſtronger ſyde, and foure on the weaker ſyde.

Of paring the flat houe, otherwiſe called the pomiſed houe.

The.xiij.Chapter.

MAke the ſeate of the ſhooe playne, and take ſomwhat off the toe, but touch not the heele noz the ball of the foote, but leaue

both them so strong as you can.

Of shooing the flat houe, or pomised houe.

The xiiij. Chapter.

MAke this shoe with a verye broad web, for the more it couer the weake sole, the better, and let the midde parte of the web that couers the ball of the foote be muche thicker, than the outsydes where the pearcings be, and let it be so hollow as it touch no part of the ball of the foote, and let it be large and long ynough in all places, so as the horse maye goe at ease, and let it be pearced rounde about the toe, to fauoure the heeles, and make ten holes for ten nailes, that is to say, fiue on eche side.

Of paring the ouer hollowe houe.

The xv. Chapter.

PAre this houe rounde aboute, and specially the seate of the shoe, that is to say round about by the edges, to the intent that the concauite or hollownesse of the houe within maye not be so deepe, but more shallow than it was before, and let it be alwayes kepte moyst with stopping it, for feare of houe binding, obseruing in your paring so euen a hande as may be, in all poynts lyke vnto the perfect houe.

Of

Of shooing the ouer hollow houe.

The.xvi.Chapter.

MAke a lyght shooe in suche order and forme as was sayde before to serue the perfect houe.

Of paring a houe that hath a broad fruth.

The.xvij.Chapter.

BRoade Fruthes do cause weake heeles, and therefore had neede of little or no paring at all, & for that cause pare only the toe, and also the seat of the shoe, so much as shall be needefull to the euen standing of the shoe, leauing the heeles so strong as may be.

Of shooing the Houe that hath a broade fruthe.

The.xviij.Chapter.

MAke this shoe stronger towardes the heele thã towards the toe, and also let the web be somewhat broade towards the heeles to saue them from the ground, and set on this shoe wyth nine nayles, bycause moste commonly it is a greate foote, and in all other pointes make it like the shoe for the perfect Houe.

Of paring the houe that hath narrow heeles.

The.xix.Chapter.

PAre the toe short, and make the seate of the shoe faire & plaine, and open only so much, as there may be some little space betwixte the frushe and the heele. For the lesse you take off the heele, the better.

Of shoing the houe that hath narrow heeles.

The.xx. Chapter.

MAke a trim lyght shooe, with a broade webbe, and let the sponges be so brode as they may almost mete together, to defende the heele from the ground, and pearce it all towardes the toe, sparing the heele so much as you can, and let the shoe be long inoughe towards the heeles, and sette it on with eight nayles, lyke the shoe that fytteth the perfect houe.

Of paring and shoing the hinder feete.

The.xxi. Chapter.

HYtherto we haue spoken of the paring and shoing of the forefeete, now therefore, let vs speake somewhat of paring and shooing the hinder feete. For the paring of the hinder feete is clene contrary vnto the forefeete, for the weakest parte of the hinder foote is the toe, and therefore in paring the hinder foote, the toe must be alwayes more spared thã the heeles, but in al other poyntes, obserue the order of paring

paring, according to the perfection or imperfection of the houes before declared.

Of shoing the hinder fete.

The xxij. Chapter.

MAke the shoe fitte for the houe in such sorte as is before sayde, sauyng that it would be alwayes strongest towardes the toe, and it must be pearced nigher the heele than the toe, bycause as I haue sayde before, that the toe is alwayes the weakest parte of the hinder foote. Also let the outsyde of the hinder shoe be made with a Calkyn, not ouer high, but let the other sponge be agreable vnto the Calkin, that is to say as highe in a maner as the Calkin, which Calkin is to kepe the horse from slyding. But then it may not be sharpe poynted, but rather flatte and handsomlye turned vpwarde, as is presented in the fygure of hinder shoes hereafter folowing, which kinde of Calkin is named by Cesar Fiaschi in his booke of Ryding, Ramponealla Ragonesa, who vtterly reiecteth al other kinds of Calkins as thinges hurtefull and vnprofitable, as we shall shewe you hereafter when we come to speake of shoes with Calkins, rings, and such lyke engins.

Of shoing the houe that hath a false quarter.

The xxiij. Chapter.

If

If the horse halt, then make him a shoe fitted to his foote, lacking one quarter on that syde that his false quarter is, in suche forme as you shall see in the ende of thys booke. If he doe not halte, then make him a shoe with a button, or shouldering on the inside of the shoe, and next to the sole of the foote, somewhat distant from the false quarter towards the toe, in such forme as you shall haue in the ende of this booke, and that shall defende the sore place, so as the shoe shall not touch it. And let it be pearced lyke vnto the figure hereafter expressed, and with this kinde of shoe, you may boldely trauell your horse where you will.

Of paring and shooing for enterfering.

The xxiij. Chapter.

Those houes that enterfere, are most commonly higher on the outsyde, than on the insyde, and therefore the outsyde woulde be the more taken off with the butter, to the intente that the insyde may be somewhat hygher (if it will be) than the outsyde, & then make him a shoe fit for his foote, which woulde be thicker on the insyde than on the outsyde, and let that shoe neuer haue any Calkin, for that will make the Horse to treade awry, and the soner to enterfere, and let it be pearced in suche sorte, as you see the figure hereafter expressed. But to be sure. First cause the horse to be ridden before

you

you,and marke well where he toucheth moste, and there remedy the shoe, by making it the straighter in that place.

Of paring and shoing the foote that is houebound.

The.xxv.Chapter.

FIrst pare his toe so short as maye be, and pare the sole somewhat thin, and open the heeles wel,and make him a halfe shoe like a halfe Mone, fashioning & pearcing it lyke vnto the fygure hereafter expressed.

Of making the planch shoe,or pauncelet.

The. xxvi.Chapter.

THe planch maketh a good foote, and euill legge, bycause it maketh the foote to grow beyonde the measure of the leg. Notwithstanding for a weake heele,it is maruellous good,and it wil last longer than any shoe, and it is borowed from the Moyle,that hath weake heeles and fruches, to kepe the foote from stones and grauell. Notwithstanding, woe be vnto that horse that hath neede of such a shoe. The fygure of this shoe is also in the ende of this booke.

Of shoes with Calkins,rings, welts, and turning vyces,and of the Paten shoe.

The xxvij. Chapter.

BEsydes all these kinds of shoes before recyted, there be dyuers others, whereof some are made with hye Calkins, some with Ringes, some with welts or borders about, and some with pyces. Some with the toes turned vpwarde, some with the heeles turned vpward, and of many other fashions, which though they be not so nedefull, yet I thought good to speake somewhat of them, and also to set forth some of their shapes. And first, as touching shoes with Calkins, Cesar Fiaschi sayth, that though suche Calkins be made to kepe the horse from slyding. yet they doe the horse more harme than good, in that the horse by meanes thereof cannot treade euenly vpon the ground, wherby he many tymes wrencheth his foote, or strayneth some synew, and specially when he trauelleth in stonye places, and on the mountaynes, whereas the hardnesse of the stones perhaps not suffering the Calkins to catch sure holde, the foote slippeth with the more violent stresse, and so taketh harme, and specially the heele if it be weake. And therefore to trauell on the Mountaynes he prayseth much the Turkye maner of shooing, which for that purpose make their horses shoes with the heeles turned vpward, in such sorte as you see the plaunche made, setting them on with nayles hauing heades lyke little buttons, but not standing, so highe aboue the shoe as our froste nayles commonlye doe, whereby the Horse treadeth euenlye and surely, so shall he not doe hauing Calkins, which besydes the discommo-

dityes

dityes before alleaged, be very daungerous at any tyme that you would manage your horse. For by crossing in his turning, one foote perhappes may hurt an other with the Calkin, so as it may make the horse to halte, yea, & perhaps lame him for euer. And beside that, the Calkins being high behind, the houe can not be pared so much before at the toe, as it ought to be, whereby the horse treadeth lower on his heeles, than he should doe, being well pared and shod without Calkins, & so becommeth weake heeled. Notwithstanding, some neuer thinke their horses to be well shod, vnlesse all the shoes be made with Calkins, eyther syngle or double. Yet of two euils double is the lesse. For the Horse shall treade euener with double, than with single Calkins. But then such Calkins would not be ouer lõg, or sharpe poynted, but rather shorte and flatte, as hath bene before taught, and is expressed in the figure of hinder shoes hereafter folowing, which as I sayde before Cesar Fiaschi calleth Ramponi alla Ragonesa. Thus much of shoes with Calkins.

Of shoes with Rynges.

The.xxvij. Chapter

SHoes with Rings were first inuented, to make a horse lifte his feete highe, but Cesar Fiaschi sayth, that suche shoes be more paynefull than helpefull to the horse, and in wearing such shoes he lifteth more for payne and griefe, and speciallye

being trotted vppon a harde ground, than for anye pleasure or good that they doe him, which thing is incident to many horses, ỹ haue not sound Houes. For though they be wel shodde, and haue no rings at all, yet being trotted vpon a harde ground, they will lift higher than vpon a soft ground, for hauing tender houes, they be afeard to touch ỹ hard groũd, euen like a man that hath some griefe in the sole of his foote, which will rather twitch vp his leg, than offend the sore place, by settyng it to the groũd. And if that man should also weare a strait shoe, it would grieue him the worse. Euẽ so it fareth with ỹ horse, which perhaps hauing naturally tẽder heles, some for lacke of discretion doe adde therevnto also hye Calkins, or else rings, and therby cause him to haue weaker heeles, than he had before. Wherefore leauing aside such vnprofitable deuises, I would wish you make all your shoes, & specially your fore shoes with sponges, in suche order as hath bene before taught. And as for making the Horse to lifte his feete, that is to be holpen chiefly by the Art and skill of the Ryder. And whyles the horse is in scooling, I thinke it were not amisse, to let him weare continually verye heauy shoes, to the intent that being afterward shod with lighter shoes, when he should be maneged to the shoawe, or otherwyse trauelled, he maye feele his feete to be lighter, and thereby he shall lift the higher, and moue his legs and shoulders with the more pleasure and better grace.

Of

Of shoes with swelling welts, or borders about.

The.xxix.Chapter.

IN Germany and highe Almany, the Smythes do make their shoes with a swelling wealt round about the shoe, which being as hye as the heades of the nayles or rather higher, do saue the nayles frō wearing, which kinde of shoe for lasting, I must nedes prayse. For I my selfe haue trauelled my horse being shodde with those shoes, in those Countreys aboue fyue hundreth myles ryght out, vpon verye stony ground, yea, and vpon the mountaines, without remouing shoe, or dryuing nayle. For the shoe being made of wel tempered stuffe, weareth equallye in all parts, and the horse also treadeth euenlye vpon them, and specially his feete being before well pared. Cesar Fiaschi prayseth also this shoe very much, to be vsed when a horse should runne for a wager, to kepe him from slyding. But then he would haue the welt to be indēted, hauing sharpe poynted teeth lyke a Sawe, and that the sponges behinde be as thicke as the welt. And that the welt be of a tough harde temper, for feare of wearing ouer fast. And if you list to hollow the sayde shoe in the midst, yet let not the imbossed syde ryse so hyghe as the welt, but lye somewhat lower. With these kinde of shoes they vse in Italy to shoe such Barbary horses, Jennets, and Turkes, as are appointed to runne for the

best game at some publique triumph, or for any other priuate wager. And therefore syth this kinde of shoe is so good to kepe a horse from slyding, Cesar Fiaschi thinks it best to be vsed to that ende, vtterlye disalowing both Calkins, frost nayles, crests, spurres and all suche lyke deuyses, as are often vsed by the ignorannt sorte, to kepe their horses from slyding, not considering the great discommoditye and hurt, that may redound therof to the horse, by meanes that he can not treade euen vpon the ground. Or in stede of this shoe, they may vse the Turkye shoe, and button nayles before mentioned, and that shal kepe their horses from slyding better than any of the other deuyses, and wyth lesse harme to the horse.

Of shoes with turning vices, and also of ioynt shoes.

The xxx. Chapter.

SOme that vse to passe the mountaynes where smythes are not redely to be founde, to shoe a horse if nede be, doe carry aboute with them certayne shoes made with vyces, wherewith they make the shoe fast to the horses foote without helpe of hammer or nayle, the shape wherof is hereafter expressed. Notwithstãding such shoes, are more for the show than for any good vse or commodity. For though it saue the horses foote from stones, yet it so pincheth hys houe, as he goeth with paine, and perhaps doth his houe more hurte than the stones would doe. And ther-

therefore it were better in suche nedefull tymes to vse the ioint shoe, which is made of two pieces, with a flatte ryuet nayle ioyning them together in the toe, so as you may make it both wyde and narrow, as you will your selfe, to serue any foote, but this shoe must be set on with nayles, and therefore it is nedeful that the ryder learn to driue a nayle if nede be, whereof he must haue alwayes store about hym together with Hammer, Pynsons, & Butter, handsomelye made, and mete for carryage, without the which the horsemen of Almany do neuer trauayle, neither is ther any gentleman that loueth his horse, but can vse those instruments for that purpose, as well as any Smith. Cesar Fiaschi calleth these kinds of shoes Disferre prayling them very much to be vsed to such purpose as is before sayd, and so doth Martin. And therfore I thought good to set out the shape therof amongst the rest of the fygures of shoes.

Of the Paten shoe.

The xxxi. Chapter.

BEcause euery Smyth knoweth the vse of this shoe, and howe to make it, I shal not neede to vse many words, but onely shew you that it is a necessary shoe for a horse that is hurt in the hip, or stiffle, to be put on vpon the contrarye foote, to the intent that the sore legge may hang, and not touch the ground.

Howe to kepe the houes of a horse moyst in the stable.

The .xxxij. Chapter.

AS horses houes doe many tymes take harme through the neglygence or vnskilfulnesse of the Ferrer, in euill paring or shoing the same, euen so they take no lesse harme many tymes through the negligence of the keper for lacke of stopping, and keping the forefeete moyst, for the hinder feete most commonly are kept to moyst, by meanes that the dong and stale is suffered to lye continually at their heeles. But the forefeete stande continually drye, whereby the horse becommeth brittle houed, yea, and many tymes houebounde, which a good keper will not suffer, but be mindefull to stoppe them often, eyther with horse dong or Cow dong, yea, & also to washe them cleane without with water, and then to annoynt them with some good suppling oyntment as this here followeing prescribed by Martin, which wil not onely supple the houes, and make them tough, but also cause them to shyne and glistre, whiche is counted a beautifull thing amongst the Spanyards, Italians, and such as loue to haue their horses finelye kept.

The recepte of the oyntment.

The .xxxiij. Chapter.

Take

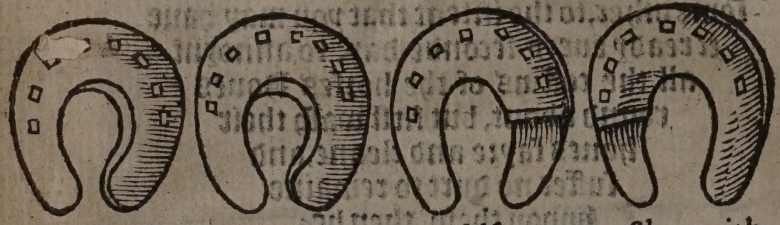
TAke of Turpentyne, of sheepes suet, of ech halfe a pound, of vnwrought ware halfe a quarterne, and of Sallet oyle halfe a pynt. Boyle al these things together in a pot, sturring them continually vntyll they be throughly mingled together. Then take it from the fyre and let it coole, and being colde, preserue it in the same potte, or else in some other, to the intent that you may haue it ready euery seconde day, to annoynt all the coffins of the horses Houes round about, but first wash their houes fayre and cleane, and suffer no durt to remaine vppon them, then being dryed with a cloth annoint them.

Thus endeth the treatise of Paring and shooing all maner of Houes.

Dyuers ſhapes of Shoes.

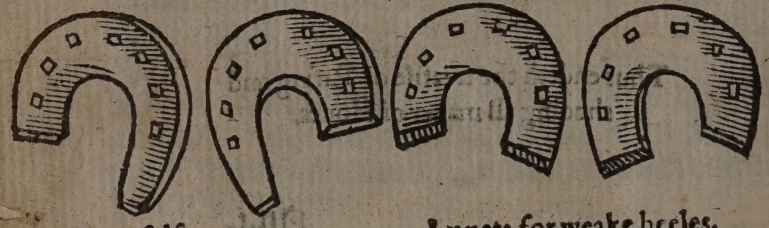
A ſhoe for a perfect houe.

For a flat foote or pomiſed foote.



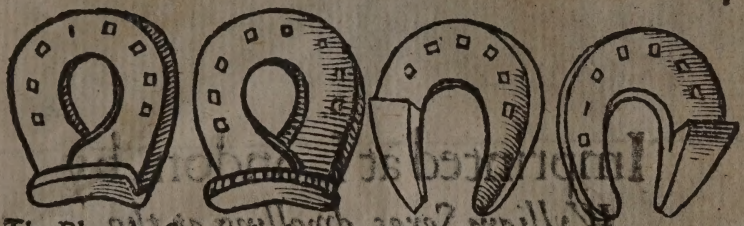
For weake heeles.

For a falſe quarter. Shoes with the inſyde turned outwarde to ſhewe the ſhoulderings.

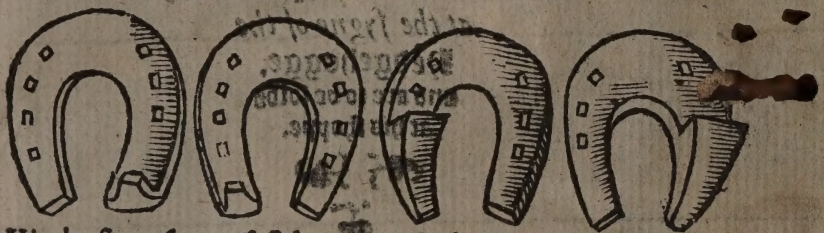


For a falſe quarter.

Lunets for weake heeles.



The Planche for weake heeles. Fore ſhoes for interfering.



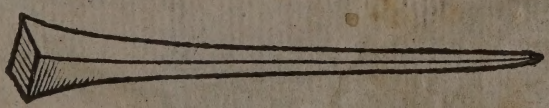
Hinder ſhoes for perfect houes. Hinder ſhoes for interfering.

A ſhoe wyth a vice.

A ioynt ſhoe to wyden & ſtrayten at pleaſure.

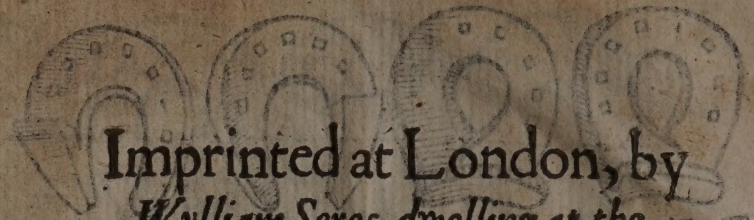
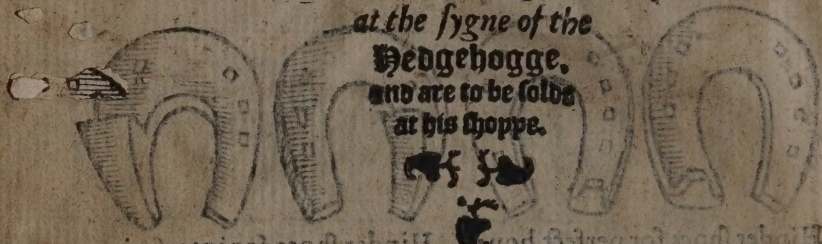
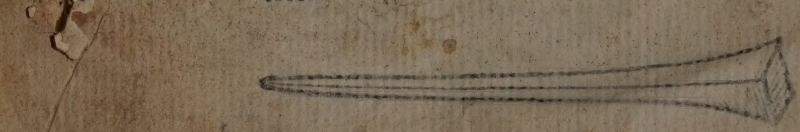
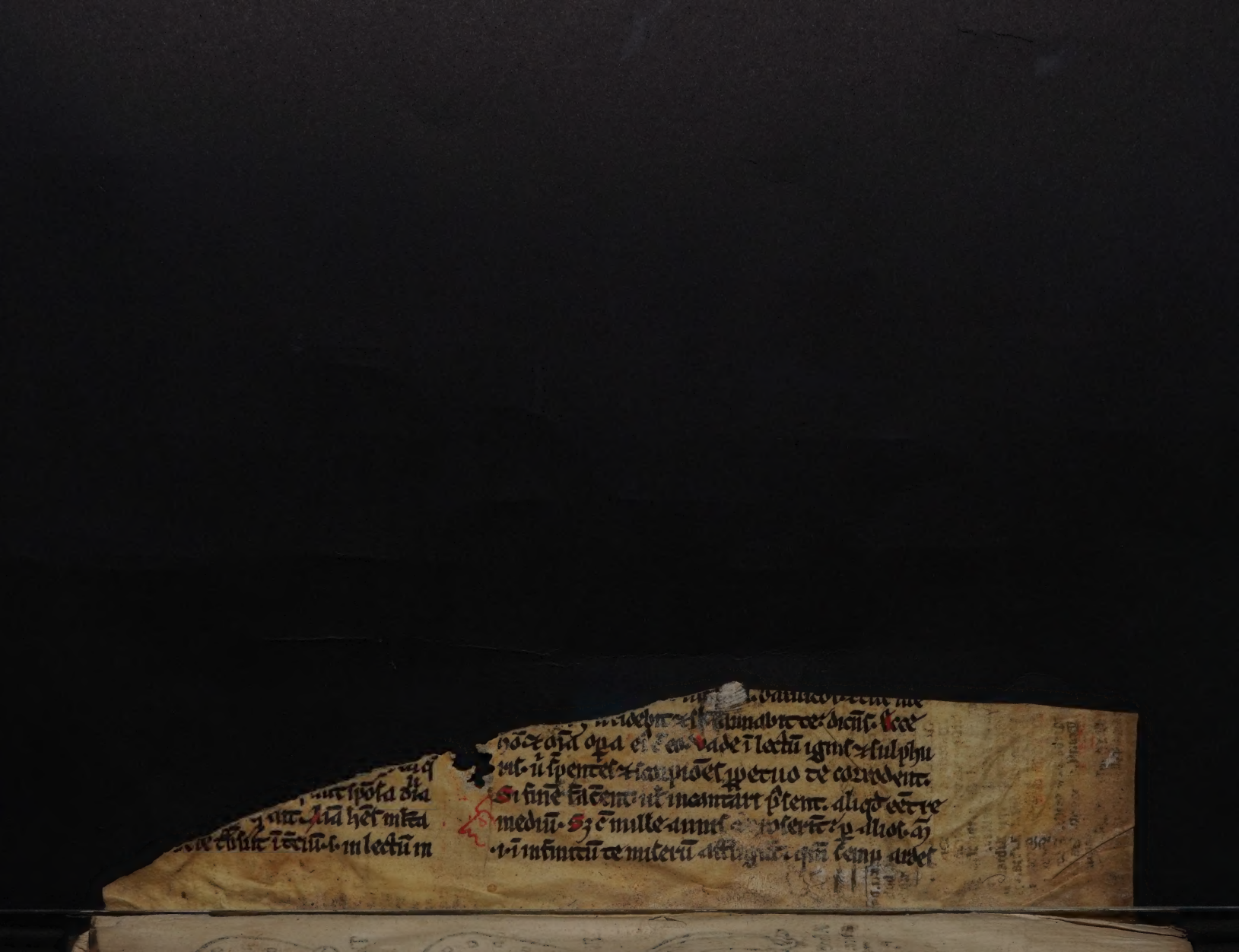
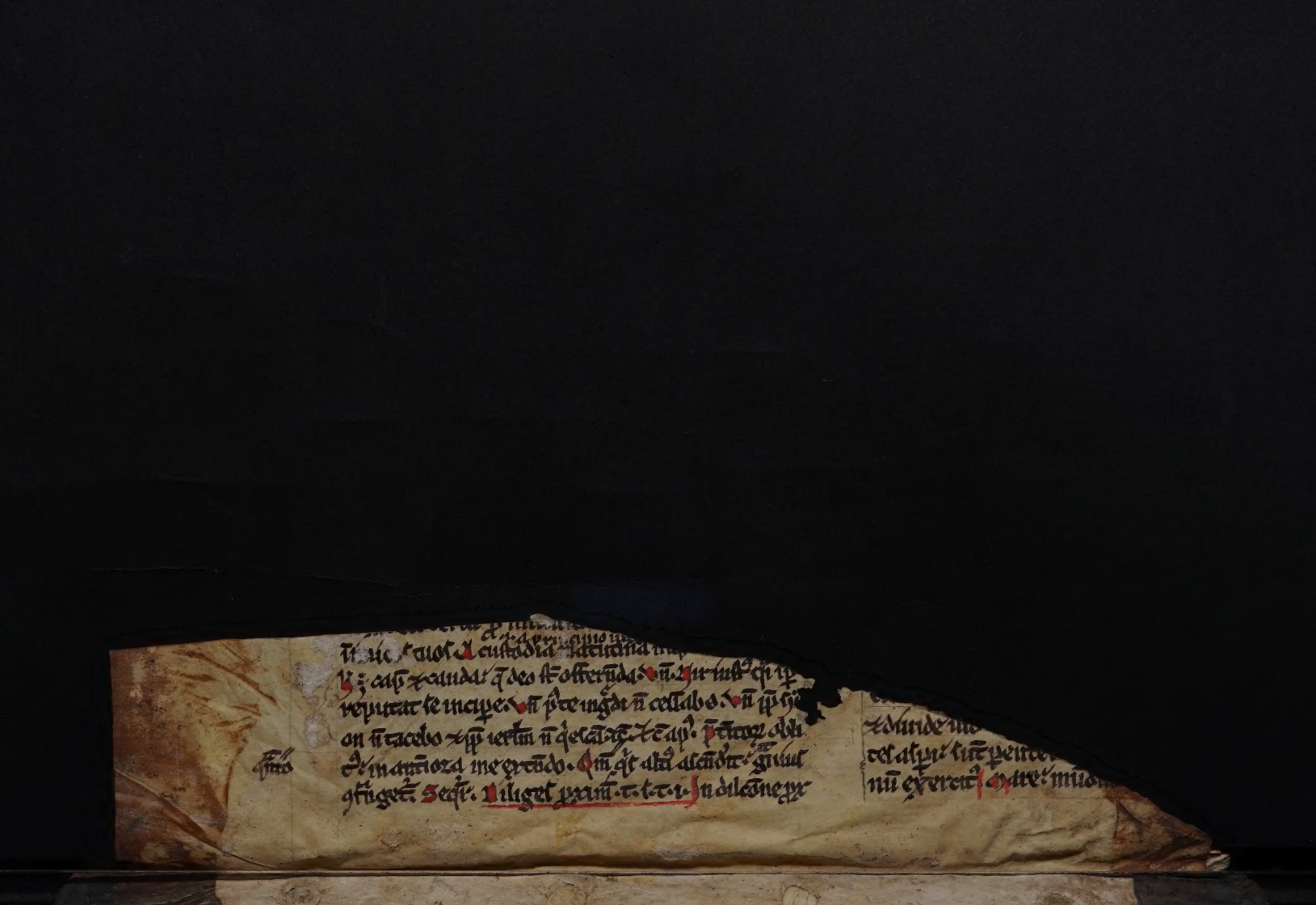
A ſhoe with a welt or border.

A ſhoe with rings to make a horſe lift his feete.



The true ſhape of a perfect horſe ſhoe nayle.

Sr Tho. Herberts booke



Imprinted at London, by
Wylliam Seres, dwelling at the
Weast ende of Poules,
at the sygne of the
Hedgehogge,
and are to be solde
at his shoppe.